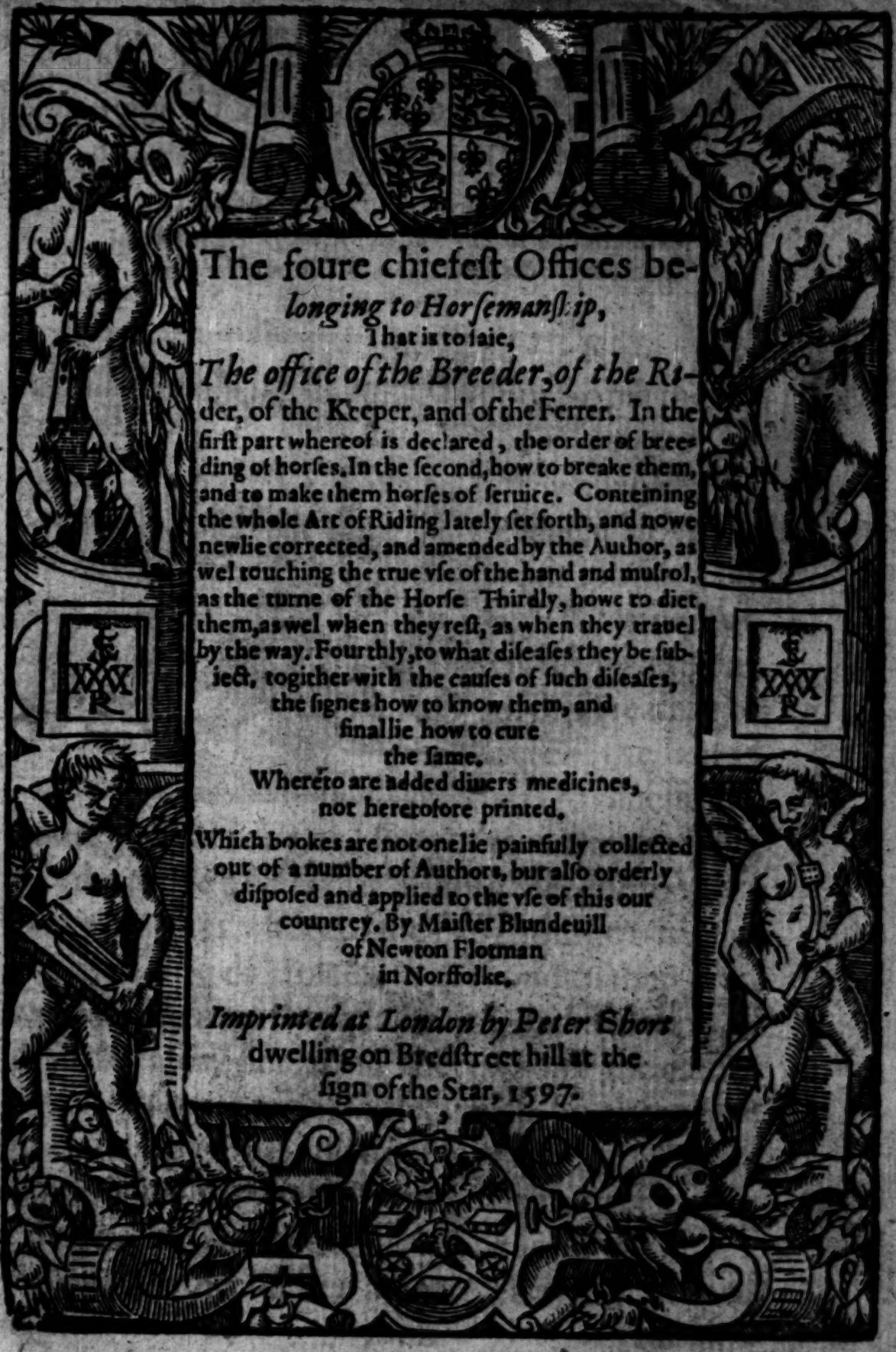


The foure chiefest Offices belonging to Horsemanship,

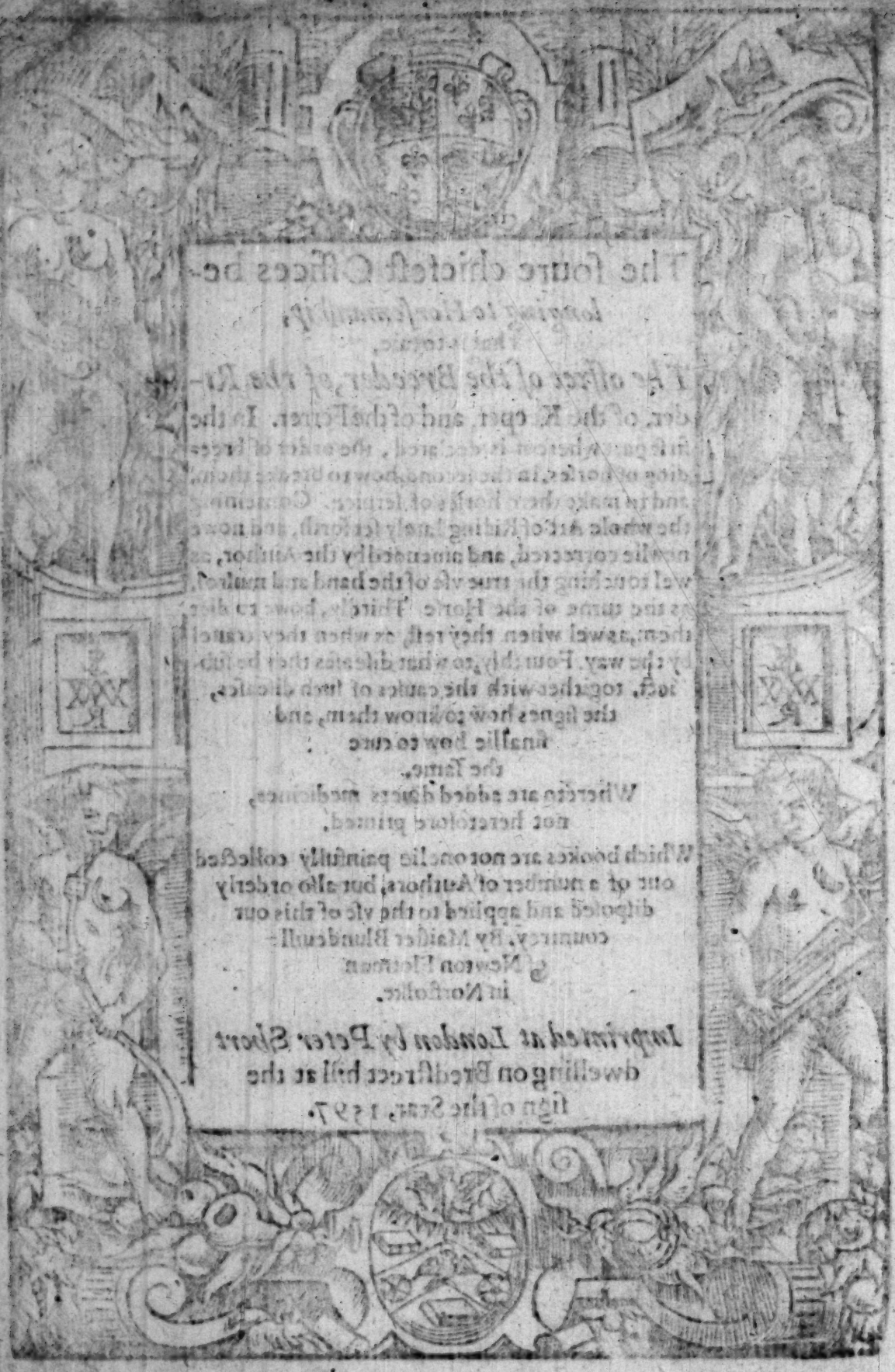
That is to saie,

The office of the Breeder, of the Rider, of the Keeper, and of the Ferrer. In the first part whereof is declared, the order of breeding of horses. In the second, how to breake them, and to make them horses of seruice. Conteining the whole Art of Riding lately set forth, and nowe newlie corrected, and amended by the Author, as wel touching the true vse of the hand and musrol, as the turne of the Horse Thirdly, howe to diet them, as wel when they rest, as when they travel by the way. Fourthly, to what diseases they be subiect, togither with the causes of such diseases, the signes how to know them, and finallie how to cure the same.

Whereto are added diuers medicines, not heretofore printed.

Which bookes are not onelie painfully collected out of a number of Authors, but also orderly disposed and applied to the vse of this our countrey. By Maister Blundeuill of Newton Flotman in Norffolke.

Imprinted at London by Peter Short dwelling on Bredstreet hill at the sign of the Star, 1597.



To the Right Honorable and his singular good Lord, the Lord Robert Dudley, Earle of Leicester, Baron of Denbigh, Knight of the Honorable order of the Garter, Maister of the Queenes Maiesties horses, and one of her Highnesse priuy Councell, *Thomas Blundeuill* wisheth perfect felicitie.



FTER that I had put foorth the Art of Riding, & saw how thankfully it pleased, not onlie your Honor, but also the most part of the gentlemen of this Realme, to accept the same: I was so muche encouraged thereby, as I sought to make the saide Booke more perfect, by adding thereunto three other Bookes, whereof the first shoulde treate of the breeding of Horses: the second of their diet, to preserue them long in health: and the third of their diseases, declaring therewithall the causes signes, & cures of the same, which bookes howe necessary they be, and how meet they are to accompanie the Art of Riding, the matter it selfe (beeing well handled) woulde euidentlie shewe. For then it shoulde bee a perfect worke, compre-

hending

hending the foure chiefeſt Offices belonging to Horſemanſhippe, that is to ſay: The office of the Breeder, of the Rider or Breaker, of the Keeper, and of the Ferrer. For as touching the Bitmaker and Sadler their offices, the firſt is indifferentlie well declared already in the Art of *Riding*: and the Sadler his office, ſhall be taught hereafter in another little Booke of Additions, which I intend God willing, to ioine to this volume, briefly comprehending all the preceptes of a later writer, now being your Honours moſt excellent Rider, called maiſter *Claudio Corte*: not onely touching that office, but alſo touching diuers other offices before recited. Which Booke ſhall ſupply to all the wants of ſuch neceſſarie thinges, as eyther *Griſon* in his Booke, or I perhaps haue negligentlie omitted. And truelie, your Honour deſerueth no little praiſe for procuring ſo ſingular a man into this realme: for beſides his perfection in Riding, hee is ſo well learned, wiſe, courteous, and modeſt withall, as his acquaintance, companie, and friendſhippe ought to bee right deare vnto al ciuill Gentlemen, and ſpeciallie to thoſe that delight in horſmanſhip. But now to returne vnto my purpoſe, for that I ſawe it lay not in me to performe this worke, ſo as it might anſwere euerie mans expectation, and ſpecially of

ſuch as are more readie to find faultes, than to amend them. I did almoſt repent me of mine enterpriſe and good deſire: and the rather for that I had no one certaine Author to followe, that either wrote of theſe matters to the full, or in ſuch order as did ſatisfie my minde, but ſhoulde bee driuen to deale with a great number of Authors, whoſe ſayenges and experiences, togither with mine owne ſmall knowledge gotten by trauayling in forreine countries: I muſt not onelie orderly diſpoſe, but alſo apply the ſame to the vſe of this our countrey. Which thing being more laborious (than ſom perhaps take it) I had clean giuen it ouer, if your good Lordſhip had not been, by whom I was ſo much hearted, as I coulde not chuſe but take the ſame in hand, & to go through withall ſo well as I could. And therefore if any man receiueth anie commoditie thereby (as I doubt not but he ſhall, if he wil vouchſafe to read all that I haue written, from the beginning to the ending) he ſhall haue moſt cauſe to bee thankfull to your Honor for the ſame. And I beleeue your thankes and praiſe ſhould be ſo much the more, if it would pleaſe your Houour to bee a meane that the Queenes Highneſſe may not only cauſe ſuch ſtatutes as were made in hir noble Father & deare Brothers time (both of good memorie)

touching the breeding of Horses vpon commōs to be put in execution: but also that al such parks within this realme, as be in hir highnesse handes, and meete for that purpose, might not wholie be employed to the keeping of Deere (which is altogither a pleasure without profite) but partlie to the necessarie breeding of Horses for seruice, whereof, this Realme of all others at this instant hath greatest neede. The lacke of which, if anie inuasion should chance (which GOD defende) would quicklie appeare (I feare me) to the great perill & danger of this hir highnes Realme. And her Maiestie giuing this good example, I doubt not, but that the most part of the Noble menne and Gentlemen of this Realme, hauing Parkes or gronndes impaled meete for such vse: would follow the same. And to the intent that no couetousnes might hinder so good an act: I would wish the couetous mind and desire of al men to be brideled by a law and discipline, wherby it would be prouided, that not only a sufficient number of able Horses may be bred within this Realme: but also that the same Horses may be broken, kept, maintained and exercised accordingly. *Monsieur de l'Angeay* in his Booke of warre, woulde haue no man to keepe a hacknie or easie horse to ride on himselfe: vnlesse he kept also a Horse meete

for

for ſeruice in the field. Which thing, I feare mee, would not pleaſe vs Engliſh men at all, which of late daies are more giuen to priuate eaſe and ſingular commoditie, than to a wealth publyke or common profite. Notwithſtanding, if there were a good lawe (as I ſaid before) made, as well for the breeding, as exerciſing of great Horſes and Geldinges meete for ſeruice: and the ſame ſtraightlie executed by vncorrupted Officers, which in mine opinion woulde be skilful Surueiours for the breedes, and expert Muſter maiſters for the horſes of ſeruice. And alſo that ſuche ſurueyes be made twiſe a yeare at the leaſt, and that the Muſters of the horſes of ſeruice be taken throughout the whole Realme foure times in a yeare, that is to ſay quarterly, and all in one day, for the auoiding of falſe Muſters: I beleeue that in ſhort ſpace, we ſhould not onely haue plentie of good Horſes, but alſo that the Gentlemen of this Realme would ſo farre paſſe the Frenchmen and al other Nations in this exerciſe, as they now excell vs: whereby this Realme ſhoulde bee of ſuch force, as our enemies woulde alwaies be afraid to attempt any enterpriſe againſt vs. Wherfore me thinkes your Honor cannot by any one waie deſerue more praiſe, or better gratifie all true Engliſh hearts, than by ſeeking to bring to

paſſe

passe so needfull a thinge as this is: whereunto bicause *I* knowe your Lordshippe to be of your owne good nature and disposition so readie and prone, as no man more: I leaue therefore to trouble your Honour any further, praieng God long to prosper the same.

Alwaies prest to serue your Lordship, Tho. Blundeuill.

A ſhort Preamble declaring in what points the knowledge of a Horſebreeder chiefly conſiſteth, *whereon dependeth the order* of this booke.

WHo ſo is deſirous, and therwith able to haue a good race or breed of horſes (for to haue ſkil in this matter without good will, and abilitie to execute the ſame, would litle preuail) ought firſt to knowe whither his ground bee meete for that purpoſe or not, and howe to ſeuer the ſame accordingly. Secondly, it behoueth him to know the diuers kinds of horſes and Mares, to the intent that he may prouide himſelfe of ſuch as are moſt worthy to bee kept, and will thriue beſt in his grounde. Thirdly, how to vſe them when he hath them, aſwell at, and before the time of ingendring, as after that the mares haue conceiued and foled. And alſo how to vſe their offpring, aſwell during the foleage, as at their full age: ſo as they may redound to his moſte commodity, and with leaſt labor & charge. Of which three generall pointes, with what order I treate in this Booke, the contents of the Chapters, heereafter following, doe plainlie declare.

The contents of the Chapters.

WHich grounds are meet for races, and which be not. Alſo how ſuch grounds ought to be deuided or ſeuered, and to what end ſuch deuiſion ſerueth. Chap. 1

Of the diuers kinds of horſes and Mares, according to the countries from whence they come, and which be beſt. chap. 2

Of the Turkie horſe.

Of the horſe of Barbarie.

Of

The Contents of the chapters.

Of the horses that come from the Iles of Sardinia and Corsica.
Of the Neapolitane, or courser of Naples.
Of the Jennet of Spaine.
Of the Hungarian.
Of the high Almaine.
Of the Flanders horse.
Of the Frizeland horse.
Of the Sweathland horse.
Of the Irish Hobbie.



A comparison of the races aboue rehearsed, as touching the Climates vnder which they be bred, and which of them will thriue best here in England: and are most meete to serue euery breeders seuerall purpose to intent. chap.3

How to chose Stallions and Mares most for breede, and of what age they ought to be. And finallie how the Studs ought to be same and not lyside. chap.4

At what time of the yeare it is best for Horses and mares to engender. And in what sort they ought to bee put together. And how to know when a mare desireth the horse. Also how manie mares one Stallion is able to couer in one yeare. And finally, when the stallions should be remoued from them. chap.5

What order is to be obserued touching the couering of Mares, when the stallions doe not run with them in the pastures, but are kept in the stables, and how the same stallions should be dieted. Also at what time of the daie the mares ought then to be couered. And finallie, how to know whether they haue conceiued or not. chap.6

How to make your mares to conceiue either horsefoles, or mare foles, and of what colour you list to haue your selfe. chap.7

Whether mares should be forced to abide the horse, though they haue no lust, or not. And how to make horse and mare, hauing no lust, to haue a lust to engender. And how to abate their lust if need require. chap.8

Which mares should be couered euery yeere, and which not. And how to doe, that those mares which you would haue to beare euerie yeare, shall not go barren. chap.9

How mares should be vsed after they haue conceiued, & are with fole,

fole, & what cauſeth them to caſt their foles before their time. 10
How to helpe a mare that is in danger at the time of hir foling, how you ſhall cauſe hir to erpell hir ſecundine or cleane. cha. 11
Howe to make a mare to caſt hir fole that is not worthy to bee bred, or for ſome other needfull cauſe. chap. 12
How mares ſhould be vſed after they haue foled. Alſo how long the foles ſhould ſucke. And how they ought to be vſed during their foleage. And how to harden their houes. cha. 13
How to know of what ſtature, making, and diſpoſition the foles when they are new foled will be, when they come to age. cha. 14
Of the growth as well of marecolts as horſecolts. And how to know which will continue in goodnes, and line longeſt. cap. 15
When, and how coltes ſhoulde bee weaned from their dammes: and how they ought be be ſeuered according to their kinds and ages. chap. 16
Of the geloing of coltes, and for what cauſe they bee gelt, alſo at what age, & in what time of the yeare they ought to be gelt. 17
At what age, and in what time of the yeare it is beſt taking vp of coltes to break them, and howe they ought at their firſt halte-ring to be vſed. chap. 18
How and at what age a coltes mouth ſhould be cut, or certeine of his teeth drawn, when the bit for fault thereof cannot haue his true reſting place. chap. 19
Of the culling out of refuſe mares and coltes. And alſo of thoſe that ſhould bee reſerued for the maintenance of the Studde or ſtocke. chap. 20

Thus ends the Contents of the Chapters following.

The Contents of the chapters.

Fol. 1 That euahch ought to call their folke before their face. 10
How to helpe a mare that is in anguer at the time of her foaling,
how you shall cause her to expel her secundine et cetera. cha. 11
How to make a mare to cast her fole that is not yet ripe. cha. 12
How to fix an other medicall cause. chap. 13
Foles mares should be vsed after they haue foled. And bolstering
the foles should before; And how they ought to be vsed during
their sucking. And how to instruct their gouernor. cha. 13
Of the diuerse kinds of hay that are, making, and ordering the foles
when they are weaned from their dam. cha. 14
Of the ordering and tuell of vnaccustomed foles. And how to
handle which will continue vngouernable, with diuerse other
matters fole they ought to be framed according to their seuerall
ages. cha. 16
Of the gelding of colts, and for what cause they be gelt, and at
what age, & in what time of the yeare they ought to be gelt. 17
At what age, and in what time of the yeare it is best taking vp of
colts to be broken them, and how they ought to be vsed during
the breaking of them. chap. 18
How and at what age a colts tayle should be cut, or reserued of
his full length, when the bit to stay them from eating the
tayle. chap. 19
Of the cutting out of vnlit mares and colts. And also of their
vses. chap. 20

This ends the Contents of the Chap-
ters following.

Horſes.

What things are to be conſidered in thoſe grounds that ſhould be appointed to the breeding of Horſes. Alſo how ſuch grounds ought to be diuided, and to what end ſuch deuiſion ſerueth. Chap. i.



AND firſte, as touching the ground, twoe thinges are to bee conſidered, that is, the quantitie and qualitie. The quantitie for twoe reſpectes. Firſte, to the intent it bee not charged with more cattel than it is able to beare, for the Cattell not beeing ſufficientlie fed can not proſper. The ſeconde reſpect is, for that the greater the ground is, the more partitions are needefull, partlie for change of paſture ſake: for according vnto the olde prouerbe, Change of Paſture makes fatte Calues. And ſuch partitions woulde be made with high Pale, Raile, or elſe deepe ditch, and verie thicke quickſet. For horſes, Mares, and wild Coltes, are not ſo eaſilie kept in, as other Cattell is. But chieflie ſuch partitions are needefull, as well for the Stallions to runne euerie one ſeuerallie by himſelfe, together with his owne Mares, during the time of ingendring, as alſo for the Coltes when weaning time commes, to be ſeuered from their dammes, of which two points we ſhall ſpeake hereafter in their due place more at large. Moreouer, by ſuch partitions, beſides the commoditie of the graſſe and haie, that ſhall be preſerued thereby for Winter ſtore, the ground it ſelfe being perhaps before that time, verie ample, waſt and wilde, and thereby inclining the Cattell to bee of the like nature, ſhall bee brought to a more formalitie, and ſo the beaſtes themſelues ſhall be made the more domeſticall and familiar. And the rather, if they be handled and made tame in their youth, whereof we ſhall talke hereafter more

more at large. Notwithſtanding I would not haue the ground ſo ſtraitned with partitions, but ſo as they may haue ſufficient ſcope to run and trauell to and fro therein for their liuing. For as too much labour, leannelle and pouertie, depriueth them of luſt to ingender, euen ſo ouermuch reſt and fatnelle letteth conception, and cauſeth a dangerous foling. Wherefore I woulde wiſhe the mares to be kept in a meane eſtate, vntill they haue foled, & then to be beſt fedde, to the intent that they may haue aboundance of milke in their dugges, which matter ſhall be talked of hereafter more at full in his proper place.

But now to appoint how manie acres of ground will ſerue a Mare and hir offſpring vntill they are mēt to be broken, I think it not needfull, ſith the goodneſſe of the ground muſt rule that matter, and partlie the diſcretion of the owner, whoe by experience ought to know his owne ground beſt: for all grounds be not of like fertilitie. Neither do I thinke that anie owner is ſo ignorant, but that he knoweth that an Horſe or a mare is a greater feeder than any other kind of cattell, and therefore had nēde to haue greater allowance. Yet conſidering that the horſe biteth nearer the ground than any other cattell (the ſhēepe and the Conie onelie excepted) whereby hee gathereth more foode out of one acre of ground, than any other beaſt can do almoſt out of an acre and an halfe: me thinkes that a third part more than will ſerue a Cow and hir offſpring, ſhould alſo feede a mare and hir offſpring, ſo that they be well prouided for in Winter ſeaſon. For at hard meate they be too hard for all other cattell, by reaſon they haue ſharper teeth, and do both chawe and ſwallowe downe their meat with quicker ſpeed. And therefore of Winter meate they haddo nēed to haue double allowance. And ſuch winter meat for mares and coltes would be verie good and ſweete hate, and well ſtacked vp in the dryeſt and warmeſt places of thoſe groundes, whereas they ſhoulde be wintered. Nigh vnto which ſtackes woulde bee built houſes mēet to harbour as well the mares with their foles, as the weanlings (but ſeuerally by themſelues) in time of ſnow and ſuch like ſtormie and cold weather: or elſe to auoid that coſte and charge of building, the hate may be laied vpon houels made with great forked poſtes and ſtrong rafters, in ſuch ſort as the

cattell

cattell may both ſtand and lie dꝛie vnderneath the ſame, within which houels may be placed either ſtanding oꝛ hanging racks at ſuch heigth, as the foles togither with their dammes may reache vnto the haie that ſhall be caſt therein. And if ſuch houels were incloſed with highe hedge oꝛ hurdle, they ſhould be ſo muche the warmer, and defende the cattell the better from the colde winde. Nigh vnto which houels oꝛ houſes, let there bee alwaies one paſture alwaies kept vntouched and not fed on vntill Shꝛoftide, betwixt the which time and the midſt of Maie is alwaies moſt danger of hunger bain. Thus hauing talked ſufficientlie as touching the quantitie and deuiſion of the ground, let vs alſo ſpeake ſomewhat of the qualitie thereof. The qualitie chiefly conſiſteth in foure points. The firſt is, to haue plentie of ſhoꝛt and ſweet graſſe foꝛ common feede, and alſo of long and ranke graſſe as well foꝛ haie, as foꝛ the maꝛes that giue ſucke. The ſecond is, to lacke no good water and freſh ſpꝛings. The third, to haue dꝛie laier. The fourth, to haue ſhade and shelter, either of trées, oꝛ of highe buſhes to defend the Sunne, the winde and ſtoꝛmie weather. And the dꝛier, the harder vnder foꝛ, and the higher that ſuch grounde is, the better: yea, and it is as very needfull that ſome part thereof might be craggie and ſtonie (ſo it be not barren of graſſe) and ſpeciallie foꝛ the colts to run in, when they be weaned from their dammes. Foꝛ to trauell to and fro in ſuch groundes foꝛ their liuing, ſhall make them to haue ſtrong legs, and hard houfes.

By this meanes you may perceiue, that neither ranke, marriſh, colde, oꝛ wet groundes be méete foꝛ the purpoſe: foꝛ ſuche kindes of groundes, partlie foꝛ lacke of ſweet and firme foode, the graſſe whereof being ranke, ſoure and waterish: and partly foꝛ lacke of dꝛie laier, moſt commonlie doe bꝛing foꝛth no other but ſlowe, heauie, dull, groſſe headed, fate bellied, and gutte legged Jades. And therefoꝛe I would wiſh him that would haue a good race, to foꝛeſée that his ground be indowed with ſuch properties as are beſoꝛe rehearſed.

Of

Of the diuers kindes of Horſes and Mares, according to the Countries from whence they come, and which be beſt. Chap. ii.

I Meane not here to treate of all the kindes of Horſes that be in the world, for that were an infinite worke, and neuer attempted heretofore by any writer that I could read. For as Oppianus ſaith, there bee as manie kindes of Horſes, as there be diuers countries and nations. And to ſaie the truth, it would be to ſmal purpoſe. For what ſhuld it auaile you to heare, vnleſſe it were for nouelties ſake, that in ſome countries there be horſes no bigger than Rams, & in ſome countries, horſes be made like Vnicornes, in ſome Countreyes againe, Mares doe conceiue with the Weſterne winde, without the helpe of any Stalliõn, whoſe Coltes doe not liue aboue three yeares. Wherefore leauing all ſuch ſtrange kinds apart, I will onelie talke of the moſte worthie, and ſpecialtie of ſuch as haue béene knowne of late daies by good experience, to proſper verie well in this lande, and be not vnknowne to the moſte part of the Gentlemen of this Realme, which kindes be theſe heere following. The Turkie, the Barbarian, the Sardinian, the Napolitan, the Jennet of Spaine, the Hungarian, the high Almaine, the Frizeland Horſe, the Flanders Horſe, and the Iriſh Hobbie. Of which kinds whileſt I ſpeake, I muſt néedes alſo make ſome mention of the beſt kindes that haue béene either in Aſia, Affrike, or Europe, from whence theſe be deſcended, though perhaps more baſtardlie than I would wiſhe, and all for lacke of that induſtrie and diligence which hath béene vſed by our forefathers in times paſt in breeding them, inſomuch as wee can aſſure our ſelues in this our age of no certaine race: yea it ſufficeth nowe to beléeue the ſeller that ſaith, the horſe is of ſuche a countrey, or race, and there with bee ſomewhat faire to the eie, and then all is good enough, though he be neuer ſo ſtarke a Jade.

Of the Turkie Horse.

But now beginning first with the Turke, because hee commeth furthest off, me thinketh it were not amisse to consider, that as Turky it selfe is of long time since become a great Empyre extending verie far into all the three parts of the worlde abouesaid, comprehending diuers kingdoms and countries, and yet altogither is commonly called by the name of Turkie: euen so the horses that come from any of the Turks dominions, or frontiers of his next neighbors, be called Turky horses, and therfore I think it good here to declare vnto you the opinions of the olde writers, touching the races that haue beene in those countries, nowe subiect to the great Turk or thereabout, to learne thereby (if it may be) whether those that we call Turky horses, be so indeed or not, and of which of those races they seeme most likely to descende. And first we will begin with the chiefe races of Asia, which be the *Parthians*, the Medes, the Armenians, the Cappodocians, & manie others. The *Parthians* (saith Absirtus) be great of stature, bolde, couragious, and sure of footemanship. Vigetius also saith, that they be verie well reined, and haue an easie ambling pace. But the Medes excell them in comlinesse of shape. The Armenians and Cappodocians, do descend of the Parthians, and be like them in all points: sauing that they are somewhat more beautie headed. The horses of Greece, as Absirtus saith, haue good legs, great bodies, comelie heads, and be of an high stature, and verie well made forward, but not backward, because they are pin buttocked, notwithstanding they be very swift and of a bold courage. But of all the races in Greece, both the horses and mares of Thessalia, for their beautie, bignesse, bountie, and courage, of all Authors are most celebrated. For which cause Xerxes at his comming into Greece made a running of horses in Chariots to be proclaimed onelie in Thessalia, because he would haue his own horses to run with the best horses in Greece. Iulius Cæsar also being Dictatour of Rome, knowing the courage of these horses, was the first that ordeined them as a spectacle before the people to fight with wild bulles, and to kill them. The *Pelleians* and Magnesians, are also verie well commended. The *Pellei-*

ans be so named of a towne in Thessalia, called Pella. And the Magnesians of Magnesia, a region of Macedonia, next adioining to Thessalia. The Epirotes be frowarde & disobedient to the bit, notwithstanding, Paulus Iouius making mention of the laste great wars which the Venetians had, not onlie with the Turks, but also in a maner with all christendom, giueth the Epirotes great praise for their swiftnesse and nimblenes. Insomuch as the Venetians (as he saith) estéemed their horses more, and waged their Riders better than anye other horsemen that serued them at that time. But the horses of Thracia, which is now the chiefest part of Turkie, in the which Constantinople the hed citie and seat of the great Turke standeth, be accounted worse than all the rest. For the most part of the writers doe describe them after this sort. The Thracians be foule & euill fashioned, hauing rough bodies, great shoulders, and rising backes like vnto camels, crooked legs and go rolling and vnséemlie, as well in their pace as running. Notwithstanding, the Horses that I haue séene come from Turky, as wel into Italy, as hither into England, be indifferent faire to the eie, though not very great nor stronglie made, yet very light and swift in their running and of great courage, and therefore séeme to descend of the Grecian race, before described by Absirtus. But their trauelling pace is neither amble, racke, nor trot, but a certeine kinde of easie traine. Albeit for the most part they be euill mouthed, by reason that in Turkie they be neuer ridden (as I haue learned) vntill they be ten or twelue years old, wherby they ware so headstrong, as they be not easilie brought to make a good stop: yea if when you will run him at his setting forth, you saie but this word (Braie) vnto him, hee will neuer leaue running so long as his breath will serue him, shunning nothing that shall stand in his waie, if he may go ouer the same by any meanes possible: for they be of nature very courageous, and will do more by gentle meanes then by stripes or great threatnings, for that maketh them more desperate, and bringeth them clean out of order. Thus much of the Turke.

Of the Horse of Barbarie.

The Barbarian is a horse that coms out of Barbaria, a Countrie in Affrike, conteining vnder it the two regions of Mauri-

tania

tania lieng against Spaine, whereof the one is called Mauritania Tingitana: and the other is called Mauritania Cesariensis, It conteineth also the countrie of Numidia, and that part which is called Affrica minor, that is to saie, the lesser Affrike, so that Barbaria stretcheth verie farre. And there be many good races within the same, and in the frontiers of the regions thereabout, as the Mauritanians, the Libians, Cerenians, the Numidians, and manie others. The Mauritanians be much commended of the Writers, not onlie for their good shape and swiftnesse in running, but also for that they be excellentlie well breathed, and thereby are both able to maintaine a verie long cariere, and also to abide any kind of labour and trauaile: yea and besides that, they will abide the sight and roaring of a Lion, whereof there is great store and plentie in that countrey. Next vnto these are the Libians, which be of like goodnesse, and of like shape, sauing that the Libians be stronger made, longer bodied, thicker ribbed, and broader breasted, and of all Horses (as Aelianus saith) they doe require lesse tending and keeping. For their maisters in that countrey when they trauaile by the way, do neither wipe their legs, currie them, nor litter them, nor pare their hooles, and as soone as their iourney is done they turne them forth to the pasture and make no more ado. Againe, the Mares of this kind or race (as the Authors write) be so delighted with musicke, as the heardman or keeper with the sound of a pipe, may lead them whither he will himselfe. The Cereneians (as Absirtus saith) be great of stature, and haue small and gant bellies, they be swift in running, and sure of footmanship, and in labour good at length, for which causes they were much vsed in the olde time to run for wagers in chariottes. But those Horses that we commonlie call Barbarians, doe come out of the king of Tunis lande, out of Masilia and Numidia, which for the most part be but little horses, but therewith verie swift and able to make a verie long cariere, which is the cause why we esteeme them so much. And it shoulde seeme by Vigetius, that this race came first from Spaine: who affirmeth them to be very swift in running and meete for the saddle. Thus I end with the races of Barbarie.

Of the Horses of Sardinia and Corsica.

THe Horses that come out of the Iles of Sardinia and Corsica, as Volateranus saith, haue short bodies, and be very bold and courageous, and vnquiet in their pace, for they be of so fierce and hote cholericke complexion, and therewith so much vsed to running in their countrey, as they will stand still on no ground. And therefore this kinde of horse requireth a discréete and patient Rider, who must not be ouer hastie in correcting him, for feare of marring him altogither.

Of the Courser of Naples.

THe Napolitan, which we commonlie call a courser of Naples, is a trim Horse, being both comelie and stronglie made, and of so much goodnesse, of so gentle a nature, and of so high a courage as anie Horse is, of what countrey so euer he be. He is easilie knowne from all other Horses, by his no lesse cleane then strong making, his limmes are so well proportioned in euerie point, and partlie by his portlinesse in his gate, but chiefly by his long slender head, the nether part whereof, that is to saie, from the eies downewarde, for the moste part is also somewhat bending like a Hawkes beake, which maketh him to reine with the better grace, and yet the Italians doe both write and saie, that these coursers be nothing so strong nowe as they haue béene in times past, partlie perhaps for that like industrie of late daies hath not beene vsed in breeding them as in times past; and partlie for that nature doth decay euery daie more and more, as well in man as in beast. But howsoeuer they be, in mine opinion, their gentle nature and docilitie, their comelie shape, their strength, their courage, their sure footmanship, their well reining, their lofty pace, their cleane trotting, their strong galloping, and their swift running well considered (all which things they haue in maner by nature) they excell numbers of other races, euen so farre as the faire Greyhounds the fowle mastiffe curres.

Of the Jennet of Spaine.

THe Jennet of Spaine is finelie made, both head, bodie, and legs, and verie lœmelie to the eie, sauing that his buttocks be

same.

ſomewhat ſlender, and for his fine making, lightneſſe, and ſwiftneſſe withall, he is verie much eſtéemed, and eſpeciallie of noble men (as Camerarius ſaith) which Oppianus alſo affirmeth, ſaieng: that the Jennet in ſwiftneſſe paſſeth the Parthians, and all other horſes whatſoeuer they be, euen ſo farre as the Egle excédeth all the birds in the aire, and as the Dolphin paſſeth all the fiſhes in the ſea, but therwith he ſaith, that they be but ſmall of ſtature, of ſmall ſtrength, and of ſmall courage; all which things ſéeme to agrée very well with thoſe Jennets that bee brought hither into England, vnleſſe it be the laſt point. For I haue heard ſome of the Spaniards to ſet ſuch praiſe on their Jennets courage, as they haue not letted to report that they haue caried their riders out of the field, I cannot tell how many miles after the Jennets themſelues haue béen ſhot cleane through the bodies with Harquebuſhes. Which report I haue heard to be true by diuers of our own ſouldiers, which if it be true indéede, it dooth better counteruaile their ſmall ſtature and little ſtrength which is manifeſt to al mens eies that doe behold them, and yet Abſirtus ſéemeth to be of a contrarie opinion: who writeth of them in this ſort. The Horſes of Spain (ſaith he) be of great ſtature, hauing fine heads, and right vp bodies, verie well compact togither in all partes, ſauing that their buttocks be ſomewhat too ſlender. They be ſtrong and able to endure great labor, and commonlie they be neither too fat nor yet too leane, and in their trauell they néede not to bee quickened with the ſpurre, and yet they be nothing méete to run or to paſſe a cariere, becauſe their houes be not good. And as from their fole age vnto their full age they be verie obedient & tractable, ſo from thenceforth they ware to be curſt and froward. All which things perhaps might be truelie ſaied of the Spaniſh horſe, in Abſirtus time: for the moſt part of his ſaienges are verified by good experience euen in theſe our daies, vnleſſe it be as touching his greatnes of ſtature and ſtrength, which may be decaied ſince his time. And perhaps thoſe horſes whereof he writeth were of another climate than ours, which may cauſe muche alteration, both in ſtature and ſtrength. For Albertus ſaith, that thoſe horſes which are bred betwixt the third clime and the end of the firſt, are alwaies of greateſt ſtature, and ſpeciallie thoſe that are bred in Spain. Not-

withstanding, those that be bred in the seuenth climat, which is more towards the North, though they be not fullie so great, yet they be stronger, and also will indure much more labor. The pace of the Jennet is neither trot nor amble, but a comelie kinde of going like the Turke. Thus much of the Jennet.

Of the Hungarian.

The Hungarian by Vigetius is described thus. The Hungarian (saieth he) hath a great and hooked head, and his eies stande almost without his head, his nostrils are narrowe, and his lawes broad, his neck is long and rough, with a mane hanging downe beneath his knées, he hath a large bulk, a right back, a long bush taile, his legs be strong, his pasternes small, and his hoofes full and broad, his guttes are hollowe, and all his body is full of emptie corners, his buttockes are not halfe filled with fatte, neither doe the brawnes or his muscles appeare, of stature he is more in length than heigth, and therewith somewhat side bellied, his bones are also great, he is rather leane than fat, which leanneſſe is so answerable to the other partes of his bodie, as the due proportion obserued in his deformitie, maketh the same to be a beautie. And as touching his inwarde disposition, hee is (as Vigetius saieth) both temperate and wise, and able to abide great labour, cold and hunger, and therefore verie méet for the warre. Camerarius also saith, that they be verie swift, and if they be prouoked by some iniurie, they will bothe bite and strike, otherwise not. Their pace is a hard trot.

Of the Almaine Horse.

The Almaine is commonlie a great horse, and though not fine lie yet very stronglie made, and therefore more méet for the shock than to passe a carriere, or to make a strong manage, because they be very grosse and heauie, yet by industrie they are made lighter behind than before: for their riders do vse in their maneging to make them to turne alwaies with their hinder partes, & not with their fore partes: like Jacke anapes, when hee is made to come ouer the chaine, whereby they kéepe their Horses head alwaies vpon the enemie. The disposition of this horse (his heauy

mould

mould considered) is not euill, for he is very tractable and will labour indifferentlie well by the waie, but his pace for the moste part is a very hard trot.

Of the Flanders Horse.

THe Flaunders Horse in his shape, disposition and pace, differeth in a maner nothing from the Almaine Horse: sauing that for the most part he is of a greater stature, and more puissant. The Mares also of Flanders bee of a great stature, strong, long, large, faire and fruitfull, and besides that will indure great labour, as is well seene, for that the Fleminges doe vse none other draught but with those mares in their waggons, in the which I haue seen two or three mares to go lightly away with such a burthen, as is almost incredible.

Of the Friezeland Horse.

THe Frizeland horse is no very great horse, but rather of a meane stature, being therewith strong and well compact together, and hath very good legs. And Vigerius saith, that the Frizeland horses be very swift in running, and able to maintaine a long course. And indeed I haue seene of them my selfe that would make a good cariere, and manege very well, and also do the Corvette so trulie as any Jennet of Spain. But then the disposition of this horse is so diuelish, so stubbern, and so froward, as vnlesse the rider which first breaketh him be very bold, and therewith circumspect to correct him in time, he shall neuer bring him to any good, for hee will doe nothing without stripes, which also being giuen out of time, will make him so restief, that neither faire meanes nor fowle meanes, will euer winne him from that vice againe. The pace of this horse is a good comely trot.

Of the Sweathland Horse.

THe Sweacian or Sweathland Horse, so farre as I can conjecture, by those that the king his Embassadours haue of late daies brought with them into this Realme, whereof I am sure there be diuers here yet remaining, is no great or strong horse, but of a meane stature and strength, and I feare me scant well

conditioned. And I am induced to thinke ſo the rather, for that they be moſt commonlie pied and of two ſundry colours: for their legs at the leaſt be all white, euen vp to the bellie, their bodies being of another colour, which as Griſon ſaith, is a ſigne of ſmall force: albeit the Gentlemen in that country delight much to haue their horſes of diuers colours, and to weare as it were diuerſe liueries. Beſides that, many of them be wall eied, which is alſo a token of a ſhrewd & a ſtubborne diſpoſition. Notwithſtanding, I haue ſeene of them with good handling, to make an indifferent good manege, whereby I take them to be docible, and alſo bicauſe they come out of a cold countrey, I beleeue they will abide much hardneſſe.

Of the Iriſh Hobbie.

THe Iriſh Hobbie is a prettie fine Horſe, hauing a good head, and a body indifferentlie well proportioned, ſauing that manie of them be ſlender & pin buttocked, they be tender mouthed, nimble, light, pleaſant, and apt to be taught, and for the moſt part they be amblers, and therefore verie meet for the ſaddle, & to trauaile by the waie: yea and the Iriſh men both with darts and with light ſpeares, do vſe to ſkirmiſh with them in the field. And many of them do proue to that vſe very well, by means they be ſo light and ſwift, notwithſtanding I take them to be very neſh & tender to keep, and alſo to be ſomewhat ſkittiſh and fearefull, partly perhaps by nature, and partlie for lacke of good breaking at the firſt.

A compariſon of the races aboue rehearſed, as touching the climates vnder which they be bred, and which of them will thriue beſt here in England, and are moſt meet to ſerue euery breeders purpoſe and intent. Cap. iii.

HItherto we haue talked of diuers kinds of horſes and mares, and therwith declared to you their ſhapes, natures, and diſpoſition. Now it reſteth that we briefly compare theſe kinds togither, that we may not onlie knowe thoſe that bee moſt meete to breede within this Realme in generall, but alſo that the deſire and intent of euerie breeder in particular may be ſatiſfied. For ſome man perchance would haue

haue a breed of great trotting horſes méete for the warre, and to ſerue in the field. Some other againe would haue a bréed of ambling horſes of a meane ſtature for to iourníe and to trauaile by the waie. Some perhaps would haue againe a race of ſwift runners to runne for wagers, or to gallop the Bucke, or to ſerue for ſuch like exerciſes of pleaſure. But the plaine countrieman would perchance haue a bréed onely for draught or burthen. And firſt you ſhall vnderſtand that generally thoſe horſes and mares will thriue beſt in this Realme, that be bred vnder a climate being of the like temperature that this our clime is, or at the leaſt not much differing from the ſame. Wherefore naturally me thinkes the Turke, the Jennet of Spaine, the Barbarian and the Sardinian, being bredde in farre hotter countries than this is, ſhould not be able to indure the colde of this countrey: nor to like heere ſo well as there, from whence they come. For though I haue ſeene them to bréed héere, and their offpring to growe to a perfect ſtature, and to bee like in ſhape to their ſiers and dames, yet for the moſt part they bee but neaſh and tender, and do require more attendance and fine keeping than others doe. And yet I will not denie, but that in continuance of time their nature may be altered, and ſuch tenderneſſe may weare awaie well inough, and ſpeciallie thoſe that come out of Iſlande, ſooner than the others, becauſe they are more able to endure both heat and colde, and their nature doeth agrée the better with this Countrey being alſo an Iſlande. The Neapolitan although he be bred vnder a hotter climat than ours is, yet that region is verie temperate of it ſelfe: and therewith ſo fruitfull, as it is called the Garden or paradiſe of Italie, and the horſes there bredde, be of ſo ſtrong and healthfull complexion, as they will not quaile whereſoeuer they goe: and that they proſper ſo well here in this lande as in anie other forrein countrey, and not only the Quéenes Maieſties race but alſo other mens races, and ſpeciallie ſir Nicholas Arnoldes Race doth wel teſtifie, from whence I haue ſéene ſo faire Coltes to come, and to proue ſo well in their doings, as euer I ſawe in the realme of Naples, whoe for his induſtrie and diligence ſhewed in that behalfe, as hee is worthie to be much commended and praiſed, ſo I wiſhe that all Gentlemen, hauing abilitie, woulde

do the like: ſo ſhould they neither lacke good horſes to ſerue their Countrey in time of néede, nor yet to ſerue themſelues in their owne affaires. Now as touching the reſt of the races before mentioned, as the Hungarian, the high Almaine, the Flanders horſe, the Friezeland horſe, and the Iriſhe Hobbie: dailie experience teacheth, that they do proue very well heere, becauſe either they come out of colder countries then this is, or at the leaſt not out of much hotter, and ſome of them do proue better here then at home, and ſpeciallie ſuch as come from lowe graſſe and wet grounds, all the Flanders horſes and mares, both which doe war héere to be finer limmed, cleaner made, and therwith lighter and more nimble than they bee at home. But now to anſwere the diuerſe intentes of the breéders, I woulde wiſh him that ſéeketh to haue a race of good horſes, meete to ſerue in the field, to get a Napolitan Stallion if it bee poſſible, if not, let him take the high Almaine, the Hungarian, the Flanders, or the Frizeland Horſe, ſo that he bee of a conuenient ſtature, well proportioned, and méete for the purpoſe. What things are requiſite in a ſtallion, ſhall bee declared hereafter in his place, and let thoſe mares that ſhall be put to ſuch ſtallions bee of an highe ſtature, ſtronglie made, large and faire, and hauing a trotting pace, as the mares of Flanders, and ſome of our owne mares be: for it is not méete for diuers reſpects that Horſes of ſeruice ſhould amble. But if any man ſéeke to haue a race of fine ambling Horſes to trauell by the way, then I would wiſh his ſtallion either to bee a faire Jennet of Spaine, or at the leaſt a baſtarde Jennet, or elſe a faire Iriſhe ambling Hobbie, and the Mare to be alſo either a baſtard Jennet, breede héere within this realme, hauing an ambling pace, or elſe ſome other of our ambling mares, ſo that ſhe be faire and well proportioned. And if any man deſire to haue ſwift runners, let him chooſe a Horſe of Barbarie, or a Turke to be his ſtallion, and let the mares which he ſhall put vnto him, be like of ſtature and making vnto him ſo nighe as may be, for moſt commonlie ſuch ſire and Damme, ſuch Colt. And ſithe all Writers doe ſo muche praiſe the Horſe of Barbarie, not onelie for his ſwiftneſſe in running, but alſo for his hardneſſe, in that hee needeth ſmall attendance and kéeping, and will not ſurfet vpon euery little ſweate

or

or colde as ſome others do: he therefore that delighteth in Hunting and Hawking, hadde nede as mee thinkes, to chuſe this Horſe aboue all others to bee his ſtallion, to the intent hee may haue ſuch Coltes of him, as will be able to continue in ſuche extreame exercises, as to gallop the bucke, or followe a long winged Hawke. Either of which exercises, killeth yearelie in this realme many a good Gelding. But now to content the countrieman his deſire, which onlie ſéeketh to breed horſes for draught, or burthen, where ſhould I wiſh him to prouide himſelfe of mares and ſtallions better than here in England, whereas he may eaſſelie find a number of ſtrong Jades more meete for that purpoſe, than for the ſaddle, and al for lacke of good order of bréeding, which if it might be once obſerued in this realme, I beléeue there wold be ſo good and ſo faire horſes bred heere, as in any place in Chriſtendome. But as for the cart horſe, ſo that he be of great ſtature, déepe ribbed, ſide bellied, and haue ſtrong legs and good hoofes: and therwithall will ſtoop to his worke, & lay ſure hold on the ground with his feete, and ſtoutlie pull at a pinche, it maketh no matter howe fowle or euill fauoured he bee. Notwithſtanding, I haue knowne ſome carriers that goe with cartes, to be ſo exquiſite in their choiſe of horſes, as vnleſſe they had béene as comelie to the eie as good in their worke, they would not buie them, inſomuch as I haue ſéene ſometime drawing in their cartes better proportioned horſes, than I haue knowne to be finelie kept in ſtables, as iewels for the ſaddle. The horſe that is meete for the carte, may ſerue alſo for the burthen, becauſe he is ſtrong and able to beare muche, but the packeman deſireth beſides ſtrength, three other things in his Horſe. Firſt, that he be a good trauailer, ſecondly that his hoofes be ſo good as he néed not to be often ſhod, thirdlie, that he be no vnreaſonable féeder, for the auoiding of expenſes: for which cauſe I thinke our packemen here in England, do moſt commonlie go with Geldinges, which lacking the feruent heate that ſtoned horſes haue, cannot conſume ſo much meate as they doe, but chieflie perhaps bicauſe the Geldinges are more eaſie to rule by the waie than horſes. Thus hauing ſufficientlie talked of diuers kinds of horſes and mares, and which be meeteſt for this realme, aſwell in generall, as to ſerue diuers vſes in particular,

I will now shewe you how to chuse a Stallion or mare méet for brée'd.

How to chuse Stallions and Mares méte for generation and of what age they ought to be. Also how to know their ages alwell by their teeth, as otherwise. Chap. iiii.

SIth it is naturallie giuen to euerie beast for the most part to ingender with his like, aswel in conditions as in shape of bodie, it is verie requisit therefore for him that would haue a good race, to be very circumspect in chusing the first Stallions and Mares, from whom he would haue his race to descend, to the intent he may reape thereof both pleasure and profite, and not bestow his cost and labour in vaine. In chosing then a Stallion, thrée things (as me thinkes) are chiefliest to be considered: that is, his beautie, his goodnesse, and his age. And first as touching his beautie, it consisteth onlie in colour and shape, of which two thinges, because I haue alreadie according to Grisons opinion sufficientlie treated in the booke of the art of Riding, I shall not nede therefore nowe to trouble you with many words, but onlie to make as it were a briefe recitall of the same. Of all colours then these be the best, the browne Bay, the dapple Gray, the bright Bay, the Rone, the white Liard, the pure Black with a white starre in his forehead. And in any wise let the Stallion be all of one colour, and that very cleare and bright, and not pied or of diuers colours, albeit to haue some white or blacke marke in place conuenient, is very beautifull, as to haue a white starre in his forehead, or the outermost parts of his bodie black, as the tippes of his eares, his maine, or his taile, or else some of his féete to be white, according as his colour doth most properlie require, of which things we haue talked at large in the Booke of riding. Nowe as touching his shape it woulde be in this sort, let him haue a short and slender hed, a wide mouth & wide nostriles, slender lawes, great eies and blacke, bolting outwarde, and not hollowe inward, short eares & sharp pointed like a mouse, a neck rather long than short, great towards his breast, slender toward his head, the creast whereof woulde be rising in the middes, and therewith neither to thicke nor too thin, hauing a crispe maine,

and

and hanging naturallie on the right ſide, a brode breaſt, and full of apparant muſcles, or brawnes of fleſh, alſo broade ſhoulders, a large bulke and gant bellie, a ſtreight and ſharp pointed withers, a ſhort and plaine backe, great round buttockes, a long and buſhie taile, a yard and ſtones of mean aſſiſe, one ſtone not hanging ſider than another, but truſſed vp round together, large thighes, and long hanches behinde, ſtrong legs and great ioints, as well before as behind, ſhort paſternes, with long fewterlockes, alſo round, ſmooth, blacke, harde, hollow and ſounding hoones: and finallie, let his whole bodie togither, haue roundneſſe according to his length, and be in all points ſo well proportioned, as he may ſéeme both high of ſtature, ſtrong of limme, and alſo liuelie to the eie. Thus much of his ſhape, and now of his goodneſſe. His goodneſſe may be partlie naturall, and partlie artificiall, neither of which can be throughlie knowne but by his doinges. His naturall goodneſſe chieflie conſiſteth in his healthfulneſſe of bodie, in aboundance of good ſéede, in his ſtrength, agilitie, ſwiftneſſe, good diſpoſition, and aptneſſe to be taught: yea, and in his pace, galloping, running, bearing of his head and eares, all which thinges may be alſo much holpen by art. But to reine well, to beare his head ſteddilie, to be readie of turne, and light of ſtop, to handle his féete orderlie, to kéepe his ground, and to obeie his riders will at all aſſaies: proceedeth rather of Art than of Nature, which artificiall goodneſſe, whether he hath or not, the booke of riding doth plainelie teach you howe to iudge. Albeit for a Stallion which ſhould chieflie ſerue to couer mares, ſuch artificial goodneſſe is not ſo materiall as the naturall good thinges before mentioned, amongſt the which there is one chiefe point, and yet cannot perfectlie be knowne, vnleſſe you might ſée him to couer a mare, and that is to wéete, whether his ſéede be good or not, which at that time may verie well be knowne in this ſort. Take of it betwixt your thumbe and your finger, or in a locke of woll, and if in your féeling and towſing of the woll it ſeemeth to bee firme, fatt and ſlimie, it is good: but if it be ouer liquid or waterish, it is naught: and if the Horſe be ſlow in couering, or doth it not with a liuelie ſpirit & courage, or hath but one ſtone, or great warts growing on his ſtones, or haue naturally any white ſpeck

in

in anie of his eies, hee is not meete to bee a Stallion: for all the Coltes that he shall beget will haue the like defects. Wherfore so nigh as you can let your Stallion be without all faults. Now as touching the age of the Stallion, although most men in these our daies make no matter thereof, because he may get foles vntil he be xx. or xxx. yéeres old: yea and so long as he liueth, so that he be holpen: and therfore in most places of this Realme, they appoint no horses to that vse, but such as be verie olde, and therwith perhaps both lame & blind. Yet the men in the old time made a great matter therof, and allowed no stallion to be verie good but from v. yeares to xiiii. affirming that as one perfect thing doth bring forth another perfect; so that which is vnperfect bringeth forth his like. And as a horse is accounted vnperfect, vntill he be v. yéeres olde, for that his iointes before that time be not throughlie knit, neither is he growne to his full strength: so that at xiiii. yéers he beginneth againe to ware vnperfect, because that nature in him by that time is sore decaied, insomuch as decrepite age and death it selfe by nature, doeth then shortlie followe after. Albeit I will not denie, but that good kéeping and a strong complexion may cause one horse to continue in lust and courage much longer than another. For Albertus writeth that hee knew a souldiour, which serued in the field on a horse that was 70. yéeres old, and yet was accounted an able horse. Niphus also saieth, that the Emperor Ferdinandus the first, hadde in his stable a horse that was 70. yeares old. And I my selfe haue séene Stallions that haue been xx. yeeres old and aboue, that haue gotten verie faire colts to the eie. And yet I beléeue not like in perfection to those that the same stallion might haue gotten in his more lustie age: for the Colts of olde Stallions for the most part, be dull and slowe, and haue tender hoofes, and are more subiect to diseases and surfeites than others. Wherefore I woulde wishe all you that woulde haue a perfect race, not to admit anie horse to be your Stallion, that is, as I said before, vnder v. or much aboue xiiii. vnlesse he be verie lustie and strong, and therewith be verie haile of bodie and lim. And whilest I talke heere of the horses age, it is méete that I shewe you also how to know the same. Some séeke to knowe a horses age in this sort, they pull his skinne with their hands from

his

his fleſh, holding it ſo a prætie while togither and then let it goe againe, marking whether the ſkinne returneth immediatlie to his place or not, without leauing any ſigne or wrinkle where it was touched, for then they iudge the horſe to be yoong. But if the ſkin will not fall downe quicklie again of his owne accord, they take him to be old, and to lacke that naturall heate and warme blood which ſhould nourish his outwarde parts. But moſt men vſe to iudge a horſes age by his teeth, taking that to bee the moſte certaine waie of knowledge, ſpecially vntill he be full ſeuen yeares old and vpward: for euerie horſe when he is two yeares old, doth call his two former teeth, aſwell aboue as beneath: and euerie yeare after vntill he be ſix yeares olde, he faileth not to caſt other two in like maner. Then in the firſt yeare, thoſe which he firſt caſt be cloſed, but in the ſeuenth yeare all his teeth be fullie cloſed, ſo as the marke goeth cleane out, whereby a man ſhould iudge his age. Notwithſtanding, after the horſe beginneth to enter into old age his temples will wax hollow, and the haire of his browes hore and white, his teeth alſo will bee greater and thicker in ſubſtance, fowler in colour, and one ſtanding further out or higher than another, which they do not ſo long as the horſe is yoong, but ſtand euen and round togither. Thus much of the Stallion. Now let vs ſpeake ſomewhat of the Mare, which would be alſo good in her doings, beautifull and yoong. For as Abſirtus ſaith, the mare that ſhould be for breede would be of a comelie ſtature, and broad ſet, as wel behinde as before, and well knit togither, hauing a ſlender head and a large bodie, ſo as ſhee may be ſightlie to the eie, and not to be leſſe than three yeares olde, nor much more than ten. Notwithſtanding, ſome write that it maketh no matter though ſhe be couered and do conceiue immediatly after that ſhe be two yeares old and vpward, ſo that ſhe be full three yeares old at hir foling. For the female kinde in all beaſts, as they be colder of nature, ſo they come ſooner to their perfection than the Male kind, and likewiſe decaie ſooner: wherefore ſome hold opinion, that their foling after ten yéars of age is vnprofitable, affirming ſuch colts to be naturally dul and ſlowe, albeit I haue ſéene Mares of xx. yeare olde and aboue, that haue brought forth verie faire and lineie colts to the eie: yea Ariſtotle ſaieth that a Mare

may

may beare foles al hir life long. And alſo that ſhe doth liue longer than a Horſe, who as he ſaith, may liue vntill he be xxtiti. but the Mare may liue till ſhee be xl. Affirming hir to be inclined to the act of generation as much as any beaſt liuing. Notwithſtanding I would wiſh you to keepe for breed no Mare that is much aboue ten yeares, vnleſſe you haue good experience of hir coltes, and be well aſſured of hir continuance in courage and luſtineſſe. And in any wiſe let your breeding mares which you keepe for ſtudes, be made ſo tame and domeſticall as may be, ſo ſhall you not onlie eaſilie driue them and remoue them from place to place, but reap ſome commodity of their worke: which if it be moderate, it cannot hurt their teaming, whereas if they ſhould be wild, they would be derie combrous to keep, yea and manie times through their raſhneſſe deſtroy the foles in their bellies, neither can you bring them to the Horſe, nor take their foles from them, when you woulde weane them, without great trouble. At what age it is beſt to tame them, we ſhall ſhew you hereafter in his proper place.

At what time of the yeare it is beſt for Horſes and Mares to ingender, and in what ſort they ought to be put together. And how to know when a Mare deſireth the Horſe. Alſo how manie Mares one Stallion is able to couer in one yeare. Finally when the Stallions ſhould be remoued from them. Chap. v.

AFter that we haue taught you how to chuſe both Stallion & Mare meet for breed, it is requiſite that we ſhew you now in what time of the year it is beſt to put them together that they may ingender, & what order is to be obſerued therin. Moſt writers do affirme that the beſt time is the ſpring, or as *Palladius* ſaith, from the 22. of March, vntill the xvii. of June. Becauſe the mare going a full yeare, or at the leaſt 11. monethes and ten daies, ſhall by this meanes fole in ſuch time of the yeare as graſſe is moſt plentifull, whereby ſhe ſhall haue the more aboundance of milke to feed hir fole, and the aire ſhall be ſo temperate, as the fole ſhal neither be parched with the hot ſunne, nor pinched with cold weather. But forasmuch as our mares for the moſt part heere in Englande, goe not with fole aboue eleuen monethes, and alſo for that the coldneſſe of the countrie will not ſuffer

ſuffer the graſſe to ſpring and growe ſo ſone here as in Italie, or ſuch like hot countries, I would not wiſh the mares to be couered before the beginning of Maie, ſo ſhall the foles fall in Aprill, before which moneth there groweth but little graſſe. Againe, the mares of themſelues before Maie will haue but little luſte to the horſe, for fault of full bitts and warme weather, which ſhoulde ingender luſt. And yet as I ſaid before according to Ariſtotle, there is no kind of beaſt more inclined to that acte than the Horſe and mare, inſomuch as if they may not be ſuffered to ingender when luſt prouokes them, they wil run mad. It is eaſie to know when they luſt, by their inordinat running and ſinging here and there and that as ſome write, not toward the Eaſt or Weſt, but moſt commonlie toward the ſouth or North, ſetting the taile bolt vpright. Againe, one mare will woe another, and they will piſſe often. The time then of the yeare méete for generation being come, it is requiſit that theſe two beaſts be put togither, which you may do diuerſe maner of waies. The firſt and beſt waie, and ſpeciallie for him that hath manie mares and ſtallions, is to put euery one of his Stallions by himſelfe (being before reſted and well fed for the purpoſe) into a ſeuerall paſture full of graſſe, and well fenced with high pale or raile, as I ſaide before in the firſt chapter, in which paſtures woulde be either ſome good ſhade and ſhelter, to defend them from the ſunne and raine, or elſe ſome houſe or houell made of purpoſe, and ſo to let them run there from the beginning of Maie, vntil the middeſt of June, during which time, you may turne into euerie one of thoſe ſtallions ſo many mares as he is well able to couer, which abilitie is to bee meaſured by his youth, ſtrength, and luſtineſſe. For if he be yoong and luſtie, he may couer xx. or xl. mares very wel, and if he be old and féeble, he had néede to couer the fewer: for to couer many is a great féebliſhing to the horſe, albeit in Italie, to a young horſe they will not let to appoint xii. or xv. Mares. And Ariſtotle ſaith, that a horſe may couer xxx. mares in one yeare. Alſo Herodotus writeth, that the King of Babilon, hauing (beſides his Horſes of ſeruice) eight hundreth Stallions, did appoint euerie yeare vnto thoſe Stallions ſixtéene thouſande mares, ſo that euerie ſtallion had for his ſingle ſhare twenty mares. Yea and ſome let not to write, that in

Syria, there was ſometime a race of xxx. thouſand mares, to whom were appointed but three hundred Stallions: ſo that euery horſe had to couer an hundred mares. Whereby it ſeemeth, that horſes in time paſt haue beene of a farre ſtronger nature than they be now in theſe our daies. But in any wiſe, when ye let the ſtallion and the mares thus run togither, haue alwaies a good eie to the fence that it be ſtrong & ſure, for feare that none of your own ſtallions or ſtrange horſes breake in, to diſturbe any of them: for they will fight togither in ſuch time moſt cruelly. Neither is ther any beaſt more gelious of his mate, than the Horſe is of his wiues (if it be lawfull ſo to tearme them) inſomuch as hee will not ſuffer them to feede out of his ſight, nor to ſtray one from another, but will keepe them alwaies togither, and nigh vnto himſelfe, which running and keeping togither, breedes ſuch a mutuall loue betwixt them, as thereby they are on both ſides the more inclined to generation. And the mares by this meanes doe more naturallie, more ſpeedilie, and alſo more eaſilie conceiue, than if they ſhould be ſerued out of a ſtable: for there many times, often that be ſerued, fiue doe not take: of which kind of ſeruing, I will ſpeake in the next chapter following. Notwithſtanding, ſo ſoone as the mares haue all conceiued, which you ſhall know by ſuche meanes as ſhall be ſhewed you hereafter, I would wiſhe you to remoue the ſtallions from them, and not to ſuffer them to runne with the mares all the yeare as ſome doe, for that is not good, for two conſiderations. For firſt you ſhuld loſe the vſe of your horſe which being after couering time ſomewhat reſted, and well meated, may ſerue you in your other affaires: ſecondlie, it will bee very dangerous for the mares that bee with fole: for Ariſtotle ſaieth, there be three kindes of beaſts more letcherous than all others: that is to ſaie, the Mare, the Sowe, and the third I dare not name for feare of offending: for whereas all other beaſtes when they be with yong will abſtaine from the act of generation, theſe three kinds (as he ſaith) doe not refuſe it euen in that time. And though the mares doe refuſe it, as moſt commonlie they will, whatſoeuer Ariſtotle ſaith, yet the horſe perhaps when prouender pricketh him will force them, and perchance by ſtriuing with them, make them to caſt their foles: wherefore I can in no wiſe

wiſe conſent that they ſhould run all the yeare togither, but only vntill ſuch times as the mares haue conceiued. Thus much for great races, whereas bee many mares and ſtallions: for thoſe that kéepe but one ſtallion and a fewe mares, doe like better to haue their mares ſeuerallie serued one after another, then to run altogither with the ſtallion, affirming that by this meanes the Stallion ſhall not beat himſelfe ſo much, nor ſpende more ſeede vpon one mare then vpon another: and for this purpoſe a verie ſmall portion of ground might ſerue to kéep the ſtallion, ſo that it be a batling ground full of graſſe and well fenced with highe pale or raile, as ſome large Orchard or Pondyarde, nighe vnto the manſion houſe, of which kinde of groundes, as I haue ſéene diuers, ſo did I neuer ſée anie that pleaſed me better, than one which I ſawe in Darbie ſhire, in a towne nigh vnto Darby, called Marketon, whereas a verie honeſt Gentleman and a good houſeholder, named maiſter Pondate dwelleth, whoe kéepeth a good ſtrong ſtallion, and halfe a dozen faire mares, whoſe Colts doe proue verie well, whereof your Lordſhippe hath one called Markam, ſo named according to the name of his olde maiſter, maiſter Thomas Markam of Olerton, which horſe as he is indifferent wel proportioned, ſo was he once made by Abraham, maiſter Aſkets man, as readie a horſe in all points, as any was then about the Court. The peece of grounde which I liked ſo well at this Gentlemans houſe, was a Pond-yarde, enuironed rounde about with a high and ſtrong pale, and alſo with a verie thicke quickſet without the pale, the quantity of which ground, the ponds deducted, is ſcant three acres, but the qualitie and goodneſſe thereof is ſuch, as it doth not onlie kéepe his ſtallion all the Summer, that is to ſaie, from the midſt of Aprill vntill Hallontide (before which time he doth not take him in, vnles it be betwixt whiles to worke him, as in harueſt time, and ſo to put him forth againe) but alſo two milch kine, and xx. ſhéepe (as he ſaith) all the yeare long, beſides the feeding of his mares whiles they tarrie with the ſtallion to be couered, whereof euerie one comming ſeuerallie one after another, tarieth three daies with him at the leaſt, & then be turned into a parke which he hath hard by, the ground whereof is verie meet for that purpoſe: neither doth he beſtowe any pa-

uender on his Stallion, during the couering time: for to ſaie the truth, he is full fed with ſwift graſſe, as he hath no neede thereof. And in mine opinion there lacketh nothing, but ſome little houell or houſe to bee placed in ſome meete corner for the Stallion to ſhrowd himſelfe therein in the heate of the daie, and when it raineth: for the hot ſunne, or piercing raine, doeth greatlie feeblish a horſes backe. Thus much I thought good to write of this peece of ground, to the intent that euery man minding to haue a race, might incloſe a like peece of grounde in quantitie at the leaſt, though not altogither in qualitie, to keepe his ſtallion in the ſummer ſeaſon, the commoditie whereof in ſhort time will counteruaile the charges.

What order is to bee obſerued touching the couering of Mares, when the Stallions do not run with them in the paſtures, but are kept in the ſtable. And how the ſame Stallions ſhould be fed. Alſo at what time of the day the Mares ought then to bee couered, and finally how to know whether they haue conceiued or not. Cap. vi.

But if ye haue no ſuch ſeuerall ground as is both able to feed your ſtallion and Mares during the couering time, as alſo to keepe them from breaking out: then you may keepe your ſtallion ſtill in the ſtable & bring the mares thither to be couered, which is a more chargeable and troblous way of couering, than the other before mentioned. For firſt your ſtallion againſt that time muſt be well fed with ſweete hay & prouender: yea rather during the couering time with ſweet graſſe if it may be gotten, & his prouender as ſome write, would be either dried wheate, or dried peaſe mingled with wheate bran, or elſe fitches, which be much praiſed of all authors to be giuen in that time, and now and then hee muſt haue a good maſh made of water and wheat meale, and that ſhall be to make him luſty. Alſo he may not be laboured by the ſpace of ſix weekes or two months before, but ſuffered to reſt, and yet I meane not to reſt altogither without anie kinde of exerciſe, but rather to be ridden now and then moderatlie to get him a ſtomache to his meat. For as ouer much labor drieth vp his moiſtneſſe, and maketh his ſpirits and

power

power feeble: ſo ouermuch reſt and fatneſſe breedeth ſuperfluous humours, which on the other ſide will as much weaken him, by quenching his naturall heate, and cauſe his ſéede to be colde and moiſt, which ſeldome or neuer taketh, or if it take, it ingendreth rather females then males, but moderat exerciſe preſerueth his naturall heat, and ſweét nouriſhing foode increaſeth good bloud, and cauſeth his ſéed to be perfect, that is to ſaie, hot and moiſt, and in ſubſtance neither too much nor too little, too thick nor too thin, but in a mean, and that is beſt and will ſoneſt take. The leſſe he drinketh when he hath to couer any mare, the better: for if hee drinke ouermuch, it will put his winde in ieopardie. Moreouer, behind your ſtable, or elſe behinde ſome other houſe not farre from your ſtable, would be ſome prettie cloſe yarde or court made of purpoſe into the which your mare would be firſt brought, and that verie earlie in the morning when the Sunne riſeth, or elſe in the Euening at the ſunne going down. For thoſe two times are thought by the writers moſt méet for generation, and will doe the Horſe leſſe hurt than to couer in the heate of the date. Albeit Ariſtotle ſaith, that the mare for hir part is more deſirous to be couered about the midday, becauſe perhaps ſhe being the colder beaſt of the twaine, heate doth then moſt chéeſlie prouoke hir luſt. Well, the mare then being thus brought in, ye may cauſe your horſekéeper to bring forth your ſtallion, who if he hath béene well fed, and moderatelie exerciſed, as I ſaied before, ſo ſoon as he ſéeth and ſmelleth the mare, he will immediatlie fetch three or foure faults, and bound aloft with all foure for ioye, euen in your Horſekéepers hand, who muſt not be afraid, but rather readie to helpe the Horſe in his buſineſſe, ſo ſoone as he ſhall leape the mare, by putting his yard with his hand into the right place, whereby the mare ſhall be the more ſpéedilie, the more eaſilie, and alſo the more ſubſtantiallie ſerued, by meanes that the horſe ſhall ſpend no labour in vaine, nor waſte any part of his ſéede. And after that the mare hath béene couered once, let your Horſekéeper lead the ſtallion a little aſide, and walke him a while faire and ſoftlie behind ſome houſe or wall clean out of hir ſight to breath him. And when he is well breathed bring him in again, and let him couer the mare the ſecond time, and then lead him out againe, and ſo the thirde time

if ye will, continuing to do this euery euening and morning the ſpace of two or three daies vntill you thinke that she be ſped. Betwixt which times, ſée that your horſe be well rubbed and fed, and to the intent that the mare caſt not out the ſeede which she receiueth, it ſhall not be amiſſe in the ende of euery laſt couering, immediatlie to beſtow one pale of water on the reines of hir back, and to caſt another into her taile, and that ſhall make hir to hold. You ſhall know whether ſhee hath conceiued or not, as Abſirtus ſaith, beſt within ten daies next following. For if you offer the Horſe againe at ten daies end, and ſhe refuſeth, it is an euident ſigne of hir conception. Hir cote alſo (as Plinie ſaith) of what colour ſoeuer ſhe be, will ſhew more ful and bright to the eie, immediatlie after conception, than it did before.

How to make your mares to conceiue either horſe foles, or mare foles, and of what colour you liſt to haue your ſelfe. Chap. vii.

BVt now, whilſt we are about the couering of mares, me think it were not amis, to ſhew you what prætie meanes & ſleights, men in the old time vſed, to haue colts of ſuch kind & colour as they themſelues haue deſired. And firſt as touching the kind, Democritus affirmeth, that if ye tie the left ſtone of the Stallion with a threaden lace or point, or ſuche like thing, he ſhall beget a horſe fole, & if ye tie the right ſtone, he ſhall beget a mare fole. And this rule (as he ſaith) is general to al other beaſts. Affricanus alſo ſaith, that if you cauſe your horſe to leap ỳ mare when the wind bloweth in the North, he ſhall beget a horſe fole, & if in the ſouth, a mare fole. Againe ſome write, that if the mare be couered the third day before the full moon, ſhe ſhal bring forth a horſe fole, and if the third day after the full moone, a mare fole. And I take this to be a very good rule, and ſeldome to faile, and ſpeciallie if the mare at that time haue latelie foled. Againe, ſome hold opinion, that if the mare be couered within fiue or ſixe daies after her foling, and in the ſpring of the moone, that ſhe ſhal bring forth a horſe fole, and the rather if the horſe bes ſuffered to ſmell hir, & to ſtand in hir ſight ſomewhat before he couer hir, which order, M. Garret lieutenant of the Gentlemen Penſioners, doth diligent-

diligentlie obſerue, when he cauſeth his mares to be couered, who affirmeth, that in obſeruing this rule, hee neuer failed to haue a horſe colt at his pleaſure, who I aſſure you is no leſſe expert in breeding, then ſkilfull in riding, and therewith ſo deſirous to haue good horſes, as he letteth not to hire a great deale of ground, paieng by the yeare fortie pence for the acre, to ſeede his Mares and Colts, in which his doing methinkes he deſerues much to be commended. But to know what kind the mare hath conceiued, the authors write, that if the horſe after hee hath couered the mare come downe from hir back on the right ſide, it is a ſigne that ſhe is conceiued with a horſe fole, and if on the left ſide, with a mare fole. Now as touching the colour, they write that if the Stallion be clad with a couering of ſuch colour as you deſire the fole to be, at ſuch time as he doth couer the mare, you ſhal haue your deſire. Some again write, that it is better to die or ſtain the haire of the Stallion with ſuch colour as you like beſt, and then to make him to continue in the mares ſight whiles hee burneth in luſt, before he leape hir, to the intent (as I take it) that the impreſſion may be the more feruent. And as this saieng is grounded of a good naturall reaſon, ſo it may be proued by a moſt true and vnfeined example recited in the Bible, in the 30. of Geneſis. Whereas you may read how Iacob, after that Laban his maiſter and father in lawe, had giuen him in recompence of his ſeruice all the blacke lambs and ſpeckled kids, that ſhould come of the ewes and gotes which he kept, by putting ſtraked rods in the ſight and face of the ewes, when they went to ram, & of the ſhe goates when they went to buck, made all the offpring of Labans flocke to be blacke and ſpotted: whereby in ſhort ſpace he became as riche in cattell, as Laban his father in law. For truely at the time of conception, all the powers of the beaſt are ſo open, and the matter it ſelfe ſo tender, as it is apt to receiue euerie light impreſſion.

Whether Mares ſhould be forced to abide the horſe, though they haue no luſt or not, and how to make both horſe and mare hauing no luſt, to haue a luſt to ingender. Alſo how to abate their luſt if need require. Chap. viii.

IF the Mare will not ſuffer the horſe to leape hir, ſome haue vſed (as both Varro and Plinie writeth) to force hir thereunto,

whether ſhe will or not, by tieng her to a poſt ſet vp in the midſt of ſuch a cloſe yard or court as is talked of before, which thing is vſed euen at this preſent date at Tutburie, whereas the Queens Mateſtie hath a race And though I knowe that ſome of them do conceiue and proſper well inough after it, yet I cannot praiſe it, becauſe it is both dangerous, and alſo vnnaturall: for the act of generation ought to be with pleaſure and not with pain, neither doth that which is painfullie conceiued, thriue for the moſt part ſo well as that which is conceiued with pleaſure. Wherefore I woulde wiſh all men rather to followe Camerarius aduiſe, which is not to force her: but to make her firſt to deſire the horſe, by putting a little ſtoned nag vnto her, to woo hir foure or fiue daies before you would haue her couered, which nag would be ſo fettered, as he may not couer her, although ſhe would perchance incline vnto him: which when you perceiue ſhe doth, remoue the nag from hir, & put the Stallion vnto hir: ſo ſhall ſhe ſtand ſtill of hir own accord, and receiue the Stallion the more willinglie. But the redieſt meanes to make a mare deſire the horſe, is (as Columella ſaith) to annoint the matrix with the iuice of a certain herbe called of him Scilla, and of Palladius, Squilla, which ſome of our Phyſicians do call a ſea Onion, becauſe it groweth as wel in the ſea, as on the land, and hath a head or rote like an Onion. It is verie good alſo to rubbe her matrix with Nettles, which as Ruſsius ſaith, will not onelie cauſe the mare to ſuffer the horſe to leape her, but alſo to ingender with him. Which otherwiſe manie times perhaps ſhe cannot doe for want of naturall heate in hir matrix. Againe, Anatolius ſaith, that to anoint her matrix with hens dung and Turpentine mingled togither, will marueilouſlie prouoke hir luſt. But if you ſée that your horſe hath no luſt to ingender, then make as though you would driue away the mare from him, and that will make him more deſirous of hir. It is good alſo to wipe the matrix of that mare which deſireth the Horſe with a ſponge, & to put that to the Stallions noſe, the ſauor whereof will prouoke his courage. Alſo the peſill of a ſtag being burned and made into fine powder, and put into ſtrong wine, will prouoke his courage, if his yard and ſtones be waſhed therwith. But I haue bin taught by men of experience, that if a good quantitie

titie of the powder afore ſaid, togither with theſe powders following, that is of Anniſeeds, of a rote called Satirion, and of Baſil, of each like quantitie, be giuen the horſe to drinke in a warme maſhe made of water and wheaten meale, the night before you would haue him to couer anie mare: it will not onelie prouoke his courage, but alſo make his ſeed of ſuch force, as it will holde & not quaile. And the leſſe that either Horſe or mare drinketh whileſt they attend to generation, the better it ſhall be for them: for ouermuch drinke will not onelie make the ſeede thin and waterie, and ſo as it ſhal not hold, but alſo as I ſaid before, make the Horſe purſie: yea and put his wind in ieopardie. But if you ſée, that after the time of couering, the ſtallion continueth ſtil too full of luſt and courage, then it ſhall be good to anoint his ſtones with a little ſalet oile, and that will abate his courage, and the ſoner if you ſtéepe a little lettice in the oile ſomewhat before. The ſame medicine alſo will abate a mares courage, if her matrix bee annointed therewith. And ſome write, that the cutting of her main doth abate her courage. Theſe medicines perhaps will offend the delicate eares of ſome perſons that are more niſe than wiſe. But I truſt the diſcreet man will not be offended to heare them: but rather learne diſcrétlie to vſe them as néede ſhall require. For I aſſure you they were no foles that wrote them, but learned, wiſe, and men of great experience.

Which Mares ſhould be couered euery yeare, and which not. And how to doe, that thoſe Mares that you would haue to beare euery yeare, ſhall not go barren. Cap. ix.

PAlladius and Columella would haue thoſe mares that be very beautifull and faire, and therewith haue not onlie beene wel horſed, but alſo haue horſe foles ſucking on them not to be couered euery year, but euery ſecond yeare, or rather third yéere, to the intent that their Foles may ſuck the longer time, & alſo be fed with the more pure milk. And as for al other mares, they would haue them to beare euery yéere, and to be couered againe ſo ſone as their foles are v. or vi. daies old, ſo that they be in good luſt, and not too poore. And to the

intent, that none ſuch ſhould go barren, it ſhall be neceſſary not onlie to inforce them, by ſuch wates as haue bẽn ſhewed you before, to the Horſe in the ſpring time, but alſo about Lammas or in the beginning of Auguſt, and to ſuffer a Stallion to run with them three weekes or a moneth, to the intent that if any of them chanceth not to conceiue at the firſt couering, they may now be ſerued. But be ſure that ſome one of the mares be ready to be couered, when you turne the Stallion into them, leaſt perhaps he beat aſwel thoſe that be with fole as the others, & ſo do more harm than good. And by vſing this order you ſhall bee ſure to kéepe no mare barren all the yeare, vnleſſe the mare be barren by meanes of ſome ſickneſſe. Wherof I ſhall treate hereafter when I come to the diſeaſes of horſes, & there ſhew you how to cure the ſame.

How Mares ſhould be vſed after they haue conceiued and are with fole, and what cauſeth them to caſt their foles before their time. Chap. x.

After that your mares haue conceiued, you muſte beware you labour them not ouermuch, and ſpecially that they beare no heauie burdens, for feare of killing their foles in their bellies. Alſo you muſt ſée that whiles ſummer laſteth they go in a good paſture, not hauing ouer rank gras but ſhort and ſweet, and that they lack no good water. And in winter when the graſſe faileth, that they be fed with ſweet hay, & that they lie drie and warme in ſome buſhie cloſe, woode or groue, or elſe vnder ſome houell, but ſo as they be not ſcanted of rome, nor thronged vp together: for that is dangerous, & may cauſe aborſement, that is to ſay, to caſt their foles before their time. Anatolius alſo ſaith, that the change of ſtrange paſture or water, will cauſe aborſement. Againe, Ruſius ſaith, that if they chance to eat the maſt of Cerre trees, they ſhall be in danger of aborſement. Or if any of them be couered with an aſſe after that ſhe hath conceiued by a Horſe, or chance to treade vpon a Wolfe, or where a Wolfe hath troden, it will cauſe her to caſt her fole. Alſo all ſtinking ſauours, as the ſnuffing of candles, or Torches, or ſuch like, will cauſe aborſement, as ſome authors write, aſwell in mares, as in women. Wherefore all ſuch things would be foreſéen, and in any

caſe

caſe kéepe your mares whileſt they go with fole, neither too leane nor yet too fat, but in good plight: for if they be too lean, they will either caſt their foles, or elſe bring forth ſtaruelings. Againe, if they be too fat, euerie place of their bodies will be ſo filled, as the foles within their bellies cannot haue rome ſufficient to grow and to proſper: by meanes whereof, either the foles ſhall be but litle ones, or elſe the mares themſelues ſhall be in great danger, at the time of their foling, by reaſon that their condits be ouer much ſtraight ned with fat. And therefore the Scythians, which is a people of the North, vſed (as Ariſtotle writeth) moderatly to iournie, & to trauell their mares after they were quickned, to the intent that they might haue the eaſier foling. For truely, moderate labour and exerciſe at that time, muſt néeds do them much good. But to trauell them immediatlie vppon conception, or when they bee verie great and ready to fole, is dangerous. For the fruit of the wombe in all beaſts, may well be compared to the fruit of the apple trée, which at the firſt blolſoming, and alſo when it is through ripe, and mellow, will be blowne downe with euerie light winde, but in the middle time betwixt both, it cleaueth ſo faſt vnto the branches of the trée, as it will ſcant be throwne downe with cudgels.

How to helpe a Mare that is in danger at the time of hir foling, and how you ſhall cauſe hir to expell hir ſecundine or cleane. Chap. xi.

But if it ſo happen, that a mare by any miſchance, bee in danger at the time of hir foling, then it is néedfull to helpe her, cauſing one to hold her noſtrilles in a gentle maner, cloſe in his hand, and ſo to ſtop her breath, and it ſhall make hir to fole with more eaſe, and alſo the ſooner, which is not very painefull for anie man to doe, forſomuche as the mare foleth ſtanding, whereby he ſhall not néede greatlie to ſtoupe. Againe, if the ſecundine, which is the ſkinne wherein the Fole is wrapped, doeth not come all out naturallie of the owne accorde, then vſe this remedie. Take a good handfull or two of Fenell and boile it in water, then take halfe a pint of that, and another halfe pint of olde wine, and put thereunto a fourth part of oile, and mingle them altogither ouer the fire, and being but luke warme, powre it into

the mares noſtrils, and hold hir noſtrils cloſe with your hande, to keepe it in a pretie while after. And that ſhall force the ſecundine to come forth which for the moſt part, both ſhe and all other beaſts doe immediatlie eate and ſwallowe vp againe into their bellies. Which thing the plaine folkes of the countery (if they can preuent it) will not ſuffer their milche kine to doe in their time of caluing, saieng: that it will make them ſicke and vnluſtie. And truely I beléeue it doeth the mares no great good. Some authors writs, that when the Mare doeth eat vppe hir ſecundine or cleane, for ſo the plaine folkes terme it, ſhe ſnappeth away alſo with hir teeth, a certaine péece of fleſh growing like a figge vpon the foles forehead, called of the Greeks and Latines, Hippomanes. Of the vertue whereof in matters of loue, many monſterous tales by manie learned Authors are recited. Whereof I thinke it not good to make the vnlearned partners: and therefore I leaue to ſpeak of it any further.

How to make a Mare to caſt hir fole that is not worthy to be bred, or for ſome other needfull cauſe. Chap. xii.

IF a faire mare in old time had bin couered with a foul rotle, or had bin with fole out of ſeaſon, or at ſuch time perhaps as ſhe muſt run for ſome great wager, then they would vſe means to make hir caſt her fole before hir time, and that was done either by force of hand, or by medicin. For if the fole were ſo far growne that it had haire, they woulde cauſe one to thruſt his hande into the mares wombe, and to take the fole by the hed and to cruſh it in péeces. And if it had no haire, then they would deſtroy it with medicines not néedefull here to be written. Notwithſtanding, in mine opinion the ſureſt way (if greater cauſe do not otherwiſe require) were to tary till ſhe hath foled of hir owne kind, and then to kil the fole.

How mares ſhould be vſed after they haue foled. Alſo how long the foles ſhould ſucke, and how they ought to be vſed during their foleage, alſo how to harden their hoofes. Chap. xiii.

IT is néedfull immediatlie after the mares haue foled, or rather a weéke or a fortnight before they bee readie to foale, to

to put them into the warmeſt, ſweeteſt, and rankeſt paſture that you haue, to the intent they lieng warme and drie, and faring well, may haue plentie of milke to feede their foles. For nothing doth hinder the growth of the foles more than colde and penurie. Moreouer Anatolius ſaith, that it is very neceſſarie about two or three moneths after their foling, to chaſe them about the ground to and fro, or otherwiſe to exerciſe them with ſome moderate labour, to make their milk come down into their dugs. And to the intent that the foles may be faire and fat, al the writers with one conſent would haue them to ſuck two yéers, and ſpecially, if they be horſe foles: yea, ſome would haue them to ſucke till they offer to couer their Dammes, and leſſe than one year, though they be mare foles, none that euer I could heare or read of doth allowe. And yet here in England they will ſcant ſuffer them to ſucke ſire moneths, but will weane them before they be ful halfe a year old, which truely I cannot commend: for though many of them doe proue to be great of bone and tall of ſtature, yet the pith within is not firm or ſound, neither can they be ſo ſtrong, ſo healthful, or liue ſo long as thoſe moſt commonly do, which ſuck a long time. For that ſweet and moſt naturall moiſture and nutriment, wherof they be depriued in their youth, wil neuer be gotten againe ſo long as they liue. Wherfore I wiſh thoſe that ſéek to haue ſtrong and healthfull Colts, to let them ſucke one yeare at the leaſt. In old time, as it appeareth by Varro and Columella, they vſed for warmth ſake to houſe both mares & foles, vntil their foles were ten daies olde, and then to put them forth into the paſture. And when the foles are fiue moneths olde, they vſed now and then to bring them into the houſe, and there wold giue them ground barlie mingled with wheate bran, and ſuch other ſoft kinde of fode. And being a yeare old, they would giue them firmer prouender, as dried Barlie and bran, continuing ſo to doe, vntill they were two yeares olde. All which time the coltes alſo ſucked, and chiefly they did it to make them domeſticall and familiar, and partlie to make them fat and luſtie, and partlie again to acquaint them with all kind of meates, but therewith they would touch them or handle them ſo little as was poſſible, for feare of hindering their growth. And among the reſt of their diligent cares, in bringing

vp this necessarie beast, they had a speciall regard to his hoofes, that they might be tough, firme & hard, and therefore whensoeuer they stood in the house, they would suffer no dung to remain any while by them, for feare of burning their hoofes. And if they sawe they were any thing inclined to haue tender hoofes, they woulde make an ointment of the eares of Garlike, of Swines grease, Goates grease & brimstone, that had not bin tried in the fire, and so annoint their hooues therwith, both without and within, which ointment did make their hoofes very tough and hard, and to that intent they would strowe stones vnder their feete, whereas they stode. Moreouer, when they fed abroad in the pasture, they would driue them vp to the highest and most stonie groundes, which as Rusius saith, doth not onelie harden their hoofes, but also make them to haue strong legs, and to tread surely vpon the grounde. But as touching the hardening of hooues, wee shall talke more thereof, when we come to treat of the diseases of horses.

How to know of what stature, making, and disposition the foles when they are new foled will be, when they come to age. Chap. xiiii.

THe foles that haue verie long legs, euen from their birth, doe proue most commonlie to be tall of stature, for the legs of al foure footed beasts, be almost so long at the first day of their birth, as they wil be euer after. Again, those wil be both strongly and finely made, which in their very youth haue great bodies, and wel knit together, little heads, black eies, short and sharp eares, broade nostrils, wide mouthes, broad necks with good thick creastes, broad breasts, plaine backs, gant bellies, brawnie thighs, nimble knees that wil easilie bowe in their going, strong legs, short pasterns, round, hard, & hollow hoofes, so as they may sound againe when they treade vppon the grounde, and the harder and the fuller they treade vppon the ground, the better hoofes they seeme to haue. Now the signes of their disposition and courage, as Varro saith, be these, to be liuelie and stirring, not to be afraid of euery noise or sight, to run wantonlie before their fellowes, and to striue to be formost, also to offer to leape ouer euery hedge and dike, or to goe ouer a bridge, or

to

to paſſe the water: againe, if they will be quickly ſtirred & therewith ſoone pacified, it is a ſigne that they will be tractable, and eaſie to be broken in time to come.

Of the growth aſwell of Mare colts, as Horſe colts, and how to know which will continue in goodneſſe, and liue longeſt. Chap. xv.

I think it good here alſo to let you vnderſtand the opinions of the writers touching the groth aſwel of mare foles as horſe foles: for although Horſe foles be faſhioned in their dams bellies ſoner than the mare foles, yet the mare foles beeing once foled, arriue to their full growth of heigth and length in fiue yeares, whereas the horſe foles be not at their full growth of heigth and length, before they bee full fiue yéeres olde, from which time forth as Ariſtotle ſaith, till they bee ten yeares olde they grow onlie in largeneſſe and thicknes. And Abſirtus ſaith, that thoſe which haue white or balde faces, doe not ware old ſo ſoone as others. Againe, the ſame Author ſaieth, that thoſe colts which haue tender hoofes, doe not continue in their vigor and ſtrength, aboue eight yeares after that they are at their full growth of heigth and length, neither are they meet any more to be iournied: bicauſe the crowns of their hoofes will fall downe ſo lowe, as they ſhall ſcant be able to ſtand on their feete. But if they haue good hoofes, then they will continue in their vigor ten yéeres after their full growth and aboue. Moreouer, the ſaid Author ſaith, thoſe Horſes which haue from their youth vpward hard hoofes wil liue vntill they be eight and twentie, or nine and twentie yeares old, but they ſeldome arriue to thirtie: but thoſe that haue ſoft hoofes do not liue aboue foure and twentie years. But as touching the liues of horſes we haue talked alreadie ſufficientlie before in the fourth chapter.

When and how Colts ſhould be weamed from their Dammes, And how they ſhould be ſeuered according to their kinds and ages. Chap. xvi.

When your colts haue ſucked 11. yeares or one yeare at the leaſt, and ſpeciallie if they be horſe colts (for mare colts may ſucke a leſſer time, according as you your ſelfe ſhall thinke it good to haue your mares couered

againe the next yéere following or not) then about Shrouetide it is good (as ſome men write) three daies before the ful of the moone to take them earlie in the morning from their Dammes, and to ſhut them vp all that daie and all that night without meate, in a houſe appointed for that purpoſe, and ſtanding cleane out of their Dammes hearing. The next daie in the morning to put them againe to their dammes, and to let them ſucke their bellies full: yea euen vntill they ſwel againe, that done, take them awaie for a ful day, and to kéep them in the aforeſaid houſe the ſpace of fourtéene daies, nigh vnto which houſe would bee ſome prétie ſweete paſture reſerued of purpoſe to the intent that from the end of the fourtéene daies, vntil the moneth of May (before which time there is little graſſe growing) the Coltes may féed and alſo play themſelues therein euerie faire daie. But when May is once come, then put them forth into ſome good paſture, whereas they may haue plentie of ſhort and ſwéet graſſe: for ouer ranke graſſe will hurt their reines, and make them thicke necked, and in any caſe ſée that therewith they lie warme and drie, and lacke no water, for if weinlings ſuffer either hunger, thirſt, or colde, and ſpecially in the firſt yeare when they mourne for their dammes, they will neuer prooue to be good, but will be ſmall of ſtature, of ſmall ſtrength and ful of diſeaſes. But after that the colts be two years old and vpward, and haue cleane forgotten their dames, I would wiſh them to runne in a large, hard, and hungry grounde, but ſo as with their trauelling and taking paines for their liuing, they may fil them full once in the daie at the leaſt, for feare of hindering their growth. Your colts being thus weaned and kept, ſhal prooue to be light, nimble, harde and ſtrong horſes, and to haue ſtrong legges and harde hoofes, and not to ſurfet of euerie little colde, as thoſe doe which be fedde in Summer ſeaſon with ranke graſſe, and lie colde and wet in Winter. Moreouer, to the intent there may be no diſorder amongeſt your coltes: ſée that ye ſeuer them according to their kindes and ages, that is to ſaie: to put horſe foles by themſelues in one paſture, and mare foles by themſelues in another paſture. Againe, put yearlinges, two yearelings, and thrée yearlings, euery age by it ſelfe ſeuerallie, ſo ſhall not the greater wrong the leſſer: for among equals is altogither

loue

loue and fellowſhip without any diſcord. Wherefore you ſée that partitions as I ſaid in the beginning of this booke, are ſo néedful in that ground which ſhould be appointed for bréeding of horſes, as nothing more.

Of the gelding of Colts, and for what cauſe they be gelt, and alſo at what age, and in what time of the yeare they ought to be gelt. Chap. xvii.

THe coltes that do naturally amble, or may eaſilie be brought to it, either by trauerſe, or elſe by hande without trauerſe (which in mine opinion is the better way) moſt men in this realm do more delight to haue them gelt than ſtoned, for they loue not only to ride eaſilie by the way, but alſo very faſt, and therewith to haue their horſes ſo quiet, as they may be eaſilie gouerned, which thinges are not commonlie ſæn in ſtoned horſes: for their abundant heat will not ſuffer them to be ſo quiet, nor yet to labour ſo far in a day as Geldings may, becauſe the Gelding lacking his ſtones hath no ſuch hot bloud in his bodie as he had before he loſt them. Yea to be gelt (as ſome Authors write) is ſuch a coler, as it tameth both man and beaſt, in their greateſt madneſſe, and cleane healeth them of that diſeaſe, when nothing elſe will. Moreouer, Geldinges do not neigh ſo often nor ſo lowde as ſtoned horſes doe. For the which cauſe, the Sarmatians in all their ſecret enterpriſes and exploits, do vſe to ſerue vpon Geldinges, and not vpon ſtoned horſes. And alſo our light horſemen here in England doe in like maner ſerue vpon Geldinges in the warres, and for that cauſe they doe not onelie geld ambling coltes, but alſo trotting coltes, which they think partelie méete for that purpoſe, and partlie for their ſeruantes to ride on, and to carrie their males and clokebagges after them. Of both which ſortes of Geldinges, I beléeue this realme hath ſo faire and ſo manie, as any one countrey in all Chriſtendome. Wherefore I thinke it good here to ſhew you the age, and at what time of the yeare and Moone it is beſt to gelde ſuch coltes. And firſt as touching the age, it is beſt doing when the colt is almoſt two yeares olde, for to gelde him yonger will hinder his groath verie muche. Againe, if he be much elder, his necke will ware

great, and the ſtrings of the ſtones will be ſo hard and ſtrong, as they will not be broken, but muſt needs be cut, which as Ruſsius ſaith, is very dangerous. Albeit our gelders here in Englande be ſo cunning and expert in that facultie, as they make no matter thereof, for they will cut both olde and yong, at what age ſoeuer they be, and warrant them to doe well enough. And ſome I aſſure you doe euill enough, and ſpecialtie if the meteſt time for that purpoſe, as well of the yeare, as of the Moone bee not dulie obſerued. Wherefore I woulde wiſhe you to ſuffer none of the gelders to take your colts in hande, vnleſſe it be in the ſpring, as in Maie, or in the beginning of June, or elſe about the fall of the leafe, as alſo when the moone is in the wane. For thoſe two ſeaſons are moſt temperate, that is to ſaie, neither too hot nor too colde, the exceſſe of either of which qualities, is very noiſome to thoſe that be newlie gelt, and cauſeth manie to peake out of the way. And therefore after that they be gelt, you muſt ſee that they go in a warme paſture, and that they be not ouermuch chaſed too and fro or otherwiſe diſquieted, but moderatelie exerciſed vntil they be perfealie whole.

At what age, and in what time of the yeare it is beſt taking vp of colts to breake them, and how they ought at the firſt haltering to be vſed and tamed. Chap. xviii.

They vſe in moſt parts to take vppe their colts when they are but two yeares and the vantage, or 3. years old at the moſt, wherby their ioints not being knit, if they be not the more diſcreetly vſed, their backs may be ſone ſwaied or pinched, and beſides that, their legs will grow full of ſplents and wingalles, and become crooked and lame, before they be halfe old. Wherefore I wiſh that according to Frederico the Emperours order, no horſe colt might be taken vp to be broken before that he were foure yeares old and the vantage, and that would be done in ſome colde ſeaſon of the yeare, when they may beſt endure to trauell, as about October, to the intent that after they haue béene broken in Winter ſeaſon, when extreame heat cannot annoy them, by driuing them into faint ſweats, they

may

may be ſuffered when ſpring time comes, and plentie of graſſe is vpon the ground, to reſt in the ſtable certaine dates, whileſt they be ſcoured and fatted with graſſe, and ſo to get vp their fleſh that they loſte whileſt they were in breaking: of which ſcouring and fatting, we ſhall treate hereafter more at large, when we come to ſpeak of the dieting of horſes, for the preſeruing of their health. In ſome places, as at Tuberie, the Coltes are ſo wilde, as after they be driuen into a houſe, or ſtrong pownde, they are faine to be ſnared with a ſnare made of a ſtrong halter running through a ring of iron, and put vpon a long poale, and ſo caſt about that Coltes necke which ſhould bee taken vp, and ſtrained ſo harde, as it may ſtrangle him for the time, before they can faſten anie halter or collar vppon his head, which wildneſſe partlie perhaps commeth, for that the ground is waſte and wild for lacke of partitions, as I ſaide before in the firſt Chapter: but chiefly for that they be neuer houſed, handled, nor made familiar with man in their youth, which is verie néedefull, and was not omitted by the men of old time, as I ſhewed you before in the thirteenth Chapter, and for lacke thereof many a good Colt at his firſt taking vp through his owne ſtriuing is vtterlie marred, and maimed for euer. Wherefore I wiſhe them to be made domeſticall in their youth, in ſuche ſort as is in the chapter before declared, ſo ſhall they not néede to bee forced by any ſuch extreamitie when they ſhould be taken vp: and the firſt collar or halter that you put on a Colts head, would be made (as Ruſius ſaith) of woollen yarne, or elſe of Horſe haire, and that verie groſſe and broade brayded, to the intent it may not cut his head when hee ſtriueth withall. Moreouer, vnto that halter would be faſtned two ſtrong reines, on each ſide one, that the Coltes head may bee faſt tied vnto the manger on both ſides, whereby hee ſhall not reare nor hurt his legges. And vntill he be ſomewhat gentle and tame, it ſhall bee néedfull alſo to ſet another colte by him that is alreadie tamed, that his kéeper may haue the ſafer acceſſe vnto him, whoe muſt vſe all gentle meanes poſſible to win him, & ſhew him no maner of crueltie, vſing often to ſtroke his backe and necke with his hand, whereunto he ſhall bring him the ſooner, if he let him eate no meate, but that which he ſhall be content gentlie to receiue at

his hande. But if the colt be ſo wilde and ſolen as he will not bee won by this kind of gentle handling, then the beſt remedie is, to kéepe him from ſléepe, hauing a candle burning all night in the ſtable, and to ouerwatch him, as they do which are wont to tame wild hawks. For hunger & watching wil tame the wildeſt beaſt that is. And for 3. or 4. daies after he is thus tamed let him not go out to drink, but make him to drink in the ſtable, and when he will ſuffer to be touched, then ſtroke all the other parts of his bodie, and ſpecially his legs, to the intent he may ſuffer to be curried, and that his keeper may lift vp his féet, and knocke him firſte faire and ſoftlie with a ſtone vpon his hoofes, and then harder and harder, whereunto if he be often vſed, it ſhal make him very eaſy to be ſhod, and alſo when his kéeper leadeth him to water, let that tamed colt which ſtandeth with him, alwaies accompany him, going ſomewhat before him, to the intent that the other may follow and ſo learn to be led in hand, which once had, then bring him with faire meanes to ſuffer the Cauetſane or muſroll to be put on his head, and to be ſadled and girded, & vſe to leade him to water being ſo ſadled, to the intent it may not ſéeme ſtrange vnto him, neither within the houſe nor abroad. And when he is brought to this tameneſſe, then it ſhall be good to put a paire of ſoft paſterns on his foreféet, and alſo (as Ruſsius ſaieth) to tie one of his hinder féet with a woollen cord, ſo as he cannot much ſtirre any way, and that ſhall preſerue his legges (as he ſaith.) Nigh vnto which no dung muſt be ſuffered to lie, for feare of burning his hoofes, but ſée that he ſtand cleane, warme and dry, & that he be wel meated, often curried, and cloathed. And in any caſe let no ſhrewde boies or vnrulie perſons come into the ſtable, to tickle or toy with him, or otherwiſe to fray him: for if he chance to get any euil propertie at the firſt, it will be verie hard euer after to bring him from it. And after that he is brought to ſuch paſſe, as he will ſuffer to be handled, haltered, ſadled, ſhod, and alſo to be led where a man will, then lette him be ridden, broken, and ſchooled, according to Griſons preceptes, declared vnto you in my Booke entituled the Art of Riding. But now as touching the mare colts, it were beſt to take them vp when they are two yeares olde, and the vantage, to the intent that they may bee handled and broken, either

by

by working them, or elſe by riding them moderatelie, but rather by working them vntill they be three yeares old, at which age, as I haue ſaid before, they are moſt meet to be couered, & being made tame before, you ſhall haue the leſſe trouble with them, at ſuche time as you would haue them to be couered.

How and at what age a Colts mouth ſhould be cut, or certaine of his teeth drawne, when the bit for fault thereof cannot haue his true reſting place. Chap. xix.

OUr common breakers of Horſes, when they chance vpon a colt that hath ſo narrowe a mouth, as it is not able to receiue a bit high inough, they vſe to cut his mouth wider, in riding him with a very ſharp ſquare brake made of purpoſe, which is not good, for it maketh him euer after either to haue too tender or too hard a mouth, & for the moſt part, rather too hard than too tender, by meanes of the hard and cornie fleſh which afterwardes groweth on both ſides of his mouth, where he was ſo raggedly torne, cut and galled. Wherfore it were much better to cauſe an expert horſeleach to ſlit his mouth equallie on both ſides with a ſharpe knife or raſour ſo high as ſhall bee needfull, and then to ſeare it with a hot iron, and to heale it in ſuch ſort as the ſides therof may grow no more togither, but appeare to be a naturall mouth, and of that wideneſs euen from the colts birth: and before his mouth be perfectlie whole, I woulde wiſhe him not to be ridden with any maner of bit at all, but only with a bed ſtrain or muſroll. Yea in mine opinion it were ſo much the better, if his mouth were cut and healed vp again before he were taken vp to be broken, for the ſoner it is don the leſſer it ſhall be ſéene, ſo that it be not done while he ſucketh, for then perhaps the ſorenеſſe of his mouth woulde let his ſucking, and ſo hinder his growth. Now touching the drawing of certaine téeth which may alſo be a great impediment that the bit cannot haue his true reſting place, you ſhall heare the very words of Laurentius Ruſsius writing in this ſort. Becauſe it is very hard: yea, & almoſt vnpoſſible (ſaith he) that a horſe can haue a perfect good mouth, vnleſſe the two tuſhes, and alſo other two called of him the plain téeth, and of vs the cheek téeth or wang téeth, be cleane pulled out (for after

that a horse is throughlie warmed, if he hath the said téeth, his rider shall hardlie holde him) it is very requisite therefore that the foresaide foure téeth, that is to saie, on each side of his nether iaw two, after that the horse is thrée yeares and a halfe olde, be cleane drawne out by an expert hand with instrumentes méete for that purpose, so as his iawe may not be hurt, and so soone as they bee out, let the sore gumme be rubbed well with salt, somewhat brated or broken before, that done, sée that his mouth be not touched for thrée dates after, loke also that the stable where hee standeth bee close shut, so as the winde may not annoy him, and vntill he bee whole, forget not euerie date after that hee hath drunke, first to cleanse the sore places from such filthe as there remaineth of his meate, and then to rub it anew with salt as before: for such continuall rubbing with salt, will suffer no euill flesh there to growe, and if any do grow, then first scarifie the same with your nailes, and rub it againe with salt. Some vse to wash the sore place onelie with warme wine, and some ad thereunto both hony and pepper, and rub it after with salte, some againe wash it onelie with wine & honie, and put no salt. But trulie, if it were first washed with wine, and after rubbed with salt, it were so much the better. Moreouer, vntill the place be perfectlie whole, forget not whensoeuer you put anie bit in his mouth, to cleanse first the sore place, faire and softlie with your finger. Thus far Rusius hath spoken, whose words doe sound with good reason, and are confirmed by diuers learned Authors, albeit I my selfe neuer sawe horse téeth drawne in all my life, and yet I must needes confesse that I haue séene some horses, though not many, which haue had their tushes standing so high, as it hath séemed vnto me verie necessarie, either to drawe them, or else to file them hard downe to the gums, which some men take to be the surest waie for sauing the Horses iawe. Notwithstanding in mine opinion, the best waie (if the Horses mouth be not alreadie too wide) were to slitte his wicks higher, and to make rome for the bit that waie: but to saie the truth, fewe Coltes or none being well bred in this realme haue néede of either of them both, neither haue our coltes for the most part, any tushes come vppe at that age whereof Rusius talketh. And trulie I cannot but maruell at that he appoints two tushes

to

to be drawne on ech ſide of his nether iawe (if I vnderſtand him aright) whereas euerie horſe hath but one beneath, and another aboue: and I do no leſſe maruell to read in Ariſtotle, that a horſe ſhould haue in all 44. téeth, ſith I could neuer ſée anie horſe that had aboue 38. or 40. at the moſt.

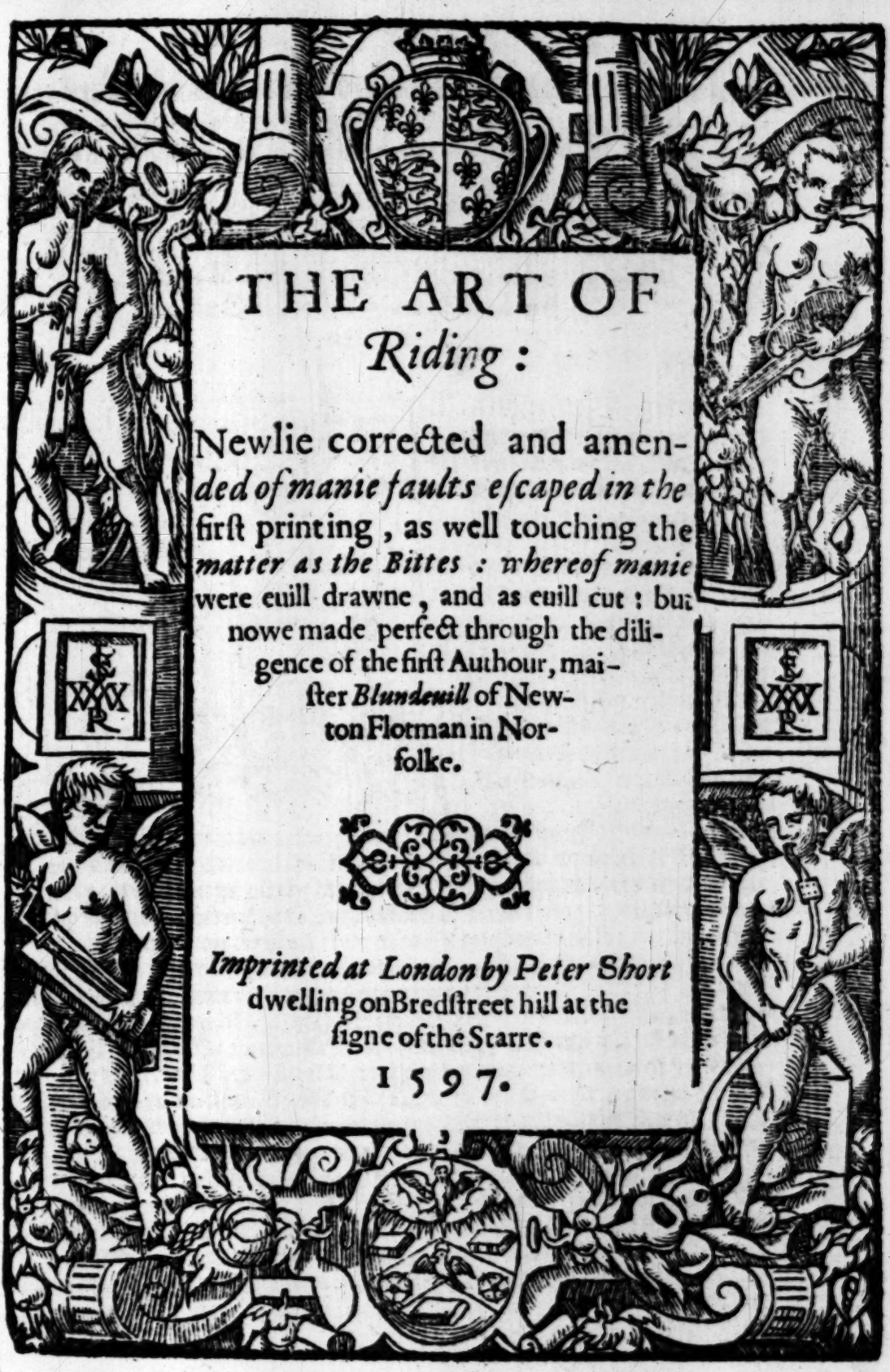
Of the culling out of refuſe Mares & Colts, and alſo of thoſe that ſhoulde be reſerued for the maintenance of the ſtocke. Chap. xx.

Although a man haue neuer ſo faire Stallions & mares, yet by ſome euill aſpect of the planets, or elſe by ſome other vnhappie bichance, or by the negligence of the kéepers, the coltes do not alwaies come to ſuch proſe as a man would haue them, and therefore I would wiſh the owner, though he dwell farre off, twice a yeare at the leaſt to ſuruey his ground and al the cattell therin, to the intent that if there be any not méet to be kept, either for barrennes, for age, or for deformitie, they may be made away, and ſold at thoſe faires and markets which beſt ſerue to ſuch purpoſes: yea, and if the cattell be wel vſed, his increaſe will be ſuch, as once in 3. or 4. yeares after the firſt 3. years be paſt, he ſhall be fain either to ſell or to giue away of the faireſt that he hath: for otherwiſe his ground would be quickly ſurcharged, & not able to kéed them. Albeit I would wiſh him to ſel or giue ſo, as he néed not to buy himſelfe to maintaine his ſtocke, vnto which he muſt haue alwaies a ſpeciall regard, in chuſing out from time to time the faireſt & largeſt bodied colts, as well of males as Females, that he can finde amongſt the whole race, to be reſerued for the maintenance of his ſtud or breed. For as I ſaid in the beginning, vnleſſe the parents be well choſen, the offſpring can neuer be good. Moreouer, it is neceſſarie that ſuch ſuruey be often made for the ſhifting of the Cattell, according as both kind and age of the cattell, & alſo the time of the yeare requireth, leaſt otherwiſe perhaps they may be pinched both with cold, and penury, which be the greateſt enemies that Coltes can haue. Againe, manie contagious ſicknelles do often chance amongſt this kind of cattel, at which time, if the infected be not remoued from the whole, the one infecteth the other, and ſo they die all.

For fault of which ſeuering, Sir Iohn Birron of Nottingham-

shire, a verie good knight and a notable housekéeper told me this last summer, that not long since, he losse in one yeare, as manie mares and Coltes as were worth a thousand marks. But to saie the truth in such a contagious time, it is not onelie necessarie to seuer the sicke from the whole: but also very néedfull that medicine be ministred aswel to the whole, as to those that be not to far gone, for the safegard of their liues, whereof I shall speake hereafter more at large, when I come to treate of the curing of their diseases: and in the meane time I shall desire you to take all that which I haue hitherto written touching the breeding of horses in good part, so shall I haue cause to think my labour well bestowed.

FINIS.



THE ART OF *Riding:*

Newlie corrected and amended *of manie faults escaped in the* first printing, as well touching the *matter as the Bittes: whereof manie* were euill drawne, and as euill cut: but nowe made perfect through the diligence of the first Authour, maister *Blundeuill* of Newton Flotman in Norfolke.

Imprinted at London by Peter Short dwelling on Bredstreet hill at the signe of the Starre.

1597.

To the Right Honourable and his singular good Lord, the Lord Robert Dudley Earle of Leiceſter, Baron of Denbigh, knight of the honourable order of the Garter, Maiſter of the Queenes Maieſties horſes, and one of hir highneſſe priuie Councell, *Thomas Blundeuill* wiſheth perfect felicity.



IT is now (my ſingular good Lord) almoſt two yeers, ſithens I determined with my ſelfe, to haue tranſlated into our vulgar tongue the four bookes of Griſon, treating in the Italian tongue, of the Art of Riding, & breaking great horſes, and to haue giuen the ſame vnto your L. as my L. Burleigh, high Treaſurer of Englande, can well teſtifie: who I thanke him of his Lordſhips goodnes, vouchſafed to peruſe my firſt draught, & miſliked not ỹ ſame: But after that I had tranſlated two bookes therof, and ſaw to what incõuenience I was bound: hauing to follow ſo doubtfull phraſes and maners of ſpeaking, and ſo confuſe an order of writing, as in my iudgement he vſeth (being indeed a farre better doer than a writer) by meanes whereof he is conſtrained to make many repetitions of one thing, and to vſe more wordes than need: I could not ſatiſfie my ſelf therwith. And therefore leauing to tranſlate any further, I ſought howe to bring ſo good a matter as that is, into a newe forme and better if it might bee, and thereby to make it the plainer, and alſo the briefer. In which my doing, I truſt (if Griſon himſelfe were liuing) I ſhould not offend him at all. For ſith it was his intent to make other men partakers of his excellent knowledge in this Art, ſo neceſſarie to bee learned, and therefore of right to be publiſhed; it would not greeue him then to haue his meaning ſo plainely expreſſed in another tong, as the Readers might eaſilie vnderſtand the ſame. which whether I haue ſo done or not, I refer that to your L. iudgement, who hath no ſmall ſkill, not only in both tongues, but alſo in the Art it ſelfe, wherein your H. is a chiefe Maiſter, alwell by knowledge as alſo by office, and therfore moſt meet to be both iudge and Patrone of this booke. which if it ſhall pleaſe your H. to receiue with a willing hand, and ſeeme to allow my doing therein, by encouraging the Eſquires and riders

ders of the Stable in breaking the Queenes Maiesties horses, sometimes to followe the instructions thereof (and the rather for that old Alexander their first maister, was himselfe as I vnderstand, sometime Grisons scholler) and so giue an Example to all others in like manner to followe the same: and specially now, whilest the Quenes Maiestie mindeth so graciously to prouide for the breeding and keeping of great horses, which no doubt should be to the great profiting of this our Common weale, in the most parts wherof, partly for lacke of Art, and partly for lacke of exercise, chiualry is sore decaied: I shall not only thinke my labour well bestowed, but also to haue receiued the greatest reward that I could possibly wish or desire, yea, and shall be incouraged thereby, to attempt hereafter som other thing of more weight, wherein I may shew my selfe thankfull to your L. for so curteously accepting this my labour and good will, which is, and shall be alwaies bent to do your H. such poore seruice as I can.

A chapter to the Reader, touching the order *obserued in this booke: verie necessary to be read* and well considered before he enter anie further.

ENdeuouring my selfe gentle Reader for your better vnderstanding, to reduce Grisons Booke, which in the Italian toong doth treat of the Art of Riding, and of breaking great horses, into a more briefe and compendious waie of teaching, than hee to my iudgement hath therein obserued: I sought first to what end such labour was chiefly to be emploied vpon great horses. And I found, that either it was to make them horses of seruice, or else horses of pleasure, called Stirers. Then I considered what thinges were inci-

incident to a horse of seruice, & what to a horse of pleasure or Stirer: and of those things which were common to them both, and which were appertaining to each one particularlie. And first I found that to a horse of seruice belonged these chiefe points here following. That is to saie, to trot cleane and lustilie, to stop light lie, to turn on both hands readilie, to gallop strongly, to manege with single turne surelie, and last of all to passe a cariere swiftly: and in all his doings, from the beginning to the ending, to reine well, & to beare his head steddilie. All which things are also common to the stirer, but then it is requisite to the Stirer beside all this, to learne to bound aloft with al four, and to yarke withall, to gallop the gallop galliard, to fetch the capriole, to do the corsetti, and such like kind of saltes. But yet this sufficeth not, vnlesse I might also knowe the nighest meanes for a horse to attaine to these feates, and what order was therein to bee obserued, which whilest I sought, beholde the Riders office wholelie discouered, whereby I might well perceiue that vnles the Rider were first instructed in all those thinges that appertained vnto his office, the horse coulde neuer be well broken. Wherefore minding to comprehend all things in three bookes, I thought it most meet to begin with the Rider, in teaching him first how to knowe a good Horse, and apt to be taught, aswell by his colour and markes, as shape, to the intent he bestow not his labor vpon a Jade or Rosle: then how to tame him, and to make him so gentle as he may suffer to be ridden: after that, howe to sit him, and to behaue himselfe in that point like a horseman. Then I proceeded further, declaring the three chiefe pointes, wherein the perfection of a horseman consisteth: that is to saie, in knowing how to helpe, to correct, and to cherishe his horse, and with what instrumentes and generallie how and when to vse them, and so I end the first booke: that done, I come to the horses lessons which he hath to learne for his part, declaring what order is to be kept therein: to which soeuer of these two ends beforesaid he be broken. And to euery lesson I ioine such helps and corrections, as are meet to be vsed for redresse of such faultes, as most commonly chance therein: which faults for the most part I call errours, making a distinction betweene errours and vices, attributing vices to the lacke of

knowledge, & vices to nature, or euill custome. As these be vices, to be restife, to be rammage, to be downe in the water, to be skittish, which for distinction sake I do otherwise call general faults, because they may chance in euerie lesson. Of the most part of which faults, I do treate seuerallie in the thirde booke, declaring therewith the corrections of the same. For otherwise I should be driuen to make many digressions, and to interrupt the tenour of my talk, which I loue not to do. And I say heere of the most part, because there be some vices so peculiar and so incident to certain of the horses lessons, as I am forced to mingle the correction of the same, euen amongst the errors, as occasion requireth, and yet thereby no order broken at all, as any man of iudgement I am sure will easilie confesse. When the Horse being throughly broken in all pointes meete for him to learne, be hee horse of seruice, or Stirer: I finallie teach you how to ride him to the best shew before a Prince. And there ends the second booke. In the third book I treate onlie of the corrections of the generall vices aforesaide, and of the diuersitie of bits, and to what purpose euerie one serueth. The order of all which three bookes shall more plainelie appeare vnto you, by the contents of the Chapters hereafter following. And though Grison seemeth to vse the like order that I doe in the verie beginning: yet he doth not continue the same, but immediatlie maketh so many digressions, and interlaceth so many and diuers matters togither, as were inough to confound the memorie of a very discréet Reader. And yet Grison not to be blamed, for not obseruing that order or method in writing, which perhaps he neuer had learned: but rather much to be praised and commended of all men, for vttering in the best maner he could, that this assured knowledge, which he had gotten with great labour and continuall exercising himselfe in riding, the space of xl. yeares and aboue. Of which knowledge what lacke wee Englishmen haue had, and specially haue at this present, is best seene at a muster, when the Quéenes Maiesty hath néed of horses & horsemen, where oftentimes you shall see some that sit on their horses like wind shaken réeds, handling their hands and legs like weauers. Or if the horseman be good, then the horse for his part shall be so broken, as when he is spurred to go forward, he wil go backward

ward: and when his Rider would haue him to turne on the right hand, he will turne cleane contrarie: and when he should stop, he will arme himselfe and run awaie, or else stop soner than his Rider would haue him, or vse such like toyes. For redresse of which faults both in man and beast, this booke is chiefly set forth, with the rules whereof, if you that lacke knowledge shall vouchsafe to acquaint your selues, not onlie by reading, but also by exercise of riding, I doubt not but by your spedy profiting therin, you shall haue iust occasion to bee thankfull, both to Grison for the first inuention of the matter, and also to me for disposing and reducing the same into a plaine forme and order of teaching. And you shall haue very good cause also to be thankefull vnto my deare friend M. Iohn Ashlie, M. of the Queenes Maiesties Iewell house. For by the dailie practising of the rules of Grison his booke, I sawe him, without the helpe of anie other teacher, bring two of his Horses, and specially that which he calleth his Valle, vnto such a perfection, as I beléeue fewe Gentlemen in this Realme haue the like. Which euident proofe, together with his incouraging me vnto it, made me the more willing to take the matter in hand, in hope that other men woulde with like diligence vse the like exercise, wishing al gentlemen lacking his qualities, to be his like in deede: and that not onlie in this exercise, but also in many other his vertuous exercises, as well of mind as of body: to the intent they may deserue as he doth, the loue, fauor, and commendation of all men, whereof I haue no doubt at all, because I my selfe doe knowe a number of young Gentlemen that be giuen in these our daies, to such ciuill and commendable exercises (as God giuing them grace to continue therein,) in time to come they will be no small ornament vnto this Realme. Which I pray God grant. And there I end, bidding you well to fare.

A Table declaring the contents of the *three bookes following. The first booke* treateth of the Riders office, and is di-*uided into these chapters.*

Of the coulours of horses, and which be best. Chap. 1
Which horses be well marked, & which be not. chap. 2
What shape a good horse ought to haue. chap. 3
How to tame a wild horse or colt, at what age, how to make him come to a blocke, and what kind of bridle, or rather halter and saddle, you shall first put vpon him. chap. 4
What the Rider ought to do before he take his horseback, and being mounted, how he ought to sit in his saddle. chap. 5
Of the three chéefe pointes wherein consisteth the perfection of a horseman, and howe many kindes of helpes and corrections there be. chap. 6
To what end such helpes and corrections serue. chap. 7
Of the voice of the tong, and sound of the lips. chap. 8
Of the rod. chap. 9
Of the bridle and reines. chap. 10
Of the calfes of the legs, and of the héeles. chap. 11
Of the stirrop. chap. 12
Of the spurre. chap. 13
Of the musroll and the martingale. chap. 14

The second Booke teacheth of the *Horses lessons, and is diuided into* these Chapters.

Of the horses lessons & order therof in generall. chap. 1
Of treading the ring, & to what end it serueth. chap. 2
The helps and corrections méete to be vsed whiles hée treadeth the rings. chap. 3
Of stopping. chap. 4
Of going backe, and whereto it serueth, and how you shall teach your horse to doe it. chap. 5

Of

Of aduancing before, whereto it serueth, and howe, where, and when you shall teach him to do it. Chap. vi.
Corrections to be vsed when your horse aduaunceth too high, and out of order, or when you would not haue him. Chap. vii.
How to make him yark, and to be light behind. Chap. viii.
How to teache your horse to turne readilie on both handes. Chap. ix.
How to correct your horse, when he is harder to turne on the one side then on the other. Chap. x.
Sixe other corrections for the same fault.
Of the whole turnes and double turnes, how and when to teache your horse to make them. Chap. xvii
Helpes and corrections méete to be vsed for the redresse of such errours, as moste commonlie doe happen in making the double turnes. Chap. xviii.
Of the Chambetta, what it is, whereto it serueth, and howe you shall teach your horse to do it. Chap. xix.
Of maneging, and howe manie kindes of maneges there bee Chap. xxi.
The order of maneging with halfe rest, whole rest, and without rest, all three with single turne, or halfe turne. Chap. xxii.
Of maneging with double turnes. Chap. xxii.
Of the helpes and corrections which are méete to be vsed for redresse of such errours and faultes, as commonly chance in maneging. Chap. xxiii.
How and when to teach your horse to passe a cariere. Chap. xxiiii.
Of the ordering of leaping and bounding aloft, and how & when you shall teach your horse to leape, and yarke withall, and also to gallop the gallop galliard. Chap. xxv.
How you shall teach your horse to do the Capriole, and to danse the Corsetti, and also to go sideling, either with his whole bodie, or with his rumpe onelie. Chap. xxvi.
How to ride a horse to the best shew before a Prince, and where best standing is for him to sée. Chap. xxvii.

The Table.

The third Booke treateth of the corrections of vices, and of the diuersitie of Bits, and is deuided into these Chapters following.

Of the corrections of vices in generall. Chap.i.

Of the vices of the head and necke, and first howe to correct your horse, when he beareth his head or necke awrie. Chap.ii.

How to correct your horse, when hee beareth not right the lower part of his head, called of the Italians, Mustacchio, and mate bee called of vs, the Mosell, which comprehendeth both nose and mouth. Chap.iii.

Certaine causes, why it is better for a horse to beare his head vnder, then right out, or to cast it vp aloft. And then how to correct him, if he will not bring in his head, and reane as he ought to doo. Chap.iiii.

How to correct your Horse when he ducketh downe his head, and beareth too lowe. Chap.v

How to correct that horse which doth ouerreach in his going, that is to saie, doth smite his foresete with his hinder feet. Chap.vi.

How to correct that horse, which when he is chastised for ante fault with the spurre, vseth to shake his head or eares: also how to know by the mouing of his eares, when he is maliciously disposed, and how to correct him for the same. Chap.vii.

How to correct your horse when he whineth, intending to strike with his heeles, or to do some shrewdnesse, being in the companie of other horses. Chap.viii.

Of restifnesse, of the kinds and causes thereof. Chap.ix.

Remedies against restifnesse proceeding of vile courage. Chap.x.

Remedies against restifnesse proceeding of stubbornnesse, and stout courage. Chap.xi.

Other corrections to be vsed against restifnesse, when the Rider lacketh Art, and knoweth not by order of riding, how to get the maistrie of his horse, & make him to know his fault. Chap.xii

Of the contrarie vice vnto restifnesse, which is to runne awaie, of

of the cauſes therof, and how to correct the ſame. Chap.xiii.
How to correct that horſe that will reare right vp when he is corrected for anie fault with a ſticke vpon the head. Chap.xiiii.
How to correct that horſe that will fall downe to the ground when he is a little wearie, or prouoked to doe anie thing which he would not willinglie doe. Chap.xv.
How to correct that horſe which paſſing through anie water, will lie downe in the ſame, & what is the cauſe of ſuch vice. Chap.xvi
How to correct that horſe which is ſkittiſh or fearefull, and will ſtart at euerie thing, & whereof ſuch vice procéedeth. Chap.xvii.
How to embolden your horſe, and to make him hardie againſt other horſes. Chap,xviiii
How to make your horſe to abide both ſtaffe, ſword, great noiſe, gunſhot, or anie other thing. Chap.xix.

Of the vices of the mouth, and cauſes thereof in generall. Chap.xx.
How to correct that horſe which will either drawe vp the bit with his tongue, or defend the ſame with his neather lip. Chap.xxi.
How to correct that horſe which will mowe or wry with his mouth and the cauſes whereof ſuch vice doth prodéede. Chap.xxii.
Of the kindes of Bits, together with their names and partes belonging to the ſame. Chap,xxiii.
Of the cheekes and eies of Bittes, and alſo of the Kirble, and how they ought to be made. Chap.xxiiii.
Of cloſe Bittes, and for what mouthes they are moſte meete, and alſo what vices they do correct. Chap,xxv.
Of open Bittes in generall. Chap,xxvi.
Of broken Portes, and vplet mouthes, how they ought to bee made, and what vices they do correct. Chap,xxvii.
Of whole Portes howe they ought to be made, and what vices they doe correct. Chap,xxviii.
Of whole Portes with trenches aboue, howe they ought to bee made, and for what mouthes they are moſt meete. Chap,xxix.

Examples recited by Grison aſwell in his Preface, as in the *latter end of his booke, not onely commending the aptneſſe of a* horſe to learne, his ſtout caurage, and long continuance in his *goodneſſe, but alſo the worthineſſe of the art it ſelfe, whereunto is* alſo adioyned, who firſt found out Riding, and who inuented the Bittes, and who firſt vſed the ſeruice of Horſes in the field.

Aptnes to learne.

THere is a Citie within the kingdome of Naples, called Sibarie, in the which ſometime horſes did learne to danſe at the ſound of a Symphan.

Stout courage.

ALexander the great, had a horſe called Bucephalus, which being decked in roiall ornaments, would ſuffer no man to ride on him, but king Alexander himſelfe. Which horſe being ſore hurt at the taking of Thebes, would not ſuffer Alexander to leaue his backe, for to mount vpon anie other. Such was both his courage & alſo loue towards his maiſter, who did not forget to recompenſe the ſame. For when the horſe died, the king cauſed him to be ſolemnlie buried: and for a perpetuall memory therof, builded euen there, in ſtéd of a Sepulchre, a faire citie, and named it after the horſes name, Bucephalia. Iulius Cæſar alſo had a Horſe, which would ſuffer no man to take his back, but Cæſer himſelfe.

Long continuance.

KIng Charles the viii. departing out of Italie, onelie with fiue C. horſemen, encountered the Duke of Millain, being vnited with the Venetians, with Ferara, & with Mantua: and vntill he came vnto Furnouo, he knew none otherwiſe but that he was ſo ſtrong as his enemies, which were in all, a thouſand fiue hundred horſemen, whereof though the king was aduertiſed, & therwith heard all men ſaie, it was méet to giue place, & ſaue himſelfe: yet he truſting in the great knowledge & valiantneſſe of his horſemen, and ſpecialtie of his generall called Il Signior Giouanni, Giacomo Friulzi, a Gentleman of Mlilan, would not ſo doe, but ſaid: he would through, what ſoeuer became of it. And therefore hauing ſent before his cariage (the ſpoile whereof brought manie of the grédie Italians into diſorder) he himſelfe being mounted vppon a great blacke Spaniſh Horſe, which had but one eye, & was xviii. yeares old,

old, followed with his band immediatly after, and gaue the onset, whereas both he and the horse did so valiantlie, as in that conflict there were slaine & taken on the contrary part vii. of the chiefest conducters. Whereby his enimies being discomfited, he quietlie from thence passed on in his iournie: and the king would afterward manie times saie, that the valiant courage of his horse, was the occasion of that victorie. Which horse after that he came vnto the Citie of Molina, besides that he was no more trauelled, but well fed, and tenderlie kept, so long as he liued, hee was also solemnlie buried when he died, by the appointment of the Ladie of Burbon, sister vnto the king.

Another example of continuance.

When the great captain came to the exploit of the kingdom of Naples (the campe lieng then at Cerignola) it chanced that whilest the Vicerote of France, being there with manie Barons, prepared him selfe to fight with the Spaniardes. The next day following, there came a knight of Naples called Il Signior Giacomo Guindazzo, who not hauing his Horses there went to Signior Troiano Caracciolo, Prince of Melfe, praieng him to lend him a Horse, onelie to serue in the field that daie. To whom the Prince being of his own nature verie courteous, & liberall withall, gaue him leaue to goe into his stable, and to take his choise of all the Horses there. Whereupon the said Giocomo went thither: and hauing viewed them all, chose out a great baie Horse, which latelie came from the couering of mares, and was xvii. yeares olde. And though the Prince perswaded him to take a yonger Horse, yet he being expert in that facultie, and knowing which Horses were best in deed, would not so do: neither was he deceiued in his choise. For the battell being fought the next daie, the horse did his part notable well: insomuch, although hee were sore hurt, & had manie grieuous wounds, yet he would neuer giue ouer, but continue to the end, and therby saued his Riders life: so as both horse and man, after many valiant acts shewed, departed the field with the great admiration of all men that did behold them. And finallie, Grison attributeth so much honour and praise to a Horse, as he saith, that the worthie state of Knighthode toke his first beginning of this beast, which in the Italian tonge is called Cauallo:

and thereof commeth Cauilliero, which is ſo much to ſay in Engliſh, as a Horſeman, or Knight. Wherein I beléeue, Griſon toke his example at the Latine word, hauing alſo like deriuation. For a horſe in Latine is called Equus, whereof is deriued this worde Eques, that is a horſeman, or knight. But then moſt commonlie they ioyne this word Auratus vnto it, ſaieng: Eques auratus, that is a golden knight: for that he was wont to weare gilt ſpurres, as I take it. Or elſe Eques torquatus, that is a chained knight, for that he weareth a chaine. With which kind of ornamentes, horſemen deſeruing well in the field were ſomtime rewarded in ſigne of honour due to their vertue. And though in theſe daies rewarding of vertue beginneth to ceaſe: yet the ſelfe ſame names of honour do ſtill remaine.

The worthineſſe of the Art.

Moreouer, to proue that the Art of riding and of breaking great horſes, is no vile Art: Griſon vſeth the authoritie of the noble Poet Virgil, who in his Aeneidos, calleth king Picus for a more excellencie, and greater praiſe, a tamer or breaker of horſes. He giueth alſo the like title in diuerſe places of his booke to Meſaphus, the ſonne of Neptune, the God of the ſea, who (as Poets feine) begot vpon Meduſa the winged Horſe, named Pegaſus, which flieng vp to the heauens, was tranſformed into thoſe ſtarres that be now called after his name. The Poets feine alſo, that Bellerophon the ſonne of king Glaucus, was vpon this horſe backe, when he ſlew the monſtrous Chimera.

The firſt inuenters of Riding, and of Bits, and alſo of the ſeruing with Horſes in the field.

This Bellerophon, as ſome men ſaie, was the firſt that inuented Riding on horſebacke. And the Pellitrones a people of Lapithia, found out afterward the maner of bridles, bits, and ringes, to guide horſes withall. But they of Theſſalia were the firſt that vſed the ſeruice of horſes in the warres, which as Griſon ſaith, proceeded of a iudgement, no leſſe profitable than diuine.

Thus end the examples of Griſon.

the Art of Riding.

Of the colours of horses, and which be best Chapter 1.

A Horse for the most part is coloured, according as he is complexioned, & as he is complexioned, so is he also well or euill conditioned. Againe, he is complexioned according as he doth participate more or lesse of anie of the foure Elementes. For if he hath more of the earth than of the rest, he is melancholie, heauie, and faint hearted, and of colour a blacke, a russet, a bright, or darke dunne. But if hee hath more of the water, then he is flegmaticke, slowe, dull, and apt to lose flesh, and of colour most commonly milke white. If of the aire, then he is a sanguine, and therfore pleasant, nimble, and of the colour is most commonlie a baie. And if of the fire, then is he cholericke, and therfore light, hot, and fierie, a stirer, & seldome of anie great strength, and is woont to be of colour a bright sorrell. But when he doth participate of all the foure Elementes, equallie, and in due proportion, then is he perfect, and most commonlie shall be one of these colours following. That is to saie, a browne baie, a dapple graie, a blacke full of siluer haires, a black like a Moore, or a faire rone, which kind of horses are most commendable, most temperate, strongest, & of gentlest nature. And next to these are such as be most like in colour to them: as the bright bay, the dark bay, that hath neither learing loke, mealie nose, nor white flanke: the bright sorrell, the sibitten white, the white liard like siluer, hauing his outtermost partes blacke, as the tips of his eares, his maine, his taile, or all foure feete: and if he hath a liste from his maine to his taile, he is so much the better. To these also maie bee added the ashie graie, hauing all his foure fèet striped. And note this, that as all well coloured horses, are so much the better for hauing some signe of adustion, that is to say some black mark, at the least in their nethermost partes: so all euill coloured horses, those are best which haue their outermost partes black. But if he be a bright sorrell, a browne baie with red flanks, a perfect black,

36

or of ante other colour, betokening choler adust: then to mitigate his fiercenes, he had néed to haue some white marke. Wherefore sith good marks be as necessarie as good colours, I will treat of them particularlie in the next chapter following.

Which horses be well marked, and which be not. Chap. 2.

THe Horse that hath ante white marke, is called of the Italians Balzano, but speciallie when hee is white foted. And of white foted Horses, there be foure good, and seuen bad.

The good be these.

The first is he that hath a white forefote on the farre side.

The second that hath a white hinderfote on the neare side.

The third that hath both his hinder feete white.

But note that such white must not mount aboue the pasternes, for that were an euill signe, betokening debilitie, and such horses be not called Balzani, but Calzati, which is so much to saie in English, as hosed.

The seuen bad.

The first is he that hath a white forefote on the neare side.

The second, that hath a white hinder fote on the farre side, and is called of the Italians, Arzeglio.

The third, that hath both his forefeete white.

The fourth, that hath his forefot and hinderfote both on the far side white, and is called of the Italians, Trauato, that is to saie, trauersed.

The fift, that hath his forefot and hinderfot both on the neare side white, and is likewise called Trauato.

The sixt, that hath his forefote on the neare side, and his hinder fote on the farre side crossewise both white, and is called of the Italians Trastrauato, crosse trauersed.

The seuenth, that hath his forefeete on the farre side, and his hinderfote on the neare side crosse wise both white, and is also called Trastrauato.

And note, that if ante of the white feete betokening either good or euill, be mingled or spent with blacke spottes, it confirmeth so much the more, the good or euill signification thereof. It is an excellent

cellent good marke also for a horse to haue a white starre in his forehead, or a white list or fillet, comming downe on his heade, without touching his browes, and not fullie arriuing to his nose.

The horse that hath a white rumpe or taile, is called of the Napolitans Rapicano, and is most commonlie a good horse, but if he haue anie white therewith before, that signifieth him to bee of small force.

The horse that is flebitten onelie on the shoulders, or on the flankes, can neither be strong, nor able to endure anie hardnesse. For such a horse moste commonlie is foled in the heate of Summer, betwirt Julie and August, when flies are stirring, from the stinging whereof he is not able to defend himselfe, neither with head nor taile, and therefore is called of the Italians, Attaffanato, that is, flieftong, or fle bitten.

And besides that his Damme can haue no plentie of milke to fede him with, the grasse being burnt vp with heate. The white Horse that is altogther blacke flebitten, or red flebitten, is a good horse.

But if he be a Liard, and marked with a fewe red or tawnie flebittings, onlie on his cheekes, or on his nose, that is a signe of a stubborne Jade and headstrong.

The whall eied horse called of the Italians, Gazzo, is most commonlie wilie, and full of shrewd toyes.

The horse, whose balles of his eies are white, seeth not well in the time of snowe.

The horse that hath no kind of white marke, is moste commonlie tractable, but then he is ramege, that is to saie, he will keep no iust pace in his going, but fareth as one that goeth with two minds, twirt going and not going.

And though to haue no white mark may chance to all colours: yet it chanceth most to the blacke and darke baie. And note, that when such blackneſſe procedeth of choler adust: the horse is furtious, bold and wilie, and is called of the Italians zaino. But if of melancholie naturall, then hee is fearefull, dull and slowe, which things are more easie to be knowne by his doinges, than by his markes.

The horse that hath an Ostrich feather either on his forehead,

on both sides of his maine, or on the one side, or els behind on his buttockes, or in anie place where he himselfe can not see it, can neuer be euill horse.

But though the horse be neuer so well coloured and marked: yet is he little worth, vnlesse his shape be accordinglie. And therefore I will shew you what shape a good horse ought to haue, beginning at his nether partes, whereon a good horseman ought first to fixe his eie and mind.

What shape a good horse ought to haue. Chap. iii.

A Good horse then would haue a blacke, smooth, orie, large, round, and hollowe hoofe: and if it be soft or tender, and broad about the heele, it is the greater signe of lightnes. The reason is, for that the horse from the date of his soling, treadeth light vpon the ground: for he is afraid to trust to his hoofes, being as yet verie tender, and therefore straineth his forelegs, and his backe the more.

The crownes aboue his hoofes would be small and hearie.

His pasterns short, and that neither too low, nor yet too high, so shall he be strong beneath, and not apt to founder.

His ioints great, with long feawter lockes behinde, which is a signe of force.

His legs straight and broad.

His knées great, leane, and plaine.

His thighes full of fine ewes, the bones whereof would be short, equall iust, and well proportioned, and the brawnes thereof, when he standeth with his legs together, muste bee much more distant one from another aboue towardes the breast, than beneath.

His shoulders long, large, and full of flesh.

His breast large, and round.

His necke rather long than short, great towards the breast, bending in the midst, and slender towardes the head.

His eares small, or rather sharp, & standing right vp, being of a iust length and largenesse, according to the stature of the horse.

His forehead leane and large.

His eies, blacke and great.

The hollownesse of his browes well filled & shooting outward.

His

His iawes slender and leane.

His nostrils so open and puffed vp, as you maie see the rede within, apt to receiue aire.

His mouth great.

And finallie, his whole head togither would be like a sheepes head.

His maine would be thin and long, albeit I do not mislike the opinion of those that would haue it to be thicke, so that it be not ouer thicke for as the thinnesse betokeneth aptnesse to be taught, so doth the indifferent thicknesse betoken strength.

His withers or walleis would not only be sharpe pointed, but also right and straight, so as a man maie plainlie see from thence the departure of his shoulders.

His backe would be short, and that neither rising nor falling but euen and plaine, so shall it be strong: which you shall soone trie, if you ride him.

For the horse that hath a strong backe, either in his going, or galloping, will continuallie gather his bodie round togither, aduancing himselfe behind, and lifting vp his rump, which the Italians call Aggruppigigare: yea, and will doe the like whensoeuer you shall require it, or at the least will not shrinke or distend his backe, but will keepe it alwaies at one staie. Whereas if he hath a feeble backe, either he will go rolling behind: or els if he aduanceth himselfe for a while at the first setting forth, yet he is not able to continue withall. His sides would be long and large, with a small space betwixt the hindermost rib, and the bucklebone. His bellie long and great, but ouerlie hidden vnder his ribs.

His flankes not gant, but full, hauing naturall frizled haires growing on both sides, and the higher that such haires mount, the better.

His rumpe round and plaine, with the fall of a little gutter, and with a large space betwixt the two bucklebones.

His thighes large and long, with bones well fashioned, and ful of flesh on either side. The hammes whereof, if they be leane, drie, and streight, and the houghes large and crooked like a Hart, it is a signe of swiftnesse. But if the hams be crooked, and the houghs straight, it is a signe that he is good for trauell.

His taile would be full of haires, & long downe to the ground, the truncheon wherof must be of a measurable bignesse, and close couched betwixt his thighes: notwithstanding, some do saie that a thinne taile and crispe is as good.

His stones and yarde would be small: and finallie, all his members would be correspondent to the greatnesse of his bodie, which altogither would be fashioned much like a Stagge, somewhat lower before than behinde, but not overmuch, for that were dangerous in running. And the greater and stronger the Horse is, the méeter for the warre, and the lighter and more nimble hee be, the méeter to make a Stirer.

Thus having shewed you how to knowe a good horse, and apt to be taught, aswell by his colour and markes, as shape: it resteth now that I teach you how to breake him, and to handle him, and first, if he be wild, or a Colt, how to tame him.

How to tame a wild horse or colt, at what age, how to make him to come to a block, and what bridle and saddle you shal first put upon him. Chap iiii.

ALthough you may begin to handle your horse when he is full two yeares old, and upward, yet it were better to tarrie untill he be three yeares and a halfe old, so shal he be the better able to endure trauell, the ioints of his body & legs being then somewhat knit together. For which cause the Emperour Frederico would not haue a horse to be ridden before he were full foure years old. And at the first handling of him you shall put on his head a certaine collar or halter, called of the Napolitans Cauazana, made in such sort as is hereafter expressed in the first figure of the third booke, which I caused to be cutte of purpose, be cause that Grison would in no wise haue a yong horse to be ridden at the first with ante bitte, for feare of marring his mouth. In stead of which Cauetsane, our riders in England vse a chaine not much vnlike in effect vnto the Cauetsane, but yet in my iudgement not so méete for a yong horse, for that it straineth the tender gristle of his nose too sore, which kinde of halter or Cauetsane, partlie for shortnesse of speach, and partly for likenesse of signification, I will call from henceforth a headstraine. And in putting

putting the headstraine on, you must vse your horse so gently, as he maie not only be content to weare it, but also to be quietlie led thereby: whereunto with gentle handling you shall quicklie bring him. Neither must you vse any other kinde of bridle than this, or any other saddle for feare of hurting his backe, than a soft pad of strawe, vntill your horse can trot cleane, keepe the ring, stoppe and turne roundlie on both handes. And in learning to sit close in the pad, you shall also sit close in your saddle, but whatsoeuer saddle you put vpon his backe, see that it stand alwaies more forward than backward, vnlesse the horse be ouerlowe before. For the more forward that the saddle doth stand, the Horseman shall sit therein the more right vp, and with the better grace. The horse then being thus brideled and sadled, cause him to bee brought forth to some blocke, whereas if hee will not stand still whilest you take his backe, then let him that bringeth him make much of him, & sometime threaten him with his voice, and thrust him with his handes on the right side towards the blocke, whereupon you shall stand, continually cherishing him with your hand, to the intent he maie suffer you to get vp. But if he be so froward and so stubborne, as he will not come nigh the blocke: then all to rate him with a terrible voice, and beat him your self with a good stick vpon the head betwixt the eares, not leauing him vntill you haue made him to come to the blocke, whether he will or not: remembring alwaies to make much of him when he sheweth himselfe obedient vnto you. Or if you will, you may obserue this maner following.

Lead him into some newe plowed ground, and there take the rains of the headstraine by the outermost end in your right hand, and cause some other man to take a sticke in his hand, and by beating the horse therewith vpon the rumpe, to force him to trot, or gallop, so fast as he maie driue, turning still round vpon the right hand, during which time, you shall not remoue forward your right foote from the place where you are. But onely go round with your left foote, towardes the horse, accompanieng him in euerie turne, so as you your selfe maie remaine alwaies in the middest of the circle, which the horse maketh. And immediately after the horse hath beene well tossed, and wearied with continuall

tinuall turning on the right hand: you shall change foote and hand, and keeping still your place, cause him to make as manie turnes on the left hand. And thus you maie turne him and tosse him on both hands, vntill you haue gotten the maisterie, & wholelie subdued him. But if the horse be so stubborne, and so froward, as one is not sufficient to make him go turning so often about: then besides the helpe of more persons, with wandes in their handes, you your selfe may also haue in your left hand, a longer wande then anie of theirs, and changing turnes, you shall also change the rodde into your right hand. By meanes whereof, it is possible, that you your selfe alone, by beating him sometime, with the one hand, and sometime with the other, shall make him without the helpe of anie other, to go freelie about. For this kind of correction is so grieuous to any horse, of what age soeuer he be, but speciallie to a Colte, that it will make him so gentle as a lambe, and to suffer you to doe with him what you list. Thus hauing taught you howe to tame your horse in such sort, as he shall suffer you take his backe: it is requisite, that before you mount vpon him, I put you in remembrance what you haue to doe: and then being mounted, how to sit him, and how to behaue your selfe in all points, like a Horseman.

What the rider ought to doe, before he take his horse backe, and being mounted, how he ought to sit in his Saddle. Chap. v.

FIrst then see that your horse be surelie girded, and if he be come to weare a bit, see that the kirble thereof be fastened as it ought to be. And when you are mounted, make the raines of your bridle euen, and of a iust length, without stirring your horse, vntill you haue setled your selfe, and your clothes about you. That done, make him to go forward about two paces faire and softlie, and then staie. After that, pace him or trot him to the place where you mind to breake him. But after that he commeth to weare a bit, and is throughlie broken: then to keepe in vre with the double turnes hereafter taught, you shall in the end of the foresaide two paces, giue him also fiue whole turnes, that is to saie, first two on the right hand,

hand, then two on the left, and last of all, two on the right. Or else if you will, but three whole turnes, that is, for eche hand one, so as the first and last be on the right hand. And see that you doe not onelie sit him boldlie, and without feare, but also conceiue with your selfe that hee and you doe make as it were but one bodie: and that you both haue but one sense and one will. And accompanie him with your bodie in anie mooving that hee maketh, alwaies beholding his head right betwixt his eares, so as your nose maie directlie answere his foretop. Which shall bee a signe vnto you to knowe thereby, whether you sit right in your saddle or not. And let the ridge bone of your backe be euen with his. And let your left hand holding the reanes of the bridle, bee euen with the creast, and in anie wise keepe your thighes & knees close to the saddle, holding downe your legs straight like as you do when you are on foote. And let your feete rest vppon the stirrops in their due places, both heele and toe standing in suche sort, as when you shall turn your head, as farre as you can on the one side, without mouing your bodie, and looking downward to your stirrup you shall perceiue, that your toe doth directlie aunswere the tip of your nose: and according as the saddle is made, so shall you ride long or short. But alwaies let your right stirrup be shorter than the other by halfe a hole, and keepe your stirrup leathers alwaies vnder your knees: albeit to ride with the stirrup leather aboue the knee, was thought by men of old time, more comelie, being partlie then constrained thereunto, for that their horses were barded after such a sort, as vnlesse they did ride so, and that with verie long spurres besides, they could not reach their bellies. Notwithstanding, to ride as we do nowadaies, is a great deale more sure. But to sit a horse well, or to ride both sure and cleane, is not sufficient to make a perfect horseman, and therefore it is necessarie, that heere I also declare vnto you, wherin the perfection of a horseman chieflie consisteth.

Which be the thinges that make a perfect horseman. Chap. vi.

GRison saieth, that besides the helpe of a good Constellation, inclining you to followe continuallie, with a ferment zeale

the schole of Mars: to make you a perfect horseman, three things be requisite. First, to knowe how and when to helpe your horse. Secondlie, how and when to correct him. And thirdlie, howe and when to cherish him, and to make much of him.

Which three things being as generall kinds, haue manie specialties and particularities belonging vnto them. And though they do seeme wholly to appertaine to the office of the Rider: yet can I not make you throughly to vnderstand them, vntill I come to entreate of the lessons, which the horse for his part hath also to learne: because indeede they must go both together. Notwithstanding, to the intent I maie vse fewer words hereafter, (you being somewhat instructed before) I will treate of them here in so good order as I can. For though I cannot shew you, when and how to vse these thinges in time, vntill I come to the horses lessons: yet I may shew you which they be, how manie there be, to what end euerie one serueth, and generallie the vse of the same. And first you shall vnderstand, that you may helpe your horse seuen maner of waies. That is to saie, with your voice, with your tongue, with your rod, with the bridle, & with the calues of your legs, with your stirrup, and with your spurres, besides the helpe of the ground which is either declining or gulled with raine water, whereof wee shall speake hereafter when we deale with the horses lessons. Againe, you may correct him seuen maner of waies, that is to say, with your voice, rod, calues of your legs, bridle, stirrop, spurres, and with treading the ring in such sort as shalbe hereafter expressed. But you can cherish or coy him no more but two maner of waies, that is to saie, either with your voice in speaking to him gentlie, or else by clawing him on the necke with your hand, or with the nether end of your rod. And though that helpes and corrections in the doing, seeme in a maner all one: yet are they diuers, hauing respect vnto ỹ time, for the one goeth before errour, and the other commeth after. For you helpe your horse, to the intent he should not erre: but you correct him for that he hath alreadie erred. But it is not so easie to know the due time and measure of helping him, as it is to know when or how to correct him. And therefore, I would not with you to be to busie in helping him, vntill you can keepe time and measure, with both hand and heele,

least

leaſt your horſe not vnderſtanding your mind, grow to ſome diſorder: but rather vſe for a while, onlie to correct him when hee erreth, ſo ſhall he be afraid to doe the like againe. And in the meantime, by exercíſe, you ſhall learne as well the time of helping, as of correcting, and ſo much the ſoner, for that you ſée the inſtruments wherewith you helpe or correct be all one.

To what end ſuch helps and corrections ſerue. Chap. vii.

THe voice is that which ante horſe feareth moſt, and is néedfull in all diſorders.

The wand or rod ſerueth to correct the diſordering of his head, and to driue ſhrewd toies out of his mind.

The bridle correcteth both head, necke, and mouth, and maketh him to reane well, and doth help much to embolden or to mã him.

The calfes of the legges, and likewiſe the ſtirrups, ordereth as well the hinder parts, as forepartes of the horſe.

The ſpurs do not only make him ſteddie and iuſt, but alſo ſubiect and quicke to vnderſtand his Riders minde. The correction of treading the ring, maketh him iuſt, as well in his manege as in euery other feat.

Of the ſound of the voice, toong and lips. Chap. viii.

BVt firſt, as touching the voice, you ſhall vnderſtande, that according as the ſignificatiõ of the noiſe or word is: ſo is it either a correction, a helpe, or a cheriſhing. For if you wold correct him for any ſhrewd toy or obſtinacie, you muſt all to rate him with a terrible voice, ſaieng to him, Ah traitor, ah villen, turne here, ſtop there, and ſuch like. But if you wold help him at any time, then muſt you vſe a more mild and chéerefull voice, as when you runne him, to ſaie: Hey, hey: or Now, now. Likewiſe if you would haue him to goe backe, you muſt ſaie with a lowd voice, Backe boy, backe I ſaie. Alſo if you would helpe him to aduance at the ſtop, you muſt ſaie chéerfullie Hup, hup. Likewiſe to make him light behind, you muſt ſay, Darter, darter, or vſe ſuch tearmes as you ſhall thinke good. But if you would cheriſh your horſe, or coie him for dooing well, then your voice muſt be moſt milde of all. As when you ſaie, Hola, hola: or, So boy ſo, or vſe ſuch like coing wordes. And whileſt we

talke here of the voice, it shall not be amisse also, to shew you that the sound of the tongue is a verie necessarie helpe, and méete to be vsed as well at the stop, as in the turns both single and double, I meane that sound which you commonlie make by turning vp the tip of your tong almost into the middle pallat of your mouth, and then suddenlie losing it againe from thence with a chirke. There is also another sound of the lippes as necessarie to be vsed as any of the rest, at such times as shall be hereafter taught, and that is made by closing your lippes hard togither, and then in opening them again somewhat wide, pronouncing as it were this word Pough.

Of the Rod. Chap. ix.

THough some thinke that the correction and help of the Rod or cudgell is not needfull, and that it maketh the horse to fearefull, yet experience teacheth the contrarie: and specially if it be vsed as it should be, that is to sate, if you correct him not therewith out of time, but euen in the selfesame instant that he erreth. And assure your selfe, that to correct a stubborne horse, it hath no fellowe. For if you beat him but once well and surelie therewith betwirt his eares, and vpon anie part of his head (his eies excepted) you shall need to giue him the lesse correction euer after. But touching the rod, diuers thinges are to be considered. As first, when to beare a rod: secondly, how to take it when it is first offered: thirdly, how to beare it at al times: fourthly, to what end it chiefly serueth: & finallie, how and when to vse it as a helpe, correction or cherishing to the horse. And as touching the first two pointes, I saie, that if you breake a yong horse which was neuer handled before, you shal bear no rod in any wise vntill he come to be ridden with a bit, and then at the first time that the rod is offered you, you must take it gentlie, for not making him afraid therof: and hauing receiued it, you must coy him on the neck therewith, either by clawing him on the withers with the nether end thereof, or else with the middle of the rodde, lieng crosse vppon his maine, and that shall make him to abide it the better euer after. Nowe to the other two pointes. In learning how to beare your rod, as well when you pace or trot your horse,

as

as also when to manege or to run him: you shall also learne therby how to handle both speare and sword, to which end the bearing of the rod chéefly serueth. Wherefore it shall not gréeue me, here to shew the order thereof. And first, when you do but pace or trotte your horse, you shall beare your rod in your right hand, with the point right vp toward your right shoulder, holding the nether end thereof betwixt your thumbe and your other fingers, diffended and not closed. And when you would occupie it, you shal let the point fall either on the left side, or on the right, according as occasion shall require.

But when you manege your horse, you shall stretch out your arme towardes your right thighe, and couch your rod crosselwise ouerthwart the horses necke, and when hee hath made his first course, and turned on the right hand: then a little before the end of his second course, when he is in a maner readie to turne on the left hande, you shall lift your rod from thence, and hold it with the point right forth, on the right side of his head, not farre from his eie, or else somewhat lower towardes the eie of the bit, and as he changeth turns to and fro, so shall you change the placing of your rod, either of the one side, or of the other: which bee the two chiefe warding places of the sword.

Or if you will, you may hold your rodde as you would doe a speare when you runne, that is, with the point vpwarde, and the nether end lowe towards your thigh, but not resting vpon your thigh, and a little before that ye come to the place of turning, you may let the point fall on that side, which is requisite, and so soone as your horse hath made his turne, to holde it againe with the point vp as before, whereby you shall learne to charge and discharge a staffe.

Now, as touching the vsage of your rod in helping or correcting your horse (for the waie of cherishing him therewith, is before taught) because I cannot, as I haue heretofore saide, teach you the particularities thereof, vntill I come to the horses lessons: let it suffice you therefore in the meane time, to learne those generall rules here following. First, if your horse will not turne on anie side that you would haue him, then beate him with your rod on the contrarie side. As for example, if you would haue him

to turne on the right side, then beat him on the left shoulder: and if you would haue him to turne on the left side, then strike him on the right shoulder. Likewise, if he be harder or heauier, or goe more disorderlie on the one side than on the other, beare your rod for the most part on that side, to the intent the sight thereof may put him in remembrance of his fault. Againe, when you would haue him light before, strike him on the foreparts, as on his shoulders, and forelegs, and when you would haue him light behinde, strike him on the flankes, rumpe, and hanches. In what time and how much, shall be taught you hereafter.

Of the Bridle and Reines. Chap. x.

GRison compareth the Bridle vnto the sterne of a ship, for as the ship is wholie guided by the sterne, so the Horses head is onlie ruled by the bridle, and therefore this is an instrument which requireth manie considerations, not onelie for the diuers fashions of bits, together with the members thereof, as the Cheekes, Barbles, Ports, Trenches, and such like, méete to serue diuers mouthes & to correct diuers vices, as here after shall be declared in the third booke at large, and set out with figures: but also for the knowing how and when to vse the same. For it is the Riders part, first to knowe when to ride his Horse with a bit, then what maner of bit, and how to vse the same at the first putting of it into the horses mouth, and in what part of his mouth the bit hath to rest. Then howe to holde the Reines, when euen together, and when one shorter than another, and what measure he shall kéepe with his hande, in bearing hard or loose, high or lowe, when to vse false Reines, and when to leaue them, when and how to correct him with the bridle, and when to helpe him: of all which thinges I héere intend to speake briefly, and so plainlie as I can.

First therefore, when your horse can trot cleane, and kéepe the ring: yea, and stop and turne indifferentlie well on both handes: then take a plaine Canon with right cheekes, such a one as hath bin somwhat worne before, and put it on with the headstall ouer his headstrain or muscroll, making him with the reines thereof by little and little to féele it in his mouth, and sée that the bitte doe lie

vpon

his nether gummes a little aboue his great téeth or tushes, which is the due resting place thereof. And if the bit were first annointed with a little honie and salt, it would make him the more to delight in it, and to be alwaies champing thereon, and to stay his mouth vpon it the more temperatlie. For if his mouth be distempered at the begining, it is not afterward so easilie holpen, which thing is little considered of our english horsemen, that vse to ride their yong Horses euen at the first, with so rough a brake or bit as may be gotten, which is one of the chiefest causes why we haue so manie headstrong Jades. Now as touching the holding of the reanes, you must hold them in your left hand, so as your little finger, and ring finger may bee betwirt the two reanes, and that your thumbe may lie close vppon the reanes, with the brawne thereof turned towards the pummell of your saddle: and if you haue no rod when you manege him or runne him, then you shal take the ouerplus of the reanes that hangeth downe, by the midst in your right hand, holding the same hard by your right thigh, and the more that you turne the nether end of your left fist inward, and the vpper end outward, the more you shall bring in your horses head, but therein you must vse discretion, according as occasion shall serue. And indéede to saie truth, that point appertaineth not so much to the holding of the reanes, as to the bearing of your bridle hand, whereof there be three maner of waies. The first is, to beare it low, beneath the pummell of the saddle, euen vpon the withers, and that is to correct him. The second is, to beare it somewhat higher about the middle of the pummell, and that is to maintaine him. The third is, to beare it vpon the vppermost edge of the pummell, and neuer much higher, and that is to be vsed onlie when you would manege him or make him to doe anie thing. For to beare the bridle hand ouer high, as the vnskilfull Numidians in Affrike vse to do, is disalowed for diuers respects. First, for that it wearieth the arme: secondlie, if néed were, you could not haue so much power to stop your Horse when you would. Thirdlie, being in the fielde against your enemie, the bearing of your hand so high, would be a trouble vnto your defence, & a commodity to your enimy, for that he might easily cut your reins in sunder. Finallie you can haue no steddie hand vpon your horse anie

time togither, where by your horse shall neuer reane well, nor yet haue a steddie hed. For who so will haue his horse to beare his hed steddilie and to reane well, let him beare his hand rather low than high, so shall he be able to kéep it alwaies at one stay, which is one of the chiefest points of horsemanship. Notwithstanding, if your horse be any thing hedstrong, then when you manege him, or otherwise handle him, beare not to stiffe a hand, but rather somewhat light & temperat, for the more you force him, the lesse he will yéeld: but if he hath no such fault, then doe alwaies as I told you before. And remember alwais when you turn your horse, to draw neither your arme nor hand more of one side than of another, but to kéep it euen with the horses creast, & onely by turning your fist a little inward or outward, to signifie vnto him on what hand you would haue him to turne. And note, that for a while, it shall not be amisse, when you ride your horse, to let him weare his bridle & his headstrain or musrol, both togither, vntil he be somwhat acquainted with the bridle, for then you may take away his hedstrain, and in stead therof put on a paire of false reines, which are very necessary for a yong horse in the beginning, to make him beare his hed right: for bearing the ordinary reines alwaies iust and euen, you may shorten the false reines on any side at your pleasure. Which false reins, when your horse begins to war somwhat perfect in his doings, you may also take away, and ride him only with the ordinary reines: and if he happen afterward for lack of them to hang more of one side than of another, or to beare his head or necke awrie, you may correct it by bearing the contrarie raine shorter than the other. As for example: if he wrieth more on the left side than on the right, then holding the bridle as I taught you before, pul in the right rein with your forefinger, & so hold it iust betwixt your forefinger and your thumb, and if néed be, you may also ioin your long finger vnto your forefinger, to hold it the faster. But if he wrieth more on the right side than on the lefte, then you shall shorten the left reine by putting two or three of your neathermost fingers betwixt the reines. But as touching the true order of correcting & helping your horse with the bridle, in time and measure, it shal be declared vnto you hereafter, as occasion shall serue: and therefore in the meane time let these generall rules suffice you.

Of

Of the Caues of the Legges, and of the heeles. Chap. xi.

I May well shewe you how to correct or helpe your Horse, with the caues of your Legs, and with your Héeles, and where to strike him, together with the diuersitie of the strokes, and the names thereof, and to what ende euerie one serueth: but to tell you exactlie in what time, and with what measure, vntill I come to the horses lessons, I cannot. But of one thing I will aduertise you in any wise at the first, not to be rash, but to vse such temperance and moderation, as you may cause your horse by little and little to vnderstand your meaning, without any disorder or confusion. And therefore it were best dooing with him while he learns his first lesson, which is to tread the ring, as shall be hereafter declared vnto you at large: in the which according as you shal sée occasion, you shall help him, or correct him by striking him somewhat behinde the former girt, which is the right spurring place, either with the one calfe alone, or with both together, with the one héele alone, or with both euen together, or together not euen, or els with one immediatlie after another. For so manie kindes of strokes there be seruing sometime to diuers purposes, and therefore haue diuers names accordingly. For the first is called the single stroke of the contrarie leg, wherwith you must help him to turne on which side you would haue him. As for example, if you would haue him to turne on the right hand, then you must touch him with your left legge: if on the left hand, then with your right leg. And likewise when he hangeth more on the one side in his going, than on the other, or be stiffer necked of any side, or beare not his head right, you must correct him for the most part with the single stroke on the contrarie side. The second is called the double stroke, or euen stroke, because you must strike him in the spurring place with both legs euen together, which properlie and chiefly is to make him to go forward. Notwithstanding it serueth also manie times to make him to turne, to stoppe, to aduance, & for many other purposes, as you shal perceiue hereafter. The thirde maie be verie well called the closing stroke, because it makes the horse to close his turne round and iust: & the order of it is thus. When you would haue your horse to close his turn well

(as for example on the right hand) then in his turning touch him with both legs together, but not euen, that is to saie with the left leg in the true spurring place, and with your right leg somewhat more behinde towards the horses flank, which maner of striking Grison calleth in his language Attondare. The fourth serueth onlie as a correction for sundry vices hereafter to be declared, & then you must strike your Horse in the spurring place three or foure times together with one leg after another, so fast as your legges may walk, which kind of strokes Grison calleth Botti corisponderi, but in our tong, mee thinke it were not amisse to call it the Bunching stroke, because your legs must goe like two bunching beetles, or else the clinching stroke, fetching a similitude from the Botewrights, whose hammers when they clinch the nails, doe answer one another. In all which foure kindes of strokes, if you can learn to kéep time & measure with your legs & héeles, you shall be the better able to kéepe time with your spurres, when you come to ride your horse with spurres. For there is no other difference betwixt them, but that the stroke of the one toucheth the quicke, and the other not: because the one is blunt, and the other sharpe.

Of the Stirrup. Chap. xii.

THough the correction or helpe of the Stirrop be seldome vsed: yet it is a good helpe to a yong horse in the beginning, vntill he be somewhat broken. For if he carieth his head or necke awrie, or hang of one side more than of an other, by striking him with the stirrop vnder the shoulder on the contrarie side, you shall make him to amend his fault.

Of the Spurre. Chap. xiii.

HAuing declared to you in the beginning (when I shewed you how many kinds or corrections and helps there were) to what end the spurre serueth, and also nowe in a maner last of all, in speaking of the vsing of your legs and héels, in what part of the bodie you should spurre your horse, and howe manie kinds of strokes there were, and when to be vsed: it resteth now that I shew you when it is time to make your horse both to abide the Spur, and also how to know the Spur, and all the helps

thereof

thereof, and where, and howe you shall do the same. And first you shall vnderstande, that in olde time men were so ignorant, as they would neuer spurre their horses, vntill they were not onlie staid of head, but also perfect in all suche orders as were vsed in those daies: so that though their horses were fiue or seuen yeeres old, yet could no man assure himselfe of their goodnes. For most commonlie when they came afterward to be spurred, either they waxed so stubborne and so diuellish as they would not abide the Spur, but fall a leaping and flinging, and trieng of masteries to cast their Riders: or else they became so restife, and so dull therewith, as they would abide it too well, and stand euen still, not once mouing for it, and the more they were spurred, the worse they would bee. And although that those Riders had extraordinary meanes to make a horse to abide the spurre, whether he would or not, as by forcing him when they spurred him, to plunge into some great water or sea, or to behang him with spurres made of purpose to molest him, or else perhaps, as I haue seene some Riders do, to behang him with a paire of stuffed boots, or with sandbags, hauing spurres or prickes to grieue him whilest they chase him to and fro. And so to weary him that waie: yet they had no waies to make him knowe the helpe of the spurre, and thereby to vnderstande the Riders meaning, and all for lacke of knowledge & good consideration. They lacked knowledge, for that they would neuer almost spurre their horse, but when they ran him, so that the spurre serued them in a manner to none other purpose. Again they lacked consideration, in that they suffred their horses to go so long before they spurred them. For they might wel think that it was not so easy to make a horse either to abide, or to know the spur when he is growne in age, strength, and lustie courage, as when he is yong, simple and feareful, and apt to rule as a man will himselfe. And therefore I would with you not to deferre the time so long, but after that your horse hath worne the bridle halfe a score of times, let him learne to know the spurre, be hee neuer so yong, leane, or feeble. Which would be done, either whilest you cause him to trot the ring in some new deepe plowed ground, inhelping him therewith, as hereafter shall be taught, or else when you trot him in the like ground right out. And though you may

giue

giue him therwith a cariere, if you will: yet to auoid al disorders that might thereof insue, the surest and readiest waie is onelie to trot him: for otherwise you must tarie vntill he can run a cariere well, and stop as he ought to do, which perhaps would be to long. And of what soeuer disposition or mettall the horse be, dul or quick, forget not in any wise in the selfe same instant, that you put spurs vnto him, to helpe him with your voice, or else with the sound of your lips, and that shall put by all shrewd toies, whereof perhaps he might otherwise shew you some, as to leape, to fling, to caste his head betwixt his legs, to lie downe or such like. And if you see that the spurre doth make him to spring forward, and to amende his pace, then make much of him, and so by little and little you shall bring him acquainted with the spur well inough, and in time to know all the helpes and corrections of the same.

But if you haue to spurre a horse that is somewhat in yeares, and of nature ramege or restife: then see that in ante wise you spurre him not at the first, either when you trot him, or run him, but onelie while you pace him fair and softlie through some town or citie, and so going, sodenlie put spurres vnto him, helping him in the selfsame instant with your voice, or with the sound of your lips, and force him therewith to fall into a swift trot, the length of twentie or thirtie paces, which if he doeth, make much of him, and for a while vse him thus halfe a score times in a daie, vntill he bee perfect in that: which when you see he is, then you may goe into the fielde, and there whilest you trotte him in some newe plowed ground, spurre him and helpe him as before, making him to gallop as hard as he may driue a prettie waie together, and then staie, making much of him, if he did well. Thus proceeding from soft pace to trot, and from trot to gallop, by continuall exercise you shall make him both to feare the spur, and also to know the helpe thereof. Notwithstanding, there be some horses of nature verie liuelie and sensible, which through euill breaking at the first, and afterward by sufferance, haue beene so euill accustomed, as they will neuer yéeld to the spurre, but so sone as they féele it, they wil leape and fling, and take on like spirits. Wherefore, if ante such Horse chance to come into your handes, first for a while ride him without spurres, and vse him to tread the ringes, vntill hee hath learned

learned to go quietlie in the same, and to keep the true path: which when you see hee doeth, then ride him with both spurres, and also with a good wand in your hand. And whilest he treadeth the Ring, in some new plowed ground with deepe furrowes, when time is, touch him with your spurres at sundrie times thrice, and if he wil then plaie his vagarie, beat him forthwith with your wand vpon the head on both sides, and betwixt the eares, and vppon his forelegges, all to rating him at the selfesame present with a terrible voice, and neuer leaue him vntill you haue made him to yeeld vnto the spurre, without making any resistance at al. And to the intent that he may suffer the pricke of the spurre the better, it shall be necessarie to wearie him, sometime with continuall turning and trotting him round, and ouerthwart the furrowes, and sometime by trotting and galloping him right out in one path to and fro. By means of which trauell and often spurring him together, he shall fall into suche a sweate and heate, that the strokes shall grieue him the lesse. By meanes whereof, he shall not onelie bee content to abide the spurre, but also learne by the stroke thereof, to know your will and to obeie the same, and so much the more if you shall not forget when hee doeth well, to make muche of him. But note by the waie, that this last order belongeth to a Horse of great courage, for if you shoulde in such sort molest and wearie a horse of a dull spirit he would giue ouer, and for faintnes become restife: and therefore a good consideration must be had, as wel to the horses strength as to his vice.

But now, though I shewed you in the last chapter before, how many kinds of strokes of the spur there were, and generally how and when to be vsed: yet let it not greeue you that I repeate here some part thereof once againe with some little addition not to be left out. First then, whensoeuer your horse will not turne as you would haue him, or be stiffer necked of one side than of another, or will not carie his head right, nor continue his trot, you shall correct him alwaies with the single stroke of the contrarie spur: but if he ware slowe in his trotte, bearing his head and necke right, then you shall correct him with the euen stroke of both spurs together: for that stroke properly serueth to quicken him and to make him goe forwarde, and vnproperlie for the other purposes in the

former.

former chap. rehearsed. It is requisite also that I shew you some what more plainlie how to correct your horse with one spur after another, which I called before the clinching stroke, the order wher of is thus. When your horse committeth a fault of any side, as for example on the left side, then giue him with one spur immediatlie after another, three strokes. Wherof the first and last must be on the right side, but if hee erreth on the right side, then the first & last stroke must be on the left side. And note, that after your horse will abide the spurre, and also knoweth the helpes therof, it shall not be good to spur him often, but onlie when you see it very needfull, as to direct his head and necke, when he reaneth not well, or to helpe him in his single or double turnes when you mannege him, or else to giue him swiftnesse when he passeth a cariere: for ouermuch spurring will make him swing tailed, and speciallie if he be a Iennet or Turky horse, whose tailes be alwaies loose and at libertie, and are not tied as the coursers be.

Of the Musroll and the Martingale. Chap. xiiii.

TO these forsaid kinds of helps and corrections I think that Grison would haue added the musroll & the martingale, but that they seemed perchance vnto him extraordinarie things and not meet to be vsed but at certain times, and speciallie the martingale. Which though it was first inuented by Euangelista, an excellent rider, and a great horsmaister of Millan, not onlie to make the horse to haue a steddie head, but also to make him light before in his aduancing, & in his going to gather his bodie round together: yet Grison seemeth not greatlie to allow it: albeit he saith it may be vsed when the horse is verie heauie before, and maruellously vnstaid of hed, neither would he haue the horse weare it aboue xv. daies together at the most: thinking it indeede a great deale better, to bring the horse from such faults by such meanes as are by him hereafter taught. But he praiseth much the Musroll, saieng that if the horse do naturallie keepe his mouth close together, that then it cannot hurt him: but if he holde it open, then it doth not onelie helpe him, but also correct him of that fault in such sort, as after that he hath beene vsed a little thereunto, it will make him steddie, both of mouth, head, and necke, and to reane as he should doe.

Of the Horses lessons in generall, and order thereof, and in what time of the day he should be taught. Chap. i.

THus having declared vnto you, with what instrumentes you shoulde helpe or correct your Horse, and generallie howe, and when to vse them, and also how and when to cherish him, all which things do onlie appertaine to the Riders office: I thinke it therefore now meet to shew you what the horse hath to learn for his part, and also what order you shall kéepe in breaking him: for if a horse be taught vnorderlie, hee shall neuer be perfect in anie thing. As for example, if you (as some men doe for lacke of skil) would vse to gallop your horse, before he can stoppe well in his trot: or to runne him, before he can stop well in his gallop: or to manege him with a swift gallop, before he can stop, aduance, and turne readilie on both handes, you shall marre him for euer. And therefore take héede that ye duelie follow this order heere following.

First, you must vse great diligence in making him to treade softlie, to keepe one pathe, and to trot cleane, which is one of the chiefest points of all, because it is harder by nature for a Colt to trot well, then to go softlie, to run or to gallop.

Secondlie, you must teach him to be light at stop.

Thirdlie, to aduance before, and to parke behinde.

Fourthlie, to turne readilie on both handes, with single turne and double turne.

Fiftlie, to make a sure and readie manege.

Sixtlie, to passe a swift Cariere.

And finallie, if your horse be nimble and apt thereto by nature, you may make him a Stirer, by teaching him to bound aloft, and to parke withall: to gallop the gallop-galliard, to fetche the Capriole, to doe the Corsetti, and such kinds of saultes: and in al his doings, from the beginning to the ending, you must sée that hee reine well, and beare his head steddilie, which is the foundation

of

of all the reſt.

And by obſeruing this order, with all the rules thereto belonging, in ſuch ſort as ſhall be hereafter taught: ye ſhall within the ſpace of foure or fiue monethes, make your horſe perfect in all points. Notwithſtanding, there be ſome yong horſes ſo ſlowe of growth, as although they can do their thinges orderlie: yet they ſhew no ſtrength or force in their doings, vntill they be fiue or ſix yeares old, becauſe their ioints before that time are not ful knit, nor their mouthes throughlie ſtaied. And note, that from ſix yeares to fiftéene, a horſe being not maimed nor hurt, may verie well continue in his goodneſſe: yea, and ſome horſes perhaps wil continue vnto xx. yeares and aboue, as the examples before recited, doe well teſtifie.

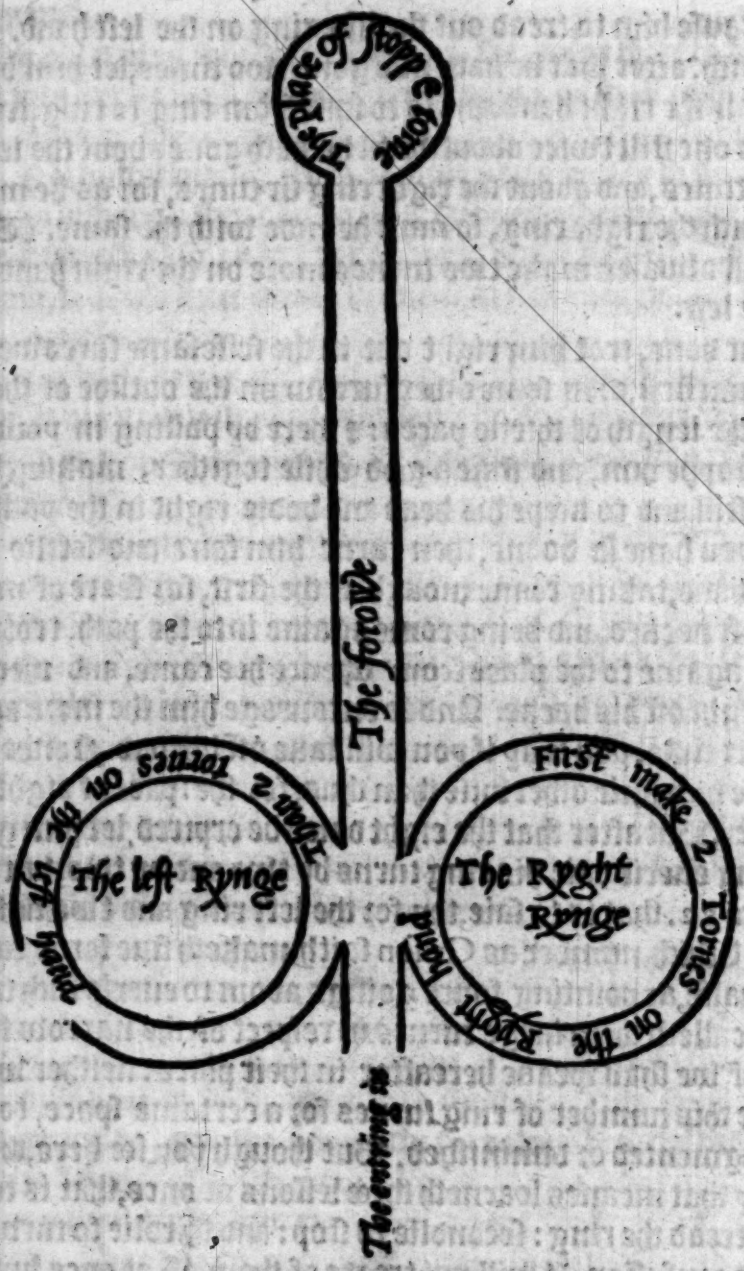
Moreouer, ſée that you teach your horſe earelie in the morning, before you giue him his prouender, not failing in the beginning of his breaking, vntill he be ſomewhat perfect, to ride him euerie daie once. And afterward to ride him twiſe in a week ſhal ſuffice, vnleſſe you ſée that ſuch reſt doeth cauſe him to forget his leſſons, for then, vntill he hath gotten that which he had loſte, it ſhall be requiſite to ride him againe euerie daie one houre at the leaſt, or ſo long time as he is able well to endure, leauing him alwaies with a good mouth. For to take ouermuch of a horſe at once, is the next waie to make him faint hearted and reſtife.

The order of treading the Ring, and to what end it ſerueth. Chap. ii.

AND the intent then that your horſe may haue a loftie pace, trot cleane, and learne to keepe one path, you ſhall firſt cauſe him to be brought into the fielde, into ſome newe plowed grounde, and the déeper the furrowes bee, the better to make him lift his féete: whereas after that you haue taken his backe, you ſhall trotte him right out about the length of a hundred paces. That doone, you ſhall enter a good waie into one of the furrowes, in ſuch part of the lande as you may haue ſpace enough, and mould inough round about you, and there on the right hand ouerthwart the furrowes, make him to tread out twice together a round ring, conteining in circuit about xxv. or xxx. paces: and being come about at the ſecond time to the place where he began

gan, cause him to tread out the likering on the left hand. About the which, after that he hath also gone two times, let him begin again on the right hand, and so to shift from ring to ring, treading euerie one still twice about, vntil he hath gone about the left ring foure times, and about the right ring six times, for as he must begin with the right ring, so must he ende with the same. Whereby he shall alwaies make two turnes more on the right hande, than on the left.

That done, trot him right out in the selfesame furrowe where he began first, or in some other furrow on the outside of the right ring, the length of thirtie paces: & there by pulling in your bridle hand stoppe him, and staie a good while togither, making him to stand still and to keepe his head and bodie right in the path. And when you haue so doone, then turne him faire and softlie on the right hand, taking roome inough at the first, for feare of making him soft necked, and being come againe into the path, trotte him backe againe to the place from whence hee came, and there you shall light off his backe. And to encourage him the more against the next time, you may if you will take off his pad. Neither shall you vse him anie otherwise than thus, for the space of eight daies togither. But after that the eight daies be expired, let him goe, increasing euerie daie his ring turns by two and by two, vntill hee come to 22. that is to saie, ten for the left ring and twelue for the right. Which number as Grison saith, maketh fiue large turnes, and a halfe, appointing foure goings about to euerie such turne: and he calleth them large turnes in respect of the narrow turns, whereof we shall speake hereafter in their place: neither woulde he haue this number of ring turnes for a certaine space, to be either augmented or diminished. But though you see here, that the horse by that meanes learneth three lessons at once, that is to say: first to tread the ring: secondlie to stop: and thirdlie to turne: yet to auoid confusion, I will not treate of them all at once, but of euerie one particularlie by himselfe. And first, to the intent you should the better vnderstand of what sort the ringes ought to be, behold here this figure following, liuely expressing both rings togither, with the furrowe and place of stopping and turning.



There is also another fashion of a ring, which bicause it serueth onelie as a correction, when your horse is harder to turne on the right hand than on the left, I will not therefore speake of it here, but reserue it vntill I come to treat of the correction of that fault.

It

If your Horſe be weake and feeble, you may cauſe the rings to be troden out before with ſome other horſe, to the intent that hee may haue the better will to follow in a waie readie beaten to his hand: and alſo if he chance to ſwarue out of the path, he ſhall the ſoner perceiue his errour, and thereby the quicklier returne into the right path againe. And though your horſe be not weake: yet it ſhall be beſt at the firſt not to tread out the rings with a trot, but rather with a ſoft pace, vntill the path be ſomewhat beaten, that he may ſee his waie where he goeth, and then to followe on with an indifferent trot: yea and if your horſe bee ouer liuelie, or too quicke, you ſhall not ſuffer him to trot the rings at all: but onlie to pace them faire and ſoftlie for certaine daies together, vntill he be ſomewhat ſtaied and acquainted with them. For otherwiſe, he will beare too hard vpon your hand, and ſeeke to flee out.

And when the ring pathes, through continuall treading ware ſomwhat hard: you may ſhift into a new place, where the ground is newlie eared with deepe furrowes, and that (as I ſaide before) ſhall make him to lift high. Albeit, Griſon in his fourth booke, doth not allowe often changing in the beginning, vnleſſe that neceſſitie ſo forceth, ſaieng, that the Horſe being continuallie taught in one place, ſhall the better remember his leſſons: yea, and alſo his corrections, whereby there ſhall be bred in him as it were an habite of well doing. Notwithſtanding, when you come to manege your horſe, or to paſſe a Cariere, I would not wiſh you to vſe alwaies one place, or one length, leaſt he be to ſeek when you change places, thinking that he ſhould not do it anie other where: or if he do it, not to paſſe his accuſtomed length, and ſo perchance ſtop before you would haue him.

But there be ſome which will not vſe their horſes to two rings but to one onelie, which is very euill for a yong horſe, becauſe it will make him faint harted and fearfull: for when he commeth to the place where he is wont to be turned, he will ſtriue to go forth right, and ſo perhaps become reſtife, or at the leaſt not go in the ring ſo euenlie and ſo luſtily as he ſhould do. Notwithſtanding to a horſe of ſome yeares & of a liuely ſpirit, it may ſometime be very wel alowed, and eſpecially if he be ſtiffe necked and hard to turn: yea, and alſo to ſhew, that though the forme of the rings be therby

some what altered: yet he should alwaies keepe in one tune. After that your horse hath worne the bridle a while, and is well acquainted therewith, you may increase your ring turnes everie daie, by two for ech ring, vntill you come to xiviii. which make xi. large turnes and a halfe, that is xxi. for the left ring, and xxiiii. for the right, according as your horse shall be in breath, and able to endure it: otherwise a lesse number may suffice, for ouermuch labor doth weaken a yong horse, which weakenesse doth not appeare in some, vntill they bee foure or fiue yeares olde: for at the first the feare that he hath of his rider, maketh him to vnite his force together, and to beare it out the more stoutlie. But after that he is wel acquainted with his rider, he will not shew so much force in his labour and trauell as he did before, but his naturall weakenesse will then appear, and so much the more, as he shal grow in greatnesse, and be laden with flesh. Notwithstanding the number of turnes aboue said, is conuenient for any horse of an indifferent strength: for 62. turnes may suffice anie horse, be hee neuer so strong or good of breath, vnlesse he be to vnreasonable strong, in age, euil broken before, and vsed to libertie: for then to breake him of his stubbornnesse, it shall not be onelie requisite to giue him 62. turnes, but also 122. but that seldome for feare of weakning his backe, yea, & perchance euerie member beside. But most commonlie after the wearing of his bridle, obserue the number of 46. which you shall not increase, but vpon such occasion as is afore said, nor yet diminish the same, vnlesse it be when you trotte him, and turne him to and fro in manege wise, after that you become out of the rings, whereof we shall treat hereafter in his place.

The helpes and corrections meete to be vsed whilest hee treadeth the rings, also when you shall gallop the ringes, and to how many good purposes it serueth. Chap. iii.

IF your horse in treading the Ring, trotteth not fast enough, or bee ramege, that is to saie, not keeping a iust pace, but fareth as one that were in two mindes, not caring whether he went or not: or if he will suddenlie stop before his lesson bee ended, then quicken him often with your voice or with the sound of your lips before mentioned, & by little

and

and little, make him know the helpe of your leg and hæle, by strikíng him sometime with one leg or hæle, and somtime with both, according as his fault shall require. The order whereof is before declared in the first booke, the 11. chapter. And to make him goe the faster, it shall be good for the most part to holde your contrary legge in his sight, and likewise your rodde, when you come to beare one. As for example, if he be stiffer on the right side than on the left, then hold vp your left leg, and lay your rod crosse ouer his left shoulder. But if he be harder on the left side, then holde out your right leg, & holde your rod right out not far from the horses right eie, remembring alwaies to hold the reines of your bridle, the one shorter than the other, in such sort as I taught you in the first booke the 7. chapter. But if he be ramege either by nature, or by euil breaking, then make him to tread the ringes first with a swift trot, and then with so hard a gallop as he can driue, helping him in due time with your voice, rod, or spurre, as occasion shall require, and that shall make him to forget toies, and to attend his waie: but see that you gallop not him first, for feare of making him restife. And this way serueth to correct a great many of other faults, as the lightnesse and plaieng with his head, and when hee draweth vp his tongue and will not stay his mouth vppon the bit as he ought to do. Or if he go iumping without order, or flinging with his hæles, likewise if he be too hastie or furious, this will stay him, and cause that he shall afterwarde stop the better in his Cariere, and not run awaie. Also if he vse to pisse alwaies when hee is handled, this taken in time will correct him. And finallie, if hee be slowe and dull, this will quicken him. But if he be very liuely and quicke of himselfe: then you shall doe cleane contrarie to this, that is to saie, you shall neither giue him swift trot, nor gallop. And whensoeuer you gallop your horse, remember alwaies to helpe him more or lesse with your voice, rodde or spurre, according as the qualitie of the horse shall require: and when hee doeth well, to cherish him. But though the gallopping of the ring, serueth to so many good purposes, as you haue heard: yet for the most part, let him tread the rings with a good round trotte, and not to gallop them at all, vnlesse some of the foresaide occasions do so require.

Of ſtopping. Chap. iiii.

HItherto we haue ſpoken of treading the rings onlie, now we will ſhew you how you ſhall teach your horſe to ſtop. I told you before, that hauing ended the number of your ring turnes, you ſhould trotte your horſe right out in the middle furrow betwixt the rings, vntill you come to the place of ſtop, and there to ſtaie a good prettie while togither, kéeping his bodie right in the path, which if he will not do, but ſtand ouerthwartlie, either with his forepartes or hinder partes, or elſe perchance with his whole bodie cleane out of the path: then ſée that ye touch him at the firſt neither with heele nor rod, leaſt he not knowing the one nor the other bee diſtempered, and perchance fall a running away. But you ſhall appoint a ſwtman to ſtand at the place of ſtop, who ſhall direct him into the right path, by thruſting him with his handes on that ſide which ſtandeth out of order. And this waie is not onelie good for a yong horſe, but alſo for anie other horſe that is in age, and by meanes of euill breaking hath béene accuſtomed to ſtop wrong, but then the ſwtman beſides thruſting him with his handes, may alſo chaſtiſe ſuch a horſe with a rod, by ſtriking him therewith on that ſide that he erreth: or if you will not ſo do, you may cauſe your horſe to go ſtill in the ſame path a yard or two further forward, and there ſtop him, holding the rein of his headſtraine ſtraighter on that ſide whereon he moſt forceth your hand, than on the other, and that ſhall kéepe him whether hee will or not, in the right path.

And after that he beginneth to be ſomewhat obedient vnto you, you may direct him into the right pathe when he ſtoppeth wrong, with the ouerplus of the reines of his headſtraine, by beating him therewith moderatelie, vpon that ſhoulder or rumpe that ſtandeth furtheſt out of order. But beware in anywiſe that you ſtrike him with no rod, before he come to weare a bridle.

It is very good alſo to trot him to ſome hanging ground, called of the Italians, Pendino, and there to ſtoppe him ſomewhat downe the hill, but therein you muſt vſe good diſcretion in chooſing ſuche a grounde as ſhall be méet for the purpoſe. For a yong horſe manie times will be afraide to ſtop downe the hill, and ſpeciallie if it be ouer ſteépe: yea, and it may do him more harme than good,

being

being an occasion perchance that he shall neuer after be light of stop. Wherefore, at the first it shall be best to stoppe him in such a ground as shalbe neither too steepe, nor yet too plaine, but betwirt both, as that is which somthing falleth, & riseth immediatly again: so shall not the horse be afraid of it. And afterwarde, when hee is growne in age, and hath more force and strength, you may be the bolder to stop vpon a steeper ground, according as you shal think it needful. And let this suffice you for this time, because we shal be forced to speak more of stopping in the chapters next following.

Of going backe, and to what end it serueth, and how and when you shall teach your horse to do it. Chap. v.

After that your horse hath worn the bridle, and knoweth the rod and spurre, you shall teach him when he hath stopt be it vpon a hanging ground, or otherwise, to go backeward three or foure steps, which will not onelie stale his mouth, and make him light of head, but also to lift his legs, and to be the more apt to aduance before. For the which cause it were necessarie to talke of this before I proceed any further.

To teach your horse then to go backe, you must so soone as hee hath stopt, pull in your bridle hand moderatlie, according as the horses resistance shall require, and so keeping your hande steddie without giuing him any libertie, strike him faire and softly vpon the bowing of his necke with your rod, saying vnto him with a soft voice in that instant. Back, back, I saie, and solicit him in that sort a prettie while together: for the which if he will not moue his legs, or doth make any resistance, then spur him in time, first with one spurre, and then with another, but most on that side whereas you see his hinder partes to stand most out of order, to the intent that he may go right in the path. And besides this, you may haue a footman to stand at the place of stop, with a rod in his hand, who in the selfe same time that you will pull in the bridle, shall knock him faire & softlie with his rod vpon the knees, & seldome or neuer vpon the snowt. And sometime let him onelie threaten him without beating him at al: but if this will not suffice, then let the same man take the cheekes of the bit in his hand, and so force him to go backe, not leauing to molest him, sometime one waie, and some-

time another, vntill at the leaſt hee hath made him to pull backe one foote. And whenſoeuer he doth well, be readie immediatlie to cheriſh him for the ſame, and then let him ſtay a while. That done, cauſe him to doe the like againe, by pulling in the bridle onelie, and none otherwiſe. For the making much of him before, will cauſe him to goe backe of his owne accord with both legs, if not, then by correcting him in ſuch ſort as is aforeſaid, you ſhall force him to goe backe whether he will or not.

Of aduancing whereto it ſerueth, and where, how, and when you ſhall teach him to do it. Chap. vi.

ADuance, is a tearme vſed of our horſmen, ſignifiing that which the horſe doth, when at the ſtop he liſteth vp both his forefæt euen togither, ſomwhat aboue the ground, and letteth them fall again twice or thrice togither, which the Italians called Far le poſate, and it is ſo neceſſarie a thing, as without it the horſe can neuer manege well, nor turn readilie, as hereafter you ſhall well perceiue. Wherefore, when your horſe can ſtop well, and will alſo goe backwarde when you would haue him, it is meet to teach him to aduance.

And as it is not amiſſe to teach it him, when you ſtoppe him in the furrowe betwixt the two rings, ſo is it very good alſo to go into ſome long ſandie waie which is euen and plaine, and there, after that you haue trotted him right out with a very ſwift trot, the length of fortie fot or thereabout, to ſtoppe him, helping him immediatlie with your voice, and alſo with both ſpurres euen togither, and ſometime with your rod, by ſtriking him therewith on the right ſhoulder, but ſeldome on the left. And if he will not aduance for that, no not ſo much as with his right legge: then keeping ſtill a ſteddie hand vpon him, correct him immediatlie twice or thrice togither with the euen ſtroke of your ſpurres, or elſe with one ſpurre after another, helping him alwaies with your voice, as by ſaieng vnto him, Huppe, huppe: or ſuch like word. And immediatlie after, trotte him out againe the like diſtance with a ſwift trot, and at the ſtop doe as you did before, continuing ſtill the ſame, vntill you haue made him to lift his feete from the ground, and to aduance thrice, or twice togither at the leaſt, which when

when he doth, though it be but meanelie, yet make much of him, and coie him with your right hande, or with your sticke, by clawing him therewith on the necke nigh vnto the withers, suffering him there to staie a while: that done, trotte him forth againe, and at the next stoppe, you shall see that so soone as hee heareth your voice, he will aduance of his owne accorde, not onelie with one leg, but with both: yea and so many times togither, as you will haue him.

And in so doing, you shall seldome helpe him with your spurs, or rod, but onelie with the calfes of your legges, and with your voice, which must alwaies be one. And if the grounde where hee stoppeth be somewhat hanging, it shall be so much the more easie for him. But after that he can aduance, and doth vnderstande the helpes of the voice, rodde, and spurre, beware that yee vse not to giue him such short stoppes one after another, least he take a custome to stoppe sooner, and therewith to aduance higher than you would haue him: but rather trotte him right out the iust length of a Cariere, towardes the knoll of some hill, and there stoppe him vpon the browe thereof, or steeper downe, according as the qualitie of the horse shall require, helping him as is aforesaide. For assure your selfe, that a hanging ground is very necessarie, and speciallie when the horse is not apt of himselfe to bowe his houghes behinde: for the horse that is naturallie light, hath not so much néed of a hanging ground, because that hee with a little helpe in plaine ground, will learne to stoppe euen vpon his buttocks, which is the chiefest grace of the stoppe. For vnlesse the horse in his stoppe doth bowe his houghs orderlie, and run sliding on his hinder legges, neither stoppe nor aduancing shal be praise worthie.

When your horse can stop and aduance well in his trotte, then you may teach him in the like grounds to do the same vpon a gallop, vsing the selfe same order, helpes and corrections, that are aboue written. And forget not in any wise to make much of him when he doeth well, but for the most part let him continue the doing thereof vpon a trotte: for that shall make him so light and so perfect, as when you come afterward to gallop him, or to runne him he shall not be to seeke therein.

Correctiõs to bee vſed when your horſe aduaunceth too high, or out of order, or when you would not haue him. Chap. vii.

IF your Horſe aduanceth to high, or liftes not vp his feet euen together, and with ſuch grace as he ought to doe, correct him immediatlie with the euen ſtroke of your ſpurs, and ſometime with your rod alſo, ſtriking him therwith vpon the flanks: that done, put him forward again the length of a ſhort maneging courſe, and there ſtop, helping him to aduance with your voice, and if need bee, with the calfes of your legges, or with your ſpurres, or elſe with your rod vppon his right ſhoulder, and ſometime with altogither, according as you ſhall ſée it néedfull. Or after that you haue corrected him, you may if you wil without putting him forward, turne him, and go backe again in the ſelfe path a good pretie waie, and then to returne from thence with a good round trot, and to ſtop him vpon the ſame knoll where he ſtopt before, and ſo to continue returning ſtill to and fro, vntil he hath amended his fault, and aduanceth as you woulde haue him, which when he doth, make much of him, and let him ſtay a good while after, for the longer that you ſtay him, the more perfect you ſhall make him.

If your horſe hath gotten an euill cuſtome to ſtoppe, and to aduance withall, ſuddenlie, or oftener than you woulde haue him, which fault moſt commonlie is incident to yoong horſes, then correct him immediatly with your voice, & alſo with your rod vpon his flanks, and ſometime vpon his forlegs: yea and if néed bee with your ſpurs euery maner of way, forcing him to go forward, and not to aduance, but when you ſhall prouoke him thereunto, either with voice, ſpurres, legs, or rod, or with all togither, according as the horſes qualitie ſhall require. For ſome horſe is ſo vile of courage, and ſo dull of vnderſtanding, as if you alwaies vſe to helpe him with ſpurres at the ſtoppe, then ſo often as you ſhall ſpurre him, to make him go forward, he wil by and by ſtoppe and aduance, and the more ye ſpurre him, the worſe he will be, and in perchance become reſtiſe. Wherfore you muſt vſe great diligence and good diſcretion, in making him to knowe by the hard or looſe bearing your bridle hand, when you helpe him with your ſpurres

to

to go forward, and when to stop. And vntill he be perfect therein, it shall be best to helpe him at the stop onelie with your voice, and not to vse your spurres or rod, but when you doe correct him, or else when you would haue him go forward.

when and how to teach your horse to yarke, and to make him light behind. Chap. viii.

If your horse be of conuenient age, and growne to his full strength, and therewith haue a good backe, and able to endure (for otherwise it should doe him more harme than good:) then hauing taught him to stoppe, and to aduance before, you may teach him also to yarke behind, by helping him in his aduancing with your voice, and with your rod, beating him therewith behind, sometime on the one side, and sometime on the other. And if néede be, you may also helpe him with the euen stroke of your spurres, not leauing to molest him in such sort, vntill you see that he beginneth to gather vp his rumpe, and to lift his hinder legs, which doing, you shall leaue beating, and make much of him, and afterwarde you shall see that with a verie litle helpe, he will fall vnto it of his owne accord. You may also, if you will, appoint a footman that hath some skill to stande behind you with a long rod in his hand, who at the stop whilest your horse aduanceth, may helpe him with his voice, and by beating him on the hanches and on the rumpe, cause him to yarke, which waie is verie good, so that your horse bee not ouer linelie, and therewith also naturallie headstrong, for then perchance it will make him to spring forward, and to fall a running: wherefore vntill he hath a staid mouth, it were better to vse the first waie, or else to bring him vnto it in the stable in this sort.

When you come into the stable stand behind him with a long rod in your hand, and beate him therewith on the mid rumpe, helping him in that instant with that voice wherewith ye vse to make him light behind, not ceasing to molest him in that sort, vntill he gather vp his rumpe, and cast out both his héeles euen together, and that of a iust height twice or thrice together, which doing, you shall leaue beating, & make much of him, suffering him to rest a good while after. Thus soliciting him twice or thrise a day, you shal

make him ſo light and ſo readie of his heeles, that he will yarke ſo ſone as he ſhal but heare your voice, or the whiſk of your rod, and when he can doe it well in the ſtable, then to make him the more perfect therin abroad, you may when you ride him, cauſe a footmã to ſtand behind you with a long ſticke in his hand, who by threatning him, and beating him on the rump, may cauſe him to yark ſo often as you ſhall think it meet: and if your horſe be very light and nimble of himſelfe, you may teach him alſo to leap at the ſtop, and to yarke withall. But ſith that leaping is more meet for a ſtirring horſe than for a horſe of ſeruice, and alſo for that there be diuers kinds of leapes, I will not therefore treat of that here, but defer it vntil I haue ſhewd you the order of turning & maneging

How to teach your horſe to turne readily on both hands. Chap. ix.

I Intend to ſpeake here of the narrow & ſtraight turns and not of the large turnes, otherwiſe called Ring turnes, for we haue talked of them ſufficiently before. And firſt you ſhall vnderſtand, that of the narrowe turnes there bee three kindes, that is to ſaie, halfe turne, whole turne, and double turne. The halfe turne is when the horſe turneth on the one ſide, ſetting his head that waie that his taile before ſtode, and is called the halfe turne, for the horſe maketh but halfe a circle: but if hee doubleth the ſame and ſetteth his heade that waie it ſtod at the firſt, then it is called a whole turne, for in turning round about he maketh a circle complete. And two ſuch whole turnes do make a double turne, which Griſon calleth Volta raddopiata, who appointeth to euerie ſuch turne foure halfe turns, which may bee otherwiſe called ſingle turnes. And note, that in turning, diuers things are to be obſerued. Firſt, that he bring in the contrarie leg vpon the other, and that he carrie his legs neither too high nor too low: alſo that hee keepe his ground, neyther preſſing forward, nor yet reeling backward in his turning: alſo that he keepe his bodie in one ſtaie, writhing neither head, neck, nor any part of his bodie, but to come in whole and rounde together, and to cloſe his turne in ſo narrow a rome as may be. But firſt you ſhall teach him to make the ſingle or halfe turnes in this ſort and order here following.

When

When you are come out of the rings, trot your horse right out in the middle furrowe vnto the place of stop, and there after that you haue stopt, turne him faire and softlie on the right hande, taking roome inough at the first as I shewed you before, for feare of making him soft necked: that done, giue him the like turne on the left hand, and then turn him againe on the right hand, remembring alwaies to begin with the right hand, and to ende with the same, and see that in euery turne he bring in the contrarie forefoot, vpon the other forefoote. As for example, when you turne him on the right hand, cause him to lift vp his left forefoot, and to bring it in ouer the right forefoot, which you shall do by helping him with your voice, or with the sound of your tongue, before taught in the first booke the eight chap. in saieng to him, turne here, and by striking him with your rod moderatelie vpon the left shoulder. And when you turne him on the left hand, helpe him with your voice or tongue as before, and with your rod on the right shoulder to bring in the right forefoote ouer the left forefoote: which act, Grison calleth Incauallare, which is so much to saie, as to lappe one thing ouer another.

And note, that though your horse at the first doth not bring in his contrarie foot ouer the other orderlie, but perchance vnder the other, yea and that with knocking his legges together: it maketh no matter, for the greefe thereof shall be a good correction vnto him, and in time shall make him to amend his fault. But if he be harder to turne on the one hande than on the other, then you shall helpe him with the contrarie legge or spurre, or with your rodde, by beating him vppon the contrarie shoulder: and sometime to make him to close his turne truelie, it shall be needfull to helpe him with the closing stroke of your heeles or spurs. Which kinde of helpe is necessarie for two causes: first, for that it will make him to turne roundlie, as well with his hinder partes, as with his forepartes: Secondlie, because some horse is so quicke and so liuelie, as when he is touched but onelie on the contrarie side, he will turne perhappes with to stiffe a necke, loking the contrarie waie, or contrariwise, he will wrie his head or necke to much on that side that he hath to turne, or else turn beyond the place, and out of the right path in which he should close his turne.

Albeit

Albeit such helpe is not commonlie to bee vsed, but at certaine times when some great necessitie requireth it, for the first helpes are more kindlie, and therefore ought to be more ordinarie. But if he be so hard of anie side, as the foresaid helps cannot make him to turne when you woulde haue him, then you may vse these corrections here following.

How to correct your horse when hee is harder to turne of the one side than on the other, which fault is called of the Italians, Credenza. Chap. x.

BVt first I thinke it méete to shew you the causes of that fault, and then how to correct it, and you shal vnderstand that there be diuers causes, whereof one may be the naturall inclination, whereby euerie horse is more apt to turne on the left side than on the right. Secondly, the hardnes of the bit pinching his mouth on the one side may so greeue him, as he dare not turne on that side. Thirdlie, lacke of knowledge how to handle his legs, and to reine with his necke, may cause him to turne so frowardlie, and so vnwillinglie, as he féeling himself neuer so little wearie, will turne no more at that time, for any thing that ye can do. But to say the truth, wearines and lack of breath, may cause any horse, be he neuer so well broken to doe the same. Fourthlie, the ignorance of the Rider in helping him otherwise than he should so do, may make the horse so amazed, as he knoweth not what to doe, vnderstanding not the riders intent. Fiftly, the horse may be euill broken, and thereby be made harder of one side than another: for then if he be angred neuer so little, he will not turne perhaps on that side that you would haue him, and the worse, if he shall perceiue that you be afraid of him, and that you will suffer him to haue his owne will, and to turne which waie he list: for that shall be an occasion to make him more stubborne, and to continue still in his fault. But now, though Grison here according to euery one of these causes, could appoint proper corrections (which indéed were the best order of teaching) yet to auoid confusion (as he saith) he will not so do, but rather teach you such generall kindes of corrections as may amende that fault, of what cause soeuer it proceedeth.

And

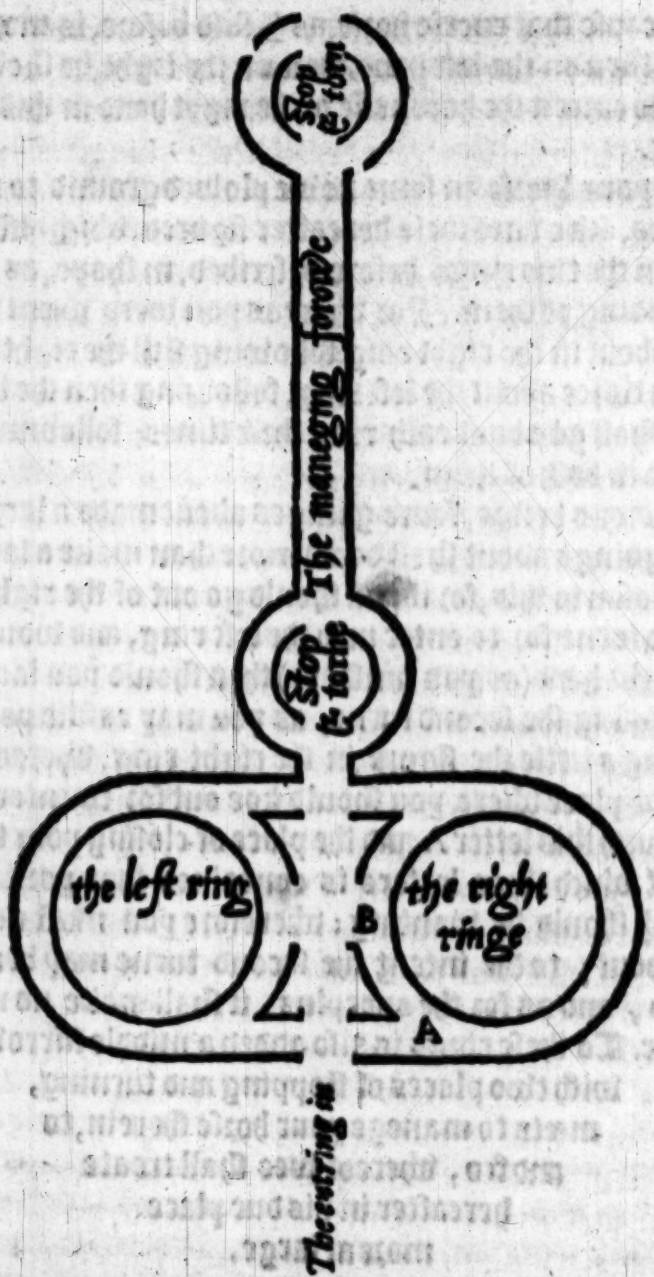
And because that euerie horse, as I said before, is more apt by nature to turn on the left hand, than on the right, he sheweth you first how to correct the hardnesse of the right hand in this sort here following.

Make your Horse in some newe plowed ground to tread out two ringes, like vnto these hereafter figured, which differ not so much from the two rings before described, in shape, as in the order of treading of them. For whereas you were wont before to go twise about in the right ring, following still the right hand, and then to go twice about the left ring, following then the left hand: now you shall go about each ring three times, following still the right hand in both of them.

And whereas before, foure goinges about made a large turne, now fiue goings about shall do no more than make a large turn: and the reason is this, for if you should go out of the right ring, at the second turne for to enter into the left ring, and would follow still the right hand (as you must doe) then should you lacke a good deale of closing the second turne, as you may easilie perceiue by considering a little the figure in the right ring, whereof I haue marked the place where you should goe out for to enter into the left ring, with this letter A. and the place of closing your turn with B. betwixt which twoe letters is contained that portion of the circle which should be wanting: wherefore you must needes goe thrice about, to the intent the second turne may bee fullie ended, and as for the ouerplus, it shall make no matter. To these rings is also added a middle furrow with two places of stopping and turning, meete to manege your horse therein, to and fro, whereof wee shall treate hereafter in his due place more at large.

Thus

55



THus you may continue shifting from ring to ring, and following still the right hande, vntill you see that hee beginneth somewhat to yéeld, which I beleeue he will doe, by that time that you haue trotted him about 45. times, which make seuen large turnes and a half, that is to saie 21. times about the left ring, and 24. times about the right ring: or if that sufficeth not, you may trot

trot him 27. times about the left ring, and 30. times about the right ring, which maketh 9. large turnes and a halfe, and that is a conuenient number for any horse hauing that fault, though he be right good of breath. And when he hath ended his ring turns, you may trot him right out in the middle furrow, the length of a good cariere, and there after you haue made him to stoppe and to aduance, you shall make much of him, and suffer him to state a good while, holding as well then, as at all other times (vntill he hath amended his fault) the right reane of his bridle shorter than the other. And after that he hath so pansed and is quiet, you shall cause a footman that hath some skill to stande right against him with a sticke in his hande, and whilest you moue your fist to turne your horse on the right hand, the footman in the same instant shal strike him with his sticke on the left side of his nose, & not to leaue beating him vntill he turne, not forgetting alwaies while he beates him, to vse that sound of the tongue which I taught you before. And to the intent that the horse at such time reare not right vppe, he may beate him sometime vppon the legges, by which so molesting him doubt ye not, but that you shall make him to turne as he ought to do, & hauing turned you shall first make much of him, and then trot him backe againe in the same path or furrow, euen hard to the edge of the rings from whence ye came. Whereas you shall appoint another footman to stand with a rod in his hand, to the intent that when you haue stopt your horse againe there, and are readie to turne him (which must be still on the right hand) the footman may rate him, by saieng, Turne villaine, or such like words: yea, and if néede be, also beat him in such sort as the other man did before. But if your horse be very hard to turne, then to make him do it the more easilie, you may at euery end of the path after that he hath stopt & aduanced, make him to go backe about two paces, and in his going back, turne him, but after that he beginneth to fall somewhat vnto it, beware that ye vse not then to make him go back, least he get an euill custom to make his turns altogither abandonate, and too much vpon his hinder loines.

Thus by trotting him vp and downe, and turning him two and fro fiue or seuen times togither, when you come out of the ringes, you shall in the space of three dates throughlie correct that fault, which

which fault, if it were not ouermuch, I would not wish you in his going to and fro, to turne him euerie time on the right hand, but first on the right hand, and then on the left interchangeablie, but so, as the first and last turne may be alwaies on the right hande, vsing alwaies such helps and corrections as are aboue said. But if your horse be harder to turne on the left hand than on the right, then begin first with the left ring, obseruing order meere contrarie in all thinges to the first, which I am sure that you can doe of your selfe without any more words.

Diuerse other corrections for the fault aboue said, whereof the first here followeth.

YOu may also correct that fault without riding him in any ring, or otherwise in this sort.

First, cause him to be brought into some long narrow waie, inclosed on both sides with hedge, dike, or wall, and there, after that you haue reined vp his head, by staieng the reins of the bridle with the button vpon his neck, if he be hard to turne on the right hande, fasten the one end of a good long cord or thong to the middle part of the bit on the right side, and tie the other end vnto his surcingle on the same side, straining it good and hard, for to make him bow his necke: that done, let him so remain in the middest, betwixt you and him that brought him, or some other whome you shall thinke meet, hauing each of you a rodde in your hand, with the which rods you shall chase him betwixt you from one to another, by striking him alwaies when hee commeth towardes either of you, vpon the left side of the nose, and no where else, and that shall make him turne on the right hand, not forgetting alwaies when you beate him, to helpe him with the sound of the tongue before declared, and you shall see that in a very little while, the onelie sound of the tongue, and the sight of the rods, wil make him to turne of his owne accord, without any beating at all. Yea the sound of the tongue it selfe is so good a warning vnto him, as if he be once accustomed thereunto, he will not tarte the beating: and though sometime he happe to fall downe in his turning it maketh no matter, for he will rise againe alone: yea and that shall be a very good correction vnto him. And when you see that he beginneth to wax somewhat wearie, lowsen the thong from

the

the surcingle, but not from the bit, and immediatlie get vppe on his backe, taking the lose ende of the thong in your right hande, which shall serue in stead of a false reine, and trot him forth the length of 10. or 12. paces, and there stop him, whereas one must stand with a rod in his hand, readie first to threaten him, and then if need be to beat him therewith vpon the left side of his nose, for to make him turne. And in the same instant you shall not onelie helpe him with your tong, but also by straining a little the thong which is in your right hand. And hauing turned, trot him backe againe to the place from whence he came, whereas may stand also another footman to helpe him at the stop, as the former didde, to turne againe on the same side: or for lacke of another man, you may turne him the second time on the left hand, and so trot him forth towards the first man.

Thus trotting and turning him to and fro, you shall correct him quicklie of that fault: neither shall you neede to vse the helpe of straining the corde or thong in his turne aboue twice or thrice at the most. For the sound of the tong, the feare of the footmannes rodde, and the holding of the right reine of his bridle shorter than the other, shall suffice. And note, that as the thong being put on the right side of the bitte doth correct the Horses hardnesse on the same side: so likewise if it be put on the left side it will correct the horse, that is hard to turne on the left side: for the sides & places of corrections onlie changed, the order is all one in both.

The second correction for the same fault.

YOu may also correct that fault by tieng a corde vnto the headstraine on that side that the horse is hard to turne, so as it may run through the ring thereof, to the intent that when you pull the corde, it may straine the horses head, and being let goe, it may slacke againe, the lose end of which corde, let some footman hold in his hand: and whilest you being on his back doe helpe him with your tong to turne, let the foteman pull the corde, whereunto if the horse be vsed a while, hee will afterwarde turne of himselfe, so soone as he shall heare the sound of the tong without the helpe of the corde.

The third correction of the same.

TAke a cord about a yard long, and tie the one end therof vnto the vppermoſt eie of the bride on that ſide that the horſe is not hard to turne, and let it come betwixt his nether lip and neather gums, and ſo paſſe through the vppermoſt eie of the bitte on the other ſide, beeing ſtrained ſo hard as the horſe can well indure it, and there ſtay it, by making a knot onelie vpon the cord, hard by the cheeke of the bit, without caſting the cord about the iron, ſo as it cãnot ſlip: the looſe end of which cord, when you ride your horſe, you ſhall hold in your hand in ſtead of a falſe reine, and ſo often as you pull your cord, & help him with your tong, you ſhall force him to turne whether he will or not. And leaſt a cord perhaps will gall your hand, you may if you will make it all of leather, ſauing that which muſt bee in the horſes mouth, for otherwiſe it would not grieue him.

The fourth correction.

THe fourth correction is, by putting the kirble hooke on that ſide that the horſe is moſte harde to turne: on the backſide of which hook, nert to the horſes lip, would be made two little ſharpe prickles, faſhioned like cockes ſpurs. Which kind of hooke Griſon calleth in his language, Guancietto: or if you will you may ſet thoſe prickes on the backſide of the linke whereon the ſaid hook hangeth, which link is made like an S. in this ſort S. ſo ſhal they prick him higher towards the mouth. And though ſome horſe is corrected by hauing thoſe pricks placed on the contrarie ſide: yet is it more kindelie to haue them placed where I haue ſhewed you before. Or in ſtead of both theſe waies, you may cauſe three little nailes to bee ſet on the backſide of his portſmouth, and it ſhall be as good. But beware in any wiſe that ye ſéeke not to correct this fault, by putting any iron engin within the horſes mouth as ſome men doe, which will cauſe a bit to be made of purpoſe, hauing the one ſide rougher than the other, which is the high waie to diſtember the horſes mouth, and to make him ſo as he ſhall neuer ſtaie well vpon any bit. Notwithſtanding a Scatch welted on the inſide is very neceſſarie ſometime for ſuch purpoſe, as I will ſhew you hereafter, when I come to ſpeake of the diuerſitie of bits, and whereto they ſerue.

The fift correction.

IF he wil not turn on that ſide that you would haue him, then let him turne on the other ſide, as he will himſelfe: and after that he hath begun, let him not leaue. But beat him vpon the head betwixt the eares, and all to rate him with your voice, forcing him to turne continuallie on that hand, ſo faſt as he may driue, euen till he be almoſt out of breath, and readie to giue ouer for verie wearineſſe, and you ſhall ſee, that with a little help, he will be eaſilie intreated to turne on the other ſide: which doone, you ſhall make much of him, and being once well corrected after this ſort, it is poſſible that he wil neuer haue that fault againe.

The firſt correction.

GO into ſome ſoft ground newlie plowed with déepe furrowes, and there firſt pace him faire and ſoftlie to & fro, the length of a maneging courſe: then followe on with a good round trot, and when he will not turne on that hand that you would haue him, all to rate him with a terrible voice, & beat him with a cudgel vpon the hed, betwixt the eares, and vpon both ſides of the head, and moſt vpon that ſide whereof he is moſt eaſie to turne, prouoking him to turne the other way, which if for all this he will not do, then without any reſpect, ſometime runne him, ſometime trot him, and ſometime gallop him, as faſt as hee may fling, now right out, now ouerthwart, and now round about as you your ſelfe ſhall think it moſt néedfull, not leauing to beat him, nor ſuffering him to reſt in any place, vntill you haue gotten the maiſterie. And though he chance to arme himſelfe to run awaie with you, whether ye will or not, neuer care for it, but rather correct him ſo much the more with your voice, in rating him, and crieng out vnto him, and afterward ſtop him, prouoking him in that your anger once againe to turne, which if he will not doe, then renue againe the ſelfſame correction, not leauing him vntill you haue made him to turne as he ſhould doe. And to the intent that in his turning he reare not right vp, you ſhall beat him with your rod from time to time betwixt the forelegs: but if he turne freelie about without ſtop or ſtaie, then make much of him, ſuffering him to pauſe a while: that doue, you may pace him too and fro faire and ſoft, and ſo often as hee will not turne orderlie, vſe

such hastie correction as before. And in so doing, I doubt not, but you shall breake him of that fault the first daie that ye shal so ride him: yea, perchance in lesse than an houre: for there is no way to be compared to this. But when you begin to take this waie, you must determine with your selfe not to depart the fielde, though you tarrie there from morning vntill night, vntill you haue cleane broken him from that fault. For otherwise you shall confirme him in his stubbornnesse, and make his faulte incureable. Thus we haue spoken hitherto of single turnes: it resteth nowe therfore that we talke somewhat of whole turnes & double turns, for wee shall haue occasion to talke more of single turnes when we come to treat of the order of maneging.

Of the whole turnes and double turnes, how and when to teach your horse to make them. Chap. xvii.

After that you be com out of the rings, & that your horse hath stopt, aduanced and pausd a while, in such place and order as is aforesaid: then whilest he is quiet, & standeth euen with his bodie, giue him two whole turnes on the right hand, one immediatly after another, helping him with your tongue, or with your rodde vpon the contrarie shoulder, or else with the calfe of your left legge, and seldome with your Spurre. That done, giue him other two whole turnes on the lefte hande, vsing like helpes, and then two turnes againe on the right hand, and then staie a while, making much of him. And see that in his turning, he bring ouer the contrarie leg orderlie, and that in closing his turne, he set his head euen where it stood at the first. And note here, that you may begin the double turnes two manner of waies, for you may chose whether you will haue him turne at the second or third bound of his aduancing, or else at the first bound, which indeede requireth not so much obseruance of time and measure as the other doth.

But if your horse bee not very apte vnto the double turnes, it shall not be amisse to ride him into some long lane or way, and at the hither end therof, immediatlie vpon his stop, to giue him one or two whole turnes faire and softlie on the right hand, that don, to put him gentlie forwarde about two paces, and there to giue him the like turnes on the left hand, and then to go two paces further

ther, and there to turne him againe in like manner on the right hand, and so to follow on in turning him still at euery two paces end, helping him alwaies with your tongue, with your rod, with the contrary leg or spurre: yea, and if neede be, with the closing stroke of both spurres. And when you are come to the further end of the lane or way, giue him three whole turnes, whereof the first and last must be on the right hande, and so leaue off for that time. But note this by the way, that whensoeuer he faileth in so going, to turne well on any side, that then you must turne him again at the next two paces end on the same side, and also correct him with the contrarie spurre, continuing still so to do, vntill he hath amended his fault, which if he doe, you shall make much of him. And if the way or lane be short where you breake him, then being come to the furthest end thereof, you may turne backe againe in the selfe same path, vsing the former order in making him to turne at euery two paces end, so long time together as you shall think méete. After this, you must séek to make him swift in his double turnes, for it is not inough to bring ouer the contrary legge orderlie, and to turne truelie and decentlie, but also he must turne swiftlie and roundly, for which intent you shall vse this order following.

Make him to trot or gallop the length of a short Cariere, and there stop, causing him to aduance once, twice, or thrice together, that done (helping him with your voice and left spur: yea, and if néede bee, with the closing stroke) first turne him loftilie on the right hande, setting his head that way his taile stoode, which shall be halfe a turne, and there staie a while, then close it vp with another halfe turne on the same hand, setting his head and all his bodie in the same path euen as it was at the first, & then make him to doe as much on the left hande, and so to change from hande to hand, ending alwaies on the right. And by often soliciting him in this sort, you shall not onelie make him to turne swiftlie, but also loftilie, or of an indifferent height, euen as you liste your selfe. And when you sée him readie inough in this, then you may cause him to close the whole turne roundly together, without making any stoppe or staie at the first halfe turne. If your Horse know how to handle his forelegges, then giue him on each hande

two whole turnes, allowing two halfe turnes to one whole turn, and at the end of euerie thirde halfe turne, helpe him with your tongue, rodde, or contrarie spurre, and if neede bee with the closing stroke, so shall hee close the last halfe turne, both quickelie, roundlie, and comelie: but as the two laste halfe turnes woulde bee done speedilie, so would the two first halfe turnes bee doone leisurelie. For in those it sufficeth that the Horse goe orderlie with his legges, and keepe the right path. And by obseruing this order a while, you shall see he will bee so swifte and readie in the first turnes as in the laste. Notwithstanding, for a good time you shall not vse to hasten him, but onlie at the closing of euery whole turne. And when he can once make all the turnes in such order, and so swiftlie as they should be done, then ordinarilie giue him on each hande three whole turnes, whereof let the first bee so faire and softlie as may bee, so shall he carrie his forelegges orderlie, and be better able to keepe a swifte time and measure, in accomplishing the other two turnes. And though that any of these two waies heretofore prescribed, is maruellous good to make anie Horse be hee neuer so dull, to bee readie and nimble in the double turnes: yet must you be able to discerne by your own discretion which of them is most meet for euery horse, and for what purpose. For if you would haue your Horse to yarke in making the double turnes, this waie is not so meete for that purpose as the first, for in euerie halfe turne you must helpe him to yarke once: so that in euerie whole turne hee shall yarke twice. That is to saie, once forward and once backeward, which he cannot do, vnlesse he pause somewhat at euery halfe turne, according to the first order before taught. But if your Horse be harde and dull of the spurre, and vnapt to the double turnes, then if he can bring ouer the contrarie legge, ride him into some straight waie, or else into the plaine field, and there make him to turne so fast as hee can, and helpe him continuallie with your spurres, beating him therwith in such sort as he may haue bloudie sides, by the girthes: and giue him on each hande seauen whole turnes or thereabout, obseruing alwaie that number wherewith you first began, helping him also with your rod on the contrary shoulder. And although he seemeth as then to care but little for it: yet in riding him againe the next

daie

date following, when his sides shall bee sore by meanes of the former pricks, being then cold and tender, and not hot, as they were the day before: you shal see that the spurre will quicken him after another sort, and make him to remember wherefore he was laste corrected. And so by vsing afterward the ordinarie helps, you shal make him so readie in the double turnes as you will desire.

And you may vse like order also, when the horse is verie liuelie and sensible of himselfe: sauing then you shall not need to ride him againe the next date following. For the first time shall suffice to make him obedient to your will, and make him keep such mesure and time in your turning, as he ought to doe. It is good also, if the horse be too slowe, sometime to trot him out at the length of a short maneging course, and when hee commeth towarde the end thereof, to galloy him, and at the stoppe cause him to turne the first halfe turne, and then immediatlie vpon the same, to close the other halfe turne on the same hande, and then make much of him, suffering him to pause a while: yea, and it is possible that without pausing at all, you shall perceiue such a readinesse in the horse, as you may follow on with another whole turn, & so to giue him on each hand two whole turnes, remembring alwaie to hasten him with your tong, so much as you possibly may, which shall not onlie make him readie in his turnes, but also to knowe the very meaning of the helpe, which after that hee hath once obtained, you shall need no more to giue him these maneging courses: for then he will turne at any time that you will haue him.

Helpes and corrections méete to bee vsed for the amending of such faults as most commonlie happen in making the whole or double turnes. Chap. xviii.

If your horse at the closing of any turne vseth to swarue of any side, then a little before he stop, or else in his very stopping, strike him with the calf of your leg on the same side, and if need be with your spurre, pricking him more or lesse as you shall see it needfull, & that shall force him to make a iust stop, and to keep the right path: so as afterwarde hee shall need no such helpe, being indeed then superfluous. But although he can stop well, and be very readie of turne: yet whensoeuer he doubleth helpe him alwaies with your tong, and sometime with

your rod and leg: and that ſhall haſten him and make him to goe ſwiftly about, and to cloſe well.

If your horſe foltereth with his legges in his turning, for fault of not bringing ouer the contrarie leg, or liſteth not his feet order lie, or turneth not faſte inough about, then euerie time that hee hath ended his turne, ſtay there; and ſo ſone as he is ſtaied, if his turnes were not well made of any ſide, firſt ſtrike him once or twiſe with the ſpur on the contrarie ſide, then giue him as muche with the ſpurre on the other ſide, and laſt of all, on the ſame ſide that you ſtroke him firſt, and keeping him ſtill in the ſame pathe, turne him againe as you did before, and at the laſte you ſhall ſee, that by this correction he will amend his fault, and ſo doing you ſhall make much of him.

But if your horſe in his doubling, maketh his turnes too much forward, and you can by no ordinary meanes bring him from it, then ride him with his head toward ſome wall or tree, & when you are within a very little of the ſaid wall or tree, ſtop him and turn him, forcing him alwaies to cloſe his laſt turne toward the wall or tree, ſo ſhall he be forced to keepe ſtill one place in his turning. Or you may if you will, without anie wall or tree correct that fault, by bearing a ſtiffer hand on him than you were wont to do but ſo as you diſtemper not his mouth, & loke how much ground that he incroched in cloſing of his turne forwarde, when he hath done, make him to go as much againe backeward. Or you may correct him thus: ride him into ſome wet ground, new plowed with deepe furrowes, and there pace, trot, or gallop him the length of a maneging courſe, vntill ſuch time as he hath made a plaine path, and beaten out euident marks of a ſtop, and there cauſe him to double: and you ſhall ſee, that after the firſt time, he wil not bee ſo haſtie in preaſing forward, becauſe it will greeue him to leaue the beaten path to plunge into the mire. And lok as the making him to go backward, will correct him of his ſtealing forward, ſo you may correct his reeling backewarde in his turning, by making him in the end to go as much forward. You may alſo correct both faults thus: if he girde forwarde, then make him to double in a plaine ground at the foot of ſome hill, and to cloſe his turns vpward toward the hill. And if hee reele backwarde in his doubling,

bling, then cause him to close his last turne from the hill ward.

Of the Chambetta. Chap. xix.

BVt besides all this, there is one other point belonging to the turnes, as well single as double, but spectallie to the single turnes of a manege, which giueth a better grace vnto them than any thing else: and that is when the horse holdeth vp his forefoot on that side that he shoulde turne: whilest he bringeth ouer the contrary legge, and setteth it not downe againe vntill hee hath closed his turne: which Grison calleth La Ciambetta, for by this meanes hee shall carrie both his forefeete clean aboue the ground, and turn a great deale better than when he traileth his feet vpon the ground. For which feate, for that in our tongue we haue no proper name, I will therfore call it from henceforth the Chambetta, and you shall teach your horse to do it in this sort: ride him into some narrowe way, or cause a dike to be made of purpose in maner and forme following. First let it be so long as a common maneging course, not aboue 12. inches deep and in the bottom one foot and a halfe broad, from which bottom, the two sides, and the two ends of the dike must rise shoring: so as it may be a great deale broder aboue at the brinks than beneath hauing the very fashion of a trow, bote or punt: or if you will you may make it of a greater depth, but it must haue breadth in ỹ top accordinglie: and the rider must be the more circumspect as wel in bearing his bridle hand, as in timelie helping of his horse. The dike then being thus made, ride vnto it, and there giue your horse on each hand two or three turnes, whereof alwaies let the first be faire and softlie to the intent that hee may close the others more spedily, according to the order of doubling, as I taught you before: & you shal see that in closing his turns, the narrowne of the towne shall so trouble him as for feare of knocking his contrary leg against the other, he shall be glad to lift vp the other leg, and so to come aloft with both legges together aboue ground. But you must beware that in stead of lifting vppe his legs, he reeleth not backward, nor in his turning goeth clean out of the dike: for that were a foule fault and much against your purpose, and therefore you must beare a temper at hand, and be ready to vse such kind of helpes, corrections and cherishings, as are meet and necessary in

that:

that behalfe, and haue bin heretofore taught. And to make him the more readie therein, you may often pace or trot him to & fro in the dike, & turne him at each end on both handes, or but on one hand only, changing hands at euery end. Yea & ſomtime it ſhalbe good to turne him in the ſame dike at euery two paces end, as I taught you before, ſpeaking of the double turnes: and hereby the horſe will take ſuch a cuſtome, as he will doe the like whenſoeuer you ſhall prouoke him thereunto, by helping him either with your tongue or contrarie ſpurre, or with both ſpurres together. And in ſteade of this dike, you may if you will, ſeeke out ſome narrowe golled waie by rage of water, which ſhall be as good, ſo that it bee neither too deepe nor too ſhallow, the ſides whereof would be ſome what ſhoring: yea, both ſuch golled waie, dike & euery other way, where you pace or trot your horſe to and fro, ſhould be the better, if the ground at the ſtopping place wer ſomwhat hanging down the hill: ſo ſhould it keep him from going either forward or backe ward in his turning. Alſo if your horſe haue bin ſomwhat broken before and know what correction is (otherwiſe it will be too harde for you to do) you may teach him the Chambetta ſtanding ſtill in the ſtable in this ſort. Take a ſtick in your hand, and go and ſtand on the right ſide of the horſe, harde by the manger to the which he is tied, & knock him with your ſtick on the right foreleg, ſomtime vnder the knee, ſometime in the mids of the ſhank, ſomtime on the nether ioint, and ſomtime behind in the bowing of the ham of the ſame leg, helping him continuallie with your toong or voice, in ſaieng vnto him, Hup, hup: and neuer leaue him vntill you haue made him to hold vp that leg, which when he doeth, beate him no more, but onlie threaten him by wagging the rod, to the intent he ſhould not ſet downe his foote, but hold it vp ſtill ſo long as you ſhall thinke it good. And ſo often as he ſetteth it down vnbidden helpe him and correct him as before, neuer leauing vntill he hold it vp again, which whileſt he doth, you ſhall do well to make much of him, by clawing him with your rod on the withers, for that ſhal incorage him to do the like another time. And if you would haue him to do the like with the left leg, then ſtand on his left ſide, and vſe the ſelfe ſame order. And when you ſee that he will doe it with both legs, only for feare of the ſtick, then you may alſo teach him

to

to do it for feare of the spurre, in this sort. Stand on his right side with the rod in your hand, and cause another to stand on his left side with a spur, naile, sharp sticke, or goad in his hand, and in the same instant that you do beate him with your rod on the leg: let the other prick him in the common spurring place with his spur, helping him with the sound of his tongue or with his voice, as before, you holding your peace: and so sone as the Horse shall heare that sound or voice, and feel the stroke both of rod and spur, he will lift vp his right legge, which when he hath done, you shall change sides, and in the same sort make him to doe as much with his left legge. And thus vsing him a while, you shall make him to lift vp which you will, so sone as he shall heare but the sounde of your tongue or voice, and feele the spurre on the contrarie side, without the helpe of anie man to stande by him with a rod in his hand: yea and to holde it vp still a quarter of an houre together. And perhaps manie times he will do the same without the helpe of the spurre, being afraide to sette it downe, so long as you are there present. But if (as it happeneth many times) the Horse when you prick him so with your spur, will not lift vp the contrarie legge, but only the legge of the same side that you spurre him: then in the same instant that you spurre him, if hee bee not curst and shrewd, strike him with your foote on the contrarie leg, which warning will make him remember himselfe. Or else for a more suretie, you may haue a sticke in your other hand, and knock him therewith on the inside of his contrarie leg: and beside that euerie time that he so erreth, either in not lifting vp the contrary leg, or else in lifting vppe the other, remember alwaies to double the stroke of the spurre, and that shall so correct him, as afterwarde if you do but make an offer to touch him with the spurre, it shall suffice to make him to hold vp the contrarie leg, so long time together as you will your selfe. Neither care you for the frowardnes of anie horse, but the more froward he is, the more roughlie correct him. But though your Horse in this sort may learne the Chambretta in one daie: yea, and perchance in lesse than three houres: yet to keepe him in vre withall, and that he may do it afterward the more readilie in his maneging, it shall be necessary to spend euerie day one houre with him in the stable, in making

him.

him to hold vp first one legge, and then another. Thus when you haue taught your horse to doe the Chambetta in the stable: you may also teach him to doe it abroad, being vpon his back, in this sort. When you are mounted, cause him to stand still a good prettie while together, and beare a steddie hand vppon him, making him to reine truelie with his head, and appoint a footman to stande on your right side with a sticke in his hand, and in the same instant that you helpe your horse with your tong or voice, let the foteman beat him vpon the right legge with his sticke, not leaning so to molest him vntill he lifteth vp his foot, which doing you shall make much of him, by clawing him on the withers. That don, let the footman change sides, and make the horse doe as muche with his left legge, and when the horse vnderstandeth those helps, then besides the helpe of your tongue or voice, you may touch him also with your contrarie spurre, which if it doth make him to hold vp the true leg, then spurre him no more, but make much of him, and when he knoweth once the helpe of the spurre, you shall neede no more the helpe of the footman with his rod, for then if he erreth at any time, by helping him with your tongue or voice, and by doubling the stroke of the spurre, you shall quicklie make him to amend his fault. And besides these helps, for a more suretie if need be, you may haue a rod in your hande and correct him therewith your selfe, like as the footman did before: but I beleeue that after a little exercise (if the horse be not too dull) the helpe of your tong and the moouing onely of your contrary leg will suffice, without any more businesse. And to keepe him in vre withall, remember alwaies whensoeuer you take his backe to make him holdvppe first one leg, and then another, so shall hee afterward bee perfect when he commeth to be manaeged, either with single or double turne: but he shall do it the more readilie in a double turn, if he be vsed to do it first in the single turne. It shall bee very necessarie also to trot him, to gallop him, and to turne him too and fro in som such waie as is before described, by meanes whereof, if the horse be of any gentle nature, and therewith somewhat staide of head, he may quicklie learne the Chambetta, without the helpe of any of the former inuentions, which notwithstanding are necessarie for shifts sake, to answere the diuers qualities of horses: for all

horses

horſes will not learne alike.

The new Addition touching the Horſes turne.

But now you haue to vnderſtand that all theſe helpes and corrections before mentioned doe chéefly ſerue for ſuch kinde of turne as was vſed in Griſon his daies, which turne the horſe did make vpon his hæles or hinder féet, not mouing from their place, though the horſe with all his whole bodie, necke and forefeet, did turne rounde about ſo manie times as you would haue him, euen like a paire of compaſſes, whereof the firme foot ſtandeth ſtill not mouing from his place, and the other moueable foote turneth about, to make eyther a whole or a halfe circle as you would haue it, then which kinde of turne, none in mine opinion can be more ſwift, nor yet ſo ſwift: for by this waie I haue made my horſe to make on each hand 20. or 30. turnes one after another, whirling about ſo ſwiftly, as my head hath béen ſo dizie therwith that I could hardlie kéep my horſes backe. Notwithſtanding other riders ſince Griſons time, haue miſliked this kinde of turne, ſaying that it is not ſtrong nor ſure, and ſpecially vpon graſſie or ſlippery ground, and therefore do more commend that turne which the horſe maketh by mouing all his foure féet, and his whole body togither at one inſtant, when he turneth, whereto you may bring him by riding him euery day, firſt in a large grauell pit, and afterward in a faire ſandie waie, vſing the helpe of a ſwteman, and all ſuch other helpes as are before ſet down, vnleſſe it be the hollow or gulled way before mentioned, for in that the horſe muſt néeds make his turne altogither vpon his hinder feet. Thus hauing taught you the order of treading the ring, of ſtopping, of aduancing before, of parking behind, of turning, with ſingle turne, and double turne: yea, and that with the Chambetta alſo, I think it now méet to ſhew you the order of maneging, and how many kinds of maneges there be.

Of maneging, and how many kindes of maneges there be. Chap. xx.

This Italian word Maneggiare, is as much to ſay in Engliſh, as to handle with ſkill, as when we ſaie, he can handle his horſe or weapon very well: amongſt the Italians it is taken as a generall worde, comprehending foure

63

eſpeciall

eſpeciall kindes of maneging: whereof one is, when they make their horſe to double his turnes, which they call Raddopiare: an other is, when they make him to gallop the fielde, going in and out, as they do in ſkirmiſh: the third is, when they make him to leape aloft, and to fetche diuers ſaultes: the fourth is, when they pace, trot, or gallop him a good while too and fro, in one ſelfe path, the length of 20. or 30. paces, or thereabout, turning him at each end thereof, either with ſingle turne, whole turn, or double turne: which Griſon calleth, Maneggiare a Repoloni. But wee Engliſh men doe onelie call this laſt kinde a manege, and that abſolutelie without any other addition. For amongeſt our horſemen this word manege or maneging, ſignifieth none other thing, but only that foreſaid kinde of gallopping and turning to and fro in one ſelfe path. And therfore we vſe commonlie to ſaie, This horſe can manege well, or make a good manege: whereof there be alſo three kinds, that is to ſay, manege with halfe reſt, manege with whole reſt, and manege without reſt. Which Griſon termeth thus, Manegio a mezzo tempo, a tempo, & contra tempo. The manege with halfe reſt is, when you cauſe your Horſe at the end of euery maneging path, after he hath ſtopt, to aduance twice togither, & at the ſecond bound to turn: whereby you reſt alwaies one bound. The maneging with whole reſt is, when you turne him at the third bound, and ſo reſt two boundes. The manege without reſt is, when you turne him immediatlie vpon the ſtop, without any tarriance at all, which onelie kind of manege our Engliſh riders moſt commonlie do vſe, and not the other two. Notwithſtanding they be verie neceſſarie and méete to bee vſed, according as the horſe is ſtrong or weake. For a very ſtrong horſe requireth the manege with the whole reſt: & the horſe of an indifferent ſtrength the manege with the halfe reſt: and the weake horſe the manege without reſt. But the manege with the halfe reſt is moſt neceſſarie of all, and the beſt meane to make a Horſe perfect in the other two. But note, that in all three kindes of maneges, you muſt obſerue well thoſe generall precepts that I gaue you before touching the ſingle and double turnes. That is, to ſée that your horſe kéepe alwaies one path, and one place of ſtop, and in his turning that he keepe his ground, and carrie his head, necke, legs, & whole

bodie

ſwarming on either ſide: and alſo that hee cloſe his turne roundlie, and in ſo narrowe a rowme as may be. And finallie to ſée that as well in his turnes, as courſes, hee kéepe alwaies like time and meaſure, and that the one be not ſwifter than the other, and ſuch like. All which things, by vſing ſuch helpes and corrections as I haue partlie alreadie, and ſhall hereafter more at full declare: you ſhall eaſilie make your horſe to doe. Thus hauing ſhewed you how manie kindes of maneges there be, and which they bee, and what you muſt generallie obſerue in teaching them: I will now declare vnto you the order of them all, beginning firſt with the manege of the halfe reſt.

Of manege with halfe reſt. Chap. xxi.

When your horſe can ſtop well, aduance before, & turne readilie on both handes, then beeing come out of the rings, trot him right out, either in the middle furrowe vnto the common place of ſtop, or elſe in ſome other ſoft ground, the length of 20. paces or thereabout, and euen as he is readie to ſtoppe, helpe him with your voice, making him to aduance twice together, and at the ſecond bound, turne him on the right hand, helping him with your tongue, with the reine of his headſtraine or falſe reine, with your rod, with the calfes of your legs, or with your ſpurs, more or leſſe, according as occaſion ſhall require, and ſée that in his turning, he moue both his forepartes and hinder parts orderlie, bowing his houghes decentlie, which is the beawtie and chiefeſt grace of both turne and ſtoppe. That done, immediatlie trotte him backe again in the ſelfe ſame path, vnto the place from whence you came. And there, after ſtoppe at the ſecond bound of his aduancing, turne him on the left hande and ſo followe on, obſeruing the like order, vntill you haue gone to and fro about twelue times, changing handes at euery time. And at the laſt ſtop of all, you ſhal cauſe him to aduance twice together and ſo depart: and this is the order of the manege with halfe reſt. In the which, after that he hath beene ſomewhat exerciſed, you ſhall not néed to helpe him when he is ready to ſtop, but onlie to beare a ſteddie and ſtraight hande, and to helpe him with your tongue or voice in his turning. And you ſhall ſée, that he of himſelfe

ſelfe will turne roundlie and with a good grace, without any more helpe.

Of manege with whole reſt. Chap. xxii.

THen after that he can make the manege with half reſt well, if he be of much force and very light withal, you may teach him to make the manege with whole reſt, cauſing him at euery ſtop to aduance thrice together, and at the third bound to turne, and at the laſt ſtoppe of all, to aduance againe thrice together, and ſo to depart. But vnleſſe he be very ſtrong indéed, I woulde wiſhe you to turne him moſt commonlie at the ſecond bound, rather then at the third, ſo ſhall he be able to turne the more readilie, and to kéepe the better time and meaſure in his turning.

Of manege without reſt. Chap. xxiii.

BVt if your horſe be of no force, or of a heauy mouldé, then you may teach him the manege without reſt, by turning him ſuddenly vpon the ſtop, wherein alſo hee ſhal neuer be perfect, vnleſſe he be firſt vſed to the manege with halfe reſt: but remember that in the manege without reſt you cauſe your horſe at the laſt ſtoppe to aduance once at the leaſt. For it is none error at al, but a comlie ſight in al 3. kindes of maneges, at the laſt ſtop to aduance twice or thrice. And note that in al theſe thrée kinds of maneges, it is praiſe worthie, when the horſe in his aduancing doth bow his houghs behind, & turneth round with the Chambetta. For which purpoſe it were not amiſſe to manege him ſomtime in ſuch place, wheras the grounde is at ech end of the maneging path ſomwhat hanging. Note alſo, that in maneging your horſe, it is no ſmall helpe vnto him in euerie turn that he maketh, to accompany him with your perſon in this ſort following. When he turneth on the right hand, turne you your left ſhoulder towards his left eare, more or leſſe as néed ſhall require, kéeping your body for all that ſtill right in the midſt of the ſaddle, ſo as the reines of your back may directlie anſwer ỹ ridge bone of his backe. Neuertheles, when you féele him to bend his hinder houghes, then lean you ſomewhat backward, for that ſhal make him to cloſe his turne the more roundly and ſwiftlie. And when he turneth on the left hãd, accompany him with your right

ſhoul-

shoulder, toward his right eare, obseruing like order as before. If your horse bee very weake or feeble, either by nature, or by ouermuch trauell, then it shall be good sometime to manege him with a soft pace, and not to trot him, vsing him for the most part to that kind of manege which shall be most meet for his strength, least by often changing, you cleane disorder him, and bee neuer become perfect in any of them. When your horse can make all these three kinds of maneges, both with soft pace, and with trotte: then you may manege him in any of the said kinds with a gallop, giuing him on ech hand but one single turne, and see that the first and last be alwaies on the right hand. And a little before you turne him, remember to hold your rod on the contrarie side, whereby your horse shall know on what side to turne: and at the stop make him to aduance, helping him with your voice, or with your rod, or with the euen stroke of your spurs, or of the calfes of your legs. And in two of the foresaid kindes of maneging, if your horse be ready of his heeles, and light behind, you may also make him to yarke, as well at his stop, as in his turne: that is to saie, in the manege with halfe rest, and in the manege with whole rest: for in the manege without rest it cannot be decent. But in the other two you may at the first or second bound of his aduancing, help him with your voice, rod, or spurres, to yarke there once, and at the closing of his turne to yarke againe: so as at euery end of the maneging course, he shal yark twice, once forward and once backward. Or if you will, you may cause him to yarke at ech end but once, and that woold bee at the closing of his turne, setting his head that waie that his taile before stode. But before you gallop him, it were good to pace him, and to turne him faire and softlie in the same path to and fro, about twelue times: which shall make him the readier when he is afterward maneged with a gallop, yea and if you did the like, after that you haue maneged him with a gallop so that you first suffer him to breath a while, it should do him no harme, as you shall well perceiue if you manege him againe the nert day following. And beware that in maneging your horse, ye gallop him not at the first too swiftlie: for so shall he neuer be able to continue with one time and measure, neither in his courses, nor yet in his turnes, for after a while euery one shall be slower than

another, which ſhould be verie vnſeemlie, and therfore good reſpect would be had to the qualitie of the horſe, whether he be able to endure a ſwifte manege or not. For if you perceiue that he is naturallie ſtrong, and hath a good mouth, and can turne readilie on both hands: then you may be the bolder to giue him a ſwift manege: but if he be too liuelie, or elſe be laden with great cheekes, or hard of mouth, or if he bee feeble of backe and legges, then albeit he ſeemeth to haue a gentle mouth, by meanes perhaps of good breaking, yet you muſt gallop him with the more reſpect. Notwithſtanding, if he hath ſtrength in his backe and loines, then the other defects be not ſo much materiall, but that with good breaking he may be managed any maner of way: but the ſureſt way for all maner of horſes is, to manege him with a ſoft pace, or with a trot, and ſeldome with a gallop.

And note, that if there be any ſtones in the maneging path, or on anie ſide of his ſtopping place where he turneth, it is not good to take them awaie, for the feare thereof ſhall make him to lift his feet the better, and to go the more ſurely: yea, if there be none at the place of turning, it were neceſſary to put one or two great ones: for the feare of thoſe ſtones would make him to turne with the Chambetta. When your horſe is perfect in al the things aboue ſaid, then if you wil, you may manege him ſometime in and out: like the writhing of a ſerpent, ~ but vſe it not often, and ſpeciallie with a yong horſe.

Hitherto we haue ſpoken of maneging with ſingle turnes: now therefore we will talke a little of maneging with double turnes.

Maneging with double turnes. Chap. xxiiii.

ALthough maneging with the double turnes apperteineth rather to the ſtirrer, than to the horſe of ſeruice, yet it ſhal not be out of time to talke thereof in this place.

And note, that you may teach your horſe to manege with the double turns two maner of waies, whereof the firſt is in this ſort. Pace him or trot him right out, the length of twentie or thirtie paces as you did before: and when you come to the place of ſtop, let him aduance once, twiſe, or thriſe together, according as the kind of manege which you would haue him to make, ſhall require, giuing him there a double turne, and halfe a turne on the

right

right hand, which maketh in all fiue single turnes: or if he be verie strong, you may giue him two double turnes, and half a turn on the right hand, which amounteth to nine single or halfe turns. That done, trot him backe againe in the selfesame path, and giue him the like number of turnes on the left hande, and so follow on still, continuing the same order so long as you thinke your Horse can well indure, and then at the laste stop make him to aduance twice or thrice togither, and so leaue. The second waie is thus. When you come to the place of stop, giue him at the first but halfe a turne on the right hand, and suddenly changing hands, let him close the double turne on the left hand: that done, trot him back againe in the selfe same path, vnto the other end, and there likewise giue him halfe a turne on the left hand, and immediatly let him close the double turne on the right hand, and so to followe on with double turne, and halfe turne, mockt throughout: and at the end let him stop and aduance, as before is said.

And note, that in both these waies of maneging, in the beginning, the turnes would be made faire and softlie, to the intent the horse may carrie his legs the more orderlie. When your Horse can double, being maneged with a soft pace & trot, then you may make him to double after one of these two sorts, being maneged with a gallop, which must be more or lesse swift according as the horse may indure, and be able to keepe the like time and measure, so well in the courses, as in his turnes. For the double turns and speciallie two on each hand, do straine a horse, his loines & sinews very sore, if he be weake or not very light of nature. Wherefore if your horse haue any such defect, and yet you would haue him to double in his manege, then for a while, let him vse to make on ech hand but one double turne: so shall he turne the more roundlie, and close his turnes the better, yea and with the more strength of his back, which will not decaie so soone with that, as with making two double turnes: and in processe of time it is possible that you shall make him to turne so often togither, as you will your selfe. But if he be of so grosse a mould, as he is not apt to close his turn wel, then vse him in no wise to double, least that he neither make double nor single turne as he ought to doe.

Of the helps and corrections which are meet to be vsed for the redresse of such faults, as commonly chance in maneging. Chap. xxv.

AND first, as touching the ordinary helpes, I say, that if your horse haue bin well broken before, and taught to turne redily on both hands (as he ought to be before you manege him) then he néedeth ẏ lesse help: for so soon as he shall heare the sound of your tongue or voice, and feel the staieng of ẏ bridle, he will not tarry to be spurred, but turn roundlie of his owne accord: notwithstanding, according as hee is more or lesse sensible in the beginning of euery maneging course that he maketh, it shall not bee amisse to helpe him with the euen stroke of your spurres: yea, and also to doe the like a little before hee commeth to the place of stoppe, helping him also with your voice, for that shall make him to close his turne with the better grace. But if he be dull and heauie, then it shall not only be necessary to help him in the beginning of ech course, but also in the midst, and likewise at the end of the same, in such order as is aboue said. And in his turning, remember to helpe him when neede is, with the contrarie legge or spurre, and sometime with the closing stroke of both spurres, as you haue béene heretofore taught. And when your horse goeth out of the waie, and will not kéep the right path, then correct him with your rod, striking him vppon the flanke, or with your spurre vpon that side that he swarueth. If your Horse be yoong and not growne to his full strength, it is possible that sometime for his owne ease, he being come to the place of stoppe, will turne sooner than he should. Wherefore you shall do well at the stop to make him aduance twice or thrise together, and then to stand still a while, making much of him: that doone, helpe him with your voice to turne, wherein if he also make too much haste, and kéepeth no time, staie him againe vppon the same another while, and so you shall quicklie bring him from that fault, & make him to manege with what time and measure you will your selfe. And if your horse haue that fault, by meanes that he is ouer lithe and too rash, there is no better mean to bring him from it, than by vsing him vnto the manege with whole rest, and to stay a prettie while together after that hee hath aduanced, making him alwaies to turne lowe by the ground, and to bring ouer the contrarie legge, or to turne with a Chambetta. Againe, there be some horses so froward, and so spitefull, which by meanes of euill breaking

king, & ouermuch beating, when they come to the turning place, they will make either too large a turne, or else without time or measure. For correction whereof, vse to manege him with a soft pace, vntill he be almost within his length of the turning place, & then trot him swiftlie, or gallop him vnto the end: whereas, after you haue giuen him a turne truelie closed on the right hand, stay him a while, that done pace him forth faire and softlie, vntill he be almost at the other end, and then gallop him to the place of stop, whereas after he hath turned, staie him againe like as you did before, and so continue maneging him still after that sort, vntil you haue gon to and fro eight times, and at the last stop make him to aduance, or if you will you maie after his first turne first pace him two or three steps, then trot him swiftlie, vntill he come somwhat nigh to the end, and from thence gallop him to the place of stop, obseruing that order in euerie course from the beginning to the ending, & afterward being somwhat amended of his fault, you maie after the staie vpon his turne, vse to gallop him all the waie, for a certaine season, vntill he be throughlie perfect in his turn: which when he is, see that you staie him no more vpon his turn, but immediatlie put him forward. For to staie vpon the turn, is vnseemlie and not to be allowed, but onelie for corrections sake. There be manie horses which through euill breaking when they are maneged, will turne their rumps and hinder loines, before they turne their forparts: for remedie of which fault, you shal vse these waies following.

Trot him right out in the furrow of some new plowed ground correcting him continuallie, and that not onelie in his going, but also when he is readie to stop, and likewise in his turning, sometime with the contrarie leg, and somtime with the contrary spur, and if that will not suffice to make him leaue his fault, then manege him alongst by some wall or tilt, and ride so nigh vnto it as you can. Which wall or tilt, in the first course would be on your left hand, and in the second on your right hand: and so changing from hand to hand, helpe him in ech turne with the contrarie leg, or spurre, more or lesse, according as neede shall require: or else manege him in such a fashioned like as I haue before described, for to teach your horse therein the Chambetta. And by one of

those waies, you shall make him to amend his fault, and so turne orderlie, as you would haue him.

If your Horse in his turning vse to writh his bodie on that side he turneth as though he would fall downe, which is a very fowle fault, then manege him oft with a swift trot, either in the furrow of some new plowed grounde, or else in some pathe ouerthwart the furrowes: and at the first, turne him alwaies lowe by the ground, helping him with such helpes and corrections as are before taught, so shall you bring him to make a true turne, and iust in euerie condition.

You may also correct him for the selfesame fault, or for making too large a turne, by giuing him a chocke with the bridle on that side of his mouth that he so erreth. And for the most part such writhing turnes do chance in the manege without rest, wherein as they are vnséemelie to manie mens iudgments, so are they much more vnséemelie in the other twoe kindes of manege. Notwithstanding, if your horse be weake and féeble, then somwhat to ease him, you may suffer him whilest he boweth his houghes behind in his stopping, to writhe his bodie a hand breadth on that side that he turneth, so shall he close his turne the more readilie, but otherwise see that ye vse it not.

But if your horse in any of the maneges make a false turne, or turneth higher or lower then you would haue him: as for example on the right hand, then so sone as he hath turned, euen in his going forward, correct him once or twice with your left spur: yea and if néed be, with both spurs at once, and being come to the other place, turne him againe on the right hand, and so follow on with your manege vnto the place where hee turned first on the right hand, and there turne him on the lefte hande, by which changing of handes, you shall alter the common order of turning in maneging: which altering sometime is very necessarie, not onlie for the correction of the faultes aboue said, but also to knowe the obedience and readinesse of your horse. For if he be vsed alwaies to one order of turning, it is possible that he will not turne sometime on that hand that you woulde haue him: and if hee make a false turne on the left hande, then correct him by obseruing the contrarie order.

There

There is some kind of horse, which when you haue maneged him ten courses to and fro, he will in the end suddenly force your hand, either by casting vp his head aloft, or by chopping it down, and so fall a running, not for that the bridle greeueth him, or for anie great desire he hath to run or to trauell, but onlie for that hee thinketh so to escape your hands, and that you should trouble him no more, but suffer him to rest. Which fault so often as he vseth, see that you sharplie correct him for it, without shewing him any fauour at all, not leauing to beat him vpon the head betwixt the eares with a good stick, and to rate him with a terrible voice, shewing your selfe fierce & cruell vpon him, vntil you haue brought him vnto obedience, and made him to know that running away will not helpe him. Which correction he should remember the better, if it wer his hap to deserue it, being maneged vpon a ground newlie plowed with deepe furrowes, the trauell wherein together with the correction, would be so painfull vnto him, as he would beware euer after how hee ran awaie before his lesson were ended. And hauing thus subdued him, leaue him not so: but manege him afresh, first with a round trot, and then with a gallop, according as you shall see him in breath: and in the end make much of him, by which so vsing him, you shall see that afterward he will manege so long time together as you will haue him, and likewise be readie to stop at commandment, yea and if need be to stoppe in a Cariere, being run with an vnbridled bridle.

How and when to teach your horse to passe a swift Cariere. Chap. xxvi.

VNtill your horse be perfect in all pointes before taught, and specially that he can stop well, & therwith aduance before, aswell in his trot as in his gallop: I would not with you in any wise to run him, vnlesse it were in the verie beginning of his breaking, to giue him a Cariere or two, onelie to know his swiftnesse and disposition, and so to leaue off, vntill he be better broken and made meet to be run. Which when he is, you shall vse this order following: ride him into some faire plaine sandie waie, void of all stumbling stones: and to acquaint him with the waie, pace him faire and softlie the length of a good Cariere, which must bee measured, according as the horse is

made. For if he be a mightie puissant horse and great of stature, then the Carriere would be the shorter. So likewise must it bee, when you would haue him to bounde aloft in his Carriere: but if he be made like a Jennet, or of a middle stature, then the carriere path may be the longer, yet not ouerlong. At the end whereof, let him stoppe and aduance, and at the second bound turne him faire and softlie on the right hand, and so staie a little while. Then sodainlie sateng with a liuelie voice, Hey, or Nowe, put him forward with both spurres at once, forcing him all the waie to run so swiftlie and so roundlie as he can possiblie, euen to the ende, to the intent he maie stop on his buttocks. That done, turne him on the left hand, & pace him forth faire and softlie vnto the other ende of the Carriere path, and there stop him and turne him againe on the right hand as you did before, and so leaue.

And note, that the chiefest points to be obserued in the running of a Carriere are these: first, to see that the horse gather roundly, and go smoothlie awaie, bearing his head steddilie: secondly, that he run swiftlie: and thirdlie, that he stop lightlie. Whereunto you shall bring him by no meanes so well, as by often vsing him to tread the ringes with a very swift trot, which shall make him so nimble of his legs, so swift and so staied of head, as when he commeth afterward to be runne, it shall be no griefe vnto him: which was well obserued by the great rider, M. Cola Pagano: who vntill he saw his horse well staied of head and throughlie broken, he would neuer runne him. For after that he had spent foure monethes or halfe a yeare, yea, and perchance a whole yeare in breaking him, in such order as I haue heretofore taught, hee woulde teach him to runne in lesse than eight dates, and that so swiftly, so smoothlie, so stronglie, and with suche a steddinesse of head, and lightnesse at stop, as it could not be amended. Yea, and when he would haue an horse to excell and be very fine indeed: he woulde teach him nothing from the beginning to the ending, but that he should do it first perfectlie well vpon a soft pace: and then vpon a trot, and seldome or neuer vpon a gallop vnlesse necessitie so forced. And aboue all things he would be sure neuer to manege him with a swift gallop, nor yet to make him passe a Carriere. But after that he sawe him perfect in the rest, he would appoint him to

his

his Rider, who could require nothing but the horse was readie to do it, were it to manege with single turne, or double turne, or run as many Carieres as the Rider would haue him, with such order and time as it was marvellous to behold. And as I would not haue you to run your horse before he be throughlie broken: so after that he can run, I would not wish you to exercise him therin aboue once in two monethes: yea, and if it were more seldome the better, and specially if he be naturallie hard of mouth. For nothing doth distemper an horses head and mouth so much as often running, and it greatlie diminisheth his strength: and if his hinder legs be weake, it maketh him also to overreache, which is verie perillous.

The order of bounding aloft, or leaping, how, and when you shal teach your horse to leape. Chap. xx.

ALthogh the rules before taught do suffice to make a horse of seruice: yet if your horse be light, a stirrer, and nimble of nature, you may besides these for pleasure sake, teache him manie other proper feates. As to abound aloft, and to yarke withall, to gallop the gallop galliard, to fetch the Capriole, to do the Coynetti, and such like saultes, whereof I purpose heere somewhat to treat, thinking it now most so to doe and not before, because that vnles your horse be first perfect in the former lessons it were in vaine to teach him anie of the lessons following. And first, as touching leaping or bounding aloft, you shal vnderstand that to do it with a good grace, and as it ought to be done, the horse had not onelie need to be made light by Art, but also to be light by Nature: for in his leaping, he must aduance himselfe, gathering his bodie round togither, and rise euen from the ground, keeping his head at one state, and in his due place: and when he leapeth, he must yarke withal. Which if you would haue him to do at the stop, you shall help him in his aduancing, and specially when he riseth aloft at the second bound, with the euen stroke of your spurs, and with your voice, yea and with your rod also, by striking him therwith, sometime behind on the mid rump, and sometime on either side of his rumpe, where he seemeth most to hang: and if hee rise not lightlie inough before, then beate him there with vpon the right shoulder, by meanes of which helps you shall see him immediatlie

diatlie to bound cleane aboue ground, gathering his bodie short togither, and to yark withall. And note by the way, that the helpe of the calfe of your legs will make some horse to rise higher than the helpe of your spurres: and therefore in such cases your owne discretion must be vsed. But in the beginning, so soone as he hath made one true sault or leape, and yarked withall, forget not to make much of him, suffering him to staie vppon it a good while, without molesting him any more for that time: yea rather, you shall do very well to light off his backe euen there. And so cause him to be led from thence faire and softlie into the stable, or at the least, if you will not light off, to depart with a soft pace: so shall you incourage him against the next time to doe the like, or else better. For vntil your horse vnderstãdeth your mind, & knoweth perfectly the order of leaping, & howe to gather vp his body short and round togither: it is not good to force him ouer much, but onlie at the end of his pace, trot, gallop, or Cartere, to helpe him, as I shewed you before, to make two, three, or foure leapes, and no more, so shall they be both lostie and seemelie. Whereas otherwise in making many, he may hap to do them faintlie, lazilie, and without any good grace: yea and perchance not without danger of rearing right vp, wherin a hanging ground would do good seruice: but then at the first, it woulde not be too much inclining, or ouer steepe downe. Notwithstanding, if your horse be light and a skirrer by nature, you may take the more of him, and increase the number of his lessons as you shall thinke good. Hauing then onelie care that he keepe his ground, that he spring not on either side, nor dishorder his head but beare it steddilie. In which thinges he must be made perfect before by often trotting the rings in such order as is before taught. And then being stated of head, you may by vsing the former helpes, cause him in a lustie strong gallop, at euerie two paces ende to bound aloft, once or more, as you like your selfe, but so as he may doe it well, keeping one self time and measure from the beginning to the ending, and that the last leap be with no lesse force then the first, but with more force if it may be. And therefore the number of his leapes, and the length of his race would be measured according to the horses strength, and as he is in breath and able to endure. And this kind of gallop is called, the gallop galliard.

And

And when your horse is once perfect, you need not to gallop him but sidoine, so shall he gallop the more stronglie, which would be done when you come out of the rings. In the which, for that cause you must trot him at that time the fewer times about: and so you shall see that at his comming out he will enter into his galloppe with a lustie courage, and bound all the waie of his owne accord, at euerie two paces end, euen vntill he come to the place of stop: or at the least if he doth not this, I am sure that helping him but onelie with your voice, he will not failie to fetch two or three leaps at the stop, without any more businesse.

How to teach your horse to do the Capriole or Goats leape, and the Corvetti, and also how to make him go sideling so well with his whole body, as with his rumpe only. Chap. xxviii.

CApra, in Latine or Italian, is a beast which we call a Goat, which beast being disposed to plaie, vseth in his running a prettie kind of iumping and doubling with his legs aboue ground, making a certain semblance of parking, and yet parketh not indeede. Which kind of fault or leape because the Italians haue not onely counterfeited in their daunsing, but also haue taught their horses to imitate the same, (for when the horse boundeth aloft he must aduance his rump, and make as though he would parke, and yet dooth not) it is called therefore by the name of Capriole, which if you will, in English you may terme the Goates leape: but forsomuch as Goates bee not euery where to represent that kind of leape; I woulde wishe you therfore for your better vnderstanding, sometimes to behold your little lambes whilest they runne and plaie togither, and you shall see them liuelie to do the same.

The Corvetti is a certaine continuall prauncing and daunsing vp and downe still in one place, like a Beare at a stake, and sometime sideling to and fro, wherein the Horse maketh as though he would faine run, and cannot be suffered. The name is derived of the Spanish word Corua, which is as much to saie as the Elbow or hinder heele of the horse, bicause in doing this feat he doth labour much vpon his hinder legs. Which kind of prauncing the Spaniards do vse much vpon their Iennets, and specially when

they

they ride short, after the Turky fashion: because in that sort it maketh the better shew, & they esteem it so much, as they cal the horse that can do it well, in their tong Hazedor, that is to say, a dwer.

Thus for your better vnderstanding, I haue thought good to interpret vnto you these two termes, Capriole and Coruetti, which two seates, bicause they do not much differ, as Grison saith, there is but one order in teaching to be obserued in both. Wherefore if you would teach your horse to doe the Capriole, vse to trot him for certaine daies vpon some long hill, or banging ground, and stopping him vpon the knoll of the hill, make him to aduance twice togither: that done, immediatlie help him with the sound of your lips, to trot two paces further, and to stop, and to aduance againe twice, as he did before, and so to continue in stopping and aduancing twise togither, at euerie two paces end, all the length of the hill downward, and there staie. Thus vsing him a while, you shall see, that afterward in stead of those two trotting steps, at euerie time that hee stoppeth and aduanceth, if you helpe him with this word, Hup, and with your rod, he will gather vp his rump twice togither, and so go from stop to stop, aduancing both his forefeet and hinder loines, with time and measure, carrieng his forelegs orderlie, and so fetch the Capriole so oft times togither as you will: yea and by helping him with your rod a little behinde, you may make him at euerie time that he so aduanceth with his rumpe to yarke withall. But note, that if your horse be weake and feeble in his hinder partes, it shall be best for him to make those twoe trotting steps lowe by the ground: or else in his lifting to obserue alwaies one time and measure, aduancing therwith orderlie, without gathering vp his rumpe, which kind of Capriole is not to bee dispraised. In this sort if your horse be very light, & you your selfe thereto accustomed to ride short vpon him, after the Turkie fashion, you may teach him also the Coruetti: but if hee be great of stature, and that you ride long vpon him after our fashion, then the Capriole is most meet for him, which Capriole being done lowe by the ground, doeth not differ much from the Coruetti, sauing that in doing the Capriole, your horse must alwaies be going forward. But he may do the coruetti, not onlie in going forward, but also in keeping still in one place, whilest he standeth aduancing vp

and

and downe vpon all foure feete: yea, and sometime going backeward, and sideling, and euery waie. And to the intent he may do it the soner, it were not amisse somtime to make him go sideling with his whole bodie, by helping him with the contrary spur: as for example. When you would haue him drawe to the lefte side, then bearing your bridle hande euen and steddie, clap your right leg close to his bellie, and holde it there still, making him to feele the spur on the right side, for the which if you see that he mooueth his bodie such waie as you woulde haue him, then suddenlie pull awaie your leg from thence & make much of him: that don, make him to doe as much on the other side with your left leg, not leauing to molest him in that sort on either side, till you haue made him vnderstand the meaning therof. And so with a litle exercise, so sone as he shall feele you to staie your bridle hand, and to offer to touch him either with your leg or spur on the contrary side, he will go sideling so much or so little as you will haue him. But if you would haue him go sideling with his rumpe onlie, and not to moue his foreparts, which indeed is very necessary, and specially for a horse of seruice, to make him keepe his heade alwaies towards the enimie in fighting hand to hand: then besides the foresaid helpe of the contrarie leg or spurre, you must also turne your bridle hand somewhat on that side that you touch him. And you may also helpe him with your rod, by striking him therewith on the contrarie flanke behind. Note also, that you may make your horse to do the Capriole, in giuing him a lustie gallop, if you can help him at euery two steps to keep time and measure. But as I said before, vnlesse your horse be naturally light of his body, and nimble of his legs, it is vnpossible by Art to make him to do any of these things well, & to say the truth, they be things that may be very well spared, and specially in horses of seruice, which being once vsed to such delighting toies, do forget in time of need their necessarie feates. For when they are spurred to go forward, or to passe a Cariere, they fall a hopping and daunsing vp and downe in one place. Likewise, when in their manege they should make a speedie, round, and iust turne, either single or double, they will not turne but leisurely with the Coruetti, and therefore I would wish none of the Queenes Maiesties horses to be vsed to the Coruetti:

but

but such as are onlie kept for pleasure, whereof it is sufficient to haue in her highnesse stable two or three at the most.

Thus hauing declared vnto you what is necessarie, as well for the horse of seruice, as for the Stirer, & with what order to breake them: I thinke it meet also to shew you now in the end, howe to ride such a horse, being once throughlie broken in all the feates aboue said, to the best shew before a Prince or Noble man.

How to ride a horse to the best shew before a Prince, and where best standing is for him to see. Chap. xxix.

Some do think it good for those that would see, to stand right before the stopping place, and some would haue them to stand on the right hand of the rider, euen with the stopping place, & some on the same hand, not euen with the stopping place, but lower downe toward the middle cariere, distant from the stopping place the length of a maneging course. Of all which three standings, that right before the stopping place, in my iudgement is worst, for two causes. First, for that the rom perhaps may be vnmeet to receiue any number of men: secondlie, it is perillous. For if the horse be hedstrong, and should chance to breake the kirble, the reines, or port mouth of his bridle, he might run headlong vpon the lokers on. And therefore I would not wish a prince or nobleman to take view of a horse in that place, vnlesse it were from a house, out of a window, or from some scaffold: but rather to stand on the one side toward the middle Cariere, and distant from the stopping place the length of a maneging course, so shall he stand without danger and see the beginning, the middle, and ending: and it should be so much the better, if he stand on the right hand of the rider: for so the rider at both ends of the maneging path, in maneging his horse shal turn his face alwaies toward the Prince, and not his backe. The place of standing then being thus appointed, and the Prince there readie to behold what your horse can doe.

Ride first faire and softlie toward the Prince, to do your reuerence: that done, depart with a good round trot toward the further end of the Cariere path, bearing your rod with the point vpward towards your right shoulder, according as I haue taught

you

you heretofore, and being come to the ende, let the point of your rod fall toward the leste shoulder of your horse, and make him to turne an halfe turne on the right hande, and then to staie a little while: that done passe him forward, first three or foure steps faire and softlie, and immediatlie after, put spurres vnto him, giuing him a liuelie, swift, and lustie Cariere, and passe before the prince to the place of stop, whereas after that he hath stopped euen vpon his buttocks, then at the first, second, or third bound of his aduancing, according to that kind of manege that you will vse, or that the horse can do most readilie and can best indure: you shall turn him on the right hand, and so go back againe in the selfsame path the length of a maneging course, and there stop him and turn him on the left hand, and so obseruing alwaies one time and measure, manege him to and fro, as oft together as you shall thinke meet, but let the last stop be at the end where the Prince standeth, whoe shalbe then hard by you on the left hand. Or if you will, when you passe the Cariere, you may stop him somwhat short of the prince, and after that he hath aduanced, put him forward the length of a maneging course, & there according to the manege that you wold haue him to make, turne him on the right hand, and so come back againe in the selfe same path, vnto the place where you did stoppe him before, at the end of his cariere and there stop him, and turne him on the left hand, and so giue him to and fro, foure maneging courses: and if the horse be verie strong, you may giue him fire. And by this meanes the first and last turne shall be on the righte hand, and the last stop also before the prince.

You may also stoppe your horse when you first runne him euen right against the Prince, or else two or three yardes beyond him, & so without putting him any further forwarde, in his aduancing to turne him on the right hande, and then to follow on with that kind of manege that he can most readilie make, not passing the number of two or four courses at the most, stopping sodenly vpon the last turne, which must be on the right hand where he stopt first, so shall the prince be on your left hande. And after that you haue stopt your horse, in which soeuer of these places it be, make him to double on eth hand once or twice together, and immediatly after, or else before, intertaine him with the Caprehole, and Coruetti:

but

but he ſhould doe the Capriole with a liuelier courage, if he were put vnto it, before he paſſe the Cariere and manege, which being both done, you may make him to double again before. But maneging and doubling after a cariere, belongeth to a horſe of great force: which indeed ſhould repreſent in all his doings the very order of fight obſerued in the fielde, which is but little vſed nowe a daies, becauſe of the generall weakeneſſe of our horſes. Therfore I will teach you another order of riding your horſe to the ſheine, in ſuch ſort, as he ſhall ſéeme to haue more ſtrength then hee hath in deed: which is done onelie by obſeruing cleane contrary order to the firſt. For whereas you did firſt make him to paſſe a cariere, now you ſhall firſt manege him, not giuing him aboue fiue or 8. courſes, if you will haue them to be ſwift, or of like time, vnleſſe the horſe be the ſtronger, for then you may giue him ten or twelue courſes, and vſing any of theſe foreſaid numbers, you ſhall be alwaies driuen to make the laſt ſtop where you firſt began. And hauing aduanced, giue him either ſix double turnes, that is, on the right hand two, on the left hand two, and on the right hand two, or if you will, but three turnes in all, whereof the firſt and laſte muſt be on the right hand. And if he can do the Capriole wel, you may cauſe him to do it immediatlie vpon the ſame: neuertheleſſe, it were more eaſe for him to do it before he double. That done, go to the end of the Cariere path, and giue him a liuelie Cariere, ſtopping him a little before you come at the Prince, who ſhall ſtande then on your right hand, and after that he hath aduanced, let him double as before. For it is alwaies more eaſe for a horſe to double in the end of a manege or Cariere, then at any other time. Alſo after that he hath runne, ſtopt, and aduanced, you may let him breath a while in the ſame place, and then giue him what kinde of manege you ſhall thinke good, wherein good diſcretion muſt be vſed, to conſider the qualitie, ſtrength, and condition of the horſe, to the intent that order, time and meaſure, may bee kept accordinglie.

The end of the ſecond Booke.

Of the correction of vices in generall, Chap. i.

MInding to treat here of the corrections of such vices, as horses haue either by nature or ill custome: I thinke it most meet to begin first with those vices, that be incident to the chiefest partes and members of the horse, that is to say, the mouth, hed & neck, vpon the ordering or disordering whereof chiefly dependeth ẏ making & marring of the horse. But forsomuch as the most part of the vices of ẏ mouth are corrected by the qualitie of the bit: I purpose therefore to reserue them vntill I come to talke of the diuersities of bits.

Of the vices of the head and necke, and first how to correct your horse when he beareth his head or necke awry, Chap. ii.

I Will shew you diuers waies, wishing you when need requireth to proue them all, & then to vse that as your ordinarie remedie, which you shal know by experience to do your horse most good. First, vse to correct him with the contrary spur, as for example. If he beareth awrie on the left hand, strike him once or twice with the right spur, turning inward your bridle hand somewhat towarde the right side: and if he beareth awrie on the right hande, then vse the contrary order. But if he be verie stiffenecked on the right side, and soft, plieng or bowing on the left, then vse to hold the right reane shorter than the left, in such order as is taught you before in the chapter of the bridle and reanes in the first booke. You may correct him also by giuing him suddenlie a chocke with the bridle in his mouth, vpon his neather gums on the contrarie side, and you may giue him such a chocke two maner waies, that is to say, either by chopping downe your bridle hande on that side that he erreth, giuing him the chocke on the contrary side, and so pull vp your hand againe immediatlie into his due place: or else by turning your hande onlie inward, and straining the bit hard to his neather gummes

on the contrarie side without anie chopping downe of your hand at all, which kind of correction, if it be giuen with a temperat and staid hand, it is marueilous good to correct the forsaid vice in anie horse, of what sort soeuer he be. It is verie good also, and specially when he hangeth or boweth with his whole body, more of one side than of another, to hold the calfe of your leg alwaies close to his belie on the contrarie side, nigh vnto the foregirt, to the intent you may be readie from time to time, not onelie to pricke him a little with the spur of the same leg, but also when néede requireth to touch him therewith well and surelie. Whereof when you perceiue that he beginneth to haue some feare, and thereby to amend his fault, you shal do wel suddenly to remoue your leg from that place, & in that instant to make much of him. So that afterwarde if he doe but feele the calfe of your leg comming towards his belie, he will immediatlie amend his faulte, and beare his head on what side you will haue him. You may also correct the stiffenes of his necke, by beating him with your stirrop vpon the shoulder, or with your foote vnder the forshoulder, vppon the same side that his necke is so stiffe, which will make him to looke that way, to see what it is that so grieueth him which whileſt he doth, let slacke the contrary reane, and suddenlie pull away your foot and make much of him, and vsing him so a while, you shal make him both to knowe his fault and also to amend the same. It is good also to correct him with the rod, by striking him therewith on the contrarie side, either in the flanke, or elſe more forward nigh vnto the fore girt. But the correction of the contrarie spurre is of a more efficacie, and much more commendable: notwithstanding for a need, you may vse both. And in any wise forget not, whensoeuer he hangeth more of one side than of another, to holde alwaies the contrary reane shorter then the other, but otherwise let the reanes bee alwaies euen.

And to the intent you may beare them alwaies euen from the beginning: ride a yoong horse at the first with false reanes, which you may for the correction of your horse make either short or long of anie side at your pleasure, and yet hold your ordinarie reanes alwaies euen together, and of one length, as I told you before in the chapter of the bridle and reanes. And note, that it is

exceeding good to vse these corrections, whilest you make your horse to tread the rings, so often about on both hands as you shal think most requisit for his strength. And if he be very hard of neck on the right side, it shal not be amisse, whilest he treadeth the right ring, to laie your right hand vpon the midst of the right reane, & by straining it harder than the other, to make him to hold his neck that way whether he wil or not. And if he be harder on the left side, then to do the like with your left hand, whilest he treadeth the left ring, making your right hand for that time the bridle hand: notwithstanding, it were more sightlie to shorten the left reane, without shifting your hand in such order, as I haue tolde you before in the first booke. And to the intent you maie force him the more, to come wholie on that side that you woulde haue him, it were not amisse, in some place where none maie see you, to counterpaise him by bending downe your bodie and head on the selfe same side that the horse is stifnecked, slaieng your legs so as yee fall not, beholding alwaies his eie on that side, wherewith also he will looke you in the face, and thereby shal be forced to correct his owne fault, in turning his necke that waie that you would haue him, which kind of counterpaising, you maie vse sometime in riding him in and out the length of a mile: yea, also sometime when he treadeth the rings, not forgetting to turne your bridle hand also accordinglie. But if you woulde haue him to be suft of bodie, head and necke, quicklie then vse to trotte or pace him to and fro, the length of fiue yards, or there about, making him at euerie end to stop and to turne, helping him with your tongue, spur, or calfe of your leg, on the contrarie side, and sometime with the closing stroke, bearing alwaies a steddie hand, which woulde be moderatelie turned towardes the same side. And if you see that he doth not bring ouer the contrarie legge orderlie, bearing his head and necke euen and suft, then neuer leaue correcting of him with the contrarie spurre all the waie, vntill he come at the other end, and there make him to turne againe on the same hand that hee turned on before, continuing still to trauell him on the same side, vntill he hath amended his fault: which if he doth, then you maie turne him on both handes interchangeablie, so as his first and last turne bee on the right hand. And trauell him in such

sort to and fro, to the number of thirtie courses, or so long as you shall see him able well to endure, to the intent you may leaue him with a good mouth, remembring alwaies to make much of him when he doth well, and not to helpe him with the spurre, but when need shall require, but onelie with your tongue, which must be alwaies one.

How to correct your horse when he beareth not right the lower part of his head, called of the Italians, Mustacchio, and may be called of vs the Mosel, which comprehendeth both nose and mouth. Chap. iii.

IF your horse then vse to carrie his mosell awrie: put three litle short nailes on the inside of his portsmouth, on the contrarie side, and ride him with a musroll, hauing also three like nailes: yea, and if he carry his whole head awry out of al measure, then put three like nailes also on his headstal on the contrary cheeke: for otherwise the first two corrections shall suffice. But if such vice hath been long rooted in him, then al three corrections shall be litle inough. And if the headstall and mosel be made of double leather, you may so fasten the nailes betwirt the two leathers, as the prickes shal be next vnto the horses cheeke, & the heades of them couered with the vpper leather. Or if you will, you may put them in a thin plate of iron, made no broder than the leather, which plate being fastened to the inside of the leather, shal be the greater correction vnto him. But let him not weare those nailes aboue ten daies: for though you take them awaie, yet the place will be so sore where they stoode, as the horse will be afraide to beare his head ante more awrie, thinking that the nailes be there still to pricke him. And note, that such nailes will correct some horse, if they be put on the selfe same side that he wreth his head, so well as though they were put on the contrarie side. It is good also to put such nailes on the backside of the linke, fastening the kirble hooke in such order as I told you before, in the fifth chapter of the second booke. But to some horse, which perhaps through the negligence of the rider hath accustomed to carie his nose: yea, and also his necke cleane awrie, so as the muscle of his necke seemeth to be naturally bent & crooked: it is requisite not only to vse

the

the remedie aboue said, but also to tie the one end of a thong vnto the middle eie of his bit, or to the ring of his musroll on that side whereon he is so stiffe, and the other end vnto his surlingle, in such sort as I shewed you in the second booke, in the firste correction of the Credenza: and so to lette him stande a longe while togither.

And you maie also if you will, ride him for certaine daies tied in that sort, but then the thong would be strained somewhat straiter. Or in stead of the thong, you maie put on his headstraine or musroll, & tie the reans of that vnto the surlingle on his stiffe side, which shall be of more force. And vntill he carrie his head iust, let but one vse to ride him, & such a one as hath some skil, for al riders hands are not alike: and therefore often varieng of hands, maie make his fault incureable. Wherfore al the waies aboue taught, are inuented to helpe him that lacketh knowledge, or hath not a staid hand. For assure your selfe, that whosoeuer hath a good iudgment, a temperate hand, and can obserue such rules and precepts of riding as are before taught, he shal neuer néed anie of these inuentions, to correct either this vice, or anie other.

Certaine causes why it is better for a horse to beare his head vnder then right out, or to cast it aloft, and then how to correct him, if he will not bring in his head and reane as he ought to doe. Chap. xiii.

ALthough some do thinke it good, ỹ the horse should haue his head alwaies at libertie, and not to be restrained of his naturall fiersnes: yet I in no wise can allow it. For first you shall vnderstand, that his forehead is the strongest part of his head, and his nose or mosell is the weakest part, & tenderest, the more he thrusteth out his mosell, the more he dispreadeth his back, and hath the lesse force therein: and therfore can neuer make good manege, obserue time, keepe order, nor continue in breath anie while together, whereas by bringing in his mosell and the thrusting out his fore head, he aduanceth himselfe, and gathereth strength in his backe, vniting his force together: and thereby also he wel hath lightnesse and nimblenesse in all his doings. Secondlie, he shall sée his waie the better, and be in lesse danger

of falling when he runneth: and though he should fall, yet he shall be more able to recouer himselfe againe, than when hee holdeth his mosell right out. Thirdlie, in running against his enemie he shall be able to do or suffer more with his forehead, than with his mosell being the tenderest part of him. Fourthlie, he shall not be so apt to reare right vp vpon euerie light occasion, as otherwise he might do. Finallie, the horse that reareth well, and bringeth in his mosell, shall alwaies be a great deale better staied, both of head and necke, and haue a better mouth, than he that beareth his mosell right out. Wherefore if your horse will not bring in his head at anie time that you stay him with the bridle hand, then holding your hand still at that state, correct him sometime with your right spur, and sometime with your left, and sometime with both spurres together. And in the selfe same instant, it shall be good also, sometime by thrusting him with your right hande vppon the necke, to force him to bring in his head: but if he will not yeld for all that, then by pulling the bridle towards you, make him to go backe about three paces, and then to returne faire and softelie to his first place, continuing so to do a good manie of times together: and euerie time that he thrusteth out his nose, correct him in maner aboue said, neuer leauing him until you haue made him to amend his fault. And if he be verie harde to be brought thereunto, it shall be good to strike him sometime with your stirrup vpon the shoulder, or with your foot vnder the shoulder, holding it still there to make him loke that waie. But if you see that the pricke of the spurre doth cause him to bring in his heade: then make much of him, without molesting him anie more: and by thus vsing him, you shall make him to reare as you would haue him, either going, or standing still.

How to correct your horse when he ducketh downe his head, and beareth to lowe. Chap. 6.

IF he ducketh downe his head whilest you stand still in any place, then stay your bridle hand, and suddenly correct him with one spur alone, or with both together, not suffring him to remoue from that place: and also if he vseth that tole going, then correct him in like maner, without making

king him to alter his pace anie whit at all: not failing at euerie time that hee so dooth, to vse like correction. And if in ducking downe his head, he beareth it more of one side than of another, correct him on the contrarie side, and not on that side whereon hee hangeth. And if he be verie hote and furious, then immediatlie after such correction, lay your hand vpon his necke, or withers, in token of cherishing him, and that shall kéep him from running awaie: and so by suffering, he shall learne to know his fault, and to amend the same. But if your horse vse to ducke downe his head when you stoppe him: then beside bearing a temperate and staied hand, you must giue him the chocke of the bridle with the right reane: and in that instant correct him sometime with one spurre, and sometime with the other. That done, returne from whence you came: and from thence trot him, or gallop him to the selfe same place where you stopt before: and there stoppe him againe, holding the right reane in the midst with your right hand, being alwaies readie therewith to giue him the chocke vpon the right side of his mouth, and by mouing the bit faire and softlie in his mouth, sometime with the same reane: make him to know that you hold the reane in that hand of purpose. Whereof the horse will be so much afraid, as hee will no more cast downe his head: and vntill he leaueth this fault, neuer faile in this sort to correct him: and likewise when hee doth well, forget not to cherish him. And though a false reane for this purpose would do wel, and specialtie for a colt, yet it is not so good a correction as to vse the ordinarie reane: but if to giue him the chocke with the right reane will not suffice to correct his vice, then giue him the chock vpon both sides of his mouth with your left hande, holding both reanes together: and by vsing sometime the one correction, and sometime the other, you shall make him to leaue that vice well inough.

How to correct that horse which doth ouerreach in his going, that is to say, doth smite his forefeete with his hinder feete. Chap. vi.

THis fault is most commonlie incident to a young horse, and therefore, besides making his shoes shorter behinde than o-

therwise, they ought to be, you muſt alſo fauour him whileſt he treadeth the ringes, not increaſing the number of his turnes, nor quickening his pace, but according as his ſtrength, and breath ſhall require, which by often riding him a little at once, will increaſe euerie daie more and more. And then if he ouerreach whilſt he treadeth the ringes, correct him with the ſpur on the contrarie ſide, to the turne which he maketh: but if hee ouerreach in going right out, then correct him on that ſide of his bellie whereon you ſée his neck to be moſt ſtiffe. And ſometime you maie alſo correct him with your rod vpon the one or other ſhoulder. It is good alſo to make him to trotte or to gallop in ſome ſtonie ground: or elſe for want of ſuch ground, to ſtrowe the ring pathes full of ſtones of all ſortes, that is to ſaie, both with great, meane, and ſmall, and that will make him to lift his feete, in ſuch ſort as he ſhall ſeldome ouerreach. Notwithſtanding, if his hoones be not verie ſound and good: I would not wiſh you to vſe this waie, for feare of riuing his hoones, which of our horſeleaches is called a falſe quarter, and of the Italians, Falſo quarto. But rather make him to leaue this fault by well feeding him, & by riding him moderatelie without taking ouermuch of him at once, to the intent he maie increaſe in ſtrength and breath, which once had, then the griefe of his ouerreaching, will bee a good correction vnto him of it ſelfe. Moreouer, if you cauſed the ring path to bee digged full of ſtaires or degrees, it would keepe him from ouerreaching. And ſomtime it were not amiſſe to make him go a ſwath ouerthwart the furrowes in ſome grounde newlie plowed with deepe furrowes. Thus hauing ſhewed you diuerſe waies of correcting this fault, I wiſhe you nowe to vſe your owne diſcretion in chooſing that which ſhall bee moſt meete for your horſe, whoſe qualities you ought beſt to know.

Howe to correct that horſe, which when hee is chaſtiſed for any fault with the ſpurre, vſeth to ſhake his head or eares. Alſo how to knowe by the mouing of his eares, when he is maliciouſly diſpoſed, and howe to correct him for the ſame. Chap. vii.

EVerie time that he ſo ſhaketh his head, or eares, when hee is corrected, double the ſtrokes on the ſelfe ſame ſide, that you did

did correct him on before, neuer leauing him vntill you haue made him to hold his head still, and patientlie to suffer such correction as you giue him. And in no wise let any fault escape vnpunished, but alwaies correct him immediatlie for the same, sometime with the one spurre, and sometime with both together, and sometime with one after another: the order of all which strokes is taught before in the first booke, in the eleuenth and thirteenth chapters. If your horse in his going lifteth vp one eare, and holdeth downe the other, and careth as though there were a flie in that eare: then I aduise you take heede to your selfe. For most commonly when he doth so, he mindeth to play you some shrewd tole, as to plunge aloft, to run ouerthwart, or to fall downe, or to do some like desperate act. Wherefore suddenlie interrupt him of his purpose, by giuing him two or three strokes with the contrarie spur, on the contrarie side to that eare, which he most moueth. And serue him so, as often as he shall vse that tole: and if it be abroad in the plaine field, it should not be amisse in the selfe same instant that you spurre him, to chastise him also with a terrible voice, and by giuing him a chocke with the bridle on the one side of his mouth. Yea, and besides all this, if he be verie froward and curst, let not to correct him also with a good stick, by beating him therewith well & surelie vpon the head betwixt the eares. Which correction, though he be neuer so proud and stubborne: yet being giuen but once in time, and as it should be, it will so chastise him, as hee shall be glad ever after to leaue such fantasticall toies, so long as you are on his backe. And so doing, forget not to make much of him, leauing him alwaies with a good mouth. But note, that some time a flie entring indeede into your horses eare: or the pricking of his headstall, maie cause him to shake his eare, or to hold it otherwise then he ought to do, meaning no shrewdnesse at all: and then it shall suffice to correct him moderatelie with the contrarie spur, onlie to make him that he thinke no more vpon the flie, which perhaps stingeth him, or anie other thing that grieueth him, but to forget it, and so to attend his waie.

Haine

How to correct your horse when he whyneth, intending to strike with his heeles, or to do some shrewdnesse, being in the company of other horses. Chap. viii.

ALso if your horse, when you are in the companie of other Horsemen chance to whyne: or if you perceiue that he meaneth to doe some shrewdnesse, as to bite or strike, correct him immediatelie with the single stroke of the contrarie spurre, doubling the same according as occasion shall require, aswell in his going right out, as in his standing still. Albeit, if he shew any signe of shrewdnesse towards his fellows in marching forwarde, it were not amisse to correct him with the clinching stroke, and sometime by giuing him the check of the bridle, on the one side, or both sides of his mouth: and if that wil not suffice, then you maie all to rate him with a terrible voice, and correct him with your rod on the one or other flanke: yea, and perchance it shall be needefull also to giue him therewith a stripe or two vpon the head betwixt the eares.

Of restifenesse, of the kinds and causes thereof. Chap. ix.

IF a Horse bee restife, it proceedeth for the most parte through the fault of the rider, and of one of these two causes: for either the Horse is too vile, or else too stout of courage. If he be vile, then being ouer wearied, hee will for faintnesse giue ouer, and go no further: but if hee be proud and stout, then fesling himselfe somewhat wearie, and out of breath, he will fall a leaping and yarking, thinking to be eased of his trauell that waie: or perhaps will doe the like in the beginning, immediatly after his rider be mounted: and if he perceiue that his rider be afraid of him, then he will take such a stomacke vnto him, as he will suddenlie staie and stop there, maugre his riders head. Of which two kindes of restifenesse, that which proceedeth of vilenesse of courage is the worst. But there be some horses, not onelie stoute, and lustie of courage, but also ramege, that is to saie, hauing two minds betwixt going and not going, when they list: which kinde of horses, if they chance to become restife, they be worse than anie of the rest.

Remedies

Remedies against restiuenesse proceeding of vile courage. Chap. x.

IF your horses restiues proceedeth of vile corage, then ride him into some long way or lane, closed in on both sides with a wal, dike, quickset, or bie hedge: but at the one end thereof, cause certaine men to stande behinde your horse, with staues and stones in their hãds: & if he will not go forward, then let them suddenlie strike him with their staues vpon his hams and legges behind, and likewise hurle their stones at the same places, all to rating him in that same instant with a terrible voice. During which time, you your selfe must sit stil, keeping silence: and let them not cease beating and crieng out vnto him, vntill they haue made him to go orderlie forwards as he shoulde do: which when he doth, then immediatlie let them staie both hand and voice and make you muche of him, by clawing him on the necke. That done, make him to go from the one end of the lane to the other to and fro, about eight times, and then light off his back or else pace him faire and softelie to the stable: and for certaine daies, see that you vse none other order than this, vntill he be cleans rid from that vice: wherein so often as he doth offend, returne you to the foresaid correction, for this is a proued and an infallible way to bring any horse from his restiuenesse. Which correction you might vse also in the plaine field, in some new plowed ground, but for wearieng of the footmen, whose trauell should be greater there to follow the Horse euerie waie that hee flieth out, than in a lane. And the more that your horse goeth backewarde whilest he is so corrected, let the footman laie on the faster, and crie out the lowder: and besides that, sometime it shall not be amisse to turne his head toward that way that he would so faine flie out. And so in your anger force him, by beating him al the waie vpon the hed with a cudgell, & by crieng out vnto him, to gallop so hard as he can driue, the length of a good Cariere: and then turne him againe toward the waie from whence you began to gallop him, & make him to go forward, correcting him at that time, more with your voice, than with your cudgell. And if he goeth quietlie, then leaue crieng out & make much of him, for I am sure he will be glad at length to yéeld, rather then to be so beaten: but if hee continue

stil

ſtill in his frowardneſſe, and will not go forward, then you maie giue him halfe a turne, and immediatlie by pulling in the bridle, make him to go backward about tenne paces in ſo haſtie wiſe as you can. That done, turne his head againe towards that waie in the which he would not goe forward, and then ſuddenlie put him forwarde, which dooing for the moſt part will make him to take his waie. And to the intent he maie bee the ſooner and the more thoroughlie corrected of this vice, you maie beſides all this, tie a good long cord vnto his taile, winding it about, like as you do when you trimme your horſes taile with a ribbon or lace, the laſt knot whereof would be faſtened togither with ſome of the heares, for feare of ſlipping; which knot if you cannot make, then tie the vpper ende of the corde vnto the hinder buckle of the ſaddle, ſeruing the croper, and ſo ſhall it not ſlip awaie. The neather end of which corde muſt hang downe, and traile after the horſe vpon the ground. And when your horſe will not go forward, but goeth backward, let one of the footemen pull the cord hard vnto him, which when the horſe feeleth, the feare to be pulled and hailed will make him to ſpring forward. And ſo doing, the footeman muſt in the ſelfe ſame inſtant let go the cord, and (to be ſure) beſids the pulling of the cord: let the reſt of the footemen alſo all to rate the horſe with their voices, laieng on with their ſtaues, and hurling their ſtones. And by vſing him thus a while, you ſhall correct him of his vice well inough.

Remedies againſt reſtiuneſſe, proceeding of ſtubbornneſſe and ſtout courage. Chap. xi.

But if you perceiue that ſuch reſtiues proceedeth of too much courage and ſtubbornes, which the horſe hath got ten through the fearfulnes of his rider: then ride him in ſome plain field newly plowed, there if he (whileſt you giue him his leſſon) chance to ſtop in deede, or minde to ſtop, and ſo to become reſtife: then immediatlie all to rate him with a terrible voice, beating him vppon the head betwixt the eares, and vpon the foreleges with a good ſticke. And the more reſiſtance that he maketh, in leaping or going ouerthwart, or ſeeking to fal downe flat, or to lie downe on the one ſide, or to doo anie other

thretonelle, increase you his correction so much the more, aswell in rating him as beating him. And to molest him the more, giue him the ring turnes on the one side, or on the other, or on that side whereon he himselfe doth moste leane: by meanes whereof you shall so tame him, as he seeing his resistance not to prevaile, shall be content from thencefoorth to goquietlie and orderlie. And in so doing, forget not to make much of him, both with your voice, and also by clawing him with your hand vpon the necke. That done, trotte him euen there to and fro, about tenne turns: then gallop him, and last of all, pace him, failing not to correct him in like sort, so often as he shall offend in the like vice. But note by the waie, that when the horse once knoweth the correction of the sticke or cudgell: it shall suffice to correct him with a terrible voice, and specially if he be ramege, and of two mindes, against which fault there is no correction of more efficacie. For the voice correcteth without disorder: and it maketh the horse afraide without putting him in despaire, whereas the cudgell manie times maketh him desperate and faint harted, vnlesse hee be corrected therewith in time. After which correction hee must also be cherished, and much made of, to the intent hee may vnderstand that his vice was cause of his correction. For the rod vsed in this sort hath no small vertue. And note, that though the corrections taught aswell in the last chapter as in this, may indifferentlie serue to correct this vice, proceeding of anie of the two causes aforesaid, yet they be more kindlie vsed, when ech vice is corrected with his proper correction, according to the order aboue declared.

It is possible also, that you may correct this vice, by holding a sharpe naile in your hand, to pricke him continuallie behind on the rumpe, neuer removing the naile from thence, for anie resistance or striuing that he maketh, vntil he hath left his stubbornesse, and is content to go quietlie. Which done, take away your hand, and clawe him with the same immediatlie vpon the necke: that done, you may pace, trotte, gallop, or manage him as you shall thinke good.

Other

Other corrections to be vsed against restifnesse, when the rider lacketh art, and knoweth not by order of riding, how to get the maistrie of his horse, and to make him know his fault. Chap. xii.

LEt a footman stand behind you with a shrewd cat tied at the one end of a long poll with hir bellie vpward, so as she mate haue hir mouth & clawes at libertie: and when your horse doth state or goe backward, let him thrust the cat betwixt his thighs, so as she may scratch & bite him sometime by the thighes, sometime by the rumpe, and oftentimes by the stones. But let the footman and al the standers by, threaten the horse with a terrible noise, and you shall see it will make him to go as you would haue him: and in so doing be readie to make much of him. Also the shrill crie of a Hedgehog being strait tied by the foote vnder the horses taile, is a remedie of like force, which was proued by maister Vincentio Respino, a Neapolitan, who corrected by this meanes an old restife horse of the kings in such sort, as he had much ado afterward to keepe him from the contrarie vice of running awaie.

The like correction also maie be giuen with a whelpe, or some other lowd crieng and biting beast, being tied to the crouper, so as he maie hang downe vnder the horses taile, hauing a long corde fastened vnto him: which Corde passing betweene the Horses thighes, the rider shall hold in his right hand to molest the horse therewith, by pulling it, and letting it go as he shall see it needfull. Or in stead of such a beast, there maie be tied a peece of iron of a foote in length, or more, and three fingers broad, made full of prickes like thornes, with a corde fastened thereunto, as before. But note, that al these waies rehearsed, are not to be commonlie vsed, but onelie in time of neede, and that with great discretion: for otherwise you should but amaze your horse, and driue him into despaire, so as he shall neuer vnderstand your meaning. And to saie the trueth, they are of litle importance in respect of the remedies taught before in the last chapter: and therefore I would wish you chiefelie to vse them, being sufficient alone, I warrant you, to correct anie maner of restifnesse. Neither do I allowe the waies that men were wont to vse in old time, to correct a restife

horse

horſe by tieng a cord with a riding knotte vnto the horſes ſtones, which cord paſſed vnder the horſes bellie vnto the riders right hād holding the ſame, and ſtraining it when need did require: which in deed is more hurtful than profitable, and therefore not meet to be vſed but in ſome extremitie, for the correction of a ſtubborn horſe accuſtomed to fal down in the water: of which vice we ſhal treat hereafter at large.

Of the contrary vice vnto reſtifeneſſe, which is to run away: of the cauſe thereof, and how to correct the ſame. Chap. xiii.

The vice of running awaie, doth not onelie proceed of the hardneſſe and euilnes of the horſes mouth, but alſo manie times through the fault of the rider, not having knowledge, nor ſtomach, as I ſaide before, to tame a horſe that is of too liuelie a courage, and therwith perhaps hard of mouth, wherby the horſe getteth an euill cuſtom, either not to ſtop at what time as the rider would haue him, or elſe if he ſtop, to ſtop without order: for redreſſe of which vice, you maie vſe theſe remedies here following.

If you chance then vpon an old horſe accuſtomed to run awaie when he ſhould ſtoppe, you muſt begin to ride him with more reſpect then you would doe a colte: and firſte ride him into ſome long waie or lane incloſed of both ſides, and there teach him to ſtoppe, firſt vppon a ſoft pace, then vpon a trot, and afterwarde vppon a galloppe, and whenſoeuer he ſtoppeth, make him to aduance withall, by helping him in ſuch ſort as is before declared in the firſt booke. But becauſe of his euill cuſtome, ſee that ye runne him not of a long ſeaſon: and to be ſure that he ſhall not fall, or runne awaie at the ſtop of himſelf when you gallop him, appoint a footman to ſtand before him at the place of ſtopping, with a ſtick or cudgell in his hand, wherewith, after your horſe hath ſtopped, and aduanced, let the footeman by ſtriking him ſoftlie vpon the forelegs, but ſeldome vppon the ſnowt, make him to go three or foure ſteps backward. Whereunto if he be vſed a whyle, you ſhal ſee that afterward, ſo ſone as he hath ſtopt, he ſeeing the footeman ſtanding there, and feeling the drawing backe of your bridle hand he will go backe of his owne accord, without anie beating at all.

And

And when he is once perfect as well in his ſtopping, as in his going backe, then gentlie giue him a Cartere, forcing him in his running, neither with voice, ſpurre, nor ſticke. And onelie when you come nigh vnto the place of ſtopping, helpe him with your voice to ſtoppe: and for the more aſſurance, let the footeman in the ſelfe ſame inſtant alſo helpe him with his voice, and threaten him with his cudgell. Yea if he perceiue that the horſe will néeds paſſe forward, let him giue him a good blow with his cudgell vpon the ſnowte, which blowe, I beléeue ſhall not néede, if you obſerue well the order before taught. For the helpe of your voice, the pulling in of the bridle, and the ſight of the footeman, ſhall ſuffice to make him to ſtop as he ſhould do: and in ſo doing, ſee that you make much of him, ſuffring him to paule a while. That done, make him to go backward, euen as you did before, when you did pace, trot, or gallop him. And after that pace him to and fro in the Cartere path, about fiue times, ſtaying alwaies at the acuſtomed ſtopping place, and ſo depart, and ſée that you run him no more of a good while after, but onelie vſe the order aboue declared, vpon a ſoft pace, trot or gallop, not forgetting alwaies to haue a footman at the place of ſtop, which footeman beſide his cudgell, maie alſo haue ſtones in his hand, to hurle at the horſes ſnowte, when need requireth, which I doe ſeldome, or rather neuer allow, vnleſſe he hath the ſkeddier hand: or if you will, you may cauſe two footmen to ſtand before him, each of them hauing a good long ſtaffe in his hand: at the vpper end whereof, woulde be tied a little bundle of ſtrawe, which being kindled, let the footman, when the Horſe will not ſtop, thruſt them into his noſe, the feare of the flame whereof flaſhing before his eies, and the fire parching his ſkinne together with the ſmoke entring into his noſe will make him to ſtop. But though this correction for a néed is verie good: yet I would wiſh you to vſe the order before declared, which is ſufficient I warrant you, to make him ſtop with the bridle onelie, without the helpe of any ſuch extreame remedie.

It hath béene ſéene many times, that ſome rider hath corrected his horſe of this fault, by running him in the plaine fielde out of breath, continually beating him and ſpurring him in his anger, ſo as the horſe hath béene glad to ſtoppe of himſelfe, which correction

hath

hath taken so good effect, as the rider giuing him a iust Cariere, the nexte daie following, hath made him to stoppe with the least pulling in of the bridle that might be. But this correction is very perillous, and inough to kill a horse, and therefore is not méete to be vsed, but onelie when hee being too stubborne doeth ouermuch force you, and will needes run awaie with you, whether you will or not.

Besides the first order aboue rehearsed, for his better correction you may also bit him according to the quality of his mouth, wherof we shall treat hereafter: and vnto that bit, or to any other, you may fasten a cord, which must passe betwéene his gums and neather lip in such sort as I shewed you before, in the second booke, in the thirde correction of the Credence. Of which corde, when his mouth is once throughlie corrected, he shall haue no néed, nor yet of anie other helpe but of the bridle onlie: but in any wise let him continue in his ring turnes, which being ended, vse him to stoppe and to aduance vpon the knoll of some hill downward. And note this by the waie as a generall rule, that the correction of the footman with a sticke or cudgell, is neuer to be vsed but when some great necessitie requireth it. For it may make the horse too fearefull, vnlesse the footman haue the more skill, and can obserue in his correction both time and measure.

How to correct that horse that will reare right vp, when he is corrected for any fault with a sticke vpon the head. Chap. xiiii.

AS often as hee vseth this vice, faile not you in the selfe same instant that he riseth and hangeth aloft, to beate him well and surely with a good long stick vpon the forelegs, somwhat beneath the knées: yea, and if he be very much accustomed to this vice, it shal not be amis somwhat before he riseth, to giue him one blow vpon the legs at the least. And for the more suretie, and to make him the more afraid, it shall be needfull to beare the rod with the point downewarde right before his knées, alwaies in his sight: and being corrected a while after this sort, you shall sée that he shall leaue that fault well inough.

How to correct that horse that will fall downe to the ground when he is a little weary, or prouoked to do any thing, which he would not willingly do. Chap. xv.

CAuse some expert footman hauing a good cudgel in his hand, to be somwhat nigh you, at such time as you ride your horse, to the intent that when he perceiueth the horse maketh any offer to lie downe, he may be ready with his cudgell or staffe to threaten him, and to fraie him with a terrible voice, iesture, countenance, and by cruelly loking him al waies in the face, more or lesse, according as time and occasion shall require: which will be such a terror vnto the horse, as whilest he loketh all amazed on the footman, he will haue no mind to lie downe but stand still, attending to his rider: who in the meane while must sit still in his saddle, without making any noise or moouing at all. Afterward, make him to trot the ring turnes, whereas you may cause also more menne to stande with staues in their hands, and to doe as the footman did before. And if he will néedes fall downe there, then let them hold him vp whether he wil or not, cruellie correcting him, both with their voices, and also with their staues, by beating him vpon the head betwixt the eares, or vpon any part of his body nert to hand. And if this doo not correct his vice, truelie the fault is in the footman, lacking perhaps such terrible voices, cruell lookes and iestures, or suche order and time of correcting, as should serue the purpose. And therefore it were good for such men to haue in their hands fiery staues, made in such sort as is before declared in the last chapter saue one, the feare & smart whereof will keepe him from lieng downe whether he will or not, which correction may be vsed for a restife horse, by fiering him behind betwixt the thighes.

This vice also maie be corrected by the helpe of a footeman, hauing in his hand a squirt ful of water, which he must squirt in the horses eies, when he offereth to lie downe, which is a good remedie also against the Credence. But these remedies last mentioned, are to be vsed of riders of small skill: for an expert rider wil correct anie vice by true Art, without the helpe of any such toies.

How

How to correct that horse which passing through any water will lie downe in the same, and what is the cause of such vice. Chap. xvi.

THis vice vndoubtedlie proceedeth of a naturall disposition, incident to that horse which is foled vnder the signe of Leo, which is a hot and fierie signe. Albeit all horses foled vnder this signe haue not this faulte indeede: neither can it be knowne by the Ostrich feather in the horses necke, nor yet certainlie discerned at the changing of his teeth, whatsoeuer other men saie, but onelie by his plaine lieng downe in the water, for the which fault there is no better remedie, than this here following.

Cause a seruant to ride him into some riuer or water, not ouer deepe, and appoint three other footemen with cudgels in their handes, to follow him hard at the heeles into the water, to the intent that when the horse beginneth to lie down, they may be readie to leape vppon him, and with the helpe of the rider to force him to ducke his head downe vnder the water, so as the water maie enter into his eares: not suffering him to lift vp his head againe of a good while together, but make him by maine force to keepe it still vnder continuallie beating him all the while with their cudgels, and rating him with lowde and terrible voices: that done, let him onelie lift vp his head to take breath and aire. During which time, cease not also to beate him still vppon the head betwixt the eares, which done, ducke his head with like violence once againe into the water, and then let him rise vp vppon his feete: and whilest he is passing through the water, let the men follow after, beating him, and rating him all the waie, vntill he bee cleane out of the water, and then leaue, for otherwise it were disorder. Then the next daie following let him be ridden againe in the same water: and so soone as his rider seeth that the Horse maketh anie offer to lie downe: yea, and sometime before he perceiueth, let him immediatlie preuent him of his purpose, by touching him with his spurres, and by beating him vppon the head betwixt the eares, and vpon the flanke with his stick, threatning him with a terrible voice, and you shall see, it will make him to forget his lieng downe, and to passe through quietlie:

yea: and it is possible that this correction alone, without the helpe of the other before declared, will suffice to bring him from this vice. And to both these corrections, you may also, if you will, adde the help of the cord tied with a riding knot, about the horses cods, which cord the rider maie straine and let go, according as he shall see occasion, as well to preuent the horse of his lieng down, as also when his head is kept vnder the water, the griefe whereof, together with the other corrections, will the soner cause him to leaue this vice.

How to correct that horse which is skittish or fearefull, and will start at euery thing, and whereof such vice proceedeth. Chap. xvii.

A horse maie be fearefull, for that he is yong, and hath not beene ridden perhaps where sundrie sights are: and therefore if you chance to ride him through some town or faire he is afraid of euerie thing that he seeth. Likewise if he hath beene skared before time with anie thing that hath offended him, either with noise, sight, or otherwise, so often as he shal heare or see the same, he will be afraid. And finallie, fearefulnesse maie proceede for lacke of perfect sight, which is worse then all the rest: according to all which causes, remedies do follow heere orderlie. But first, as touching the young Horse, which is afrayd of such thinges as hee neuer sawe before: see that in no wise yee doe beate him for the same, least he take the thing that hee beholdeth and shunneth, to be the cause of his smart, and so become more fearefull then he was before; but rather staie there a while, and by gentle meanes make him by little and little, to go towardes the thing whereof he is afraid, which doing make much of him: and you shall see that by standing sometime still to looke vpon it, and sometime by going towards it, he shall be so well acquainted therewith, as hee will not feare it: and when hee commeth at it, let him staie there a prettie while together, to the intent hee may bee the more assured thereof. But if your Horse bee afraide of anie thing, which hath offended him before time, so as hee will by no meanes passe by it: then see that you your selfe molest him no manner of waies, but appoint some footeman standing behinde you to prouoke him forwarde, with the sounde of his

lips,

lips, and by threatning him with his voice, and if néed be, by beating him with a staffe vpon the rumpe, and vpon the hinder legs: and when he beginneth to goe forwarde, make you much of him all the way, for so a yong horse must be handled. But if your horse be throughlie broken in all pointes meete for him to learne, and knoweth what all maner of corrections and helpes meane: then if he chance to be afraide of any thing, and so suddenlie stoppeth, going by the waie, let not immediatlie to put him forwarde, by helping him with your voice, legs, spurres, or rod, or all togither, without any staieng, to acquaint him with the thing whereof hee is afraid: and that shall make him to goe alwaies forward, as he ought to do.

But if your horse be afraide of anie thing for lacke of perfect sight, then beate him not, but rather by making much of him, encourage him by little and little to go forward, helping him sometime with your voice. And if you see that he standeth doubtfull, betwixt going and not going, then suddenlie to put all doubtes and fearefull imaginations out of his mind, helpe him not only with your voice, but also with your spurres, and it will make him to passe forth without anie staie.

Note also, that to embolden a yong horse, so as he maie abide anie thing, it is very good to ride him oft in the night season, and in the day time in some towne amongst Artificers, and speciallie amongst Smithes, Pewterers, Armourers, Brasiers, Tinkers, and such like: and likewise amongst Furriers, where diuers coloured skins hang in sight, and also abroad in the field, where dead carcasses lie new slaine, to the intent that no maner of sight or noise may séeme strange vnto him: and whensoeuer hee will not come nigh anie such thing, then vse the order before declared.

It is good for certaine daies to let him weare such a whurligig as children run withall against the winde, made like a windmill sailes, fastened to his headstall vpon his foretop, or on the one side of his head, vnder his eare. For besides that, the swift turning about thereof before his eies, doeth helpe much to assure him: the whitenesse also of the same, whilest it turneth about, doeth take away those impressions or shadowes from his sight, which before were wont to frate him. But though this be a great helpe to em-

bolden the moſt part of Horſes: yet there bee ſome horſes of ſuch a nature, as after they haue worne it, they wil be the worſe for it, and become more fearefull than they were before: which ſo ſoone as you perceiue, vſe it no more, but rather vſe the meanes and order before declared.

Note alſo that when you vſe the foreſaid whurligig, you maie make it of what colour you will, as either blacke, red, yellowe, or bleiwe, according as you ſhall thinke it moſt needfull, for the aſſuring of your horſe.

How to embolden your horſe, and to make him hardy againſt other horſes. Chap. xviii.

VSe to encounter vpon a ſoft pace or trot, with another horſeman, face to face, in one ſelfe path, ſo as your horſes doſſe not one another, leaſt your horſe receiuing ſome harme, become more fearefull than before: yea rather, when you are almoſt one vpon another, if the other horſe be not fearefull, nor will giue place of himſelfe, then cauſe his rider to make him to recoile backe, by pulling in his head with the bridle: and that ſhal be a good incouraging to your horſe, & make him the bolder alwaies to go towards any other horſe. Or if you will you may encounter one with another, riding in two ſundrie paths, the one lieng cheeke by cheeke, within a foot of the other, being both of one length, each of them conteining about ten paces, to the intent that in maneging your horſes to and fro vpon a trot, you comming one towardes another from two contrarie endes, may both méet right in the midſt of your courſe, and ſo paſſe one hard by another: which you ſhall be ſure to doe, if both your horſes keepe like time and meaſure, as well in their trotting as in their turning: and loke on what hand ſoeuer the one turneth, the other muſt doe the ſame, and in the ſelfe ſame inſtant: and like order muſt be obſerued afterward, when you manege them alſo vpon a gallop. Thus by paſſing and repaſſing, and oft méeting without iuſtling: your horſes ſhall be ſo well acquainted, as the one will not be afraid of the other. Hauing the companie of an other horſeman, you may alſo embolden your Horſe whileſt you trot the ringes in this order following. Firſte, enter both together into

into the right ring: and then turning taile to taile, followe you the right hand, and let him followe the left, in the selfe same ring, enlarging the ring path so, as in your meeting, whilest you goe about, you may touch one another. And when you haue gone twise about the right ring, enter both togither into the left ring, & there turning tailes, obserue like order as before: and to shift from ring to ring, treading the same first with a good round trot, and then if you will, with a gallop. And thus by often meeting, both horses shall be well acquainted, and the one assured of the other, whereby with time, your horse shall ware so hardie, as he shall be afraid of no horse. It is verie good also to stand still with your horse hard by the ring, looking on whilest an other horse trotteth and galloppeth the rings: or to stand right at the stopping place, when another horse passeth a cariere: or on the one side, so as the other horse in his running, may passe hard by your horse. And to the intent that your horse for feare, turne not awaie when the other horse commeth anie thing nigh him, it shall bee good to haue the companie of some other Horseman, being mounted vpon such a horse, as is bold, and will not be afraide, standing a little off from you, whose ensample shoulde be a good encouraging vnto your horse. And to go sometime in the company of such a horse through some citie or towne, would be also a good boldning vnto him.

How to make your horse to abide both staffe, sword, great noise, gunshot, or any other thing. Chap. xix.

Vse first to acquaint him throughly with the rodde, so as he maie not be afraid there of, by often coleng him therewith vpon the neck, and by holding the point right forth, sometime betwixt his eares, and sometime on the one or other side of his head, so as it maie be alwaies in his sight. And when hee is throughlie assured of the rodde: then appoint some footman hauing a staffe in his hand, to stand in your way, whereas you should passe: and as you are comming towards him, let the footman by little and litle, make signes as though he would laie your horse on the head with his staffe: and then encourage your

horse to go forward towardes the footman, who in the same instant must retire backward, as though he would flie awaie: & by vsing him so a while, you shall see that he will not be afraid of the staffe at all. And after that he can abide the staffe, make him by the like meanes to abide the sword: but let the foteman beware that he strike him neither with staffe nor sword, least you vtterly discourage him for euer. After this you may cause three or foure, or a great number of fotemen to stande in his waie, making a great howting and showting before him, threatning him with lowd voices, against whom encourage him to go forwarde, first with a soft pace, secondlie with a trot, and thirdlie with a gallop, at which time, let the footmen retire backe, feining to run awaie. And if such footmen had staues and swordes in their handes, to threaten him withal, it should make him so much the more bolder.

To make him abide gunshot, or anie other like terrible noise, let him go hard by another horse, or rather betwixt two other horses that haue beene accustomed to the like noise before time, and are afraid of nothing. And as you are riding together, cause three or foure dags, or harquebushes to be discharged, first a prettie waie off, and then nigher hand according as your horse beginneth to abide them: during which time, cease not continually to make much of him, so well with your hand, by clawing him on the neck as also with your voice, and so by little and little, you shall bring him at length to abide any thing.

Of the vices of the mouth, and causes thereof in generall. Chap. xx.

BEing now come to shewe you howe to correct a horse that hath a naughtie mouth, aswell by vsing diuers kindes of bits meete for that purpose, as otherwise: I thinke it first meete to tell you the causes whereof such euilnesse of mouth procéedeth, and how manie vices thereon dependeth: and finallie howe to correct the same. And first you shall vnderstand, that a horse may haue an euill mouth, either because his chin or beard, where the kirble should lie, is too hard, or the places where the bit should rest on both sides of his mouth, called of Grison, Lebarre, be too hard, or his tongue is too hard: or contrariwise, for that all

these

these foresaid places perhaps are too tender, so as he dare not stay his mouth as he should, vpon the bit: againe, his mouth maie be to little, or his iawes maie be too great and too thicke. Of which causes do procæde diuerse vices, as to drawe vp the bit with his tongue, euen as though he would swallow it vp, not suffering it to rest vpon his gums or barres where it should rest: which vice Grison calleth, Beuer la Briglia, that is, To drinke the bridle, likewise to beare his tongue alwaies out of his mouth: also to beare too hard vpon the bit, which in Italian is as much to saie, as Tirar di bocca: also to wrie with his mouth, holding the neather part thereof one waie, and the vpper part another way, which in Italian is to saie, Far forfici: that is, To make shears. There is also another vice like vnto this, but not so foule: and that is, to wrie a litle with his iawes aloft, but not so much beneath, which Grison called: Ganheggire, a word derived of this worde Ganga, signifieng the iaw: also to defend the bit with his nether lip, so as it cannot rest vpon his barres, called in Italian Far Chiomazzuoli. Of some of which vices, there be also other particular causes, which shall be declared hereafter, when wee come to the corrections of the same. But Grison saith, that whilest some haue sought to correct these vices aforesaid, by often changing of rough and sharpe bits, they haue cleane marred their horses mouthes: and therefore hee wisheth you in ante wise to abstaine from all such kindes of bits, and to seeke rather to bring your Horse to haue a good mouth, and specially whilest he is yong, by riding him with a gentle bit, and by bearing a temperate hand, vsing such helpes, corrections, and cherishinges, as are taught before, whilest you teach him to tread the rings, with trot, or gallop, to stop, to aduance, to turne, to manege, or to passe a cariere: which cariere, the more seldome it bee vsed, and with the lesse furie, the better mouth shall your horse haue: for assure your selfe, it is Art and good order of riding which maketh the good mouth, and not the bit. Notwithstanding the qualitie of the bits is not vtterlie to be reiected: yea rather, when the horse beginneth to ware perfect in his doinges, and is well broken, and somewhat staied of head, it shall be verie necessary to ride him with such a bit, as shall be most meet to serue his mouth, be it hard or soft, to the intent he may beare the lighter, and with

the

the more stay, and also be the more subiect to his rider: for the which cause Grison hath set forth in figures fiftie sundrie bittes together with the names and vses of the same, as hereafter shall bee declared. But forsomuch as certaine vices of the mouth, maie be corrected as well by other meanes, as by the helpe of diuers bits, I will first declare those kindes of corrections, and then afterward treat of the correcting with bittes, and therewith shew you all the kindes, names, partes, and properties of the same.

How to correct that horse which shall either draw vp the bitte with his tongue, or defend the same with his neather lippe. Chap. xxi.

TAke a peece of whipcord, about a spanne long, and tie the one end thereof vnto the eie of the bitte, vnder the kirble: that done, turne downe the horses nether lip, to the intent you maie easilie bring the cord betwixt his saide lippe, and his nether gummes, vnto the other eie of the bit, and there to be tied and fastened, and the more the corde be strained, the harder and stronger shall the bitte be. And if the knots at both ends be handsomlie knit, no man shall perceiue the mysterie thereof: or if you will, in stead of the cord, you may there put a little cheane. And by this meanes not onlie the vices aboue rehearsed, are throughlie corrected, but also manie times diuers other vices, as the putting out of his tongue, the bearing hard vpon the bit: and also the hardnesse of his barres, so as he shal be able therwith to make no resistance. And such cord or cheane will do asmuch, being put to a plaine cannon or scatch, as if it were put to a harder bit.

How we to correct that horse, which will mowe or worie with his mouth, and the causes whereof such vices do proceede. Chap. xxii.

THough this vice doth chiefliie proceed of the naughtinesse of the horses mouth, yet many times the riding him with to high a port bit, which perhaps the horse cannot suffer, maie be cause thereof, or the distempered hand of his rider, not knowing how to handle him, & to make him to suffer the bridle, of what mouth soeuer he be, hard or soft. But to remedie the

the same vice proceeding of the first cause, buckle the mustrol that is to saie, the leather of the headstall, which lieth vpon the horses nose so straight and hard as maie be: and so often as hee moweth with his mouth, correct him first with one spur, and then with another, but most with the spurre on the contrarie side. And sometime also giue him the chocke with the bridle, vppon the one or other, or else vpon both sides at once of his mouth, bearing alwais a steddie and a temperate hand: yea, and for his more correction, you maie also sometime strike him with your stirrop or foote, vnder or vpon the shoulder on the contrarie side, not failing to correct him sometime one waie, and sometime another, so often as he shall offend: and at length you shall bring him from that fault well inough. But if the port of his bitte be the onely cause of this vice, than you shall not néed to vse these corrections, but only to ride him with a close bit, or not so open, being hard or soft, according as the horses mouth shall require, whereof we shall now immediatlie treat.

Of the kinds of bits togither with their names and parts belonging to the same. Chap xxiii

Of bits, some be close & som be open. The open bits are otherwise called of our bitmakers, port bits, of which ports some are whole, and some are broken. Againe, of the broken ports, some are fashioned like geese necks, and they be round: and some like cats féete, and they be square, of which square ports so manie as are made with Olives, peares, or campanels, Grison calleth them cats féete. But our bitmakers do call all kind of square ports, vpset mouthes without anie difference, also some of the broken ports and vpset mouthes, are locked togither with one plight within another, some with a riuet naile, and some with a square peece aboue: and according as euerie bit, as well of the close as open, is fashioned, so is it named. And therefore some are called cannon bittes, some scatches, some melon bittes, some peare bittes, some campanels, or bell bittes, some bastonets, and some Cattes féete. Of which names, the first foure are alreadie well knowne vnto our bitmakers, through the helpe of old Alexander the Italian Rider, who taught them first, both the shapes, and also the names of the same. And

since that time they haue also learned to make the rest of the bits, though they haue not so manie proper names for them, as Grison giueth them: wherfore such names as they haue not, I trust it shal not grieue them to learne nowe of Grison, & specially I hauing heere englished them so aptly as I can, vsing therein for the most part their owne termes. For I haue not bene negligent in learning at their hands, how to cal euery part of the bit by his proper name, as the cheekes and eies thereof, the ieiues, the rols, rings, & buttons, the whole port, broken port, or vpset mouth, with one plight within another, or with peece, the trench, the flap, the toppe roll, and the watercheane, the neather cheanes, and the kirble, and diuers other termes belonging to their Art, not here needfull to be rehearsed. Note also, that of the broken ports & vpset mouthes, some be complete, and some be not. The complete be those, which haue both water cheans, and also trenches aboue: for the others haue but the one or the other onelie: and for that cause I thinke Grison calleth them but halfe bittes, as the halfe cannon, the halfe scatch, the halfe cats foote, &c. But besides all this, he teacheth you of what fashion the cheekes ought to bee made, to serue diuers mouthes, either short or long, right out or compassed: also of what height the vpper eies of the cheekes ought to stand, and how high the broken ports and vpset mouths ought to be, and which kind of closing is best, either with one plight within another, or with a riuet naile, or with peece, and also how the whole port ought to bee made: and finallie how the kirble ought to bee made. But forsomuch as the cheekes and eies therof, and also the kirble, are members common to both kinds of bits, so well to the close as open, I will therefore first treat of them, and then of the rest in their places, bicause the shapes of the close bits shall be first presented vnto you: and next to them the broken ports, vpset mouthes, and cats feete: and last of all the whole portes, as well without trenches, as with trenches aboue.

Of the cheekes and eies of bittes, and also of the kirble, and how they ought to be made, Chap. xxiiii.

VNtill your Horse then be throughlie staied of head, and speciallie if he beare too low, and bring his head in too much, let the

the cheekes of your bridle bee right out, and not compassed: for the righter they be with the nether endes comming to the manward, the lesse the bridle shall force the horses head: yea rather, it shall make him to carrie his head the higher, and his mosell the more outward. But the more compassed the cheekes be, with the nether end shooting out forward, the more they bring in his head: and therefore when the horse is once throughlie staid, it shall bee most meete to vse the compassed cheekes, which besides making the horse to reane kindlie, doe also giue the better grace vnto the bit in his mouth, and doe make it the more comely and sightlie. Againe, such cheeks must be long or short, according to the greatnesse of stature and strength of the horse, and also partlie according as hee beareth his head: for if hee be great of stature, and weake of backe, or carieth his head lowe and not steddie, then the cheekes would be somwhat longer then they be commonly vsed, and that shall make him to beare high, albeit such length must verie seldome be aboue a spanne: for vnlesse necessitie so requireth, it is better that the cheekes be short than long, so that comelinesse touching the stature of the horse be obserued.

And note here by the wate, that according to Grison, the cheeke called of him Laguardia, is onelie that part which extendeth from the nethermost eie, susteining the reine downwardes: for all the rest vpward, hee calleth Stanghetta, for the which our bitmakers haue no proper name: and therefore from henceforth I will call it the head of the cheeke, which head containeth the great eie, whereunto the reine is fastened, and a little hole aboue that, for the water cheane, and also the vpper eie, whereunto the portsmouth is put, which head togither with the vpper eie, if it mount high, it maketh the horse to beare high, both with necke and head: but if the head be short, so that the eie standeth low, then it causeth a contrary effect. But vnlesse some necessitie did otherwise force, I would wish it alwaies to be in a meane, neither too high nor too low, but answerable to the rest of the bit.

Of the kirble.

NOw as touching the kirble, it would be good and strong, and made with round links, fashioned in this sort like an S. Neither

87

ther doe I allowe for the moſt part anie other faſhion to bee vſed than this, howe harde or tender ſoeuer the horſe be of chinne or beard: for the more that a hard chinne is broken with rough kirbles, as thoſe be which are made with ſquare linkes, and ſharpe pointed, like dimants: the harder his chinne will be, through the corne fleſhe which will growe thereon, when it is whole, and ſo make the horſe to care leſſe for the bridle then he did before. And againe, on the other ſide, though the horſe bee neuer ſo tender of chinne: yea, and alſo very tender of his barres or gummes, which kinde of horſe is verie hard to find, yet I would haue neither his bitte nor his kirble to bee couered with cloth, as ſome men vſe to doe. For though bee be ſo tender indeede, yet it is not that which will giue him boldneſſe to ſtaie his mouth vpon the bitte as hee ſhould do: yea, rather I woulde wiſh you for a certaine time to ride him without anie kirble at all. And when ye ſée that he beginneth to ſtaie ſomewhat vppon the bridle, then make him a kirble of double fillet lace, otherwiſe called tinkle, of an inch broade, tieng it no ſtraighter, but ſo as it maie keepe the bitte alwaies at one ſtaie in his mouth, which fillet, when he is once perfect, you maie take awaie, and put in ſteed thereof, the kirble before declared: or if you will, you maie make him a kirble flat & ſmooth, like a flaggon cheane, and that perhaps ſhall offend him leſſe.

Of cloſe bits, for what mouths they are moſt meet, and alſo what vices they doe correct, which vices you ſhall eaſily finde by the titles following, and the faſhions of the bits, by the numbers ſet in the margent anſwering the numbers of the figures orderly, ſet altogither in the latter end of this booke. Chap. xxv.

FIrſt then you ſhall vnderſtand, that cloſe bits are onelie meete for horſes of a good nature, at the leaſt of not too froward a nature, whoſe mouthes ſuch bits maie eaſilie frame: yea, and ſome of them are more meete to be vſed in the firſt breaking of a horſe, than anie other bitte, as I told you before in the firſt booke, willing you to ride your horſe firſt with a Cannon bitte with right cheekes, of what mouth ſoeuer he be: yea, and vntill he be throughlie ſtaide of head, and perfect in all his doinges, I would neuer haue you to change it.

For

For a gentle mouth.

But afterward if your horse haue a gentle mouth, then you may ride him with a Cannon, hauing compassed cheekes. 1

For a mouth something hard.

If his mouth be somewhat hard, then you may ride him with a scatch. 2

For a tender mouth, and not great.

If his mouth be not great, but tender and good, then besides the foresaid bits, you may verie well vse a smoth Melon bit, hauing onelie a water cheane aboue, and such melons may be made like oliues. 3

Against defending with the lippe.

Take a Melon bitte, let the melons be somewhat rounder and greater, hauing on each outside a playing ring, or else two rings nert vnto the middle ioint as you maie see in the fourth and fift figure. But it were more to the purpose, to take a peare bitte, or a round campanell, otherwise called a round bell bit, or else a flat campanell: I call it flat, bicause the endes thereof ars not rising and embossed out, as the other is. And let not the peares of the peare bit, or the belles of the bell bit, bee made with manie edges or squares, for they are nought, but let them be smoth and round. And if either of them haue a plaieng ring on the outside, it shal be so much the better to keepe his lippe awaie: or else two plaieng rings nert to the middle ioint, of all which fashions you haue example in the 6.7.8.9.10.11.12. figure. 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

For the same fault, and for holding out his tongue.

You maie also take for the same vice a scatch with a turning roll or button on each side: and the greater such rolles be, the harder shall the bit be: albeit I would wish them to be of a meane bigneſſe, yea rather, to be small and not verie highe rising. At the ends whereof, on either side next vnto the middle ioint, maie bee put two plaieng rings, yea and if the rolles or buttons bee not ouer abroad, you may put three plaieng ringes on a side: and such kind of bit is verie good for a horse that will put out his tong. 13 14

88 Other

Other bits for the former fault of the lip, but not to be vsed very often.

Though some for the same faulte vse to take a double peare bit, or a double campanel, that is to saie hauing two peares, or two belles on a side, or else a bastonet, which mate be otherwise called a true bit with round buttons, or rough rings made high like wheeles: yet I counsell you not to vse them but verie sildome, and speciallie the bastonet with rough rings.

And note, that though round melon bits, campanels, scatches, and bastonets with buttons, be close bits: yet they be somewhat like vnto the open bits, in that they partlie giue libertie vnto the tongue: but beware that you make none of these bits, or ante other with a gag or spone in the middest, as was vsed in old time, and is yet at these dates in some places of the worlde, for that is verie naught. But if you woulde giue your horse some thing to plate on: then in stead of such gag or spone, you may place in enerie one of these bits a plateng ring or two, on ech side next vnto the middle ioynt: and though there were none at all, it maketh no great matter.

Of open bits in generall. Chap. xxvi.

Hauing sufficientlie spoken of close bits how they ought be made, & whereto they serue: I purpose now to speak of the open bits, otherwise called port bits, which be of more value, bicause they set the tongue at more libertie, which can make no resistance, the bit being out of his reache: yea, these bits be so proper to correct ante vice of the mouth, as by the helpe of them ioyned with Arte, and good order of riding, any horse may be made to haue a good mouth. And first, beginning with the broken ports, and vpset mouthes, I will shewe you how such portes and vpset mouthes ought to be made, and howe they may be locked, ioyned, or fastened together, and which kind of locking is best: and then what vices they doe correct, obseruing for the finding of the vices, and fashions of the bits, the order before declared and kept.

Of

Of broken ports and vplet mouthes, how they ought to be made, and what vices they doo correct. Chap. xxvii.

YOu shall vnderstand then, that so well broken portes as vplet mouthes ought to be made all of one peece together with the ieiues, and so to rise vppe with a round or square, meeting onelie in the top, whereas they must be ioined together with a riuet naile, or with one plight within another: or els with a square peece aboue, according as shal be most meet to serue the Horses mouth. For a riuet or peece doth make the bit harder, than when it is locked with one plight within another. And therefore such portes as are ioined with one plight within another, are meetest for most mouthes, and doo best state both head and necke. And note, that the square ports, otherwise called vplet mouthes, muste not be fullie so wide in the top as they are beneath, neither muste they, or the round ports, be too high, or too low: for as ouer high forceth to sore, so ouer low giueth to little libertie. And therfore I would with them to be in a meane, according as the horses mouth shall require, but so, as it may giue libertie vnto his tong, and not hurte the roofe of his mouth, for that were a foule fault, and yet little considered in times past.

For a horse that hath tender barres, and doth swallowe vp his tongue.

TAke a halfe Canon with a broken porte, without anie trenches aboue. And if you will, such a broken port may be ioined with a reuet naile. But it would be better, if it were ioined with one plight within another, hauing onlie the water cheane aboue, according as you may see in ỳ first fiue figures of broken ports and vplet mouthes, whereof some bee ioined with riuettes, some with one plight within another, & some with peeces. 1 2 3 4 5 6

For a horse that hath not tender barres, and yet swalloweth vp his tongue.

TAke a canon with an vplet mouth complet, hauing trenches aboue full of little plateng rings, beads or buttons, and such Canon mate also be ioined with a peece. Or elle take a half canon with an vplet mouth, hauing trenches 7 8 9 10

11 aboue, fastened in the place of the water cheane, or if you will, in
12 the same vice you may take halfe a Scatch with a broken port or
13 vpset mouth, wrought like vnto the halfe Canon, as before said.
14 Of all which fashions you haue examples in the 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12,
15 13, 14, and 15. figures.

For a horse that hath somewhat harde barres, and swal-
loweth vp his tongue.

16 TAke a Scatch with an vpset mouth compleate, and suche
17 vpset mouth may be ioyned with one plight within an o-
ther, or else with a peece, which peece as it giueth the tung
more liberty, so it maketh the horses mouth more subiect.

For the same vice, and for defending with the lippe.

18 YOu may for the same vice make both this Scatch, and al-
so the close Scatch with a round welt, about the bignes of
a good big packe thread on the inside, so well aboue as be-
neath, which pinching him on the barres in his mouthe,
will not onelie make him the more subiect, but also let him from
defending with the lip. The fashion of which bit is plainly set forth
in the 18 figure.

For a horse that will draw vp the bit with his tong.

TAke a halfe Scatch with an vpsette mouth, hauing a
19 trench aboue in the place of the water cheane, as you
may see in the 19 figure. A halfe canon also made in
like sort doth correct the same vice, whereof you had an
example before in the ninth figure.

For a horse that hath a little mouth, and hard barres.

20 TAke a cats sote or vpset mouth complete, made with
21 smoth Melons or Olives. But if his mouth be great
22 and hard, let such bit be made with peares, or else with
belles, otherwise called Campanels. Of al which sorts
you haue examples in the 20, 21, and 22, figures.

For a horse that hath a dry mouth and hard, and reaueth
low, and perhaps defendeth with the lips.

23 TAke a halfe Cattes sote, made with smoth Melons, or with
24 peares, or else with Campanels, if hee defendeth with the lip,

the

the fashions of which bits, do followe the reste orderlie. And to the water cheane you maie also put if you will, twoe or foure little flaps or plaiers, to make the bit the more pleasant, that the horse may haue some sauour and delight therein.

Of whole portes, how they ought to be made, and what vices they do correct. Chap. xxviii.

Though whole ports ought to be round, and made al of one piece and not broken, or ioined togither in the top as the others are, yet they muste be broken beneth and ioined on both sides vnto the seines, wheron the peares or bels are put. For those that runne whole out with their armes, without any breaking at al, be too rough, and therfore neuer good nor meet to be vsed. And on the top of such port, muste hang the flap or plaier. Note also, that of whole ports, some are made without trenches, and some haue trenches aboue. But I will shewe you first the vse of them without trenches.

For a horse that hath very hard barres.

Take a whole port with Olines, or with smooth Pelons. And if such Pelons had on ech out side one plaieng ring, it were the better. 1

For a horse that hath a great mouth, and hard barres.

Take a scatch with a whole port. 2

For a horse that is hard of mouth, and defendeth very much with his nether lip.

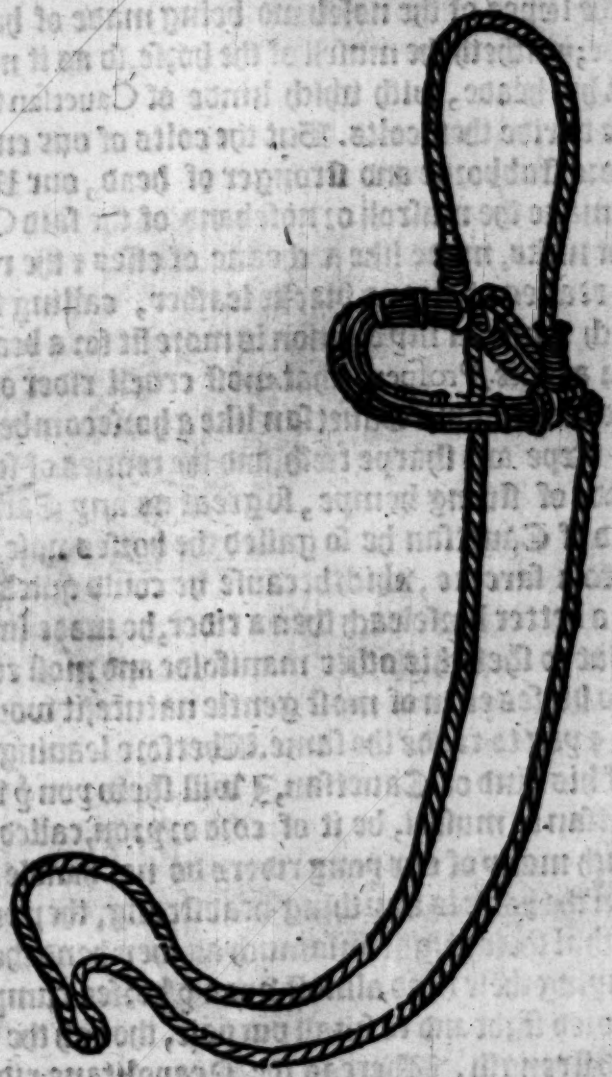
Take a whole port with peares, or pise with campanels, the shapes whereof are expressed in the thirde & fourth figures. And you may chose whether you will haue such campanels embossed out, or else flat at the ends. More ouer as wel the peares as campanels, may haue on ech out side a plaieng roll, and thereby the bit shal be of more force and efficacy. 3 4

Of whole ports hauing trenches aboue, how they ought to be made, and for what purposes they are most meet. Chap. xxix.

Also you maie make eueric one of these foresaid whole ports with trenches aboue, full of litle ringes, beades, or buttons, which trenches woulde be fastened as well to the porte, as to the

holes, whereas the water cheane is wont to be placed, and not to the great eie of the cheeke, where the reines are fastened. As they vsed in old time, and do still at these daies in some places. And the higher the holes be, whereas such trenches should be fastened, the harder shall the bit be. And so shall be any bit hauing trenches aboue in stead of the water cheane, be it Canon, Scatch, or any other whereof you had examples before in the 9, and 19. figures of the broken ports and vpsette mouthes. But forsomuche as these whole ports, hauing trenches aboue, in stead of the water cheane, are verie hard bittes, they are not meete therefore to be vsed, but onlie for such horses as be of a very stubborn and froward nature and be laden with great cheeks or lawes, hauing hard barres, and hard mouth. The shapes of which bittes, you maie see in the 5. 6. 7 and 8. last figures. But now to conclude, although euerie one of the bits before rehearsed, from the beginning to the ending, may serue, as you haue heard, to some good purpose (beeing vsed in time) and indeed be so sufficient to correct any vice of the mouth, without doing the horse any harme, as I would wish you to seeke no further, yet do they little preuaile, vnlesse the rider haue a good discretion and bee able to discerne one mouth from another, and to know when and how much to increase or to diminish the qualitie of the bit, and howe to applie the same, which if he can doo, and hath besides that, the true Art of Riding, he shall not neede the helpe of so manie bits, but onelie of these three, that is, the Canon, the Scatch, and the whole Port with smooth Pelons, or with Olives, which three bits with Art dooth suffice to frame anie Horses mouth of what sort so euer he be.



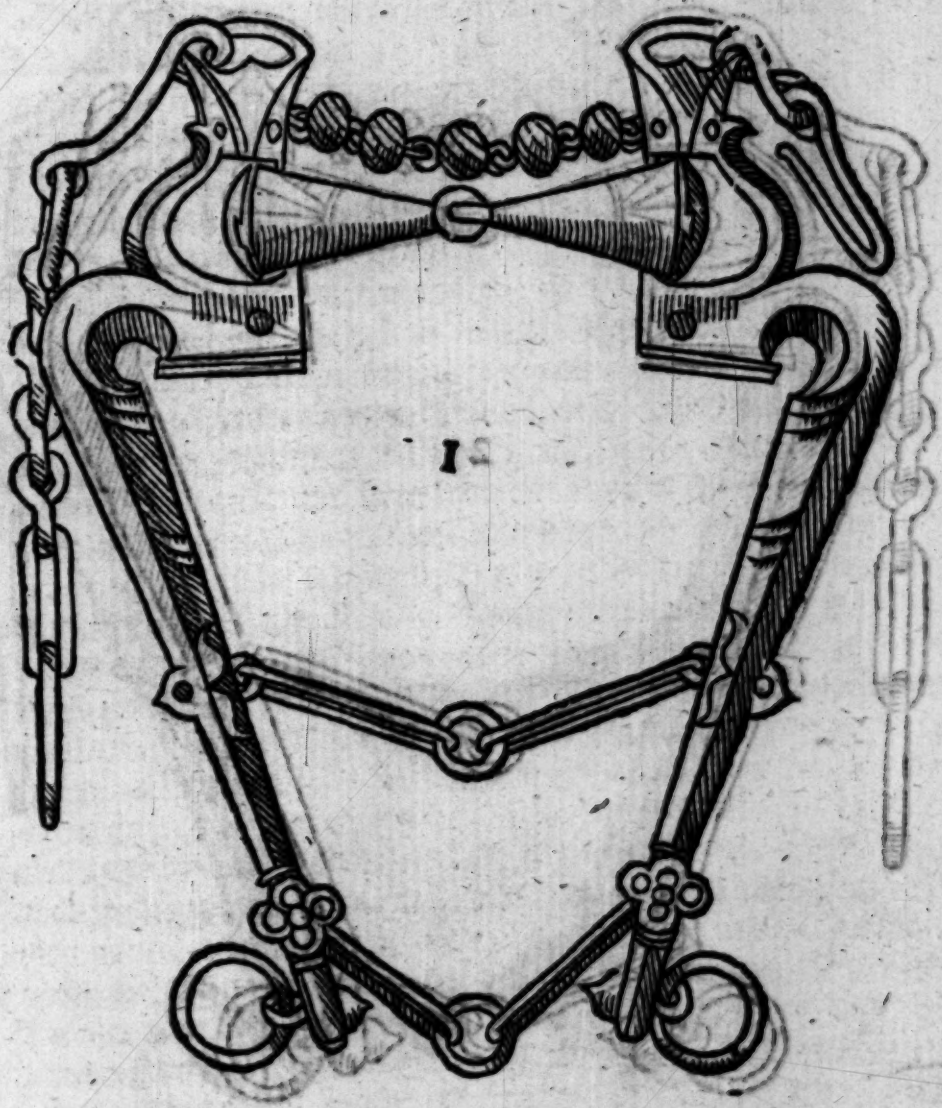


Addition.

HAuing here set down the true shape of the headstrain, Called of the Italians Cauezzana, I thought good briefely to describe the same, and also to shew the vse thereof, which in deede is no other thing but a plaine halter sauing that the moseroll or noseband thereof hath 2. nooses or loupes, through which passeth a long reane of corde, whereof each end is so fastened to the contrarie cheeke of the said Cauesset-

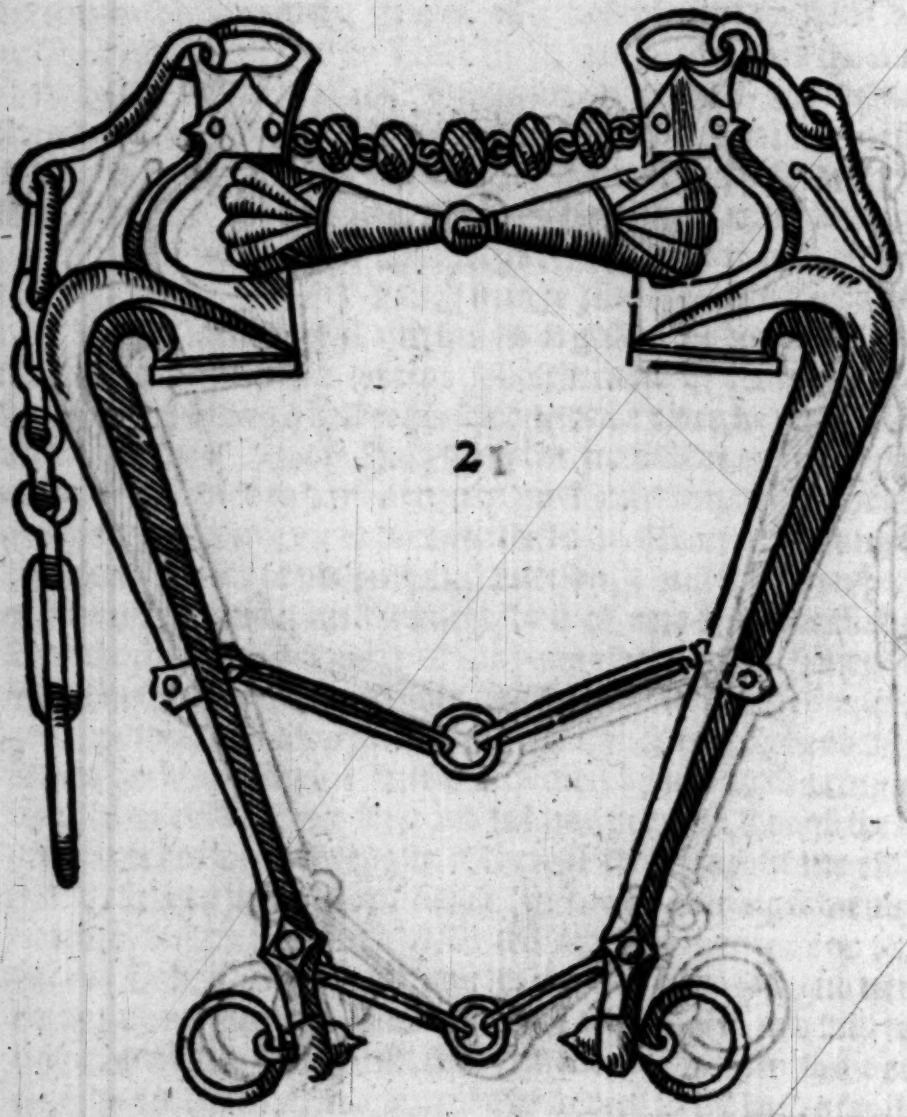
san, as by pulling & straynyng with both your handes the said reane running through the lopes of the noseband being made of harder and greater corde; pincheth the musell of the horse, so as it maketh him to bring in his heade, with which kinde of Cauetsan the Neapolitans do vse to ride their colts. But the colts of our englishe breede being more stubborne and stronger of head, our Ryders were forced to make the mustroll or noseband of the said Cauetsan of strong yron linkes, made like a cheane of elles & the rest of the headstall and reanes of strong blacke leather, calling the same a cheane, which name in my opinion is more fit for a beare or great dog then for a horse. Prospero, that most cruell rider of a horse, made the nosebande of his Cauetsan like a horsecombe of yron, hauing very deepe and sharpe teeth, and the reanes of such Cauetsan were made of strong hempe, so great as any Carterope, with which kind of Cauetsan he so galled the horses nose as it bred many times to a farcine, which because he could quicklie heale, being indeed a better horseleach then a rider, he made smal account thereof. But to shew his other manifolde and most cruel corrections vsed to horses euen of most gentle nature, it would greeue me to write & you to reade the same. Wherfore leauing to speak any further of his kind of Cauetsan, I will shew you ẏ vse of ẏ common Cauetsan or mustrol, be it of corde or yron, called of some the cheane, which many of our yong riders do not handle as they should: for when the horse is any thing headstrong, they pull and hale thereat with al their might, insomuch as they bend their bodies backward laying their head almost vpon ẏ horses rumpe, which is an euill fauored sight and to small purpose, though the rider had neuer so good strength. Whereas the Neapolitane rider sitteth right vp in his pad or saddle, or rather bowing somewhat forward, laying each hande vpon the midst of the reane on both sides of the horses necke, holding it there firme and fast, and when his horse hangeth more on one side then on another, and will not stay or goe backe, he giueth him a good fuet twitch with the one hand on the contrary side, wherby he correcteth the horses faulte, far more easely then by pulling and haling at the reanes, as our yong riders do, and therfore I would wish them to follow therin the skilfull Neapolitane rider, who in mine opinion is the most discreet and best breaker of a young horse that I haue seene of what nation soeuer he be.

A plaine Canon.

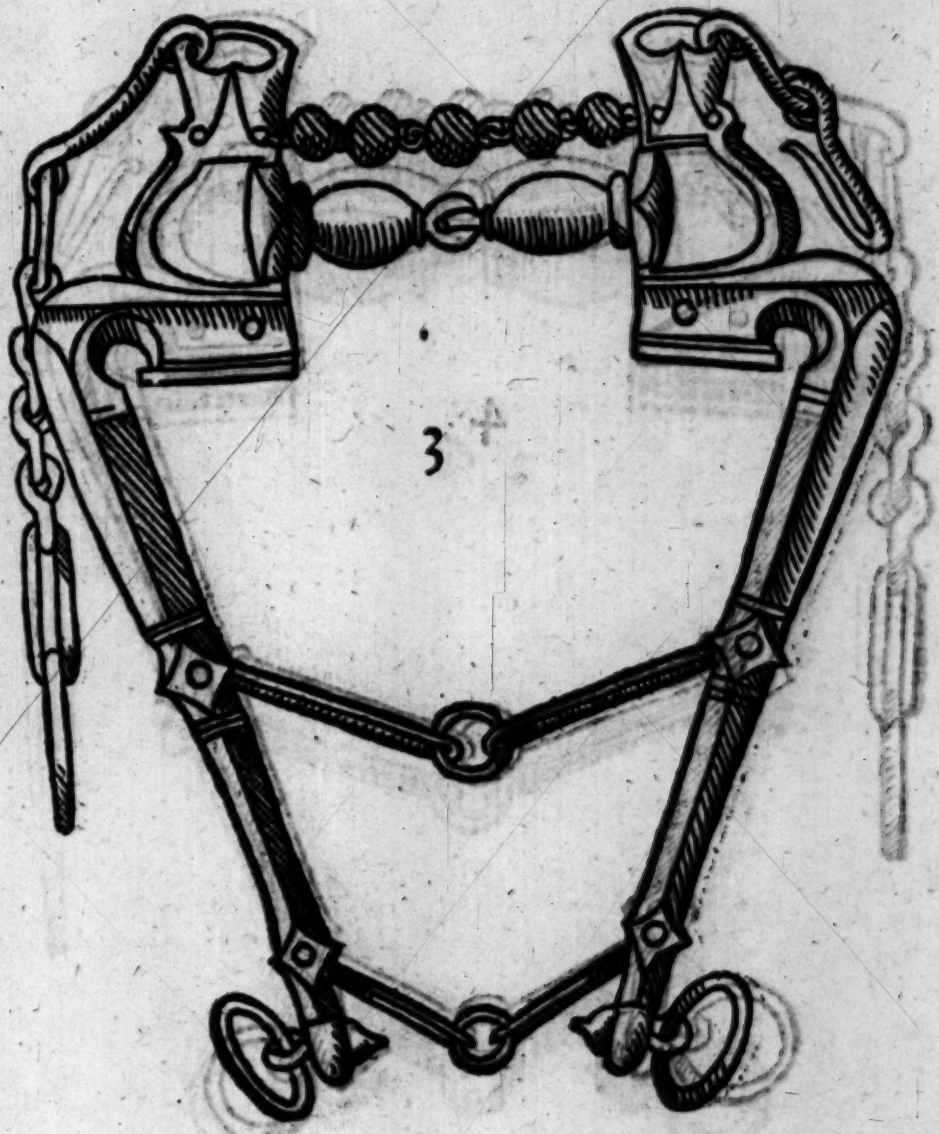


Close bittes.

A plaine Scaich.

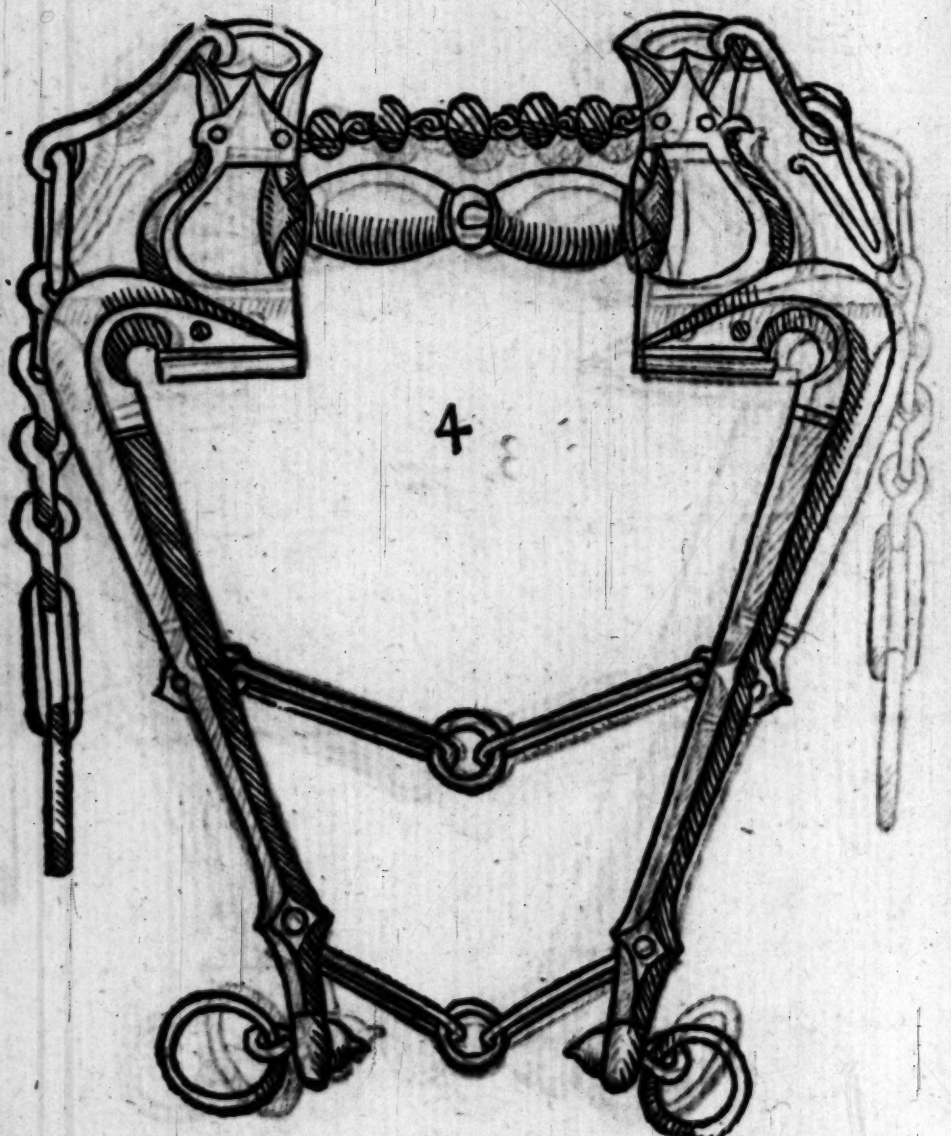


A smooth Melon bit.

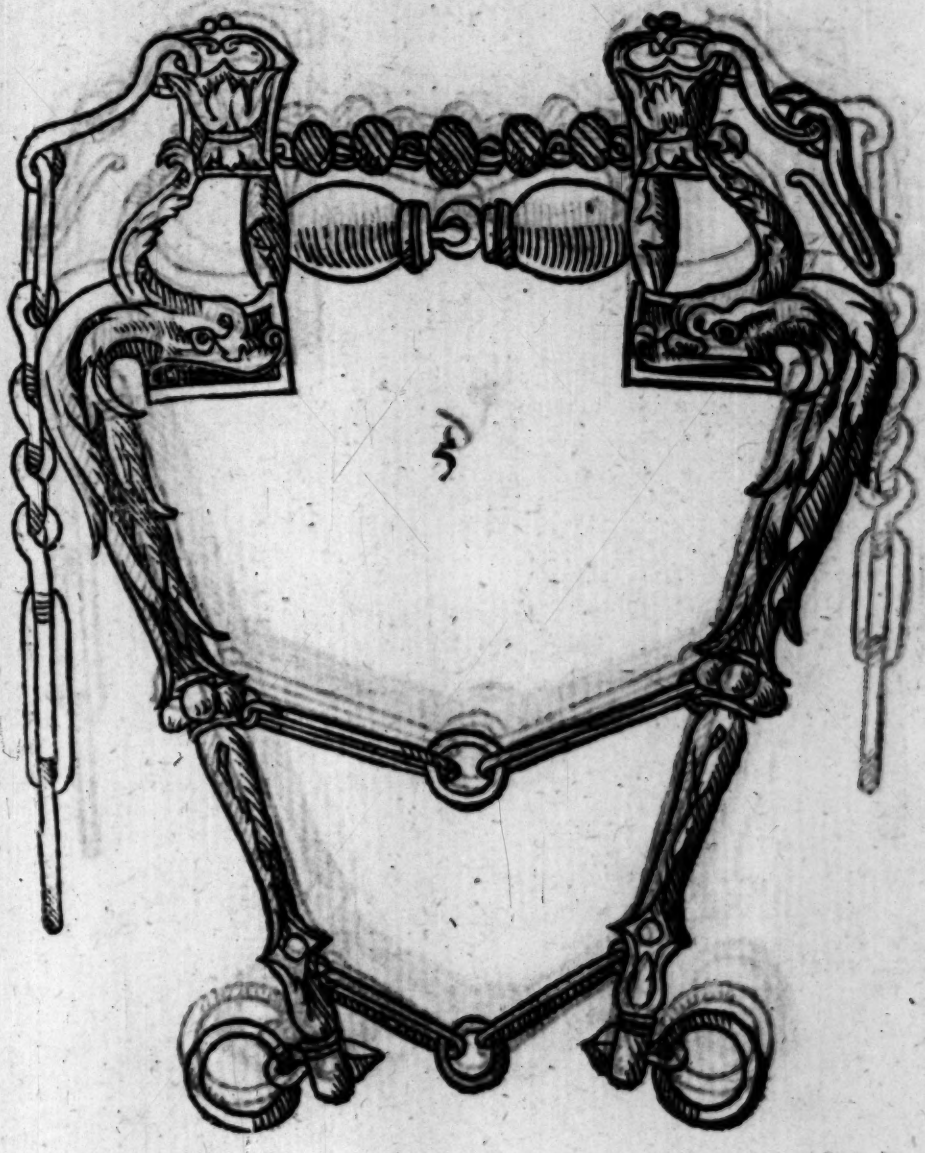


Close Bittes.

A smooth Melon bit, somewhat rounder than the other.

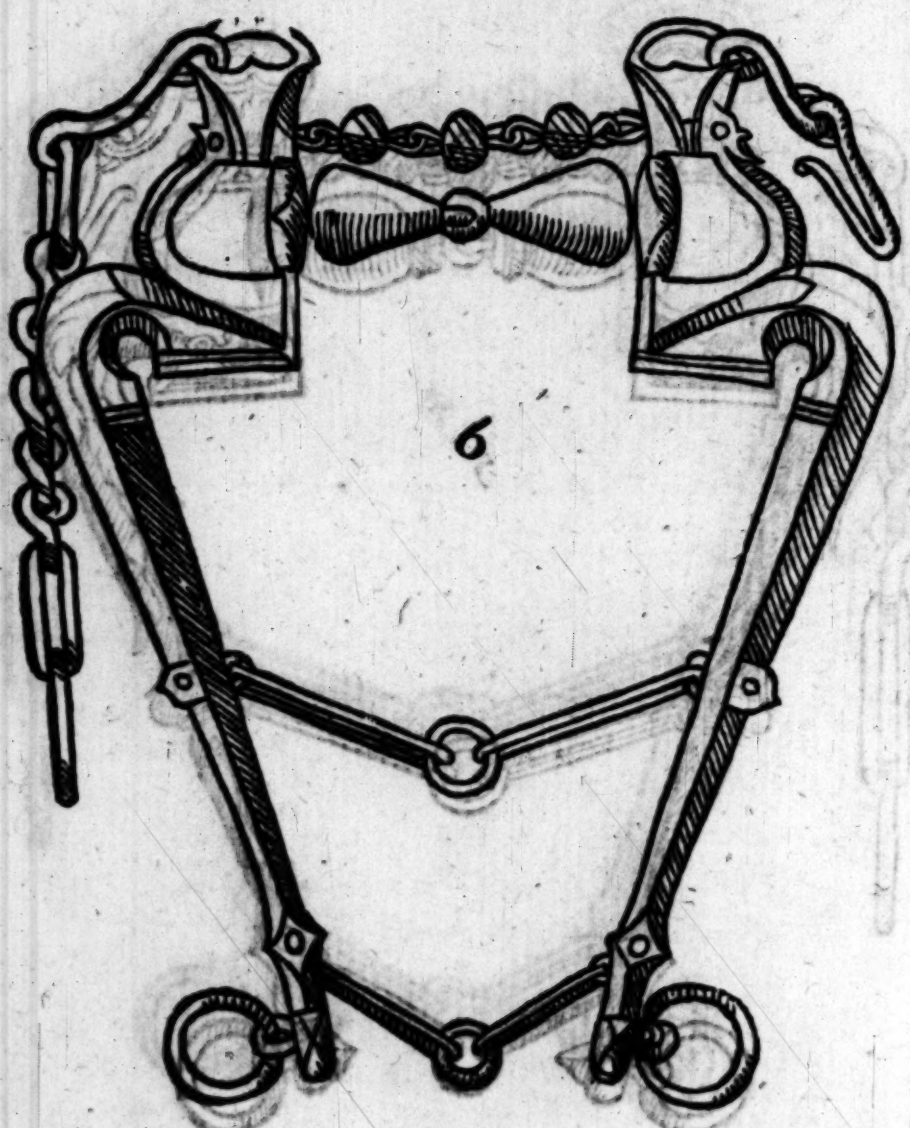


A Melon bit, hauing on each side two playing rings next the middle ioint.

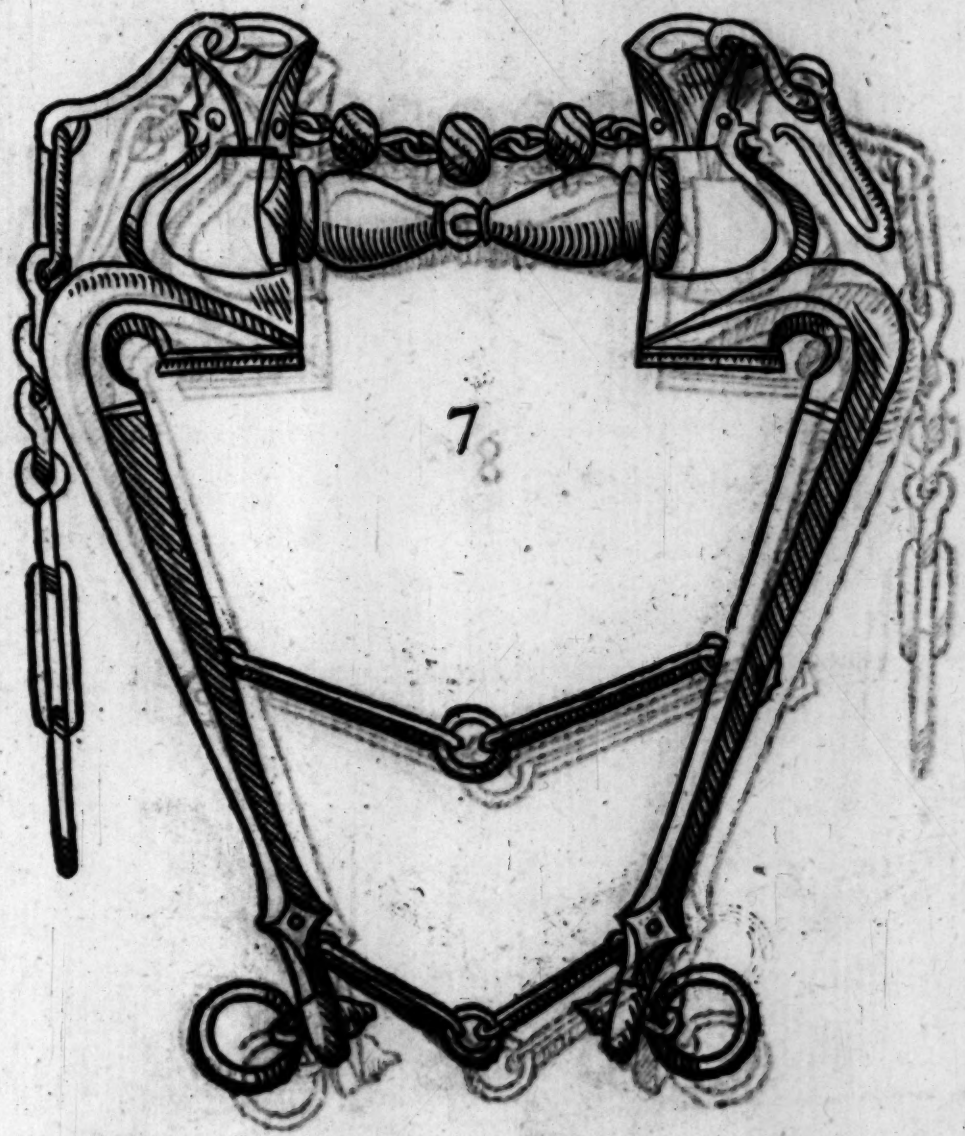


Close Bittes.

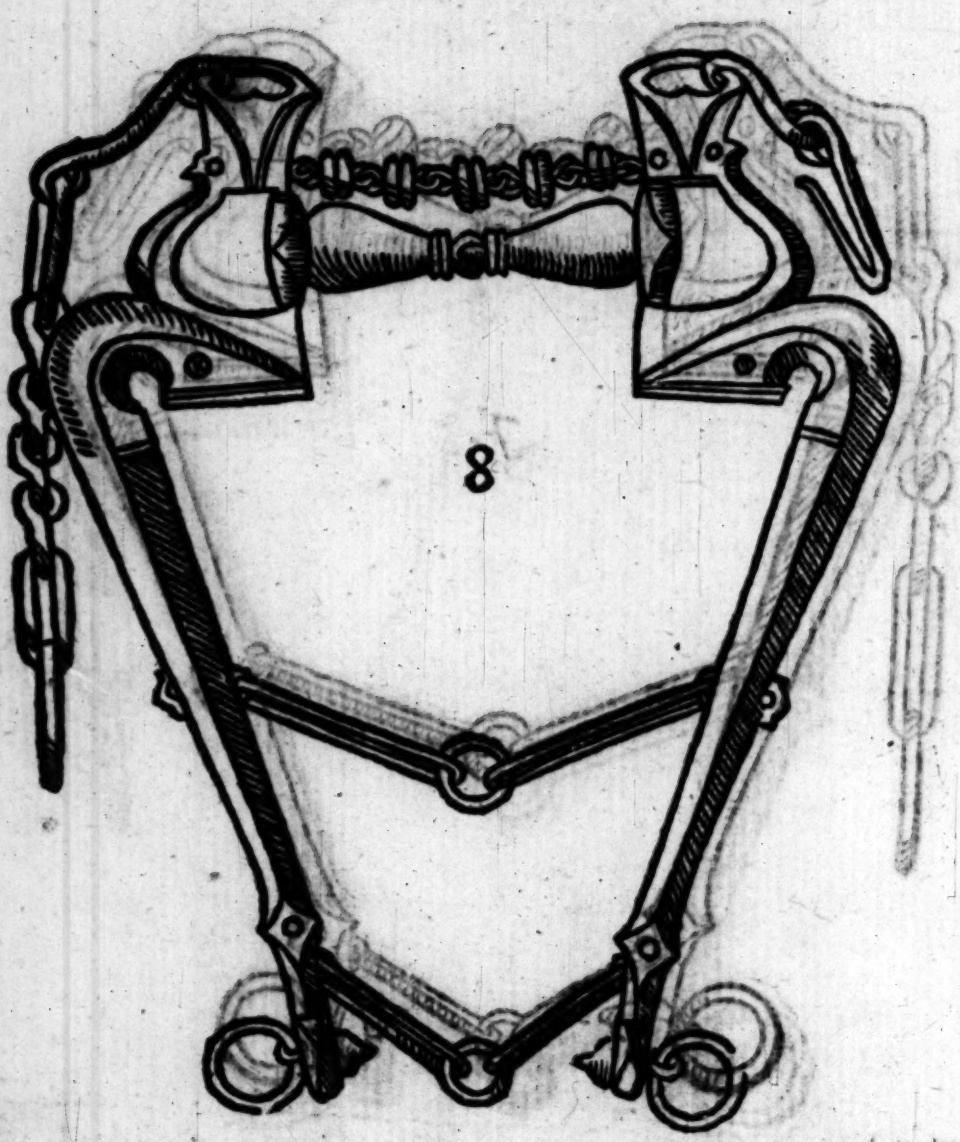
A Peare bit.



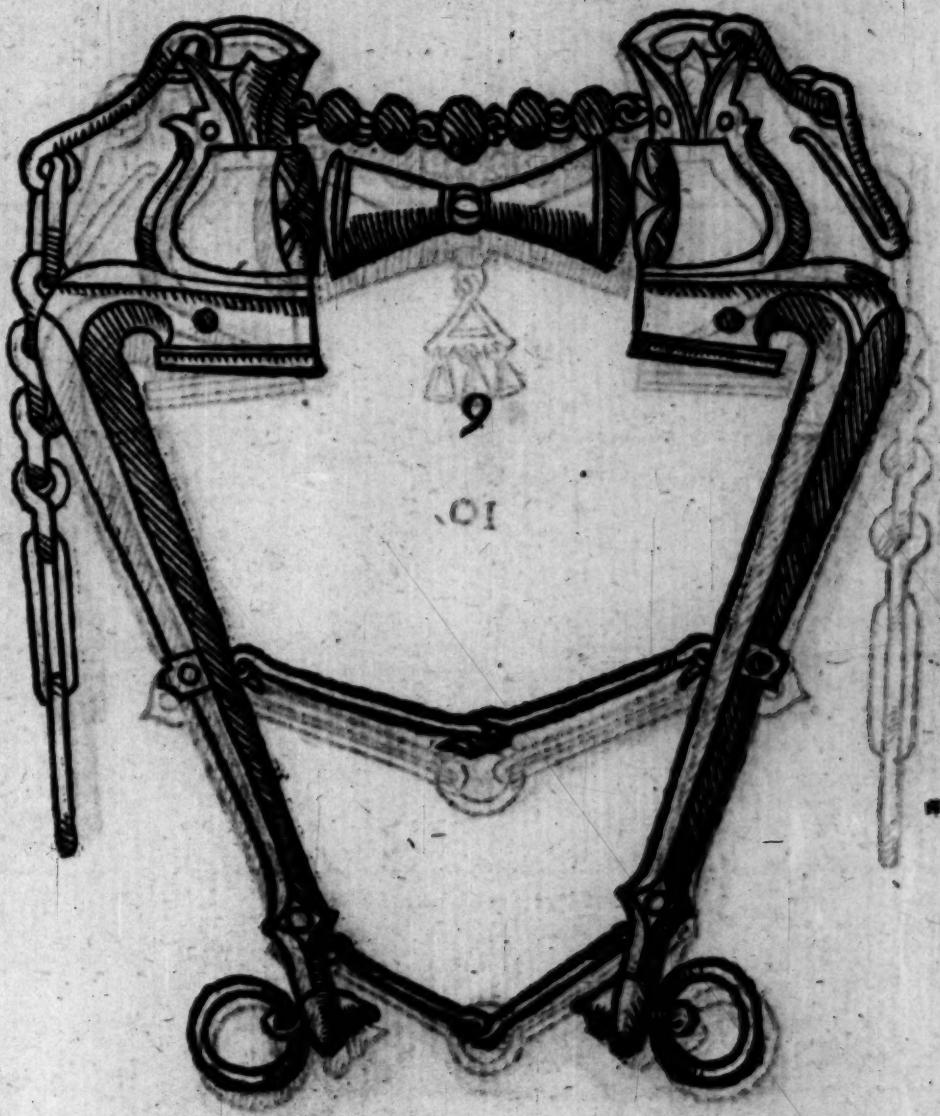
A peare bit, hauing on eche outside one plaieng ring.



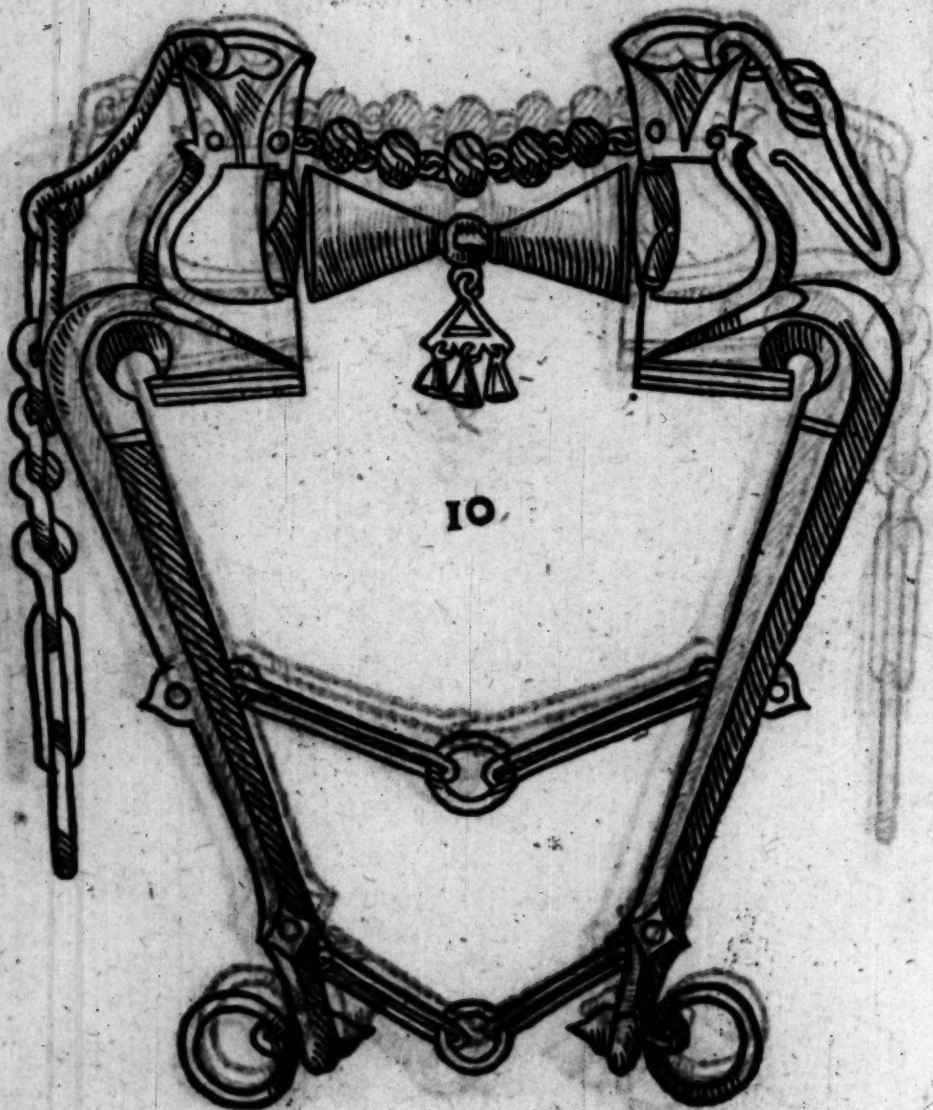
A peare bit, hauing on ech side two plaieng rings next the middle ioint.



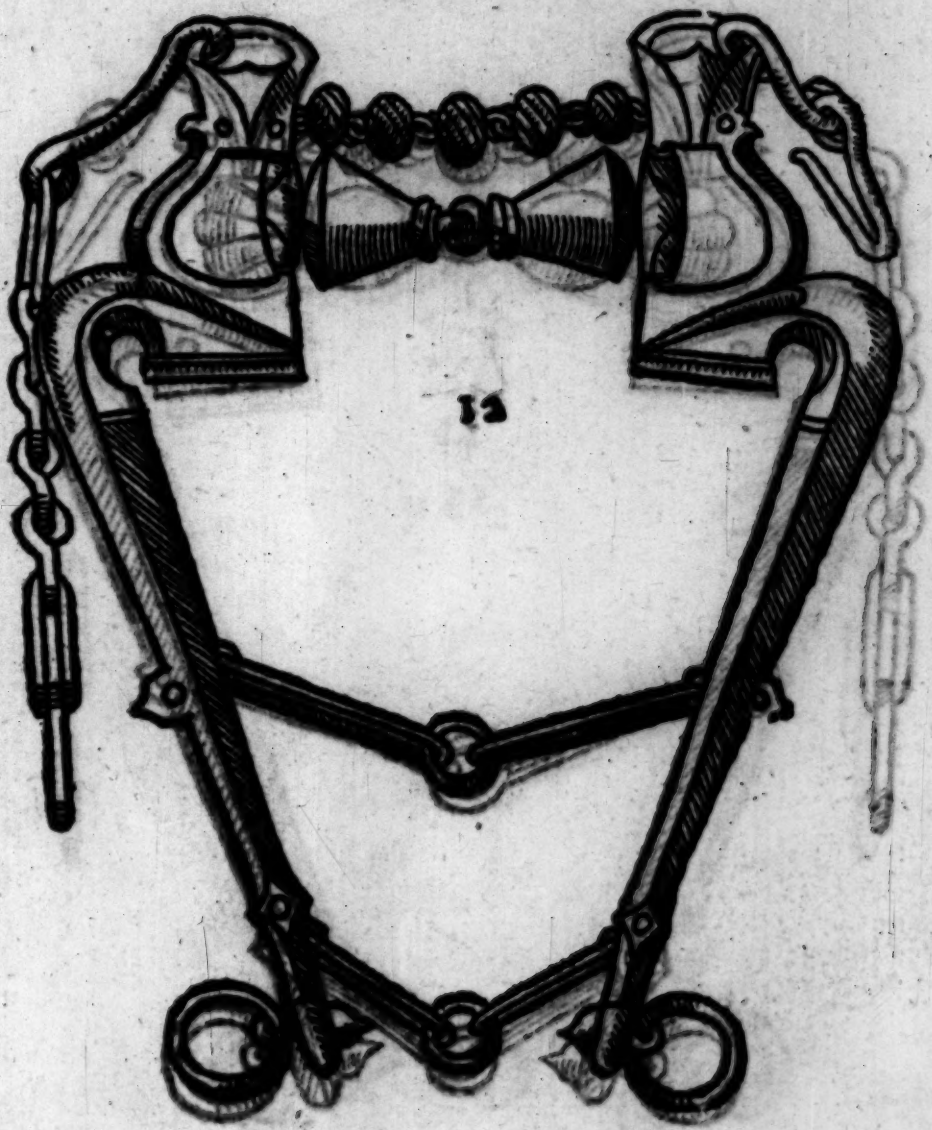
A round Campanell, or Bell bit, the ends whereof are embossed.



A flat Campanell.



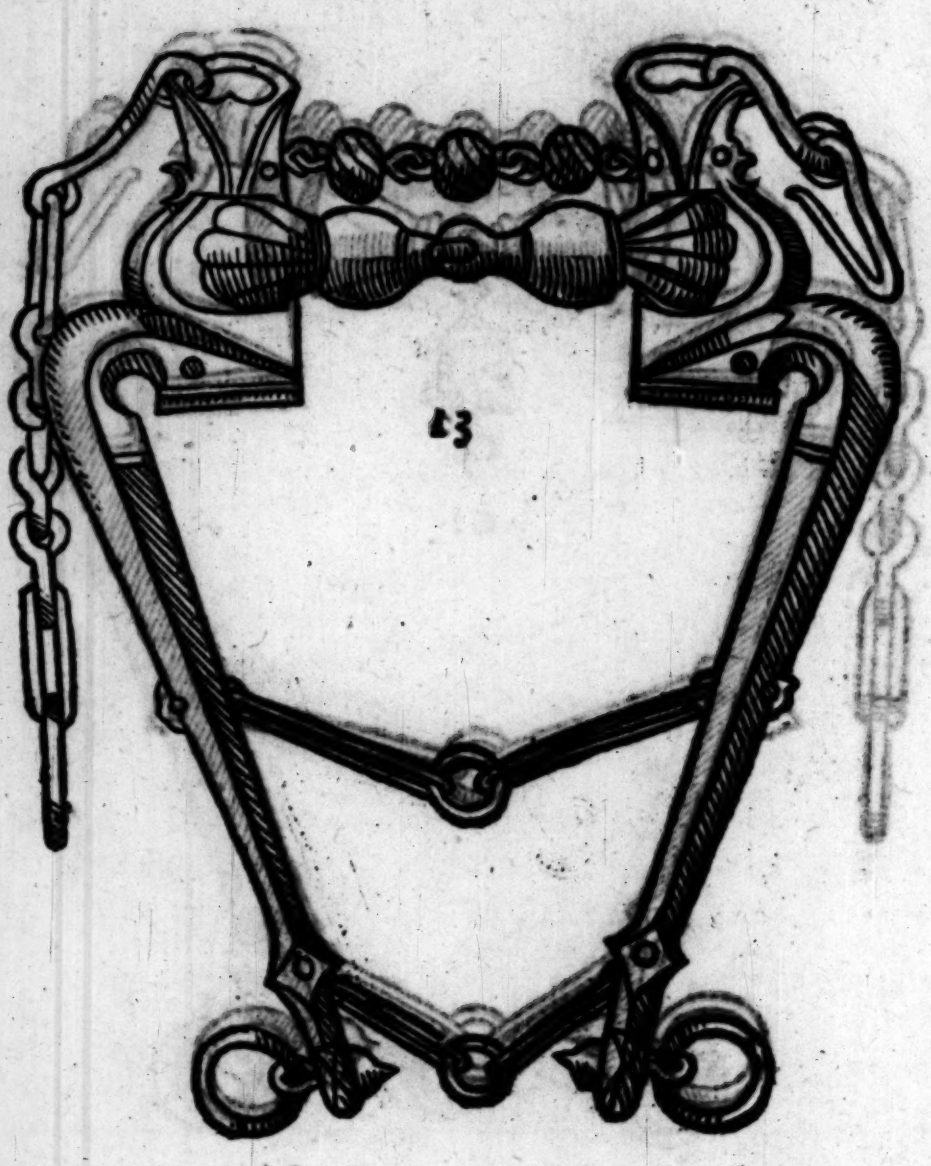
A round Campernell, having on ech
side two plaeng rings next the
middle ring.



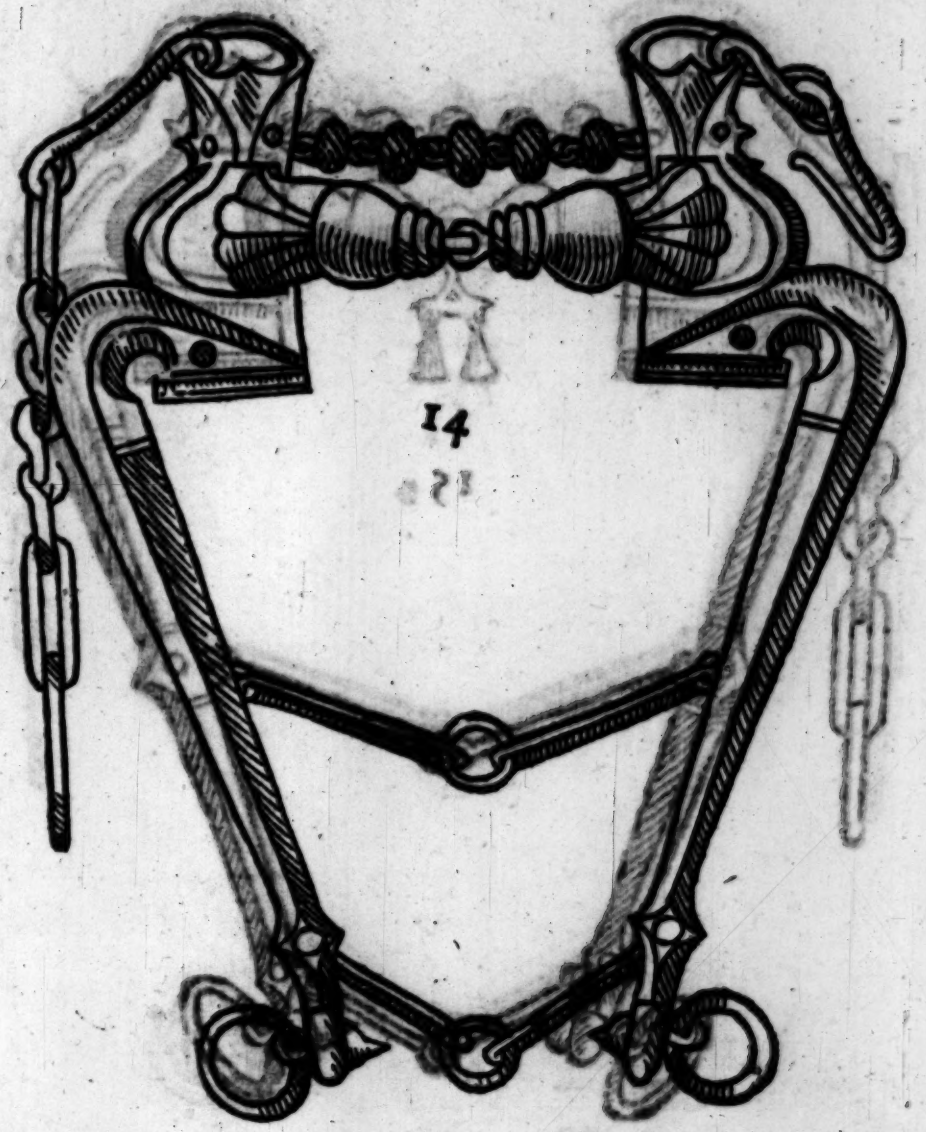
12

Pl.

A Scratch with two turning volles or buttons.

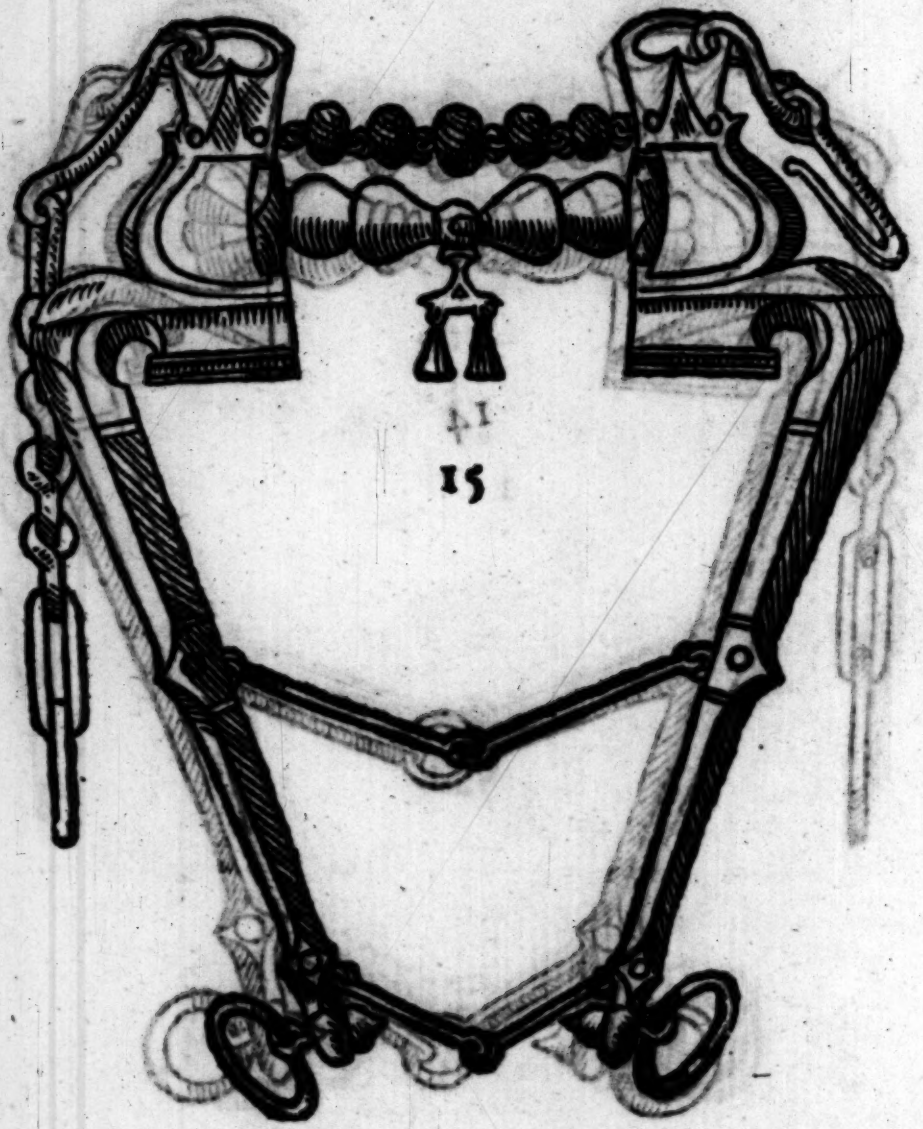


A Scatch with two turning tols, hauing on each side three plaing rings next the middle rings

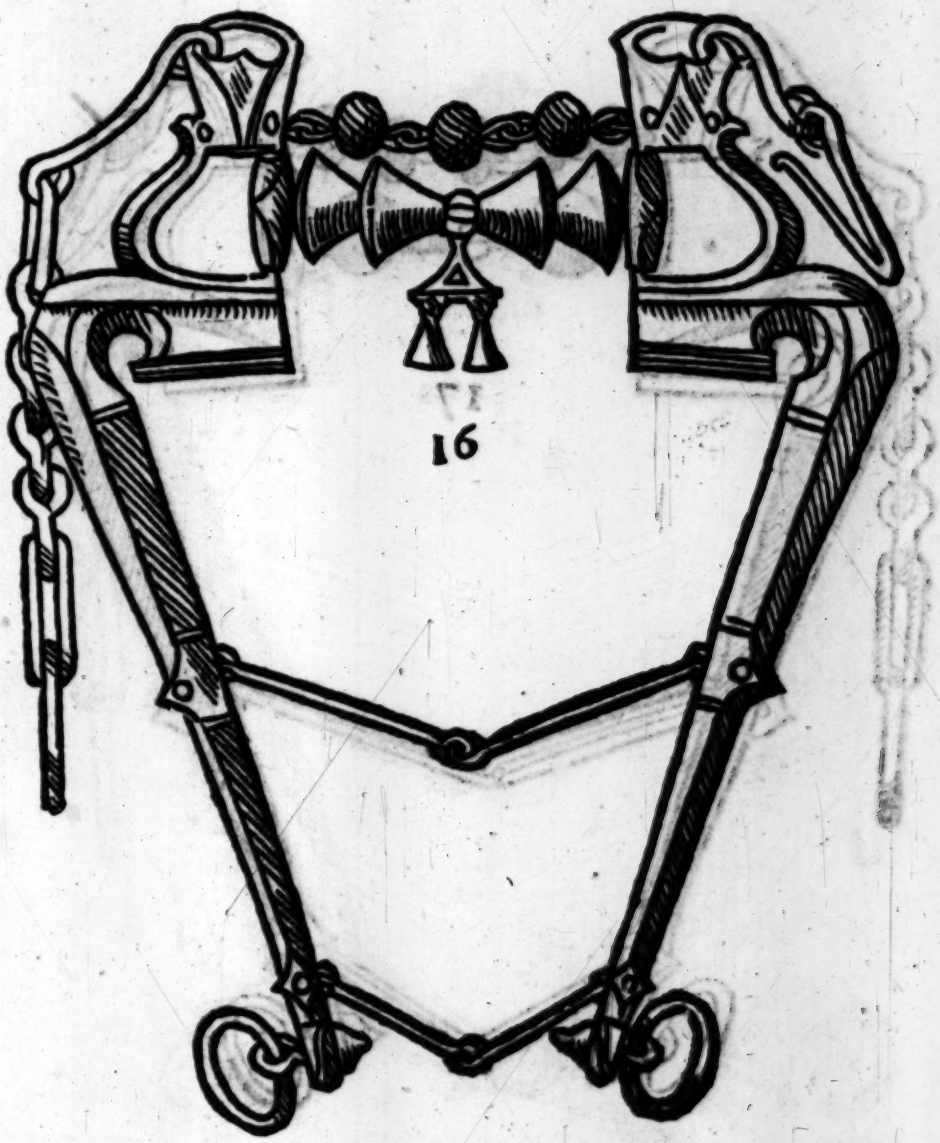


Pli.

A double Peare bit.

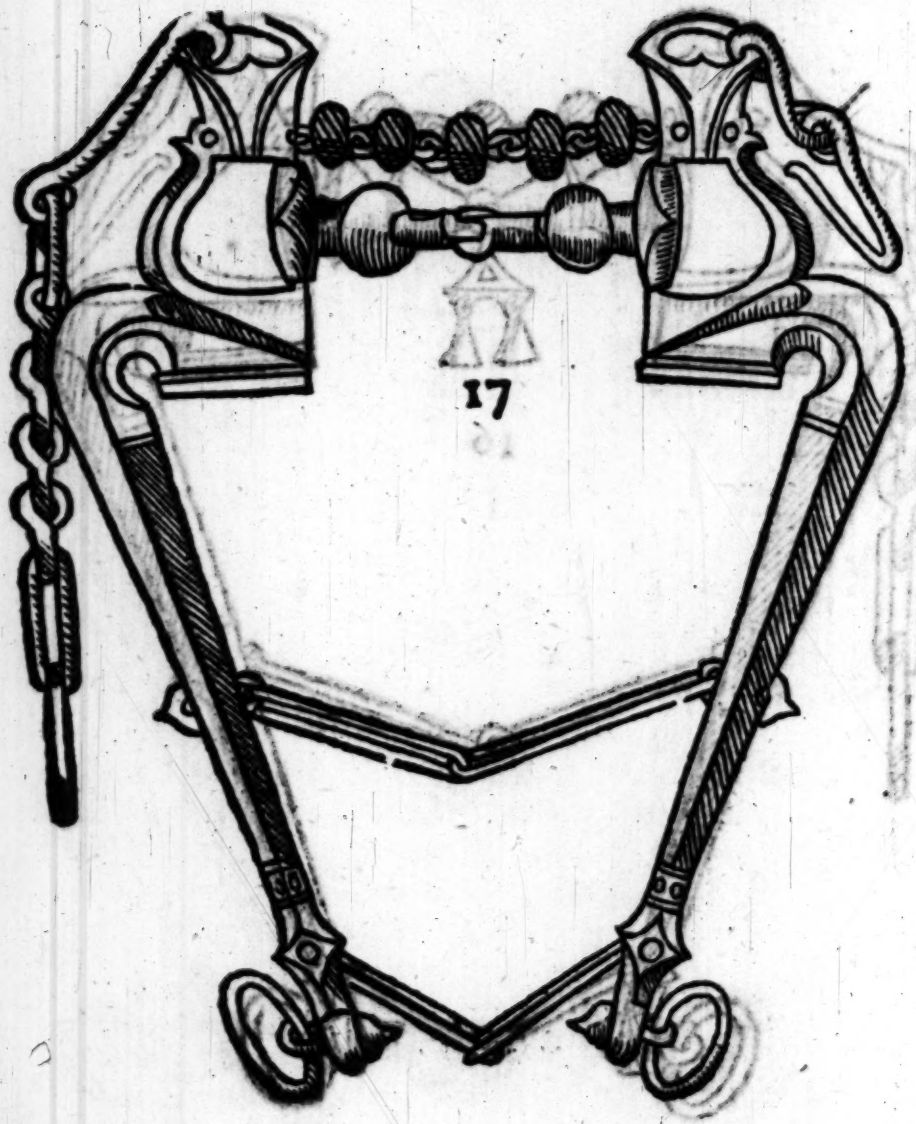


A double Campanell.



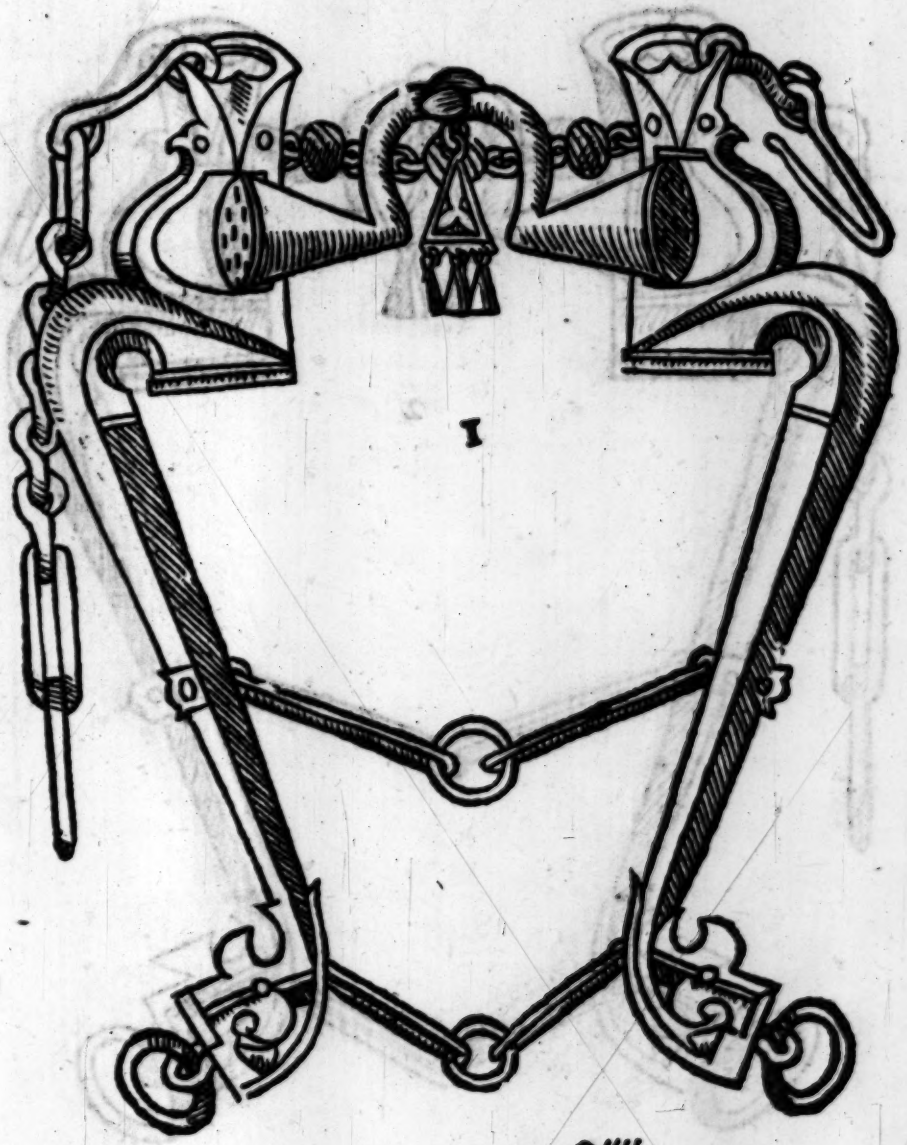
16

A Bastonet or Jeine bit, With two turning buttons.



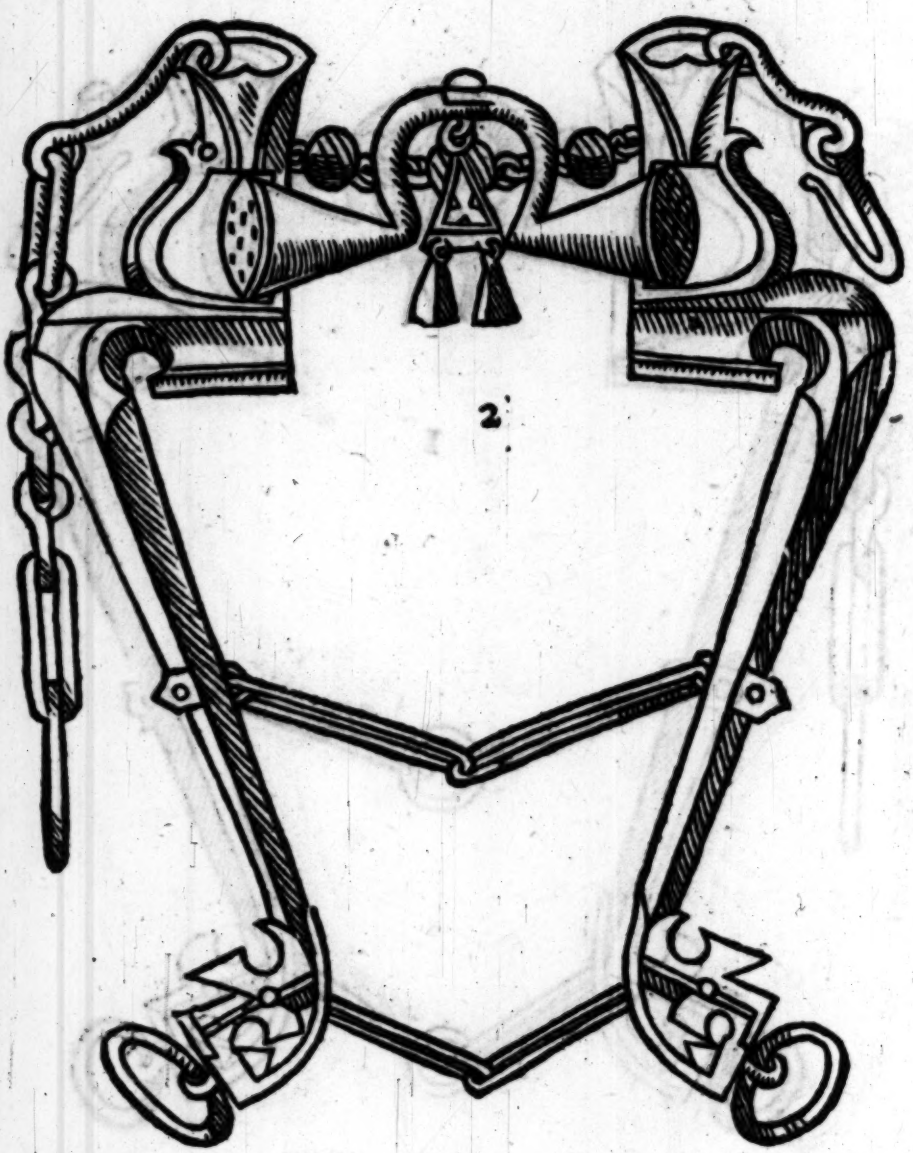
17

A halfe Canon With a broken port, ioined With one plight Within an other.

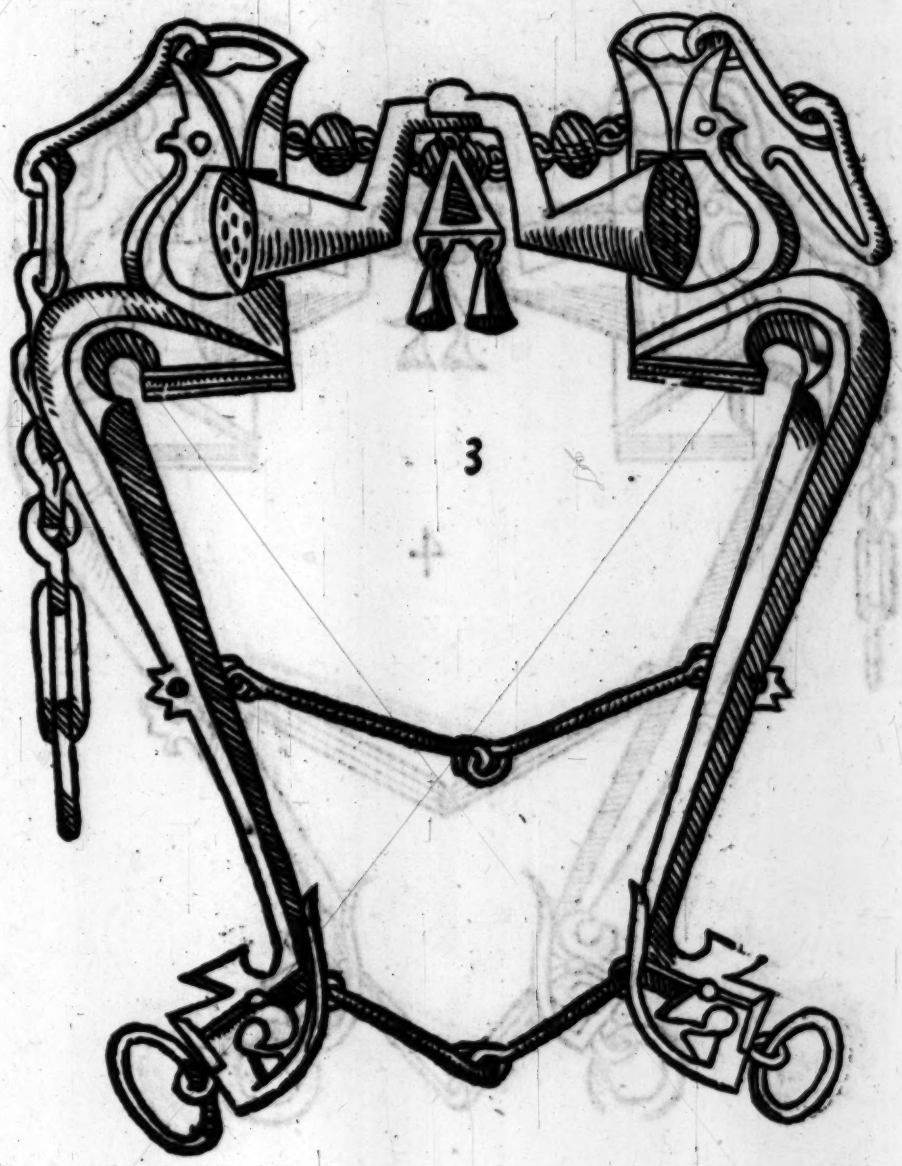


Broken portes and

A halfe Canon with a broken port, ioined with a riuet naile.

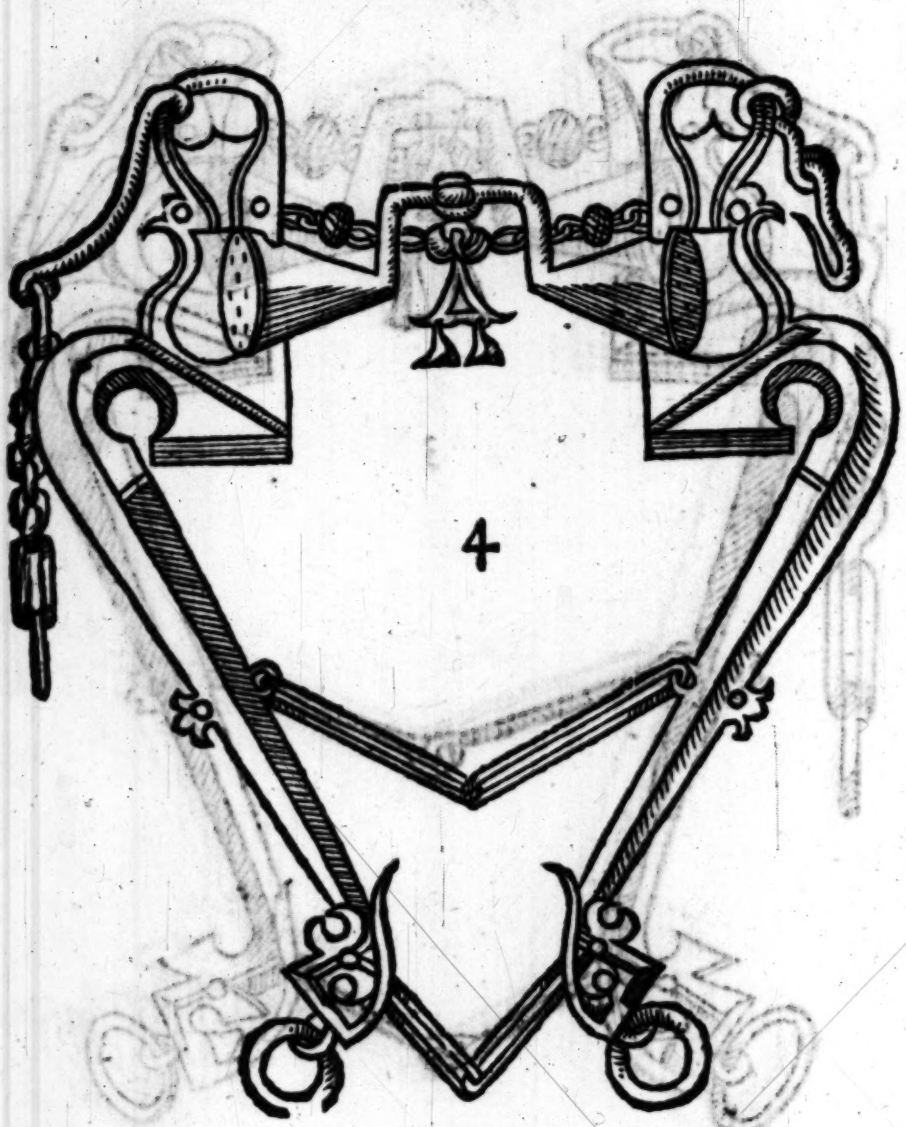


A halfe Canon With an vpſet mouth, ioined With a reuet naile.

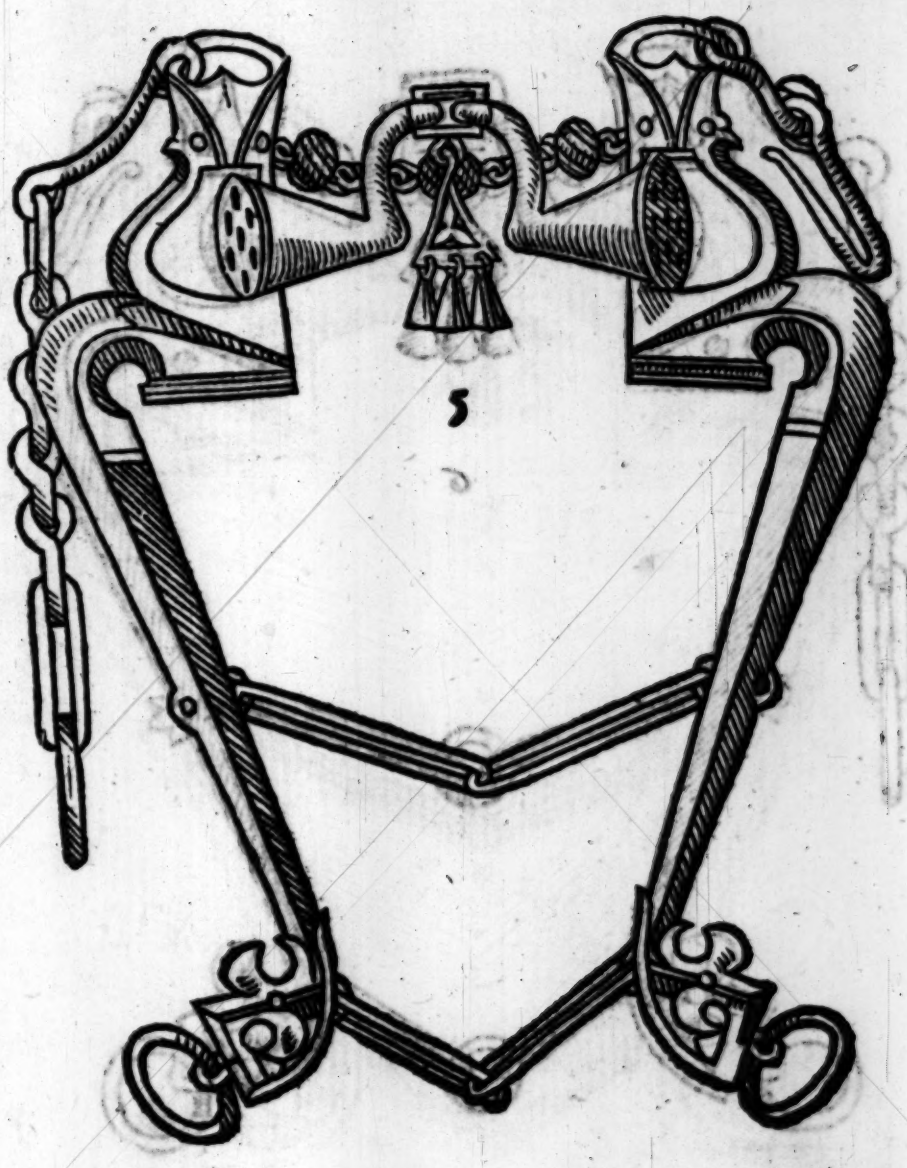


Broken portes, and

A halfe Canon With an vplet mouth, ioined With one plight With= in another.

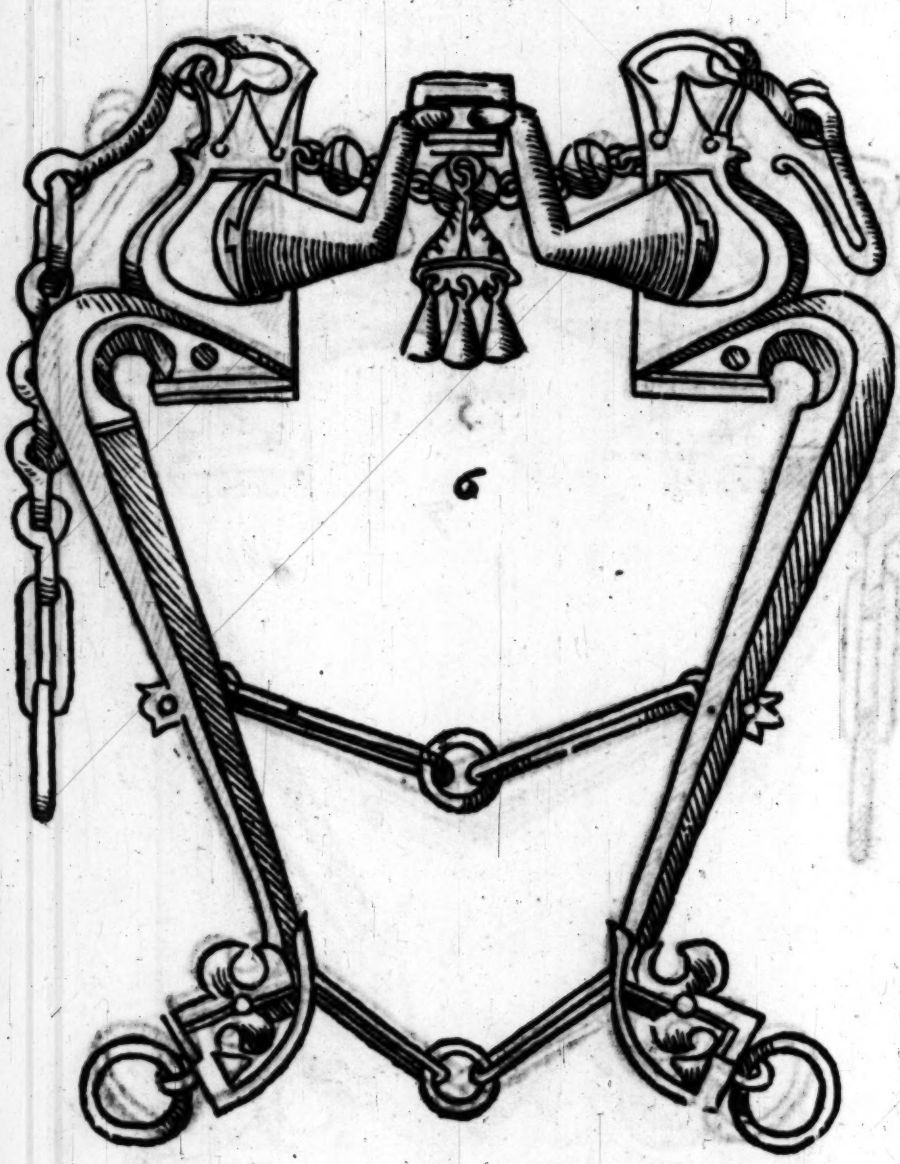


A halfe Canon with a broken port, ioined with a peece.

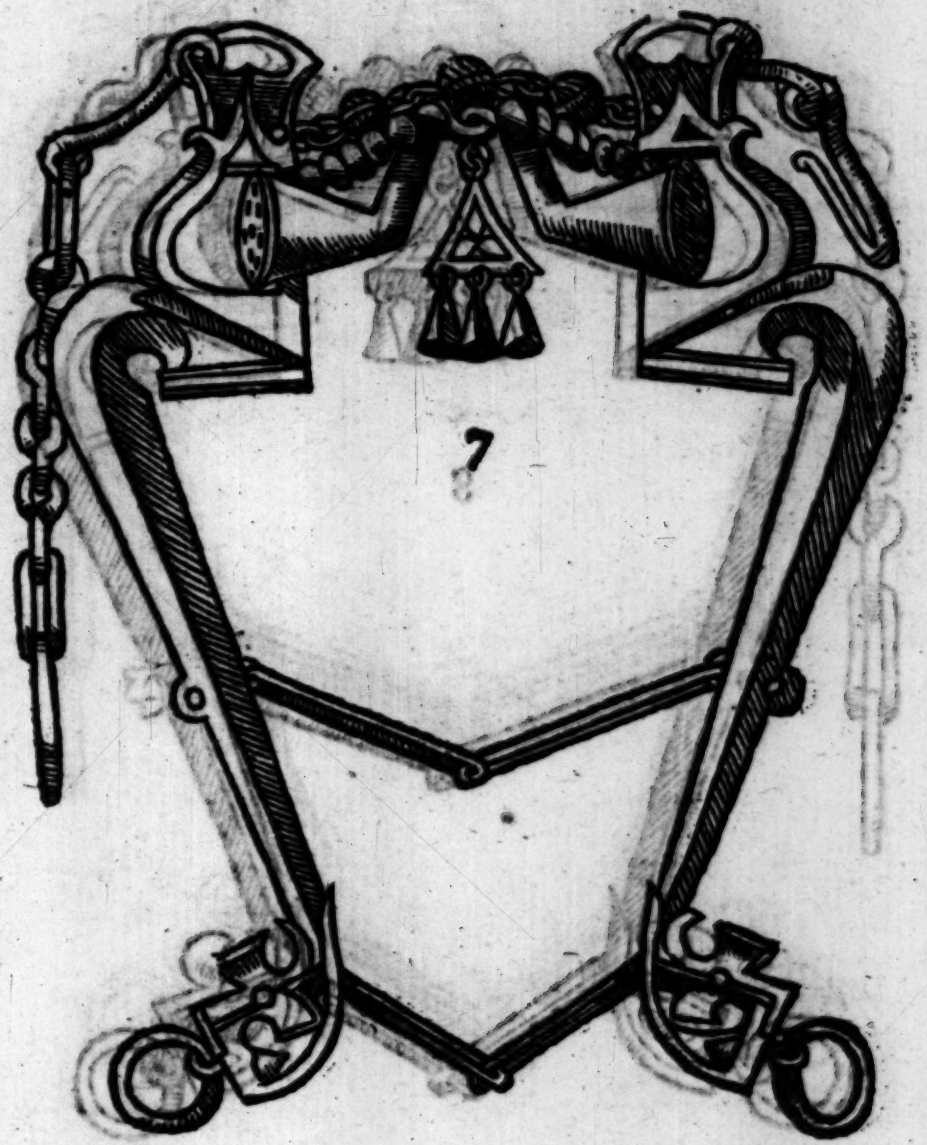


Broken portes, and

A halfe Canon With an vplet mouth, ioined With a peece.

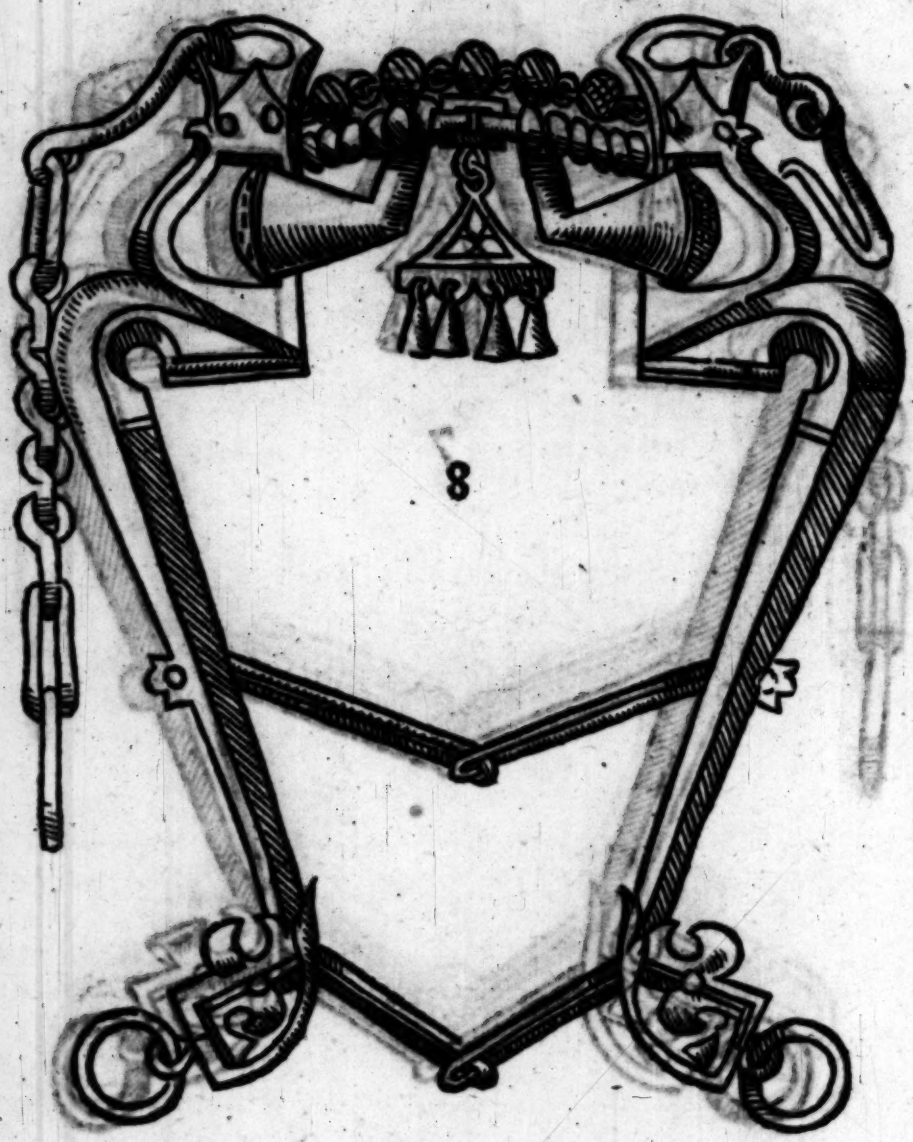


A Canon with an vpset mouth, complete.

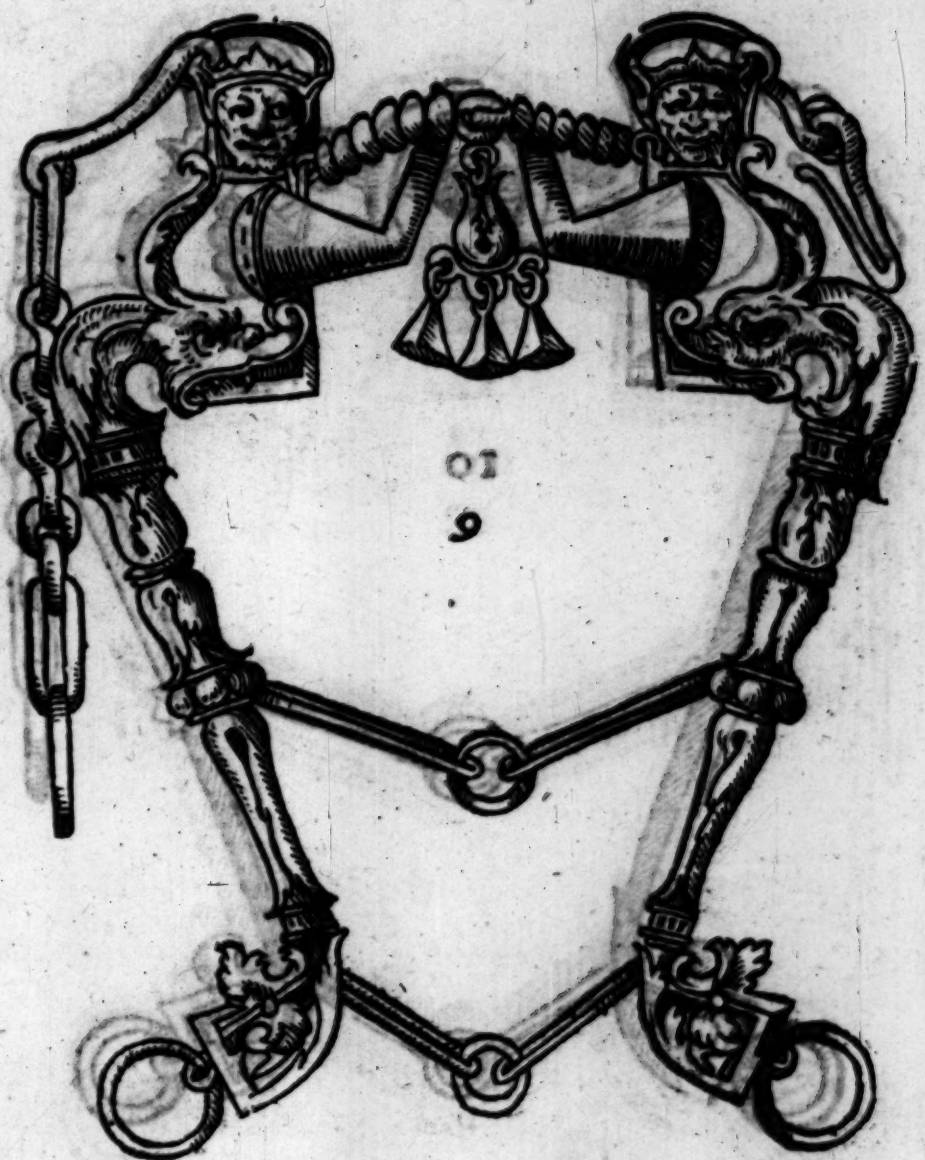


Broken portes and

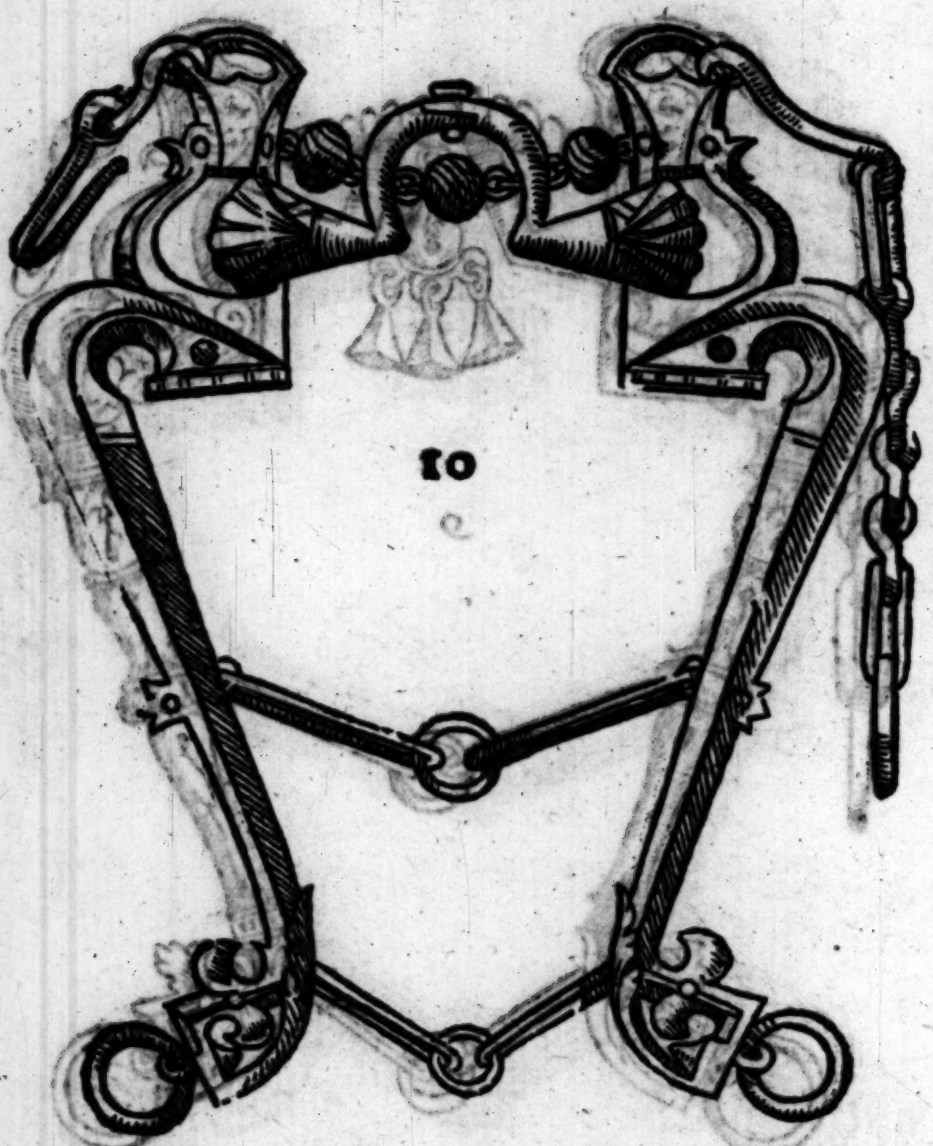
A Canon with an vplet mouth complete, and ioined with a peece.



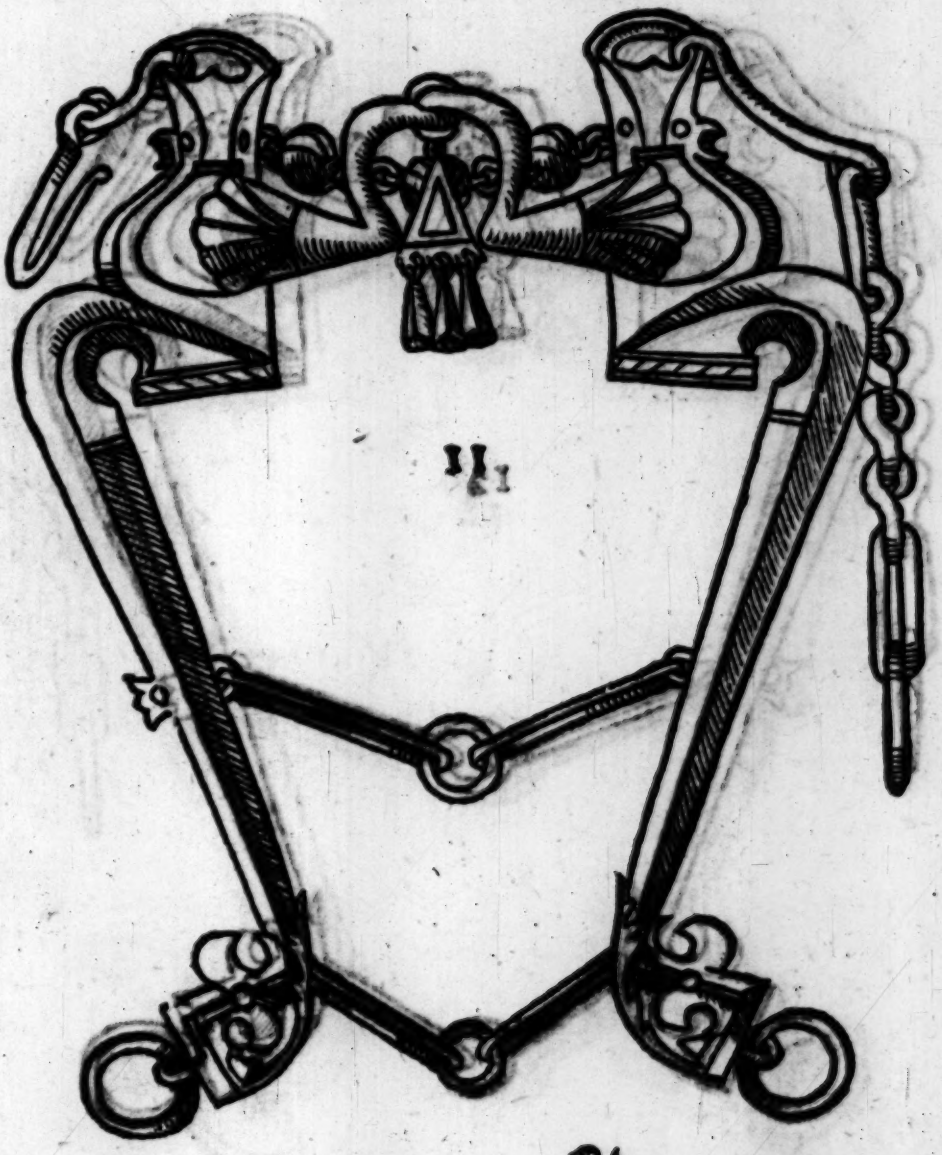
A baſe Canon with an vpſet mouth, hauing trenches aboue.



A halfe Scutch with a broken port, ioined with a rivet naile.



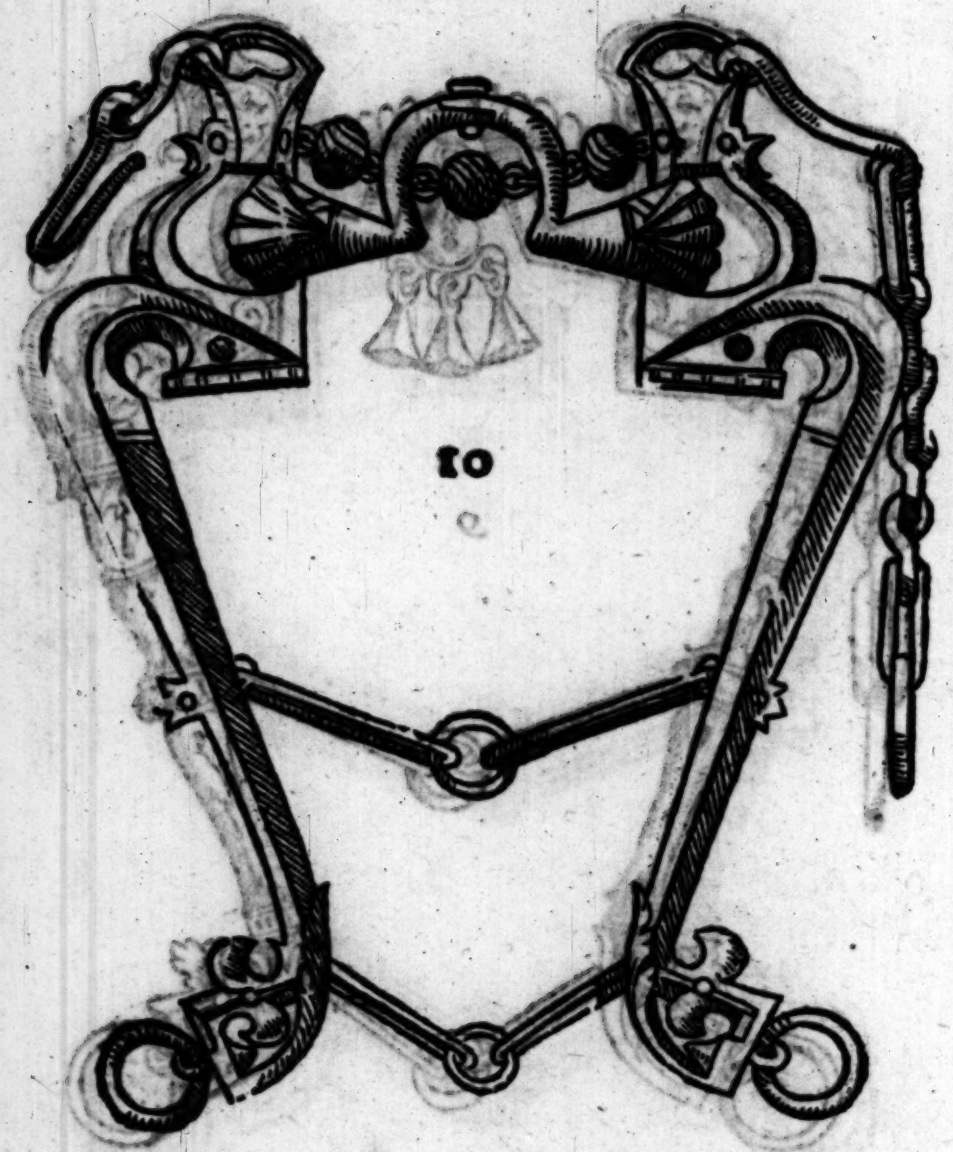
A halfe Scotch with a broken port ioined,
With one plight within another.



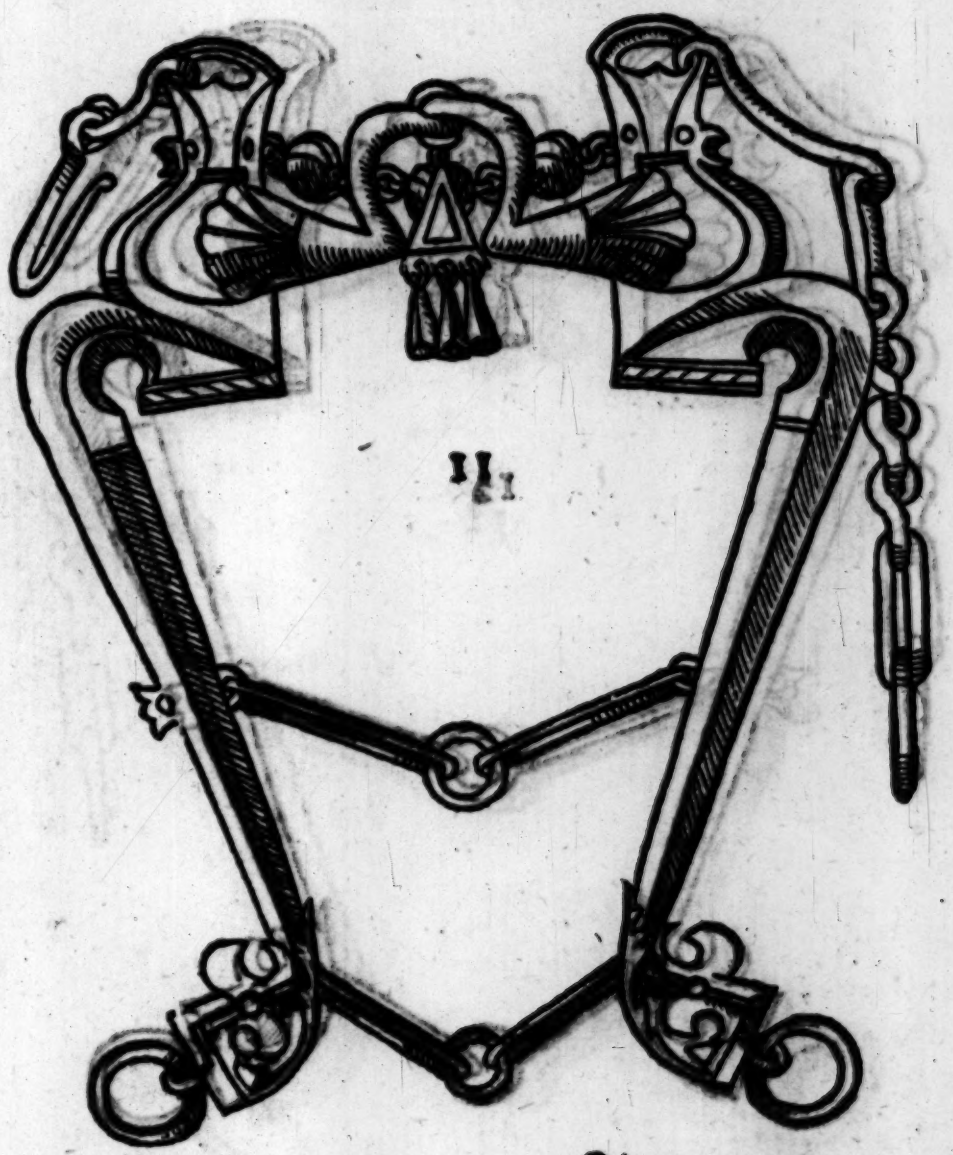
105

Broken portes and

A halfe Scutch With a broken port, ioined With a cruet naile.

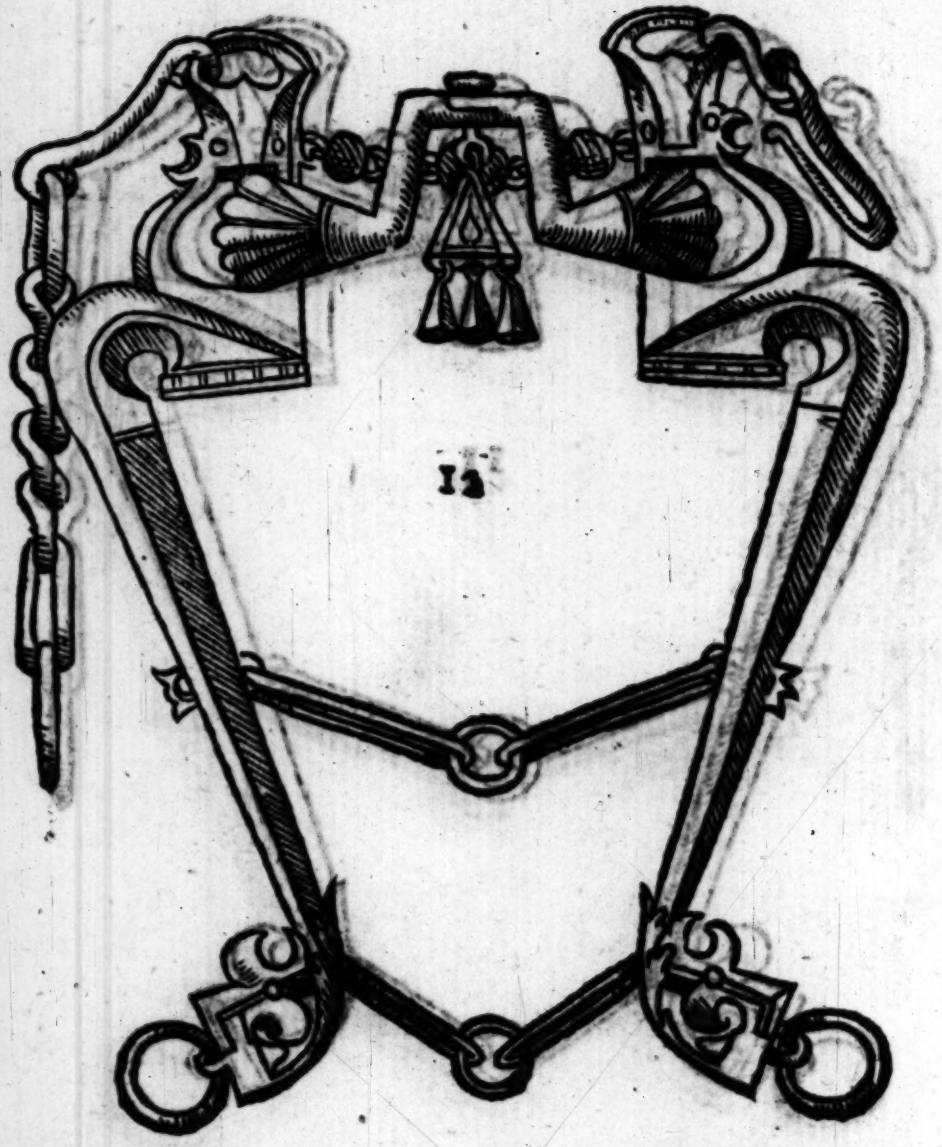


A halfe Scatch with a broken port ioined, with one plight within another.

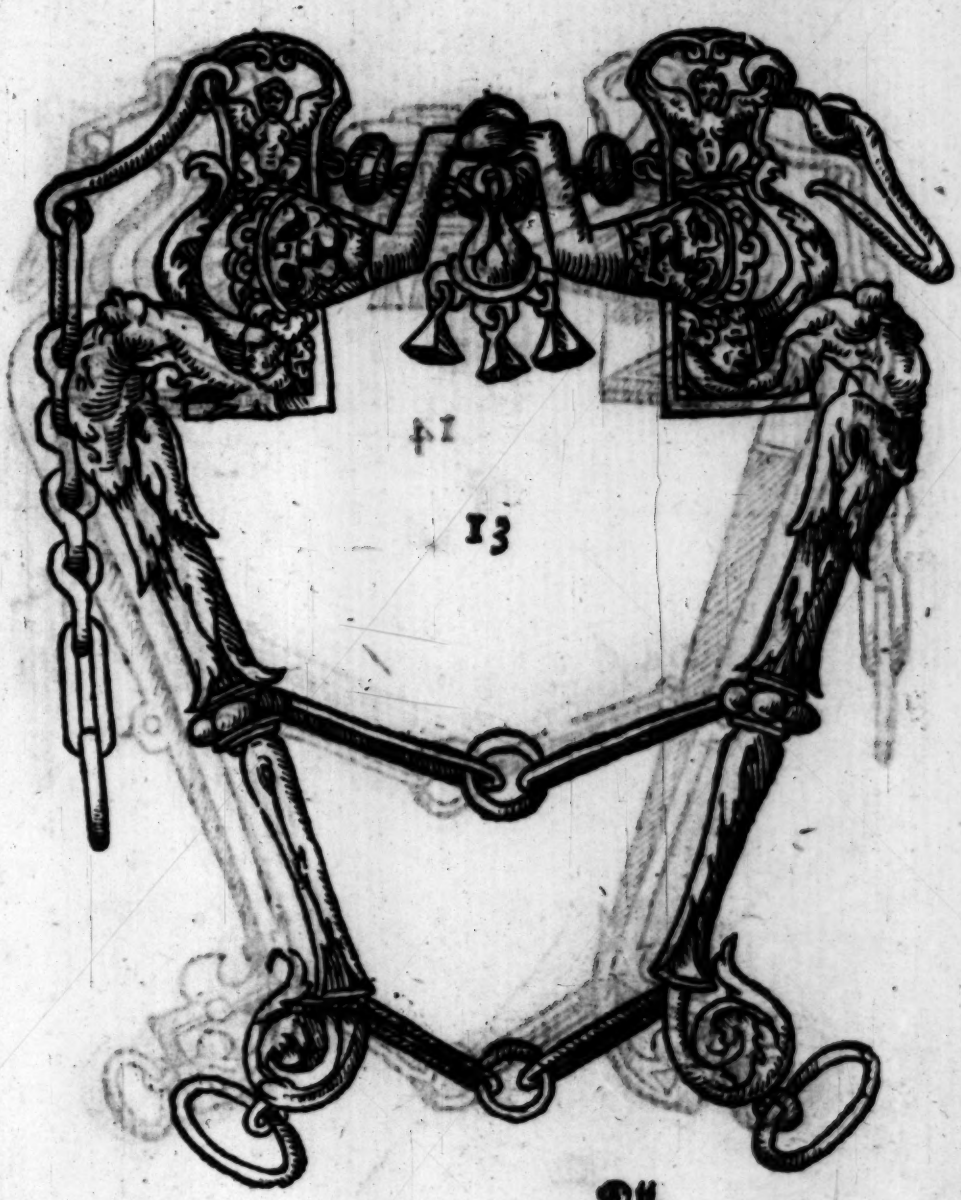


Broken portes and

A halfe Scatch with an vplet mouth
ioined with a reuet naile.



A halfe Scatch with an vplet mouth ioi-
ned With one plight within another.



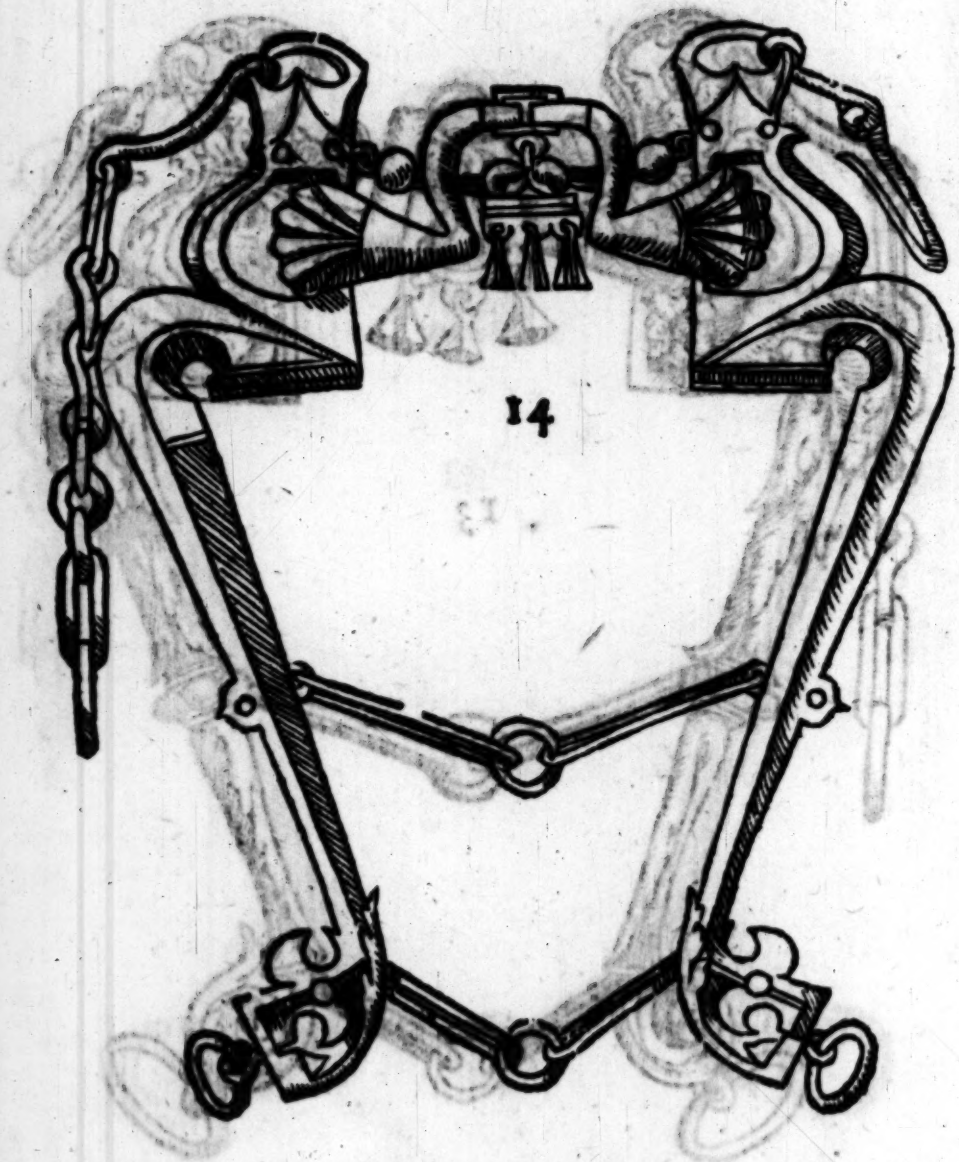
14

13

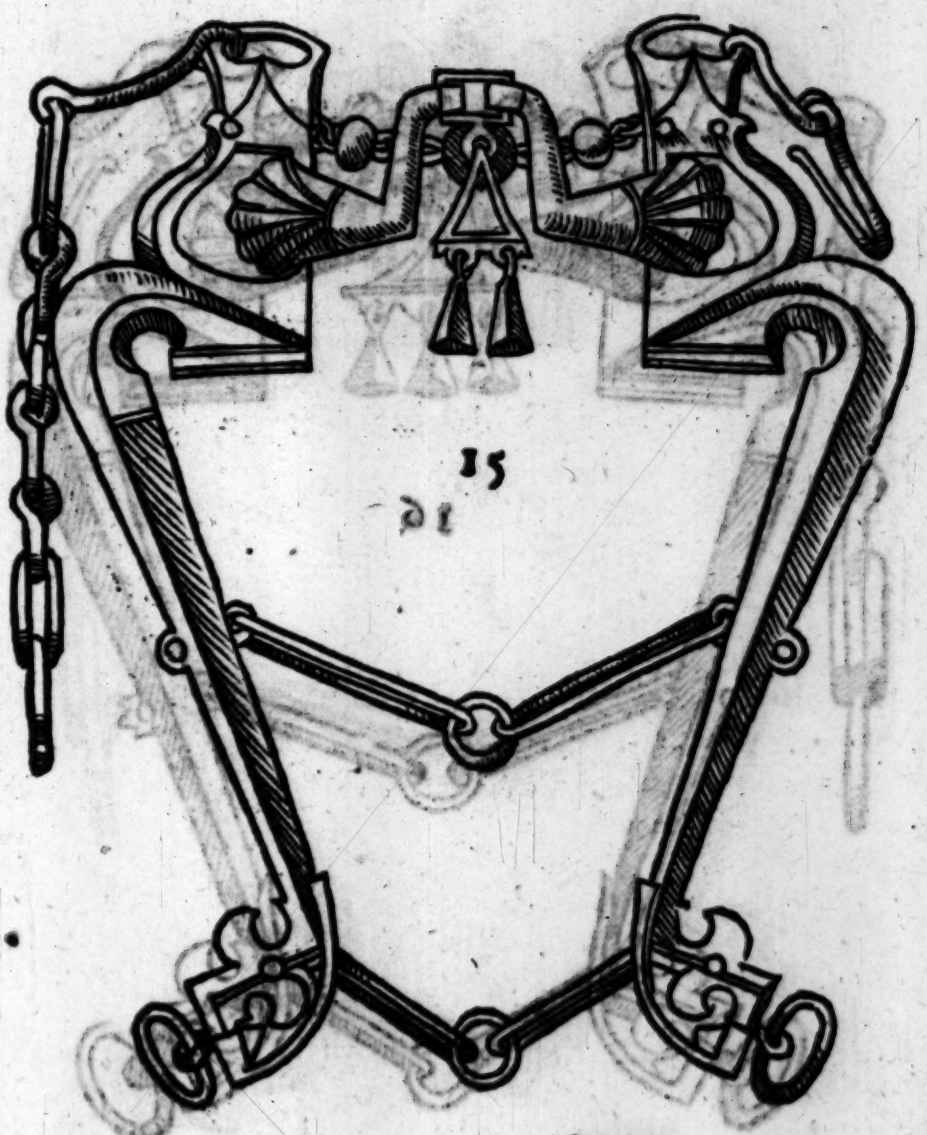
24.

106

A halfe Scratch with a broken port
ioined with a peece.



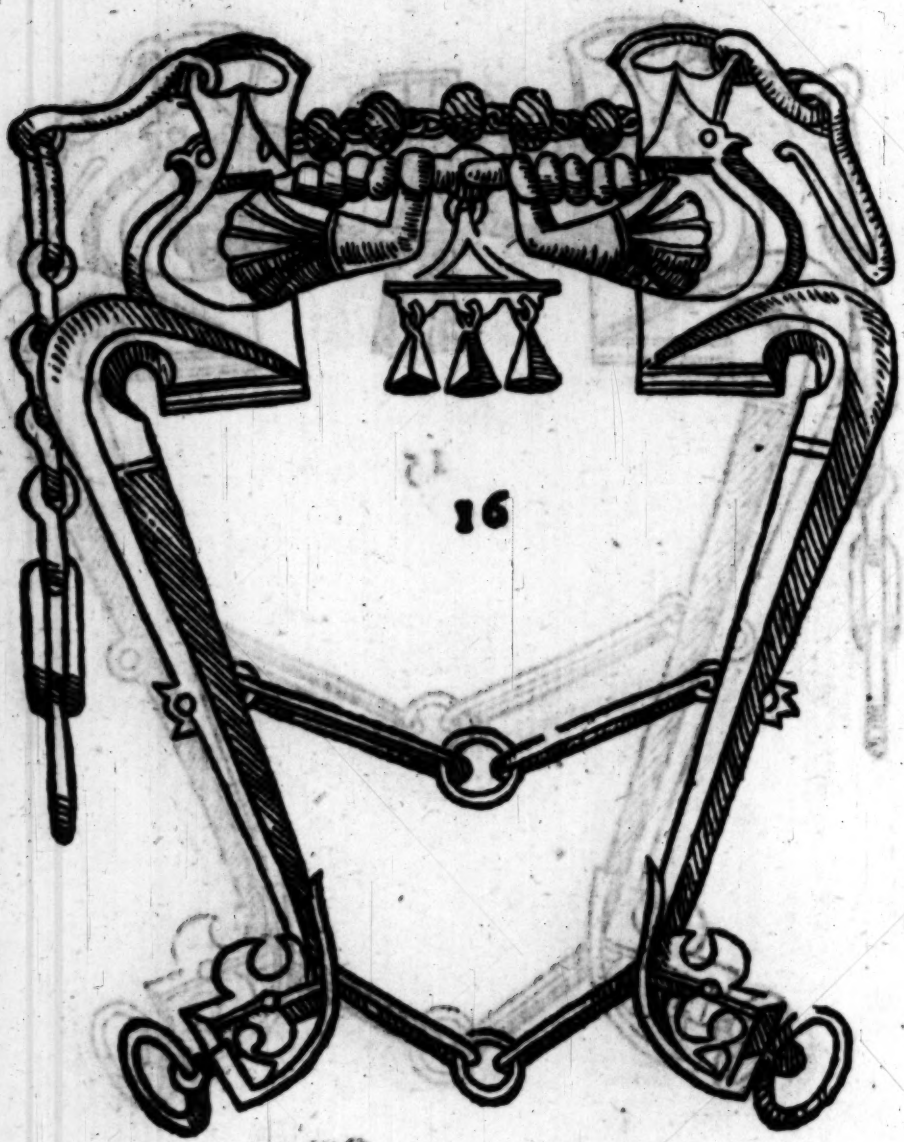
A halfe Scotch Bit with an vpſet mouth ioined with a peece.



Dlll

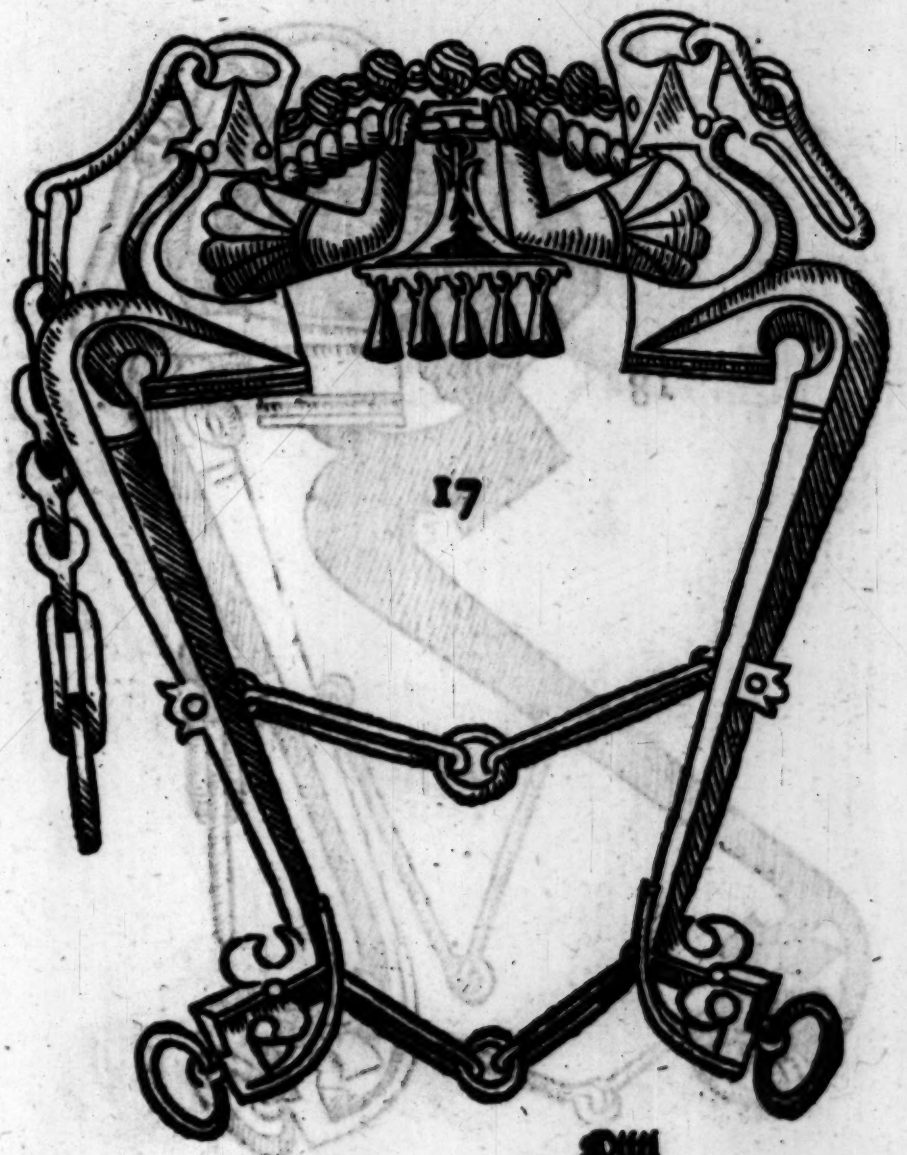
Broken portes and

A Scotch with an vplet mouth complete.



16

A Scatch with an vpſet mouth complete, and ioined with a peece.



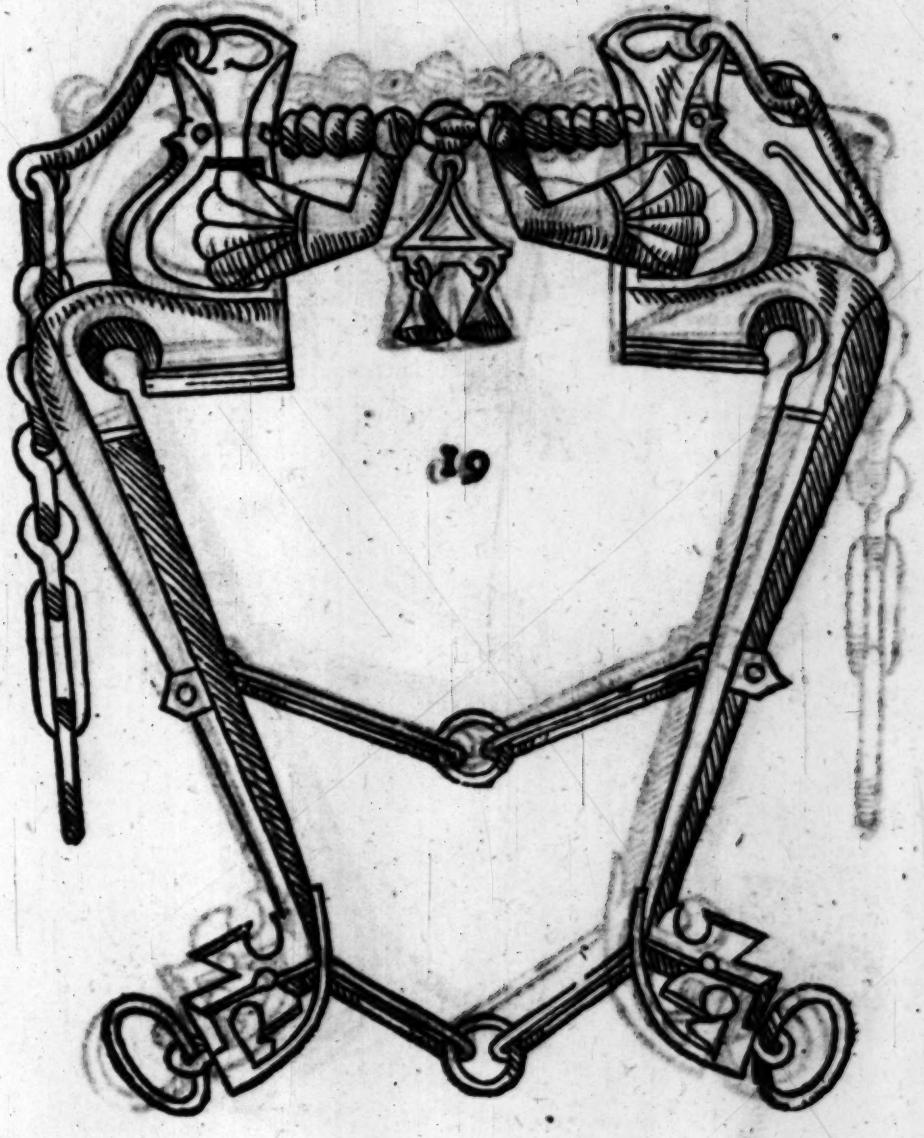
Broken portes and

A halfe Scatch With an vplet mouth,
With the inside turned outWarde,
to sheWe the Weltes.



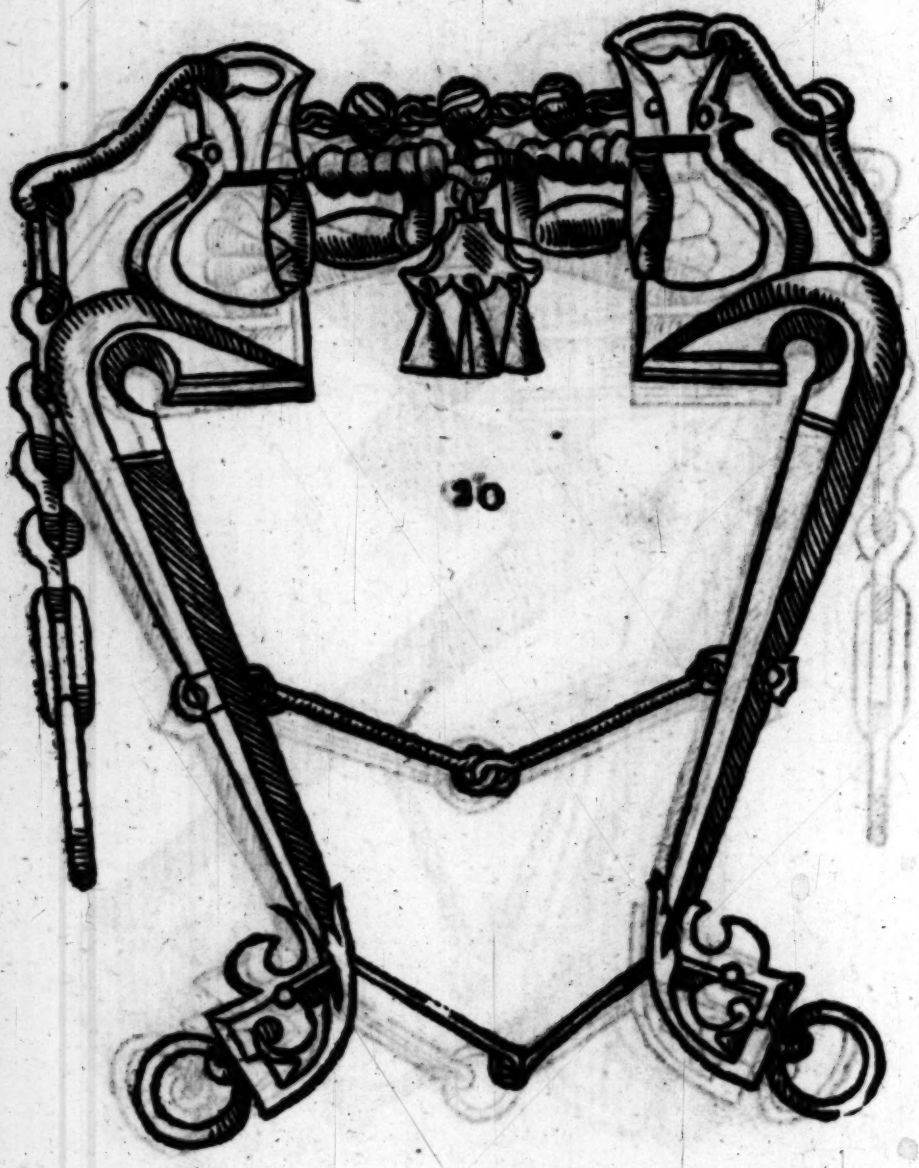
18

A halfe Scotch with an vpſet mouth, hauing a trench aboue.

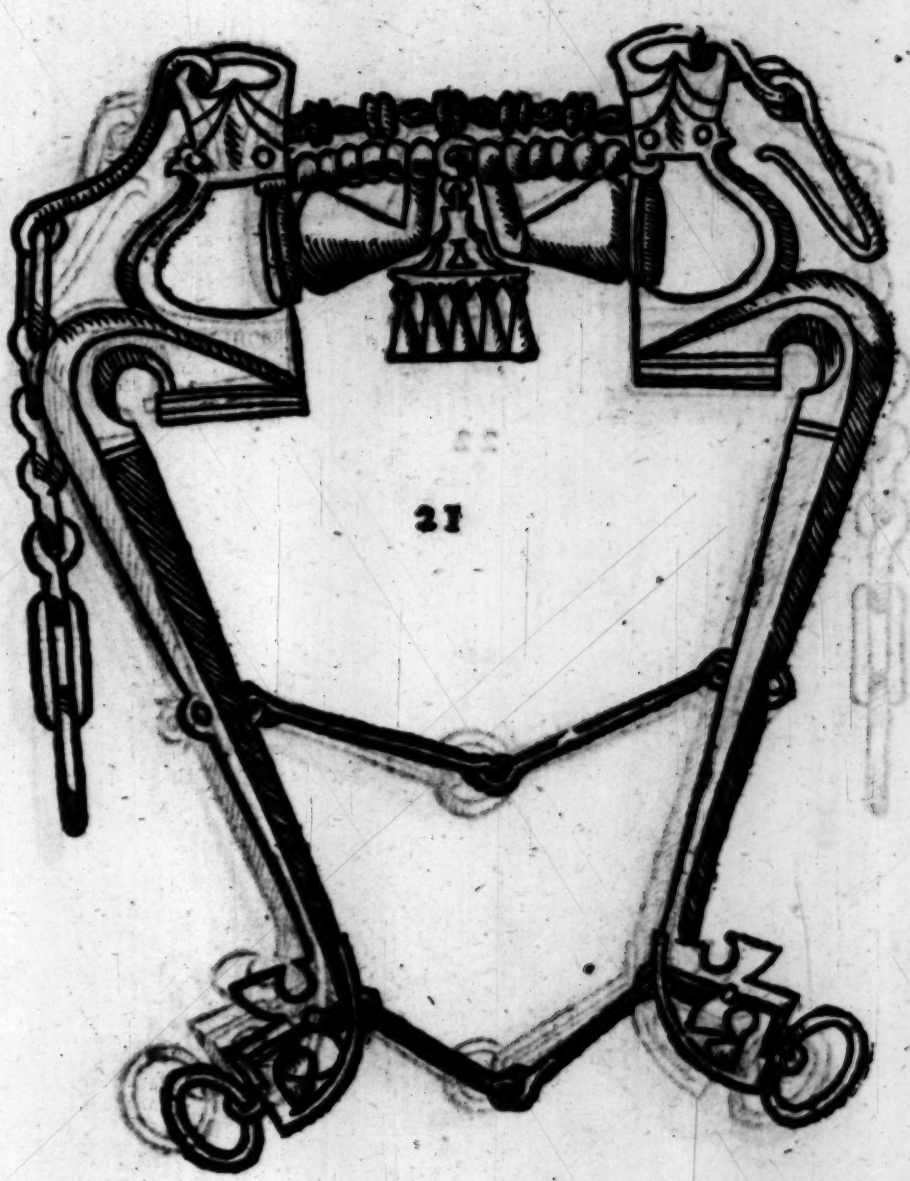


Broken portes, and

A Cattes foote or vplet mouth complete with smooth Olives.

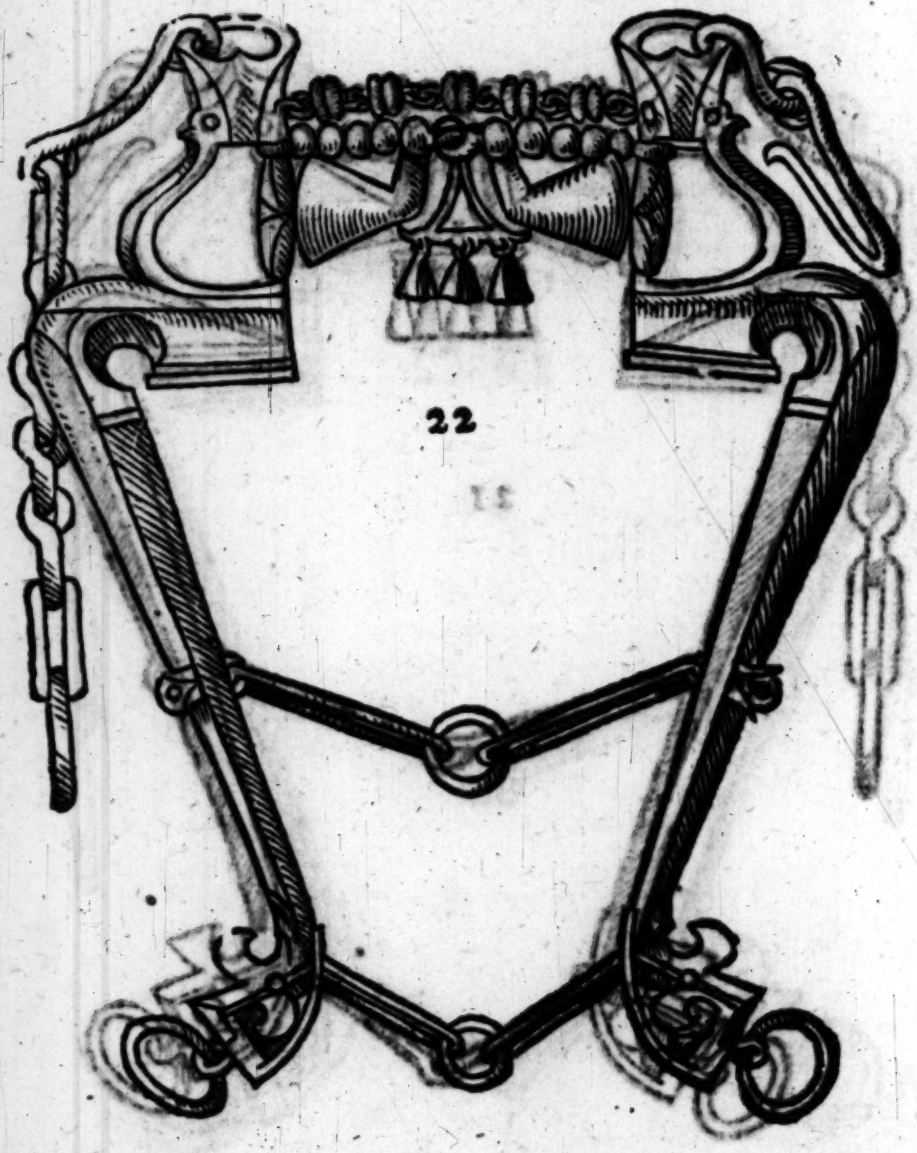


A Cattes foote with peares complete.



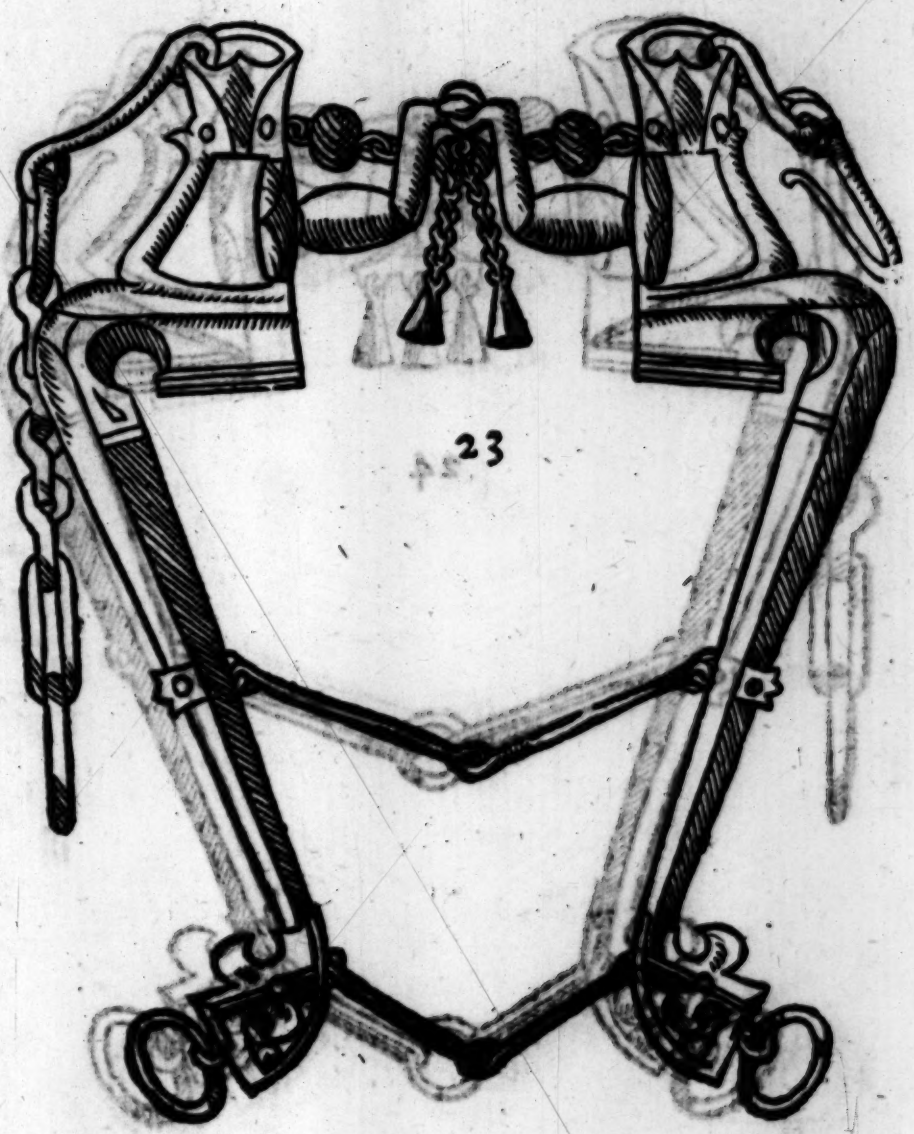
Broken portes, and

A Cattes foote with Campa-
nels complete.



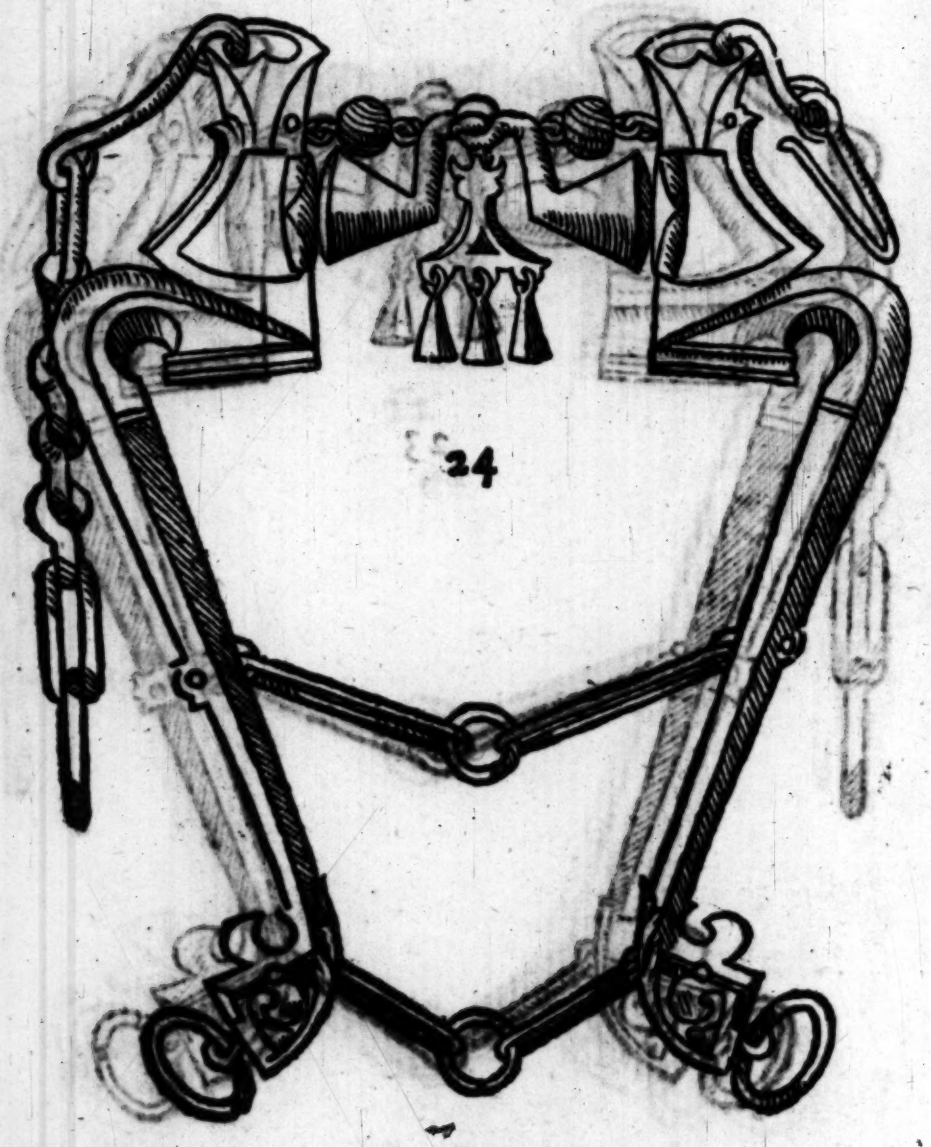
22

A halfe Cattes foote with Olives.

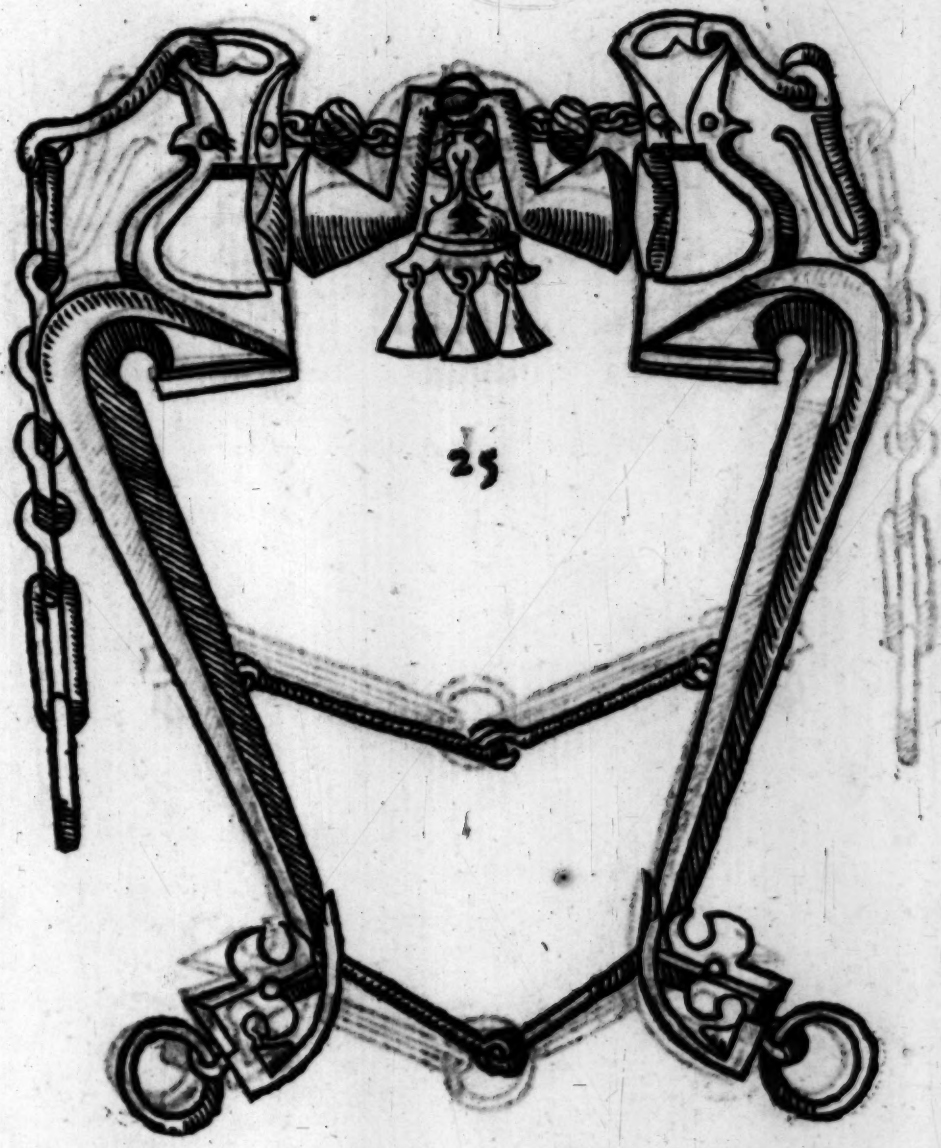


Broken portes, and

A halfe Cattes foote with peares.

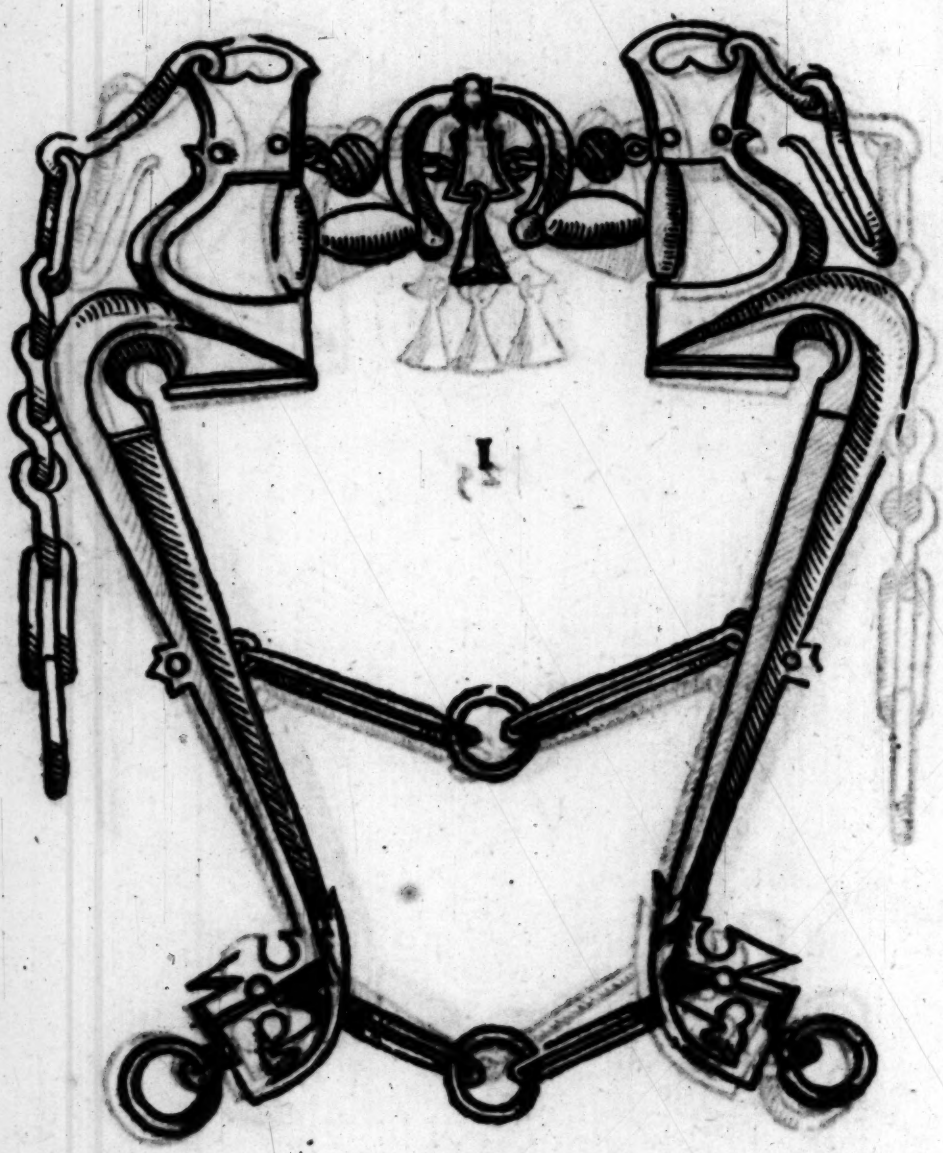


A halfe Cattes foote with Compaſſe.

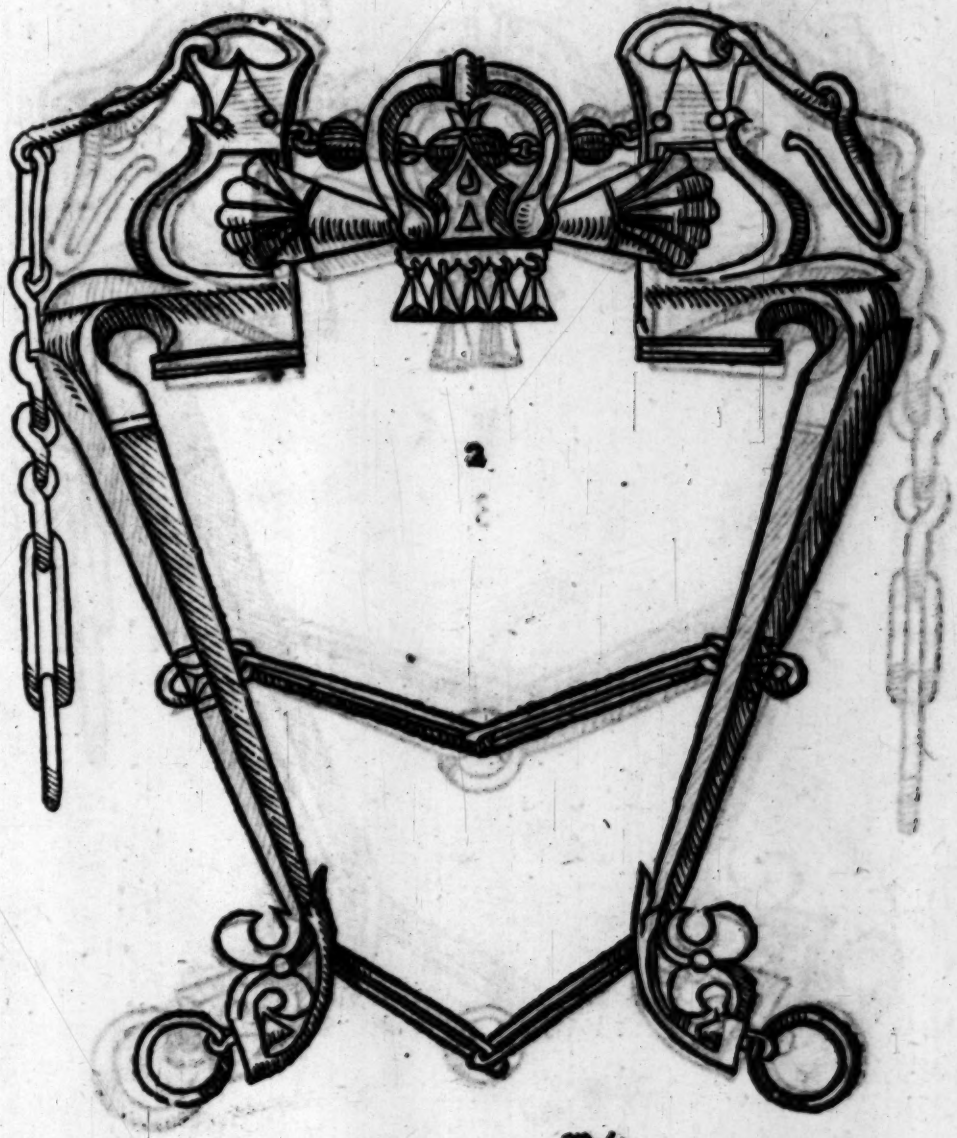


VVhole portes.

A VVhole port with Dimes.

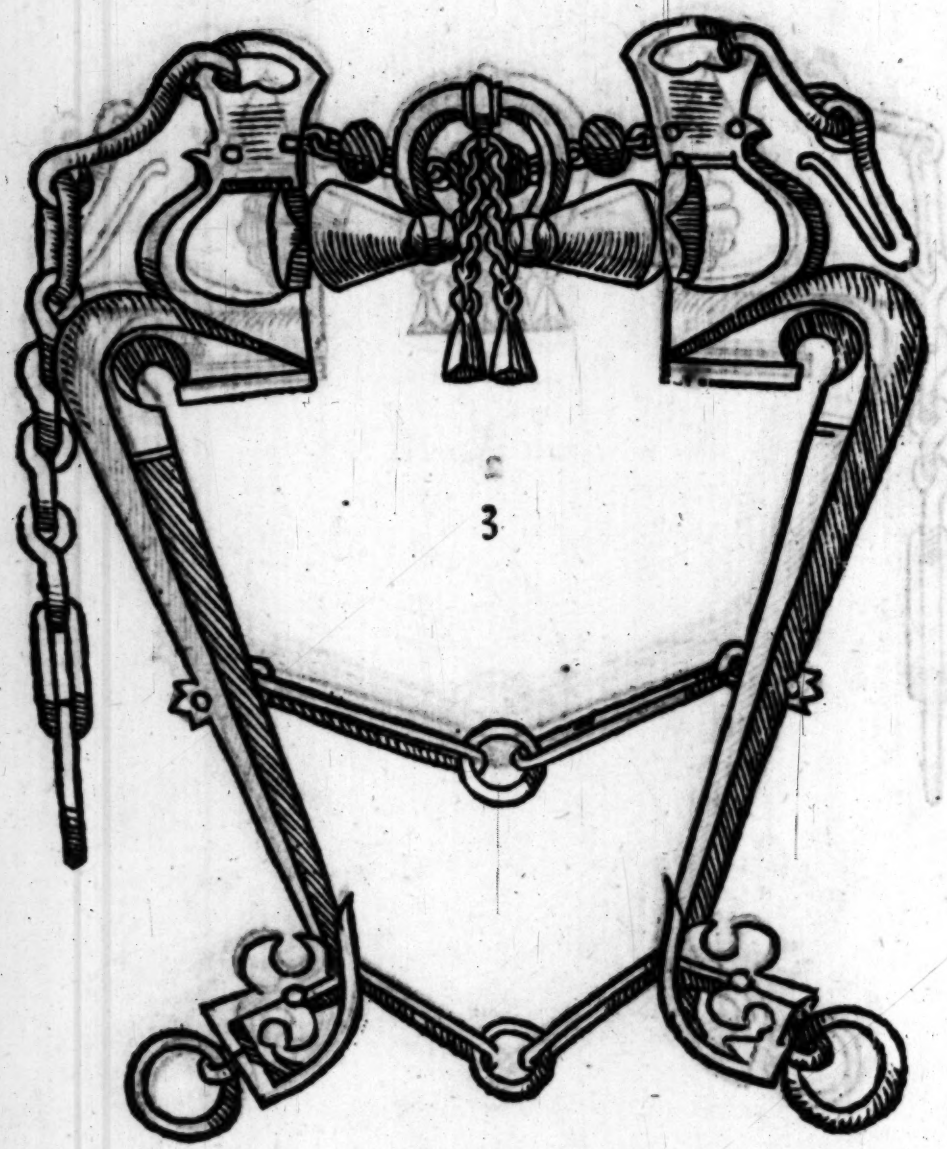


A Scatch with a whole port.

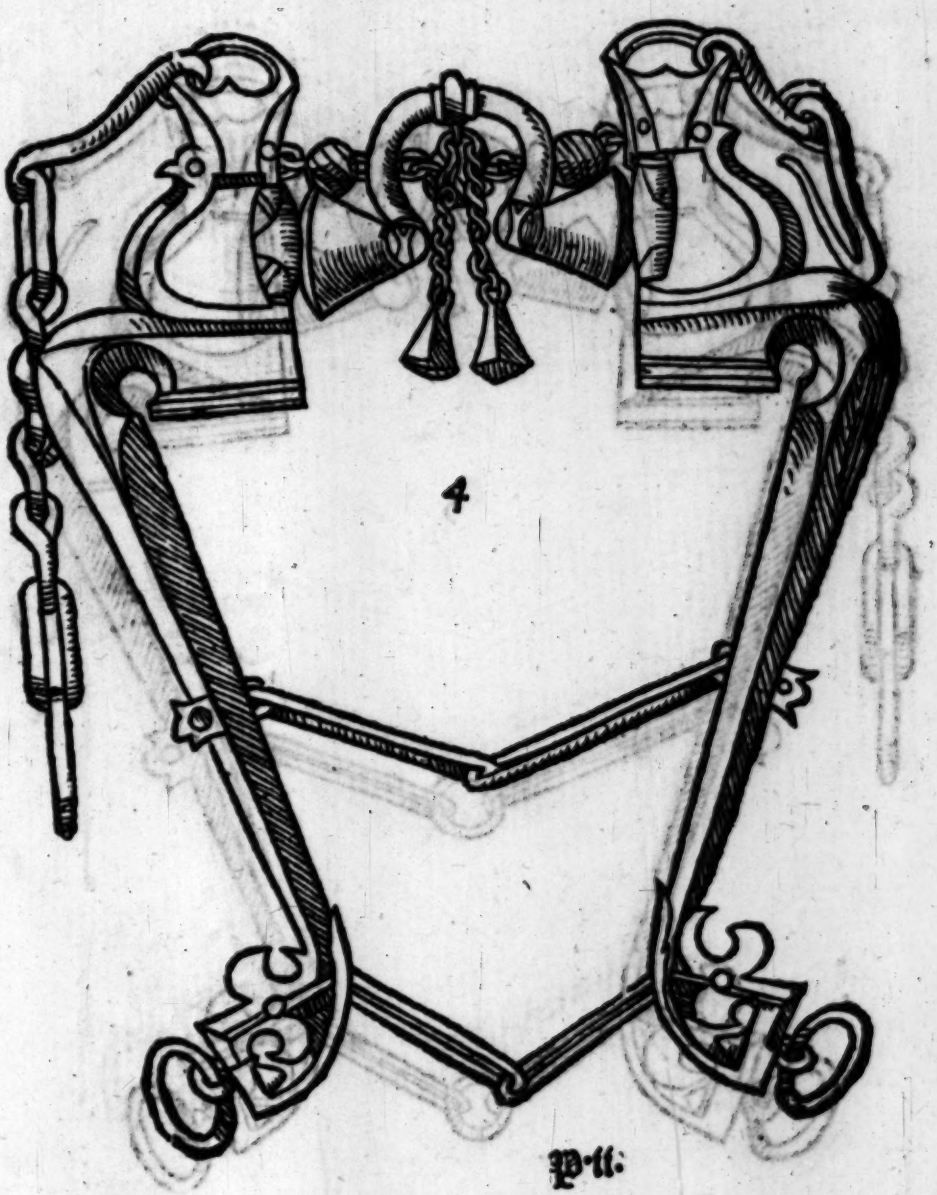


p.1.

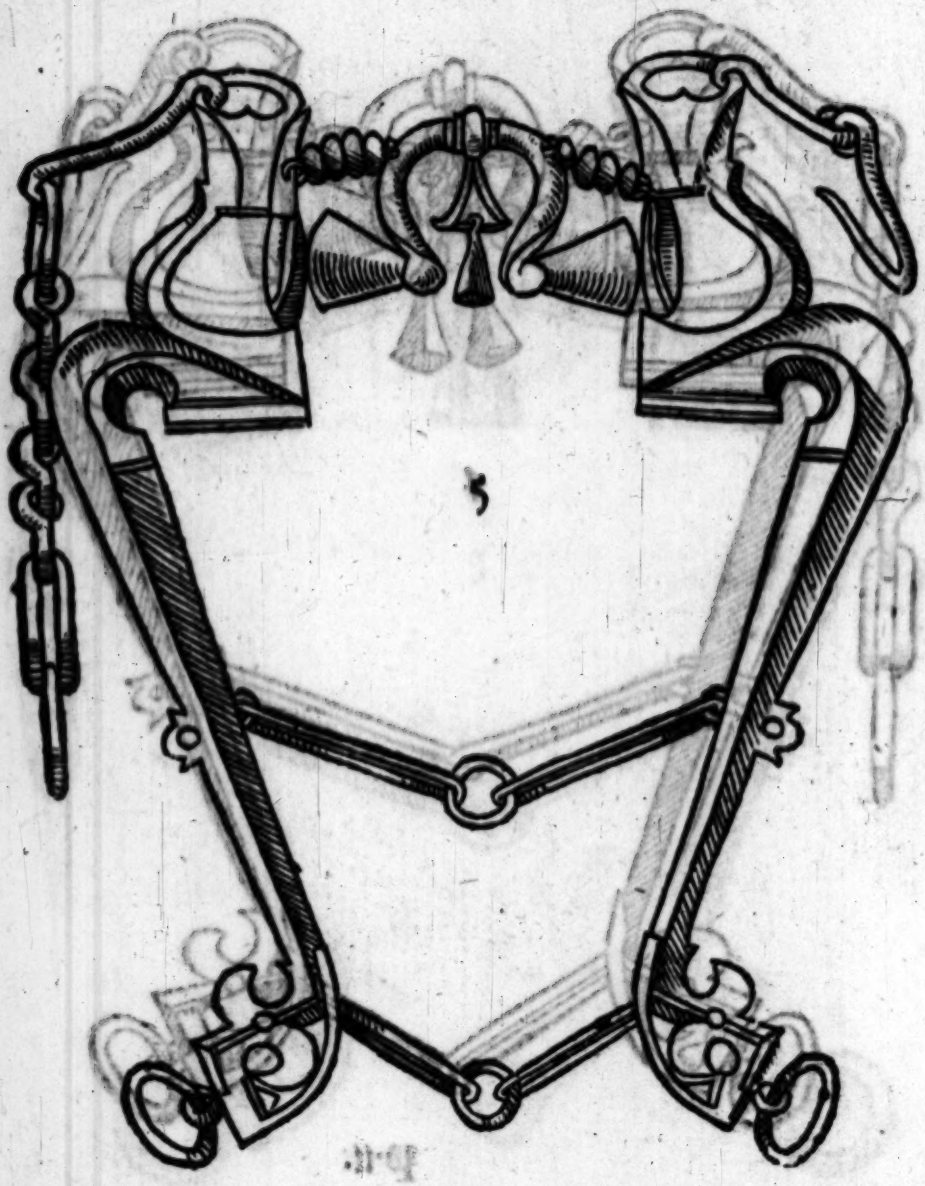
A whole port with Peares.



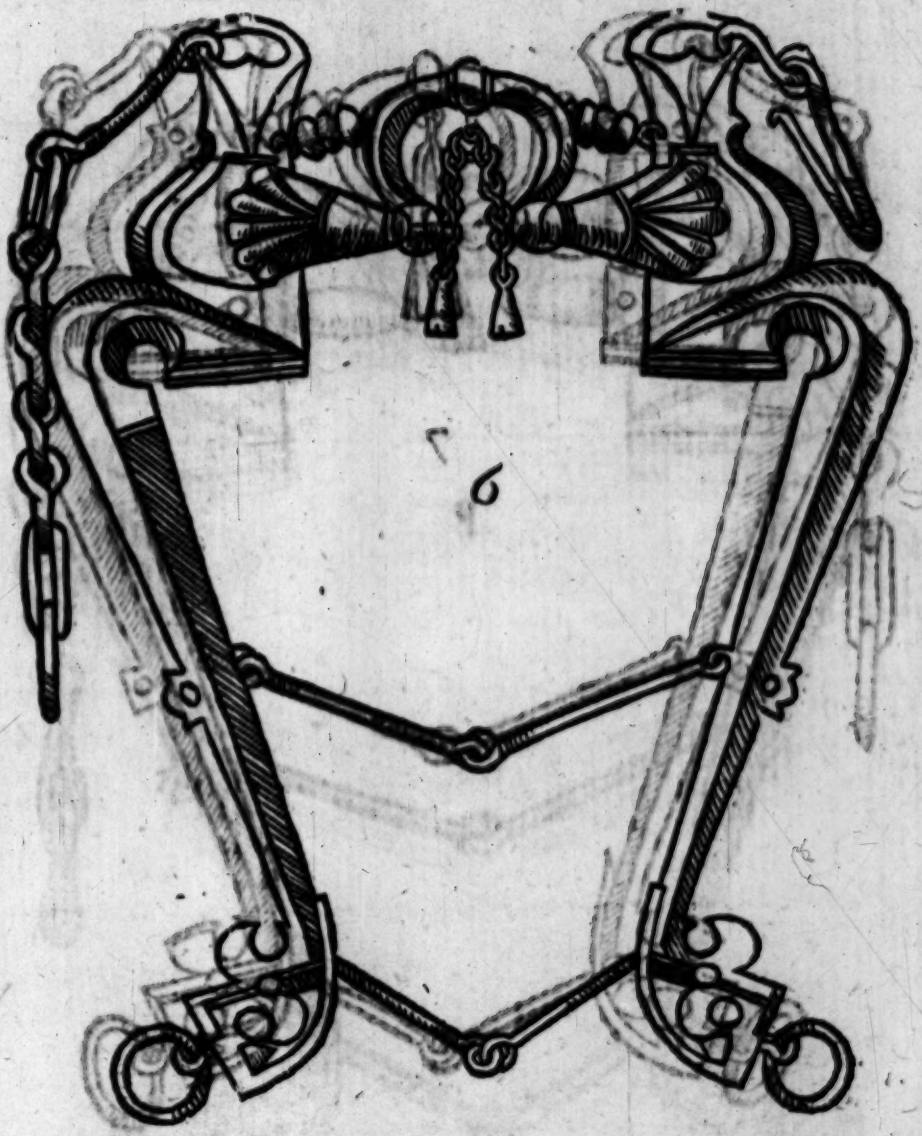
A whole port with Campanels.



A whole port with Campanels hauing a trench aboue.

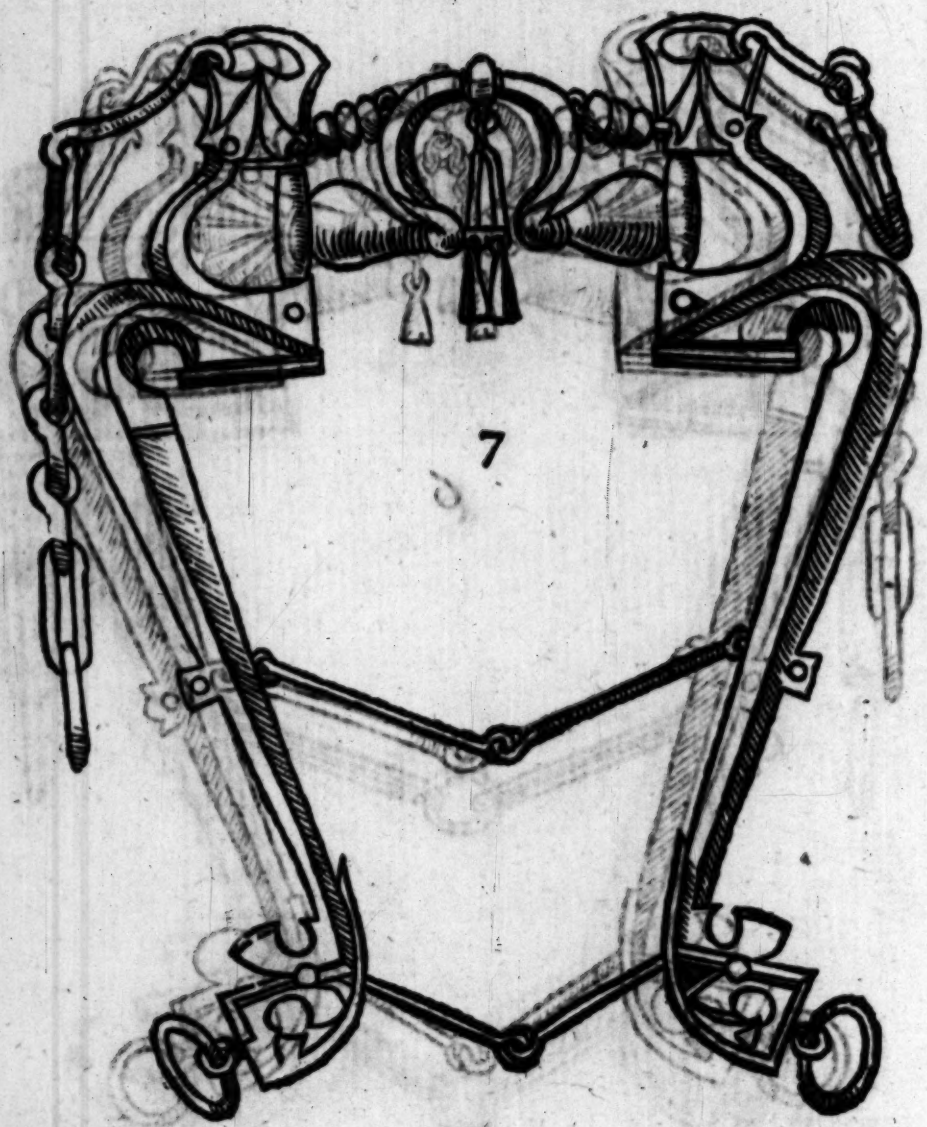


A Scatch with a whole port hauing a trench about.

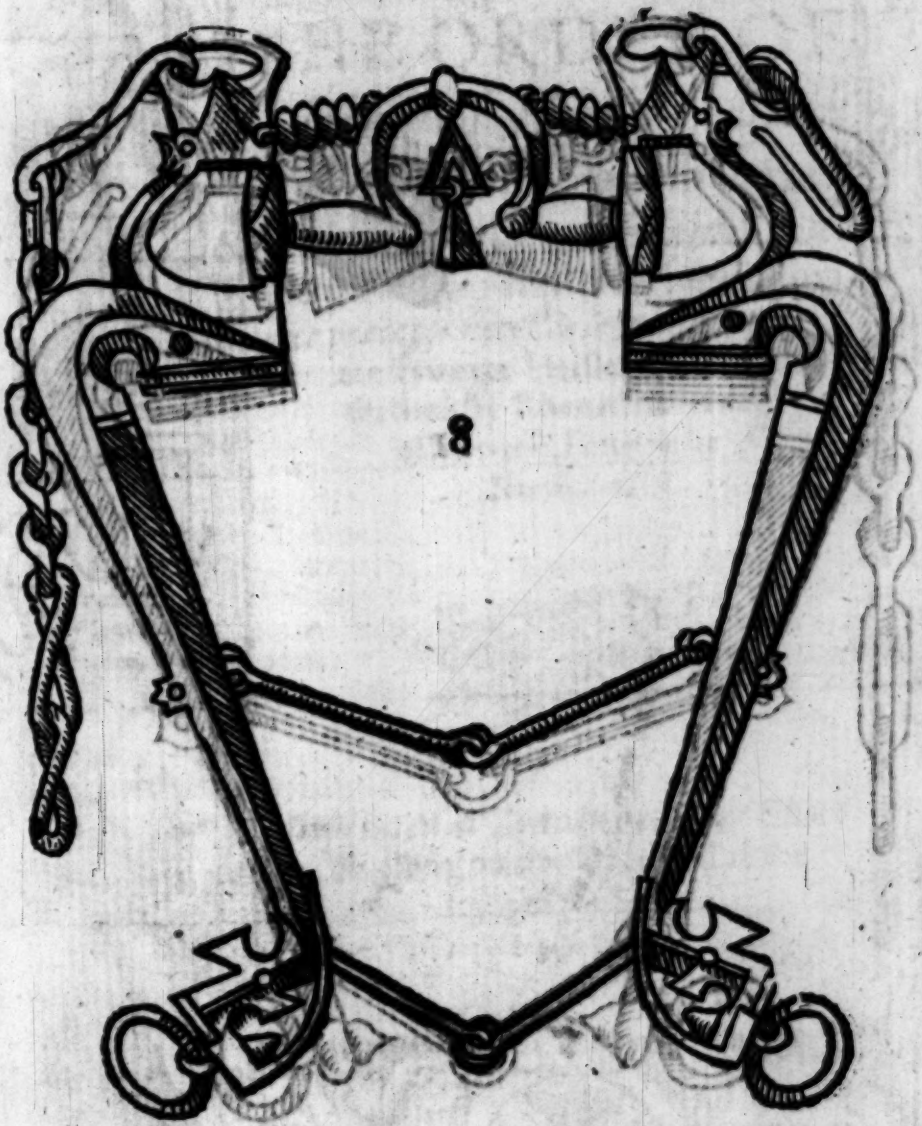


P.iij.

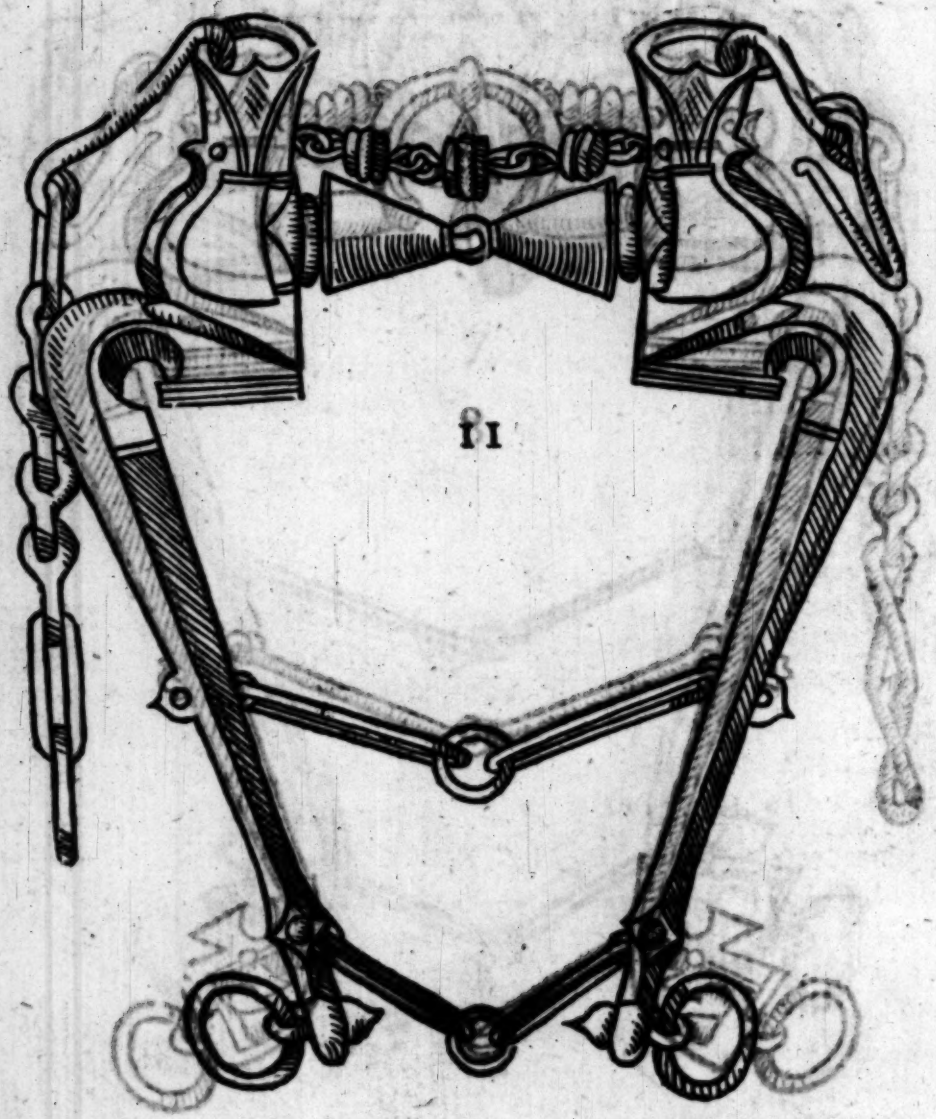
A whole port with Peares hauing a trench aboue.



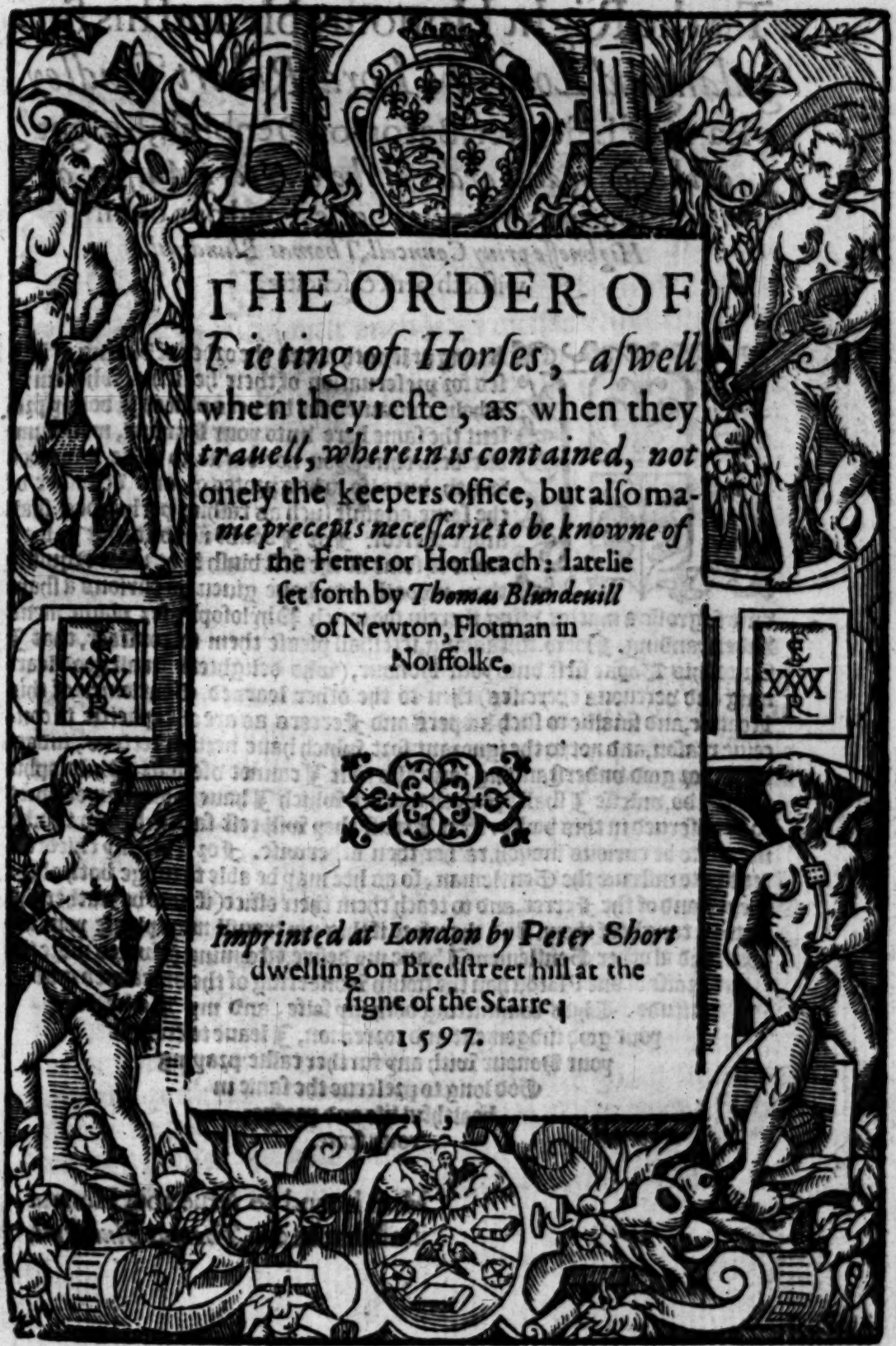
A whole port with Campaniels hauing a trench aboue.



A flat Campasse ll, hauing on ech outside two plaieng ring.



This is the 11 in the close bittes the next before the fol. 62.



THE ORDER OF *Dieting of Horses, aswell* when they reste, as when they *trauell, wherein is contained, not* onely the keepers office, but also ma- *nie precepts necessarie to be knowne of* the Ferret or Horseleach: latelie set forth by *Thomas Blundeuill* of Newton, Flotman in Norffolke.

Imprinted at London by Peter Short dwelling on Bredstreet hill at the signe of the Starre. 1597.

To the Right Honourable and his singular good Lord, the Lord Robert Dudley, Earle of Leicester, Baron of Denbigh, Knight of the honorable order of the Garter, Maister of the Queenes Maiesties horses, and one of hir Highnesse priuy Councell, Thomas Blundeuill wisheth perfect felicitie.

HAuing at length ended the order of dieting of horses for preseruation of their health, (wherein is wholie contained the keepers office) I boldly present the same here vnto your Honour, most humblie beseeching you not onelie to take it in good worth: but also to be a protector and defender of the same, against such as rashlie perhappes shall iudge thereof. For I doubt not but that I shall seeme to some at the first blush to be more exquisite than needeth, & to haue giuen too curious a shape vnto so grosse a matter, vsing therein too much Philosophy for plaine mens vnderstanding. Notwithstanding, if it shall please them to consider, that I write this Booke first vnto your Honour, (who delighteth in all good learning and vertuous exercises) then to the other learned Gentlemen of this Realme, and finallie to such keepers and Ferrers as are of capacitie to conceiue reason, and not to the ignorant sort, which haue neither letters, iudgement, nor good vnderstanding: and also that I cannot vse lesse Philosophie than I do, vnlesse I shall breake that order which I haue thought most meet to be obserued in this booke: then I trust they will rest satisfied, and thinke me not to be curious inough, rather then otherwise. For truly my chiefe intent is to instruct the Gentleman, so as hee may be able to iudge both of the keeper, and of the Ferrer, and to teach them their office (if need be) rather thā he to be taught of them. And therefore if this my trauill may please your honour, and al other Gentlemen, I haue my desire, esteeming alwaies more the due praise of one Plato, than the foolish wondering of the vnlearned multitude. Thus committing both my selfe, and my Booke, to your good iudgement and correction, I leaue to trouble your Honour with any further talke: praying God long to preserue the same in healthful life and prosperous state.

Most bound to serue your Honour in all that he can, *Thomas Blundeuil.*

A Short preface declaring the order of this Booke.

MInding here to treat of the keepers office, shewing how a horse should be vsed, kept, and dieted, so as he may continue long in health, & not fall by disorder into diseases, I thinke it good to vse such kind of talk, as not only the keeper, but also the Ferrer, or horseleach may learn therby in what points their knowledge chiefly consisteth, & with what order or iudgement they ought to proceed, whiles they seeke either to preserue a horse from diseases, or else to cure him when he is fallen into them. Neither let any man maruaile here, that I ioine the keeper and the Ferrer together. For sith there be twoe ends of physicke, the one to preserue a healthfull bodie from sickenesse, and the other to restore a sicke bodie to health: (whereof the first end is common alwell to the keeper as to the Ferrer) it is requisite therefore, that the keeper bee in manner as skilfull as the Ferrer, and speciallie in dieting him, and in knowing when he is disposed to sicknes, though not altogither so cunning in iudging the diuersitie of diseases, or in curing the same. But neither of them both (in my iudgement) shall be able to do their office truelie vnles he giue himselfe to vnderstand the nature, qualitie and disposition of a horse, and to know whereof he is compounded, and al the parts and members of him together with the vse of the same, and also how to diet him alwei when he is sick, as when he is hole. Wherefore for their better instruction, it shall not grieue mee, in treating of this matter, to follow the self same order that the learned Physicians do obserue in treating of mans bodie, to the intent it may haue some likenes of an art or Science: & the rather for that the horse is so noble a beast, so necessarie and seruiceable to man, and partlie to giue occasion to such Ferrers as haue some knowledge alreadie to seeke for more, wherein I will vse so much plainnesse and briefnesse as I can possible. To know then the nature of a Horse, and howe to diet him, mee thinkes it is verie meete and necessarie, first to consider the thinges naturall where-

of

of he is compounded: secondlie the thing not naturall, whereby he is nourished, and his health maintained: and thirdlie the things vnnaturall, or againste nature, whereby his health and nature both is decaied. Notwithstanding in this booke I minde onelie to treat of the thinges naturall, and not naturall, (with what order the chapters hereafter following do declare) sparing to speake of things againste nature (which be the diseases) together with the diet and cure belonging thereunto, vntill I come to talke of the Ferrers office, which God willing, shall be in the next booke following.

The Contents of the Chapters of this Booke.

Of the things natural whereof a horse is compounded, how many there be, which they be, and why they are so called. Chap. 1

Of the foure Elements, and what vertues and operations they haue. chap. 2

Of temperaments, howe manie there be, which they bee, as well simple as compound, and of what temperature a horse is, also of the qualities both first and second. chap. 3

Of humors, to what end they serue, and howe to know the diuers complexions of horses, and which be best.

Of the members of a horse, as well semblable, as instrumentall. chap. 5

Of the number and qualitie of the sinewes of a horse, chap. 6

Of the veines of a horse, and how many they be. chap. 7

Of the number and situation of bones in a horses bodie. chap. 8

What proportion and measure is required in euerie member of a well shapen horse, according to Vegetius description. chap. 9

Of the three powers or vertues, whereby as well the bodie of a horse, as of euerie other beast is gouerned. chap. 10

Of the spirits both animall, vitall, and naturall of a horse where-

to

whereto they serue, and in what part of his bodie they do chiefly remaine. chap. 11

Of the things not naturall, whereby a horses health is preserued, how manie there be, which they be, and why they be so called. chap. 12

In what aire is best for a horse to liue, and how his stable ought to be situated, made, kept, and vsed. Chap. 13

Of the horses meat and drinke, and of the diuers kindes thereof and how he should be dieted when he resteth. chap. 14

What water is good for a horse to drinke, and whether it bee good to wash a horse or not. chap. 15

Of the diuers kinds of mouing and rest belonging to a Horse: wherein is declared, how, where, and when a horse should be curried, kempt, and trimmed, also how his keeper should approch vnto him, & whether it be good to curtall horses or not. chap. 16

Of exercise both moderate and vnmoderate, and of the effectes thereof. chap. 17

How a Horse should be prepared against he be iourneied, and how to make him to receiue the bridle, & also how the keeper should lead him when he doth bring him forth, and finally how he should be vsed and dieted whilst he is iourneied, chap. 18

Of the sleepe and watch of a horse, and how he should be littered, chap. 19

Of repletion & emptinesse, & of the diuers kinds thereof. chap. 20

How and when a horse should be let bloud, and to what end, and by what signes a man may know whether it is requisite to let him bloud or not. chap. 21

How and when a horse should be scowred with gralle or otherwise and also what meate will soonest fat him. chap. 22

Of the affections of a horse, and howe the keeper ought to behaue himselfe, that there may be a mutual loue betwixt the horse and him. chap. 23

FINIS.

Of the things naturall, how manie *there be, which they be, and why* they are so called. *Chap.* 1.

THe naturall things, wherof not only a horse but also all other beasts, as well reasonable as vnreasonable, are made and compounded, are in number seuen. And they be these Elements, temperaments, humors, members, powers, or vertues, actions or operations, and spirits, which be called things naturall, bycause the natural perfection of the bodie of euerie sensible beast, wholie dependeth vpon these things.

Of the foure Elements, and what vertues and operations they haue, Chap. ii.

AND first, as touching the Elementes, you shall vnderstand, that this word Element here, is as much to saie as a first beginning, being of it self most pure and simple, wherof all things are made, and againe, all things are resolued into ỳ same, and it is so pure & simple a thing indeed, as by our outward senses it cannot be discerned. Some againe do briefly thus define it, saieng that an Element is the least part, or smallest portion of that thing, whiche is made thereof. Of Elements, that be common beginninges of all thinges, there are but foure, that is: fire, aire, water, and earth: I meane not that fire, aire, water, and earth, which wee datelie see here beneath with our eies, (for they are bodies compounded like our selues) otherwise wee could not see them. But those Elementes aboue, which our outward senses are not able to discerne, whereof the fire is highest, and therewith lightest, being placed nerte the moone. And though this Element is both hot and drie, yet naturallie it exceedeth moste in heate. And the vertue and propertie thereof by meanes of his heate, is to moone matter to generation, and in mixt bodies to seperate things of diuers kinds (called of the Philosophers

loſophers Heterogenia) one from the other, and to ioine things of like kind (called Homogenia) togither. For by vertue of the fire, the bones either in man or beaſt be ſeuered from the fleſh, and the fleſh from the ſinewes, and the hart from the liuer, &c. So likewiſe the diuers parts of the wood which is burnt in the fire, by meanes of the heate thereof are ſeuered one from another, as the vapour, the ſmoake, the flame, and the aſhes. The like experience is alſo ſeene in trieng or purifieng of mixte mettalles. For the fire by meanes of his heat, doth ſeuer euerie ſundry mettall by himſelfe, and gather the like togither. Moreouer, the vertue of the fire is to ripen, and to digeſte thinges rawe and vndigeſted, to mingle the drie with the moiſt, to open the powers, that the aire beeing ſomewhat groſſer, may enter into the bodie, and finallie to breake the cold of the water and earth, ſo as it may not diſtemper the bodie. The aire is placed next the fire, and is light and hot, but moſt cheeflie moiſt. The vertue of this Element, by meanes of his moiſtneſſe, is to make the matter apt to receiue ſhape, either natural or accidental, and alſo togither with the fire, to bring the powers and influences of the heauens and ſtars into the inferiour bodies, and to make the mixt bodies not onelie ſubtile and penetrable, but alſo light, to the intent they may bee neither too groſſe, nor too heauie, againe, the aire with his moiſtneſſe dooth ſlake the burning heate of the hart, and of the other members, as is well ſeene by the office of the longes, which like a paire of bellowes doth continually drawe freſh aire vnto the heart. And though the aire ſeemeth to our outward ſences not to be ſo moiſt as the water, yet indeed, according to the Philoſophers opinion, it is farre moiſter, which is well proued (ſaie they) in that it is ſo flurible, and ſpreadeth ſo farre abroad, filling all emptie corners, which be the ſpecialle properties of moiſtneſſe. And therefore it is muche harder to be kept within his owne bounds, than the water is. Notwithſtanding, ſome holde openion, that as the water was altered by God from his firſt naturall place, to the better behoſe of man & beaſt: euen ſo the aire was not altogither left in his firſt naturall diſpoſition: for then it ſhoulde bee ſo moiſte, as man nor beaſt were able to breth or liue. Next vnto the aire or the Element of water, whiche is heauie and moiſte, but moſt colde. The vertue of this

this Element is by meanes of hir coldnesse in mixt bodies, to conglutinate or ioine togither partes or members that be of diuerse kindes, as bones with flesh and sinewes, and flesh againe with sinewes and bones: so likewise in time of frost, you see the cold doth bind togither things of diuerse kinds, and bring them al into one masse, as dirt, stones, sticks, strawes, and such like. The water also with hir coldnesse doth temper the feruent heat of the fire, and doth gather togither those things which the fire would dispearse asunder. Next vnto the water is the earth, which is most heauy and cold, but most chiefly drie, the vertue whereof is in mixt bodies, so to harden them as they may retaine their shapes, which otherwise by meanes of the aire and water, would be fluxible and not abide, as is easie to see in a pece of wax, newly wrought and sealed with some print, which before it be hard & drie will not hold. And note, that according to Hippocrates opinion, when ante liuing and sensible bodie dieth, not onelie ech qualitie, but euerie substance, and part therof returneth to the Element from whence it came. That is to say, that which is hot, to the fire: that which is moist, to the aire: that which is cold, to the water: and that which is drie, to the earth. Thus much of the foure Elements, which bee the common beginnings of all things, as well liuing as vnliuing, sensible as vnsensible. For of things liuing and sensible, hauing bloud, there be other nigher Elements or beginnings, which be called the proper Elements of generation, that is to say, the ingendering seed, and menstruall bloud, from whence euery beast taketh his first being or shape. And yet these proper beginings depend vpon the quallities of the first common begininges before rehearsed, that is, of moist, drie, hot, and cold, without the which they coulde do nothing, nor yet be ante thing themselues.

Of temperaments, how manie there be, which they be, as well simple as compound, and of what temperature a horse is, aise the qualities both first and second. Chap. iii.

OF the commixtion of the foure Elementes aboue rehearsed, do spring nine temperameots, whereof eight be called vnequal, & the ninth equal. Of the eight vnequall, foure be called simple, and foure compound: the

foure

foure ſimple be theſe, hot, cold, moiſt and drie, which of the Philoſophers and Phyſicians be otherwiſe called the firſt qualities, whereof the firſt two be actiue, and the other two paſſiue. The foure compoundes be theſe, hotte and moiſt, hotte and drie, colde and moiſt, colde and drie. Againe, the equall temperament is deuided into two, that is to ſaie, into that which is vniuerſall or generall, and into that which is ſpeciall. The equal temperament vniuerſal is, when there is an equal proportion of the foure Elements, that is to ſay, not more of one than of another appertaining to nature vniuerſall. The equall temperament eſpeciall is, when the Elements are proportioned according as euerie kind doth moſt properlie require, be it plant or beaſt. As for example, we ſaie that Wormewood hath his due temperament, when it hath ſuch qualities as Wormewood ſhould haue, which is, to haue ſuch commixtion of the Elements, as in his operation it may be hot, drie, and aſtringent. The like is to be ſaid of the dog, ſwine, Horſe, or anie other beaſt, whereof euerie one is ſaide to haue his due temperament, when he hath ſuch temperament, as is moſte proper vnto his kind, which is beſt knowne by his doings. As for example, the horſe is knowne to be hot and moiſt, by his lightneſſe, ſwiftneſſe, boldnes, and long life, and alſo to be of a temperate nature, in that he is tameable, docible, & will be obedient vnto man. And ſo long as a horſe, or any other thing continueth in the mediocritie or meane of his proper temperament, we ſay commonly that he is of a good temperature: but if he exceed in anie qualitie more than he ſhould do, as in heat, coldnes, moiſtneſſe or drieth, then we ſay that he is either hot or colde, drie or moiſt, according to that qualitie wherein he exceedeth. Againe, euerie kind hath his due temperament according to his age, and countrey wherein he is bred: and alſo according to the time of the yeare, as for example. A horſe in his fole age, is naturally hot and moiſt, in his middle age more hot and drie than moiſt, and in his old age more cold & drie than either hotte or moiſt. Likewiſe the Horſes that be bread in Greece, Afrike, and Spaine, be naturallie farre hotter than thoſe that be bred here in England, or ſuch like cold countreys. Neither is any horſe being in health, ſo hotte in Spring time, which is the moſt temperat part of the yeare, as in Summer: nor yet ſo cold

in Summer, as in winter, all which things are to bee conſidered, aſwell of the keeper, which hath to tend them, and to diet them being whole, as alſo of the Ferrer or horſeleach, which goeth about to cure them when they be ſicke. For vnleſſe hee conſider their natures and temperatures, togither with theſe circumſtances, hee may be quickly deceiued in his miniſtration: & therefore I would wiſh him to haue a good reſpect vnto the kinde, age, countrie, and time of the yeere, to the intent he may applie his medicines accordingly. It is neceſſary alſo to conſider the ſecond qualities, ſo called becauſe they take their beginning of the firſt qualities before mentioned, of which ſecond qualities ſome be called tangible or touchable: as theſe, ſoftneſſe, hardneſſe, ſmoothneſſe, roughneſſe, toughneſſe, brickleneſſe, lightneſſe, heauineſſe, thinneſſe, thicknes, ſmalneſſe, groſnes, and ſuch like. Some againe bee not tangible, as thoſe that appertaine to hearing, ſeeing, and ſmelling, as noiſes, colors, odors, and ſuch like. For by obſeruing well theſe ſecond qualities he ſhall quickly know whether the horſe bee diſpoſed to anie ſickneſſes or not.

Of humors, to what end they ſerue, and how to know the diuers complexions of horſes, and which be beſt. Chap. iiii.

THe Humors whereof not onelie a horſe, but all other beaſtes are made, be in number foure: that is to ſay, Bloud, Fleame, Choler, and Melancholy. The bloud of his owne nature being vncorrupted is hot, and moiſt, and ſweete to the taſte. Fleame is cold and moiſt and alſo ſweete, or at the leaſt without any taſte like vnto pure water. Choler is hot and drie, and bitter to the taſte. Melancholie is cold and drie, and therewith ſower and heauie, and by meanes of theſe qualities the foure humors be anſwerable vnto the foure Elementes. For the bloud in nature is like vnto the aire, fleame vnto water, Choler vnto fire, and Melancholie vnto the earth. And though theſe foure humors be mixt throughout all the partes of the bodie: yet euerie one aboundeth in one parte more than in another, and haue their peculiar reſting places accordinglie. For bloud cheefflie dwelleth about the heart, fleame in the braine, Choler in the liuer, and Melancholie in the ſpleene.

Moreouer, as euerie one of theſe humors hath more or leſſe ſouereignetie

uereigntie in anie beaſt, ſo is the beaſt naturallie the better or woꝛſe coloured, qualified or diſpoſed. As for an example. That hoꝛſe in whom bloud doth moſt reigne, is baie of colour, and therewith pleaſant, nimble, and of a temperate mouing. But if fleame haue the chiefe dominion in him, then is hee moſt commonlie a milke white, and therewith ſlow, dull, and beaute. Againe, if choler be chiefe, then he is of colour moſt commonlie a bright ſoꝛrell, and therewith verie hote & fierie, and ſeldome of any great ſtrength. And if the earth hath ſouereigntie, then he is blacke of colour, or a mouſe dun, and therewith fearefull, fainthearted, dull and beaute. Againe, euerie humour hath his pꝛoper vſe or end, whereto it ſerueth. For bloud ſerueth chiefelie to nouriſh the bodie, fleame to helpe the mouing of the ioints, choler to pꝛouoke the belꝛie to auoyd the excrements, & Melancholie to pꝛouoke appetite. And ſo long as theſe humours keepe their natural qualities, they are wholeſome, & be called by their ſimple names without anie addition: but if they chance by ſome miſoꝛder to be altered or coꝛrupted, then they be vnwholeſome, and are no longer called by their ſimple names, but haue ſome addition thereunto: as cholericke, flegmatike or melancholie bloud, Salt fleame, Choler aduſt, or burnt Choler, and fretting Melancholie, whereof pꝛoceede manie grieuous diſeaſes and ſickneſſes, as we ſhall declare hereafter.

Of the members of a hoꝛſe, aſwell ſimiler, as inſtrumentall. Chap. v.

OF members, ſome be called of the Phiſicians Similaria, that is to ſaie, like, or ſemblable, & ſome inſtrumentall. The members ſimiler be thoſe, which being diuided into partes, all the partes thereof be like in ſubſtance to the whole, and haue like definition, and doe beare the ſame name: as fleſh, bone, ſinew, and ſuch like. For the fleſh of a beaſt being diuided into ſundꝛie partes, euerie ſuch part is fleſh, and called fleſh, aſwell as the whole: the like may be ſaide of bone, ſinewe, or anie other member ſemblable, of what kinde ſoeuer it bee. Members inſtrumentall bee thoſe, which being made of partes ſimiler, and diuided into partes, the partes be not like, nor haue not all one name with the whole: as the head, hand and foote, or ſuch like: for euerie parte of the head is not called a head:

nor euerie parte of the hand a hand: and theſe members inſtrumentall, are of more perfection than the members ſimiler, in doing their office. Of which inſtrumentall members there bee foure chiefe or principall, that is to ſaie, the braine, the heart, the liuer, & the ſtones, whereof the firſt three are onelie to preſerue that ſingular bodie wherein they be: the fourth is to preſerue the whole kinde. Againe, from theſe members do ſpring other members, which doe ſerue them, as the ſinewes from the braine, the arteries from the heart, the veines from the liuer, and the ſeed veſſels from the ſtones: all which partes and members togither with the reſt that be in a horſes bodie, I wiſhe that our Ferrers and Horſeleeches would be diligent in ſearching to knowe them by cutting vp of dead horſes, to the intent they may be the more perfect in diſcerning one thing from another, when they come to deale with the partes of a liuing horſe: for lacke of which knowledge, I haue knowne ſome in my daies to haue cut principall ſinewes aſunder in ſtéd of veines. Wherefore I doe meane, God willing, hereafter if I ſhall haue leaſure and time, to ſet out a perfect Anatomie or deſcription of a horſe, declaring all the chiefeſt parts, and how they hang togither, and are deriued one of another, togither with the vſe of the ſaid parts, and alſo what diſeaſes doe moſte commonly bréd in the ſame. And in the meane time I ſhall deſire you to content your ſelfe with a briefe deſcription, onlie of the ſinewes, veines and bones, gathered out of a learned Authour, called Vegetius, whoſe wordes doe heere followe.

Of the number and qualitie of the ſinewes of a horſe. Chap. vi.

IT behoueth vs alſo to deſcribe to you the number, quality & meaſure of the ſinewes of a horſe. From ẏ mid noſtrels vp to the top of the head, & ſo down alongſt the back euen to the croper coms ii. great cords or tendons, euerie one xii. foote long. Then is there two branches & principall ſinewes of the brain, conteining iiii. fot. Then from the ſhoulders to the next ioint downward ii. great ſinews or tendons. And frõ that ioint dolwne to the paſternes iiii. great ſinewes. Alſo in the forepart & about his breſt, aſwel within as without, are x. ſinews, & as manie in his hinder parts. Then from the reines of his back

vnto

vnto his stones ate foure, so that in his whole bodie he hath in all foure and thirtie apparant sinewes.

Of the veines of a Horse, and how many they be. Chap. vii.

IT is necessarie also for you to knowe the veines of a horse, and specially those wherein a horse should be lette bloud in time of neede, and therefore I will recite vnto you all the inward veines proceeding from the liuer, which is the spring and fountaine of blood in all beasts. You shall vnderstand then, that within the palat of the horses mouth be two notable veins, which are commonly wont to be touched or striken when the horse hath any disease in his head or braine. There be also two apparant veines vnder his eies, and other two vnder his fore shoulders, he hath also two maruellous great ones in his breast, which are wont to be striken when the horse hath any kinde of feuer, or is sicke at the hart, or in his lunges. There bee also foure veines in his thighes, called of Vegetius Subfarrhes, and two in his pasternes, which are wont to be striken, when the horse is wearied or tired, or otherwise foyled on his feete. There be also two that come downe to his houes. Moreouer he hath foure in his flanks, and two in his hams, or rather houghes, and two in his hinder legs: but vnder his taile, he hath no more but one that is apparant. A horse hath all these veines before rehearsed, besides the necke veines that go towards the withers, which be the common veines of letting blood. The summe of all the veines meet to be stricken, amounteth to the number of nine and twentie.

Of the number and situation of bones that be in a horses bodie. Chap. viii.

EVerie horse or Mare, hath in the vpper part of his head two bones, and from his forhed vnto his nostrels, other two: also two nether law bones, and of teeth in all, to the number of xl. that is to say, of laiwe teeth, or side teeth, xxiiii. of tushes iiii. of foretéeth, otherwise called the shearing teeth xii. The ioint bones, aswell of the necke as of the backe, be in all xxii. that is to saie, from the hed to the withers vii. and from thense to the reines or kidnies viii. and from thence to the taile, seuen, then is there the great broad hinder bone, called the sacred bone,

which hath xii. ſeames or iointures. Alſo in the horſes ſhoulder be two great bones, called the ſpade bones, and from thence to the forcels or Canell bones, other two bones, and from thence to the firſt ioint aboue the legs, other two, and from thence to the knées two called the thigh bones, & from thence to the paſtornes, other two called the ſhanke bones, and from thence downeward to the hoones, be in all ſixteene little bones. Then there is a great bone in his breaſt, whereunto are faſtened. xxvi. ribbes. And to the Columell behind be two bones, & from the molairs to the ioints other two, and alſo two towards the ribs. From the bending of the bough vnto the leg, are two ſmall bones, and from the leg to the two forcels of the leg, other two little bones, and from the paſtorns to the hoofe ſixteene little bones. The ſumme of all the bones, is a CIXX.

What proportion and meaſure is required in euery member of a well ſhapen horſe, according to Vegetius deſcription. Chap. ix.

IN the palate of his mouth be twelue degrees or ſteppes, ſtanding one aboue another, like a paire of ſtaires. His tongue would be halfe a foote long, his vpper lip ſix inches, and his nether lip fiue inches long, euerie ſawe ten inches long, his head from the middle of his forehead vnto his noſtrels, would be a good foote of the ſtandard, his eares in mine opinion (for Vegetius appointeth no certaine meaſure vnto them) according to his owne proportion alreadie begun, would be about fiue inches long: for fiue inches as he ſaith, is the iuſt length of an Ore his eare. The circuite or compaſſe of his eie would bee foure inches about, his necke from the nape of his head vnto his withers, would bee ſeuen Calculs. From thence to the raines two and twentie, and from thence to his taile twelue. The length of his thigh before, would be twelue inches, and the length of his ſhanke fiue inches, and his thigh behinde requireth to be a foote long, and the ſhanke to be fiue inches long. and the length of his whole bodie from head to taile would conteine fiue foote.

Of the three powers or vertues, whereby as well the bodie of a horse as of euerie other beast is gouerned. Chap. x.

THe powers and vertues, whereby the bodie of euerie beast is gouerned, are in number three, that is to say, the power Animall, the power Vitall, and the power Naturall. The power Animall, is a vertue incident to the braine, which through the sinewes comming like conduite pipes from the braine, distributeth feeling and mouing to all the parts of the bodie. The power Vitall, is a vertue belonging to the hart, which giueth life and spirit to all the bodie, and to euerie part thereof, by meanes of the arties, which also like conduit pipes doe proceed from the heart, the chiefe fountaine of naturall heat. The power Naturall, is a vertue properlie appertaining to the liuer, which giueth nutriment vnto all the body, & to euery part thereof, by meanes of the veines, which likewise proceede from the liuer like conduite pipes, carieng the blood from the liuer, which is the fountaine of blood vnto euerie part of the bodie. Moreouer, the power naturall comprehendeth foure other vertues, that is to saie, the vertue attractiue, whereby it draweth sustenance meet to nourish the bodie, then the vertue retentiue, whereby it retaineth and keepeth the sustenance receiued: thirdlie, the vertue digestiue, whereby it digesteth the same: and finallie the vertue expulsiue, whereby it expelleth excrements, or superfluities. Thus you see that the three powers before recited, be of no small importance, and therefore the Ferrer had neede to haue a speciall regarde vnto them: for if anie of them faile, the beast cannot liue.

Of the actions and operations that belong to the vertues before recited. Chap. xi.

FRom the three powers before rehearsed, doe proceede diuers actions or operations, for the action & operation of the power Animall, is to discerne, to moone, and to feele. We discerne by meanes of the vertue Imaginatiue, Discoursatiue, & Memoratiue, whereof the first is placed in the forhead, the second in the middle of the braine, and the third in the hinder part of the head: all which are comprehended vnder the power Animall before described. We moone, and haue our mouing by meanes of the vertue Motiue, whose action and operation is to

124

ſtraine, or to let ſlacke the ſinewes, whereof all the members haue their mouing. Againe, our ſéeling is by meanes of the vertue ſenſitiue, whoſe action is occupied in the 5. ſenſes, as to ſée, to heare, to ſmell, to taſte, and to féele or touch: and all theſe actions doe proceéde from the power animall. The action or operation of the power vitall, is to reſtraine and to loſen the heart, and the artires proceéding from the heart, which action, whether it be hurte or diſturbed in mans bodie or not, is eaſilie knowne by the vnequall beating of the pulſe, that is to ſaie, of the artires, which commeth from his heart, downe vnto both his wriſtes, and I thinke to a diligent Ferrer, are eaſie inough to be found in the foreleggers of a Horſe, or at the leaſt in the temples of his head.

For as his ſkin is much thicker than a mans ſkin, ſo be his artires alſo greater, & do beate with greater violence, and therefore are the more eaſie to bee felt. The actions or operations of the power naturall, are to ingender, to increaſe, to nourith, to deſire with appetite, to attract or to drawe, to alterate or to change, to digeſt, or to diſtribute, to retaine, and to expel, and manie ſuch like. Theſe actions therefore are to be conſidered of the Ferrer, to the intent that he maie learne by them not onelie the whole ſtate of a horſes bodie, but alſo what particular member or parte thereof, is at anie time euill affected or grieued. But now you ſhall vnderſtand, that of actions, ſome be voluntarie, and ſome not voluntarie. The voluntarie be thoſe, which both man and beaſt maie further and hinder, ſtaie, or let, when they will themſelues, as the mouing of the legs: for it is in their power to go, to ſtand, or to lie downe when they will themſelues. The actions not voluntary, are thoſe, that depend not vppon the will of man or beaſt, but be done of their owne accord, and naturallie, as the mouing of the heart, and of the artires, which do continuallie mooue and beate, whether the beaſt ſleepeth, or waketh. Thus much of actions.

Of the ſpirits both animall, vitall, and naturall of a horſe, whereto they ſerue, and in what partes of his bodie they doe chiefelie remaine. Chap xii.

A Spirite heere is to bee vnderſtanded for that fine, pure, cleare, and airie ſubſtance, which is ingendred of the fineſt

parte

part of the bloud, to the intent that the vertue of euerie principall member mate reſorte vnto all the other partes of the bodie, ſo as they may doe their offices and actions accordinglie, and therefore the ſelfe ſame compariſon may bee made betwixt the bloud and the ſpirite, that is betwixt the fire and the ſparke. Of ſpirites, according to Galene, there be two kindes, that is to ſaie, the ſpirite animall, and the ſpirite vitall. The ſpirite animall is that, which giueth power of feeling and mouing vnto the beaſt, in which two thinges the nature of the beaſtes chiefly conſiſteth. And therefore Ariſtotle doth define a beaſt in this wiſe, ſaieng: *Animal eſt quod ſentit & mouetur.* A beaſt (ſayth he) is that which hath feeling and mouing. This ſpirite animall hath his chiefe reſting place in the braine, from whence through the ſinewes it is diſperſed into all other partes of the bodie. And it is ingendered of the vitall ſpirite, being more vehemently wrought and laboured, and partlie of continuall breathing: euen ſo it is partlie preſerued by the caule of the braine, which doeth continuallie water it and nouriſh it. The ſpirite vitall is contained in the heart, from whence it floweth into all the partes of the bodie, being the chiefe cauſe of all the naturall heate in the bodie, and is preſerued and nouriſhed, partlie by breathing, and partly by bloud. To theſe two ſpirites, you may if you will for order ſake, adde the ſpirite naturall, which (as Galene ſaith) if there be anie ſuche, it is without doubt conteined in the liuer, and the veines. But the other two bee ſuch principall thinges, as the bodie cannot liue without them, nor yet haue anie being at all. And therefore it is neceſſarie that the Ferrer haue a ſpeciall regard vnto them, that they may bee alwayes preſerued in their force and vertue. Thus hauing briefly talked of the ſeuen naturall thinges, whereof a Horſe or anie other beaſt is made and compounded: now it reſteth, that we ſpeake of the things not naturall, whereby the healthfull ſtate of anie beaſt is preſerued and mainteined, declaring therewith howe ſuch thinges ought to bee vſed accordinglie.

Of

Of the thinges not naturall, whereby a Horses health is preserued, how manie there be, which they be, and why they are so called. Chap. xiii.

THe thinges not naturall, wherby the bodie either of man or beast is preserued, be in number fiue, that is to say, the aire, meate and drinke, mouing and rest, sleepe and watch, emptinesse and fulnes, and the affects of the mind: which things are called not natural, because that as they preserue the bodie being rightly applyed: so againe, if they be otherwise vsed than well, they destroy the bodie.

In what aire it is best for a horse to liue, and how his stable ought to be situated, made, kept, and vsed. Chap. xiiii.

BVt for so much as a horse is a farre grosser beast than man, and made to serue man in all seasons and weathers, be they hot, cold, drie, or moist: and also for that hee doth seldome surfet through the intemperature of the aire: vnlesse he hath bene chafed and driuen into some sweate before, or by some other accident: I meane therefore not to talke much of the aire, but onlie to saie, that sith all beastes liue by the aire, the more pure and clearer that the substance of the aire is, the more wholesome it is for the horse. And as for the qualitie of the aire, it may be wholesome or vnwholesome, according to the complexion of the horse: for some require to liue in a hot aire, some in a cold, and some in a meane, as those that be of a good temperature, to whome the temperate aire is alwayes most wholesome. But when a horse doth exceede in any of the foure qualities, that is to saie, in heate, moistnesse, coldnesse, or drieth: it is best for him to liue in that aire which is contrarie to that qualitie, wherein hee exceedeth. And in diuers diseases, the change of the aire is verie necessarie and profitable, as well to a horse or other beast, as to a man. But sith stoned horses, for the most part be kept in the house, and liue not abroad in the open aire: I will shewe you howe a horses house or stable should be situated, made, kept and vsed. The stable then according to Palladius opinion (whether it bee for Horses or Oxen) would be placed towardes the South, and yet so, as it may haue windowes also towardes the North, which as he saith, being close

shut

ſhut in winter ſeaſon, cannot hurt them, and being opened in ſummer ſeaſon, ſhall greatlie refreſh them. And a ſtable would be placed on a drie ground, and nigh vnto a well, or ſome other good watering place, and ſo as the owner may haue a delight to come alwayes thither to ſée his horſes, for according to the olde Prouerbe, that horſe is moſt commonlie fat, which is fedde with his maiſters eie. And in anie caſe let no ſwines cote be nigh vnto the ſtable: for the filthie ſauour of ſwine, and of all thinges that cume from them, is verie pernitious and hurtfull to horſes. But now, as touching the making of the ſtable, Vegetius would haue it to be verie lightſome, leaſt the horſes being vſed to darkneſſe, when they come abroade, bee not able to abide the light of the Sunne, dazeling their eies ſo, as they cannot perfectlie ſée. But then the windowes would be glaſed or lattiſed, to the intent that no foules maie enter in, whoſe fethers and dung bee verie dangerous, the one to the throte, and the other to the bellie. And as touching the flowth or plancher, Collumella, Palladius, and others, would haue it to be made of the heart of hard oake, & not of ſmooth and ſoft wood. And the ſame plancher to ſtand ſomewhat ſlopewiſe or falling, to the intent that no water or Horſepiſſe maie abide thereon to hurt their hooues. For the conueiance of which water or piſſe, there would be made at the lower end next vnto the taile tré, a conuenient gutter, cloſe couered with a planke or boord, in ſuch ſorte, as the ſame being lifted vp, the gutter may bee often ſwept, and kept cleane, at the ende of which gutter, the ground ſhould be ſuch, as it may drinke vp the water, or elſe it muſt bee conueied further into ſome backe dike or pit, meete for the purpoſe. Notwithſtanding, in manie partes of Italie, the flowthes of the ſtables bee made with rounde pauing ſtones, and not with plankes: which no doubt is verie good to harden their hooues, but I thinke it were too cold a flooreth to be vſed in this countrie. Notwithſtanding, all the ſtables of ſir Thomas Chenie, ſometimes Lord Warden of the fiue portes (as I vnderſtand) were made with ſuch paued floorths, who delighted not onelie to haue a number of good horſes, but alſo to haue them well kept, and vſed accordinglie. The manger ſhoulde alſo bee made of thicke oken plankes, & cloſe borded in the bottome, to the intent the prouender

may

may not fall through and be spilt. And because that all Horses vse not like spéede in their feeding, Vegetius woulde haue that euerie Horse should haue a locker to eate his prouender in, peculiar to himselfe, which would be somewhat narower in the bottome, than at the brim, and no wider than one Horse may easilie put in his head at once, which kinde of lockers are commonlie vsed in Italie, and for the most part they be of marble, or such like hard stone, and are aptlie placed and fastened within the manger, so as they cannot be moued: and in manie places such kind of mangers do serue also in stead of racks: for betwixt euerie two prouender pottes or lockers, the bottome of the manger is not close borded, but rafeled with laths, being about an inch or more distant one from another, so as the dust that comes from the haie, which is cast therein, may fall downe to the ground. And to the intent that the horses maie straine their neckes the more in stooping low for their meate, such racklike mangers according to Petrus Crescentius opinion, ought to be placed lowe by the grounde, euen before the horses knees. And though these kind of racks be of late daies left in most places: yet I see no great cause why they should be left, and specially in Noble mens stables. For first it is more naturall for a Horse to séede downeward than vpward, according to the shape that nature hath giuen, aswell to him as to all other vnreasonable beasts, for man onelie loketh vp to the heauens, which is verie aptly touched by Ouid in these three verses.

Pronáque cùm spectent animalia cætera terram,
Os homini sublime dedit, cœlúmque videre
Iussit, & erectos ad sydera tollere vultus.

Againe, he stretcheth the weanting part of his necke, which hath most néed to be stretched, more by stooping downewarde, than by loking vpward, which is not onely painefull vnto the Horse, but also incommodious: for when the racke standeth aboue head, it filleth the horses mane full of dust, and besides that, if there shoulde be anie feather, Hennes dung, or such like euill thing in the hay, it would sooner fall into his throat, than when hee taketh his meate from beneath. Notwithstanding most men nowadaies doe vse the high standing racks for two causes: first, for that the horses cannot blowe vpon the haie so much as if it late beneath: secondlie,

lie for that they shall not destroy so much haie, lying aboue head, as when it lyeth beneath. And some man perhaps would adde the third cause, saieng: that a horse laboureth more in pulling out his meate from aboue than from beneath: but sith that such labor exerciseth the teeth more than ante other parte of the bodie, it is not therefore so materiall. And as for the other two discommodities beforre alledged, are some remedied in noble mens stables, where the groomes of the stables doe nothing else but tend vpon the Horses, to serue them of meate by litle at once, according as they shall see it needefull, so shall they haue it fresh and fresh, which shall doe them more good, than that which lyeth long before them. And therefore in great mens stables, where seruantes doe nothing else but serue horses, I would wishe the manger to be made racklike, and to stand as before is said. And in meane mens stables, where seruants cannot be suffered to giue continuall attendance on their Horses, the rackes may be placed aboue head, as they bee euerie where at this present, but therewith of such heigth, as is most agreeable to the horses stature that shall stand thereat, that is to saie, neither so lowe as may touch their eyes or head, nor yet so high as it shall paine them to reach vnto it. And to the intent that euerie horse may stand and lie seuerallie by himselfe, it is méete that the stable flowth or plancher bee deuided into conuenient romes, with postes set vp, and mortised into the taile trée: vnto euerie which post, and vnto the manger, would be fastened a conuenient barre of timber, with a corde or thong of leather, in such sort as the bar maie swaie euerie way, so shall it saue the horses from striking one another, without doing them any hurt: and they that list to bestow more cost, may double bord euerie partition betwixt rome and rome, if they will, and make the partitions so high, that the horses shall be neither able to bite, nor strike one another, no nor yet to see one another: but such cost is not greatlie commodious, vnlesse they might carrie their stables alwaies with them. And vppon the backside of euerie such poste or partition, would be set a pin of wood, to hang thereon euerie horses bridle seuerallie by it selfe: and on the inside of euerie poste, there would be two peeces of whipcorde, of conuenient length, fast wedged in at such length as may serue to stay ech cheeke of the bit,

bit, whiles the horſe ſtandeth with his taile toward the manger, champing on the bridle to get him a ſtomach, whereof wee ſhall ſpeake hereafter in his proper place. Moreouer there would be ſet in places conuenient, pinnes, hookes, and ſhelues, meete to hang or lay vp ſuch inſtruments, as are to be occupied in the ſtable, about the curriēng, rubbing, or trimming the horſes, or otherwiſe. Alſo nigh vnto the ſtable would be the horſekeepers chamber, in the which, or elſe in ſome other cloſe roome, cut out of the ſtable of purpoſe, would be placed tubs or hutches, meet to receiue the prouender. And alſo cloſe preſſes for the ſaddels, harneſſes, guirtes, ſtirrops, or bits, to be kept cleane from duſt and moulding: and finallie, to auoid all danger of fire and candle, I would wiſh all ſtables to be vaulted as they be in Italie: if not, that the plates wherein the candles ſhould ſtand, be ſtrong and broad foted, meet to receiue all ſparkes or droppings, and therewith to be placed where they may giue moſt light, with leaſt danger. Thus much touching the ſituating and building of the ſtable: nowe let vs ſhewe you how the ſame ſhould be vſed and kept. Vigetius ſaith, that ſtables in winter ſeaſon, would rather be kept luke warme, then verie hot. For although, ſaith he, that aboundance of heate cauſeth the horſes to bee fat, and full, yet it maketh rawe digeſtion, & greatlie hurteth nature, becauſe that many kindes of diſeaſes are ingendred in the breaſt, of the verie vapour that riſeth out of the ſtable: and being vſed to ſuch warmth within doores, when they come abroad, they eaſilie ſurfet of euerie little colde. And in anie caſe, Xenophon would haue the ſtable to be kept cleane, & neate, aſwel when the horſes are preſent, as abſent, which (as he ſaith) doth not only pleaſe the eie, & commend the diligence of the keepers, but alſo preſerueth and increaſeth the health of the horſes, by means that the filthie and ſtincking ſauours be remoued from thence, whereby not onelie the horſes breath, but alſo the aire it ſelfe is infected and corrupted, whereof may ſpring a further miſchiefe. Moreouer, the ſame Xenophon would haue all inſtrumentes belonging to the ſtable, to be placed orderly euery one in his proper place, that they may be readie to finde, and ſo as they may touch no fode, whereof the horſes haue to eate, nor that the horſes themſelues may reach them, to bite or gnawe on them, as ſome wanton horſes will, for

that

that is not wholesome: and therefore I cannot praise such keepers, as vse most commonlie to hang their currieng combe in the rack among the horses meate, and in his sight and smell, or to leaue their dusking cloth in the manger. Xenophon also would haue no keeper in the night season to bring anie candle into the stable with out a lanterne, willing him to be carefull thereof, for hay & strawe will soone take fire. Also that he keep the stable doore alwaies shut for two principall causes, the one is, to the intent that the horse be not beguiled of his meat: and the other is, that he may know whether the horse doe eate or spoile that meate which is giuen him or not. For as Xenophon saith, there bee two principall signes to knowe a horses health, the one within the stable, and that is, when the horse eateth his meate greedilie, and with a good appetite, the other abroad, and that is, by the moistnesse and white foaming of his mouth.

Of the Horses meate and drinke, and of the diuers kindes thereof, and how he should be dieted when he resteth. Chap. xiiii.

THe second thing not naturall, whereby the bodie of the horse is preserued and nourished, is his meat & drinke touching the which, manie things are to be considered as the kinds and substances of meat, and which be best the quantitie, the qualitie thereof, and the delight and custome of the horse, the order and time of the day in giuing him his meate, also the time of the yeare, and the horses age. The most naturall kindes of meates, wherewith Horses ought to bee fedde, according to Rusius, are these: grasse, haie, strawe, barlie, and Oates: some adde thereunto wheate and fitches, and also blended corne. Grasse is verie nourishing, but therewith too moist to bee giuen vnto horses of seruice, vnlesse it be when they haue néede to bee scoured or be fallen into some sickenesse: sweet haie also is a great nourisher, and dilateth the body. But if a horse be continually fed therewith, it will make him side bellied, foggie, pursie, and beanie in his labour: strawe is a drier kinde of fode, and though it nourisheth not so much as haie, yet it breedeth firme flesh, and maketh the horse long breathed, hard, and strong. For which cause, they

they vſe in moſt places beyond the ſeas, to feed their horſes chiefelie with ſheaues of wheate ſtraiwe vnthreſhed, the eares onelie cut off, which our Calice men alſo vſed, calling that kinde of food Garbage, and for prouender alſo they gaue their horſes chopt ſtraiwe mingled with a few otes, for the which they had a fit inſtrumente of purpoſe to cut their ſtraiwe ſhort for the nonce, with which kinde of diet they made their horſes ſo harde of warde, ſo luſtie, ſtrong, and liuelie withall, as was a pleaſure to behold them. Barlie is colde and drie, yet according to Camerarius, it nouriſheth more than Otes, and being leſſe rawe ingendereth finer bloud, and it is the chiefe prouender that is vſed in Italie: notwithſtanding, wee dare not vſe it here in England, for it hurteth our Horſes, and maketh their ſtale to looke red like bloud. I thinke the reaſon is, becauſe that our barlie is not ſo firme a graine as theirs, nor ſo drie for the which cauſe, I beleeue that no good mault can bee made of their barlie, like as of ours, for that it will not ſwell in the water as ours doeth, and ſpeciallie that which they call Spelta which is a verie drie graine, long and ſlender. Otes according to Galene, vſed as a medicine, doth refrigerate, but as nutriment it warmeth ſufficientlie: notwithſtanding, it nouriſheth but ſlenderlie, becauſe it is a verie light graine and of ſmall ſubſtance, or ſtrength: and yet I take it to be the moſt kindelie prouender that may be giuen continuallie vnto Horſes here in Englande, and ſpeciallie the blacke otes when they are well dried, and mingled with chop ſtraiwe as is before ſaid. Wheate is a great nouriſher, and is much commended of manie Authours, to be verie good for horſes being well dried, but it is too coſtlie a prouender to be vſed here in England. Notwithſtanding, when king Phillip came into this realme, the Spaniardes did vſe it muche, and gaue their Jennets almoſt none other prouender, whereat the artificers and other plaine people in London that knewe it grudged verie ſore, and the rather, for that there was at that time a great dearth of corne. Some againe vſe to giue their Horſes blended corne, as peaſe, fitches, beanes, and wheate bran mingled all together, which no doubt doth nouriſh verie muche: but I take it to bee a purſie and windie meate, vnleſſe the branne doeth ſomewhat correct it. Neither can I greatlie praiſe our Engliſh horſebread, and eſpe-

ciallie

ciallie, being so vnwholesomely made as it is now adaies, and of such filthie and daskie sluske. For a Horses prouender ought to bee sweete, cleane, pure and without all dust and filthe: and likewise his haie or strawe that he feedeth on must be sweete, and sauourie, and not fotlie: for otherwise, it will not ingender good blood, but fill him verie full of diseases: thus muche of the kindes of meates, and which be beste. The qualitie of the horses meate, as whether it be hot, drie, cold, or moist, is most chieflie to be considered, when the horse is sicke, to the intent he may bee fed with that meate, which shall be most meete for his sickenesse, whereof wee shall speake heereafter, in the dieting of sicke horses. But as touching the quantitie and order to be obserued in giuing a horse his meate, being in health: you shall vnderstand, that diuers men be of diuers opinions, but more for the order than for the quantitie. For to saie the truth, the quantitie cannot be certeinelie determined, sith euerie horse is not of like stomach or appetite in feeding, for so that he hath meate enough, it maketh no matter: and there is lesse danger, in giuing a horse too much than too little, and speciallie of haie, strawe, or garbage, for prouender is to be measured according to his labour, rest or exercise. For if he rest, and be not greatlie exercised or laboured, a verie little prouender will serue: but if his labour and exercise be great, then he had néed to haue the greater allowance, to the intent he may be in good luck, that is to say, neither too fat nor too leane: for as fatnes ingendreth euill humors, so leannes diminisheth the horses strength and maketh him to seeme foule and ill fauoured to the eie. Camerarius thinketh it a sufficient quantitie, to giue a horse halfe a peck of otes or barly at once for his prouender, or asmuch as a man can easilie take vp at six times with both his hands togither. And as touching the order of seruing a horse, the said Camerarius saith, that he ought to haue no haie giuen him in the morning, but only that prouender which you doe accustomably allow him, and after he hath eaten that, let there be giuen about the third hower of the day, a bottle of haie, which when he hath eaten, let him be watered, and that will be about the ninth hower of the day, and then cast him another bottle of haie, and within three hours after, which shall be about xii. of the clock, giue him for his nonmeale the like quantitie of prouender,

129

that you gaue him in the morning, then about two or three of the clocke giue him another bottle of haie, which assoone as hee hath eaten, let him drink, then in the Euening giue him his night prouender, with somewhat larger measure then hee had either in the morning, or at noone. But before the horse smell the prouender, offer him cleare water to drinke, least he be thirstie: and if hee be watered abroad, his prouender being first well sifted and cleansed of all his filthes, would against his comming be laid readie in the manger, which also must bee so cleane swept as is possible. Thus you see that Camerarius would haue a horse to be serued with prouender thrise a daie: and yet it appeareth, as he saieth, by Xenophons wordes, that in olde time they gaue their horses prouender but twise a daie. The Turkes againe at this present, doe vse to giue their horses prouender but once a daie, and that at night, alowing to euerie horse at that once, as muche as others doe at thrise, and all the daie besides, they feede him with strawe, and giue him no haie, but onelie after water, and then they giue him an handfull or two to fauour his mouth. But according to Vegetius, it is much better to giue a horse his prouender by little and little, then all at once: whose wordes are in this sorte. It is not good to giue a horse his prouender all at once, or at twise, but rather by manie portions. For when he taketh it by little and little, he doeth throughlie digest it: but when he eateth it all at once, and greedilie, it passeth whole and vndigested through his bellie. And as Vegetius would haue the prouender to be giuen him by manie portions: euen so doe I wish also, that the haie, strawe or garbage, whereof the horse feedeth all the daie, be giuen him by little and little euen as he doeth spend it, and not to be laid before him all at once, for that will loath him, and take away his appetite: neither would I wish him to be fedde all the daie long, but rather from noonetide, vntill it be three of the clocke in the after noone, to bee brideled, and to stand champing thereon, with his taile turned towarde the manger. For which purpose, there would be two little cordes fastened to the two postes of partition, to stoie his head on both sides, according as I shewed you before, and that shall make him haue a good stomach to his meate, and also to haue a pleasure in his bit. Manie horses, after they haue drunke and eaten their

prouen-

prouender, will fall to pulling out of their litter from vnder the manger, and eate thereon, which the keeper maie not suffer, for it is verie hurtfull and vnwholesome: for the cleaner that the Horse feedeth, the lesse corruption shall breede in him: and therefore, as I said before, whatsoeuer meat you giue him, let it be first cleansed of all dust and filth. The custome also and delight of the horse, the time of the yeere, and his age, are (as I said before) things meet to bee considered, first the custome and the delight of the Horse, to the intent he bee fed with that foode, whereunto hee hath beene most accustomed, and hath most delight in, for that will soonest digest, though perhaps it be not so good. And if you would breake him from anie such custome, see that you doe it by little and little, and not violentlie, because nature abhorreth all sudden changes. Secondlie, the time of the yeere: for anie beast will eate more in winter than in Summer, by reason of his inward heat. Againe, in the spring time, or at the fall of the leafe, Horses would bee fed for certaine daies with grasse, to scowre them, and to make them cleane within, whereof wee shall talke hereafter in his proper place. Moreouer, as Rusius saith, horses that stand in the stable, would be housed in Summer season with cannas to defend the flies, and in Winter with a thicke woollen housing cloth, to keepe them warme, which some againe doe not allow, saieng that it maketh a horse too tender, & therefore would haue them to be housed with light cannas all the yeere long, which is necessarie for two causes, the one to keepe their coates cleane from dust and raieng, and also from the stinging of flies in Summer season: and such housing clothes of cannas, would be made to couer not onelie the bodie, but also the necke and head. Finallie, the horses age is also to be considered, to the intent hee may be fed with such meate as is most agreeable to the same: for whilest a horse is yoong and growing, he would be fed either with grasse or haie, and not with strawe, and such hard and drie meate, for feare of hindering his growth. Againe, in his olde age, he had nede to bee fedde with meate, because his teeth perhaps will faile him, so as he shall not be able to chawe his meate, if it be ouer hard, and then hee cannot continue, but will soone pine awaie and die.

what water is good for a horſe to drinke, and whether it be good to waſh a horſe or not. Chap. xvi.

HItherto we haue talked onelie of the horſes meate, now let vs ſpeake ſomewhat of his drinke. The authours doe not altogether agrée, touching the water whereof a horſe ſhould drinke: for Vegetius would haue it to be verie cleare and cold, alwaies ſpringing and running, but not ouer ſwift. But Ariſtotle ſaith, that a horſe delighteth rather to drinke of that water which is ſomewhat troubled and thicke, inſomuch as if it bee too cleare, he will not drinke thereof, vntill he hath ſtirred, or troubled it with his foote. Ruſius alſo ſaith, that the water would bee ſomewhat brackiſh, or ſalt, or at the leaſt ſomewhat thicke, and therewith little or nothing at all: for ſuch waters (as he ſaith) being warme and fattie, doe nouriſh a great deale more than thoſe that be colde, and doe run ſwiftlie. Notwithſtanding, in Summer ſeaſon, when the weather is hot, ſuch colde waters maie be verie well ſuffered, and ſpeciallie if the horſe bee vſed thereunto, whoſe vſe and cuſtome is chieflie to bee conſidered at all times, and in anie caſe beware of ſulpherie waters, ſuch as be at Stokwie in Cambridgeſhire, and diuerſe other places of this realme: for manie horſes haue taken their bane by drinking of thoſe waters. But becauſe a horſe cannot be fat, vnles he drink abundantlie, it is very neceſſary (as Ruſsius ſaith) ſomtime to rub the inſide of his mouth with ſalt dip in wine, and that ſhall make him both to drinke, and alſo to eate with the more greédie apetite. For though a horſe (as Ariſtotle ſaith) delighteth much to drinke, yet he is able to abſtaine from drinke foure daies. Petrus Creſſentius would haue a horſe, when hee ſhoulde drinke, aſwell in the Morning, as in the Euening, to bee led faire and ſoftlie to the water, and not to be gallopped, either to or fro, (as the ſhrewd boyes and lackies ſo well in France, as elſewhere moſt commonlie vſe to doe) for feare of hurting his winde. Notwithſtanding, dailie after water it is good moderatelie to chaſe him vp and downe, or otherwiſe to ſtirre him in the ſtable to warme the water in his bellie. Moreouer, the ſame Authour would haue a horſe to ſtand ſomtime in the water vp to the knees, the ſpace of two or three houres togither, whether the water be freſhe or ſalt. For the freſhe water

ſaith

ſaith he, with hir coldneſſe, and alſo the ſalt with his drineſſe doth let the humors from deſcending into the horſes legs, & to preſerue him from manie greeſes. But if the horſe be leane and in pouertie, let not the water come to his bellie, for if the water ouermuch coole his bellie, he ſhall not feele that his meat doth him any good. But it is good for fat horſes, to ſtand oftentimes vp to the harde bellie, for it will abate their fat, and keep them in a ſound and in a meane eſtate. Moreouer, the ſame Petrus Creſcentius would not haue a Horſe brought againe into the ſtable after he hath drunke vntill his legs be throughlie wiped and well dried, affirming that the vapors of the ſtable in moiſt legges do ingender the cratches, windgalles, and ſuch euill ſorances. Some Authours againe, as Vigerius, Camerarius, and Xenophon, would haue a Horſe to wet his feet as little as is poſſible, for feare of ſoftning his hoofes, vnleſſe it be to eaſe ſome greefe he hath in his legges, whereof we ſhall ſpeake hereafter. Moreouer, Camerarius thinketh it a great deale better for Horſes to be watered abroade, than in the ſtable, vnleſſe ſome great neceſſitie doe otherwiſe require, and then hee exhorteth the keeper to be carefull, that the water which he offereth vnto his horſe be ſweete and pure, without anie moates or ſtrawes: and whenſoeuer his horſe hath laboured and is hotte, he woulde not haue him to drinke, vntill he hath ſtaled, and bee throwlie dried of his ſweate. Nowe, as touching the waſhing of horſes, moſt Authours allowe it in Summer ſeaſon, wiſhing fatte and luſtie horſes ſometimes to be ridden or driuen into ſome running ſtreame, euen ouer the backe, which in the hot dates is marueilous good to refreſh them, ſo that they were not trauelled, nor ſweate not before: for that were verie daungerous, and ſpeciallie if they ſhould take colde vpon it: but in Winter ſeaſon, Horſes woulde be waſhed verie ſeldome, but neuer after labour, vnleſſe it bee with a little wine or beere boiled with butter, or elſe with warme diſhwater, to ſupple their legges, and to comfort the ſinewes of the ſame. Yet it is a common thing here amongeſt vs in England, to waſh our Horſes after their labour in Winter ſeaſon, if they be verie fowle: and ſpeciallie, if we chance vpon a pit meete for the purpoſe at our iournies ende, not regarding whether our horſes ſweate or not, which vſe marreth manie a good Gelding,

and maketh them lame and ſtiffe in ſhort ſpace.

Of the diuers kinds of mouing and reſt belonging to a horſe, wherin is declared how, where, and when a horſe ſhould be curried, kempt, and trimmed: alſo how his keeper ſhould approch vnto him, and whether it be good to curtaile horſes or not. Chap xvii.

OF mouing belonging to a horſe, there be three kindes, that is, currieng, exerciſe, and labour. And firſt as touching the currieng of a horſe, if it were meet and requiſite to be ſo curious, I could make as manie differences thereof, as the Phiſicians do of friction, and rubbing belonging to a mans bodie, which in all be ſixe, that is to ſaie, harde to bind the fleſh and muſcles, ſoft to looſen, much to extenuate, meane to increaſe, rough or ſharp to draw humors of the outward parts, and gentle or ſoft to retaine the ſame in the members. But for ſomuchas horſes for the moſt part take more hurt by the lack than by ſuperfluitie of curyieng, I will onelie make three differences, that is, hard, meane, and ſoft, and that alſo according to the places of the horſes bodie. For whereas it is thickeſt of ſkinne, haire and fleſh, there I would haue him to be hardeſt curried, as his necke, and bottocks. But his back and ſides, flanks, bellie, and thighes, with a moderate hand. And as for the ridge of his backe, it would neuer be touched with combe, but onelie with the hande, and the bare parte of his bellie next vnto his coddes, woulde bee curried marueilouſlie ſoftlie, or rather not at all, but onelie rubbed faire and ſoftlie with a whiſpe or cloth. Moreouer, ſome horſes are thicker coted than others, and therefore ſhift of combes are neceſſarie, whoſe teeth would be filed of purpoſe, ſharpe or blunt, deepe, or ſhallowe, not onelie to ſerue diuers cotes, but alſo the diuers parts of the bodie before rehearſed. But to the intent the keeper may be ignorant in nothing, it ſhall not greeue mee heere to rehearſe, both the time and order of currieng of a horſe, preſcribed by Xenophon an ancient writer, and a noble Gentleman in his booke de re equeſtri, and alſo by Camerarius his interpretor, and a later writer of the ſame matter. A horſe then, ſaith Camerarius, would be curried, and haue his maine and taile kempt with a wet combe both euening and morning before he be watered, and that

not

not in the ſtable, but without, in ſome drie inner court paued with round ſtone, entrie or porch, meet for that purpoſe, and ſpeciallie in faire weather, when it raineth not, ſo ſhall the keeper ſee better to trim him, and to ridde him of all filth. And in old time, when a horſe was brought forth to be curried, hee was not bridled with anie bit, but onlie had a headſtraine put on his head, which did reſtraine him from biting without hindering his breath, whereby he was tied vnto a ring faſtened in ſome wall or poſt of purpoſe, either ſhort or long, according as his good or ſhrewd demeanor required. And to the intent the keeper may haue the more ſure acceſſe to anie horſe that he dreſſeth, Xenophon doth counſell him neuer to come behind him, nor yet before him, but alwaies on his ſide, and to ſtand cloſe vnto him, ſo ſhall he bee cleane out of danger: and when he commeth to currie him, he would haue him to begin firſt with his vpper partes, as with his necke, and then with his ſides, belly, buttocks, and thighs orderly: becauſe it were in vaine, (ſaith hee) to make cleane the neather parts, the vpper parts being ſtill fowle, for ſo the nether partes muſt be twiſe dreſſed: but he maie not once touch the ridge of his backe with anie combe, but with his hand or cloth, ſtroking him alongeſt the haire faire and ſoftlie, and then to brush out all the duſt of his cote with a cloth of rough canuas or haire, as they commōly do vſe at this preſent, in ſtead whereof they vſed in old time a little ſhort ſword made of thin lath, wherewith they beate the duſt out of his coate. Some againe had rubbers for that purpoſe, made of the barke of date trees, wherewith they made their coates ſo ſlike, as they did ſhine. But his head being bonie, may not bee touched with anie combe: but onelie waſhed with faire water, or elſe rubbed with a drie cloth: neither would the bare part of his bellie be kempt. His legges alſo from his knees downward would not be kempt, but rubbed with a cloth or whiſpe of drie ſtrawe. Neither would Xenophon haue a horſes legges or thighes to bee waſhed, as ſome vſe to do, for feare of ſoftning his bones. But as for his maine, forretop, and taile, he would haue them to be kempt with a wette combe, and that ſhall make them grow, which is verie neceſſarie: for though his forretop be long, yet it can neuer hinder his ſight: yea, rather it defends his eies from all noiſome thinges. It is alſo

requiſite, that his maine be of a reaſonable length: for beſides the comelineſſe or beautie thereof to the ſhew, it is alſo a good helpe to the rider, whenſoeuer he will take his backe: and as for his taile, the longer it be, hee ſhall the better defend himſelfe therewithin ſummer ſeaſon from the flies. And therefore Camerarius doth not a little maruell at thoſe which vſe to curtaile their Horſes, and to ſheare their main vpon euerie light occaſion, as perhaps, becauſe the haire falleth awaie, or that they be ſwing tailed, & ſéek not rather to remedie ſuch faults otherwiſe, & to preſerue thereby the naturall beautie of the horſe, without the which, he is not only fowle to the eie, but alſo infamous. And though ſome hold opinion, that ſuch curtailing maketh the Horſes backe the ſtronger, without alleging anie great reaſon whie, yet ſuch ſtrength doth not counteruaile the great deformitie and infamie: which to auoide the Italians will finde the meanes, if they hap vpon a curtaile, to decke him with a fained taile of horſe haire, and that ſo cunninglie, as it cannot be ſeene. Yet heere and in France, it is no ſhame at all to ride vpon a curtaile, ſo much hath cuſtome preuailed againſt nature. There be ſome kéepers alſo that delight muche to winde vp their horſes foretops in a lace of diuers colours, which Camerarius doeth not allowe, affirming it rather to bee a deformitie than anie beautie to the Horſe. And if they doe it to the intent, the horſe ſhould ſée the better, they be reproued by Xenophon, which ſaith, as you haue heard before, that the foretop doeth not trouble the Horſes ſight at all. Notwithſtanding, it is a comelie thing to kéepe both that and his main at a reaſonable length, by pulling it from time to time, as néede ſhall require. And to make it lie ſmooth and euen, it is verie neceſſarie to kembe it with a wette combe: yea, and perhappes ſometime alſo to braid it. But a cleanlie Horſekéeper alſo muſt not bee without his ſheares, as well to ſheare awaie the haire of his necke behind his eares, where the headſtall ſhould lie, about the breadth of thrée fingers onelie, and no more, without diminiſhing anie parte of his foretop (for that were vnſeemelie) as alſo to ſheare the inſide of his eares in Summer ſeaſon: for in Winter, ſome thinke it were better to let the haire growe to defend the colde from entering into his head. Thus much of the curieng

and

and trimming of a horse, wherewith Columella saith hee is much delighted, and it doth him as much good as his meate, which thing the Italians & Spaniards do verie well consider, for their Horsekéepers doe neuer lie from their horses heeles, neither must they be absent an halfe houre in a daie, but must be alwaies at hand, readie to wipe awaie euerie mote that falleth, whereby their Horses coates are kept so cleane, as if ye rub on them with a velvet coat, no dust will cleaue thereunto. But now let vs speake somewhat of the exercise, labour and rest of a horse.

Of exercise both moderate and vnmoderate, and of the effects thereof. Chap. xviii.

EXercise rightly vsed doth greatly preserue the health of the horse, by increasing his naturall heate, which strengthneth his instrumẽtall members, & maketh them the more able, both to draw, & also to digest that nutriment, wherewith the horse is fed and nourished: euen so, if hee be peruerslie vsed, it maie greatlie decaie his health. That exercise may be rightly applied, two thinges are néedefull to be considered, that is, time and measure. For sith that moderate exercise (as I said before) helpeth digestion, it is onelie to bee vsed in the morning or euening, when the horse is emptie. For if he bee exercised vpon a full stomacke, it will cause him to digest his meate sooner than nature requireth, which is a raine digestion, and neuer brédeth good blood, but filleth the bodie full of humors. Measure also is much to be regarded in exercise, for otherwise it may quickly growe to an extreame labour, & therefore exercise would be continued not longer, than vntill such time as the horse beginneth to sweat. For if he sweat vntill he drop, it is a signe of extenuation, and therefore it is good to leaue off somewhat before, so shall it not weaken him, but doe him much good, and strengthen all the parts of his bodie, after which exercise, see that he be well walked, rubbed and trimmed, and that he drinke not, vntill hee be throughlie cold. Thus much of moderate exercise, which the oftner it be vsed, the more healthfull and the stronger shall the horse be. But labour and trauell is of another qualitie, decaieng rather than encreasing a horses strength, as when a horse is iourned, or serueth

in the field, or runneth at the ring, tilt, and tornie: yea, and when he is firſt broken or ſcholed, it is a great labour vnto him: & no exerciſe at all. Notwithſtanding, if time and meaſure be obſerued in theſe labors or trauels, the horſe ſhall continue the longer, and I ſée no cauſe why, but that they ought and maie be verie well obſerued, in all kind of trauell, vnleſſe it be, when the horſe ſerueth in the field, for there, neither time, nor meaſure certaine, can be appointed: yea, there it ſuffiſeth that they be well meated, which many times is not to be had, albeit an old beaten ſoldiour will fauour his horſe, & ſhift better for him, and make him to continue in courage, a great deale longer than the negligent & careleſſe yong ſouldiors moſt commonlie doe, which for the moſt parte, take ſo much of their horſes when no néede is, as when néede in déede requireth, their horſes are able to doe nothing. And yet theſe, whileſt they ſerue in the field, ſéeme to be more excuſable, than thoſe that being quiet at home, when they run at the ring for their pleaſure, will not let, euen in the verie heat of the daie, to giue their horſes eight or nine courſes, one after an other, where as foure or fiue were ſufficient for one day, & thoſe alſo would be giuen with ſom pauſe betwixt, and that verie earlie in the morning, when the horſes be emptie, or in ſome other cold time of the day, ſo ſhall their health & breath be beſt preſerued, & their mouthes not diſtempered. Likewiſe the rider when he breaketh a yong horſe, muſt haue an eſpeciall regard to time & meaſure, & throughly conſider the diſpoſition, qualitie, & ſtrength of the colt, to the intent he trauell him not aboue his force. But to vſe time and meaſure in this caſe, requireth not only a good diſcretion, but alſo a marueilous patience, for lacke whereof manie riders, whileſt they ſéeke to teach their horſes much at once, they make them ſo dull, beaſtie, and faint harted, as they learn nothing at all: yea, and many times by ouermuch raſhnes they make them alſo ſtark lame & crooked. Wherefore I wiſh that all riders lacking patience, hadde that patience which I knowe to be in my verie good friend M. Aſhley, Maiſter of the Iewel houſe, which his patience, if it had not beene verie great in déede, he could neuer haue brought ſome of his horſes to that perfection, whereunto they now are come. Thus farre of ſuch labors and trauels, as moſt commonlie do ſéeme to be but moderate

rake exercises, and yet in déed as I said before, be no lesse labours then iourneing is, whereof I purpose now to speake.

How a Horse should be prepared against he be iournied, and how to make him to receiue the bridle, and also how the keeper should lead him when he doeth bring him forth, and finallie how he should be ded and dicted whilest he is iournied. Chap. xix.

BAt first it is méet that I declare vnto you, the precepts giuen by Xenophon, Camerarius, and Laurentius Rusius, and diuers other authors, touching the preparing of the horse that is to be iournied. First then see that hee be well shod, that is to say, with shoes that be neither too short nor too long, but méete and answerable to his houes. And as Rusius saith, the lighter and straiter the shoes be the better, for the lighter they be, the easier shall the horse lift vp his féet: and the narrower that they be in compasse, the greater and stronger will his houes be, so that they be not ouerstrait, for then they wil pinch his fæt, and cause him to trauell with paine. But as touching shoes, and the order of shoing, we shal speak thereof at large in the end of the Ferrers office, whereas you shall see the shapes of all maner of shoes set forth in figures. Your horse then being well shod, sée that his saddle be méete to his backe, that is to say, neither too wide nor too straight, for if it be too wide, it will shogge vpp and downe and so hurt his backe, neyther can the Rider haue anie steddie seate therein. Againe, if it be too straight, it will presse his backe and gall him, wherefore sée that the panell be well stuffed, and that the saddle stand steddilie on his back, hauing no occasion to grieue him, nor to gall him anie maner of way, and in Summer season let his saddle be so light as may be, for a heauie saddle by keeping his backe too hot, may cause dissolution of humors, aswell in his withers as in other partes of his backe, whereof may spring diuers great sorances, to the vtter vndoing of the Horse. Moreouer, sée that the Girtes bee sure and strong, and that the buckles and tongues thereof bee whole and sounde, and also the thongs whole and fast nailed, where vnto they should be buckled. And when you girde your Horse girde him forewarde and not backwarde towards the flancke, for that will make his bellie and sides

ſides to ſwell, and grieue the horſe in his guttes, by meanes that the winde is incloſed in a narrower rome than it was before, and pent in, ſo as it cannot eaſilie get out. A diligent horſekæper will alſo ſée, that the ſtirrops and ſtirrop leathers, the paitrill and crowper, with all kind of other harneſſe be ſtrong and ſure, and therewith cleane and neate, and that euerie horſe haue his owne bridle, therewith he is accuſtomed to bee ridden, and that none of them lacke either kirble, or kirble hooke, or any other thinge belonging to the bit, headſtall, or raines. And when the horſekæper commeth to bridle anie horſe, Xenophon woulde haue him obſerue this order. Firſt that he come on the left ſide of the Horſe, holding the headſtall togither with the raines in his left hand, and after that hee hath put the raines of the Bridle ouer the Horſes head with his right hand, euen vp to the pointes of his ſhoulders or withers, then let him ſhift the headſtall into his right hand, and put the bit into his mouth with the left hande, which if the horſe will not readilie take, let him not force his mouth with the bit, by rubbing his gummes therewith (as ſome doe) for that will make him to abhorre the bit ſo much the more: but rather that hee cauſe him to open his mouth, by thruſting in his thumb into the hinder part of his mouth, and if that will not ſerue, then with his thumbe let him preſſe downe his neather lippe vpon the neather tuſh, and that for the moſt parte will make anie horſe to open his mouth. And ſée that the bit by ſtanding too high in his mouth, preſſe not his wickes (for that will breed cornie fleſh, and make him harde mouthed:) nor againe by hanging too low, giue the Horſe libertie to take it betwixt his teeth at his pleaſure, and ſo not ſuffer to be ruled, but as he liſt himſelfe. Xenophon and all other ancient writers, do vtterlie reiect that horſe as vnprofitable, that will not ſuffer to be eaſilie brideled, and therefore doe counſell euery man, when he buieth a horſe readie broken, to proone firſt, whether hee will be eaſilie brideled or not, otherwiſe not to buie him. And to the intent that a horſe may willinglie receiue the bridle, they write that it is verie good to vſe to bridle him, a little before you giue him his prouender, and then to pull it off againe, ſo ſhall hee not refuſe it, when you would put it on to labour him. The horſe then being thus made readie, let him ſtand with his taile turned

towards

towardes the maunger, and champe on the bridle being faſt tied with the two cordes, vnto the two poſtes, (as is aforeſaide.) vntill his rider or maiſter be readie to take his backe: ſo ſhall hee not ſtriue to pull anie hate out of the racke, or to rubbe againſt anie thing, or to foile his ſaddle or harneſſe. And when you bring him forth, Xenophon would not haue you to leade him behinde you at the length of his raines end, for that will giue him too much libertie to play his vagarie, but rather to take him eyther by the ſide of his headſtall, a little aboue the portſmouth, or elſe to hold both the raines faſt togither, hard to the cheekes of the bridle, keeping your ſelfe alwaies cloſe to the horſe ſide, ſo ſhall he be able to hurt you no maner of way, nor any other horſe that ſtandeth by, but that you may guide him as you will your ſelfe, by keeping cloſe to him, & going round about with him. And when his rider or maiſter commeth to take his backe, let him come vnto him quietlie, and after a gentle ſort and not raſhlie, to the intent the horſe may more willinglie receiue him: and when he mounteth let him take the raines in his left hand, holding them ſo ſlacke, as that neither in his going vp, nor when he is vp, he ſtraine or pinch the horſes mouth with the bitts. Xenophon would haue a ſouldiour to vſe ſometime to take his horſes backe on the right ſide, to the intent he be readie on euerie ſide, when neede ſhall require: then being mounted, let him not ſtirre his horſe, but ſettle himſelfe and his clothes about him, and make his raines iuſt and euen, that done, he may giue him a turne or two on eche hand, and ſo proceed faire and ſoftlie on his tourney, and ſpeciallie at his firſt ſetting forth, vntill his horſe be throughly breathed, and then hee may cauſe him to amend his pace without danger, but ſo it be neither too ſwifte nor too ſlowe, but in a meane, to the intent hee maie continue in the ſame: which is much better for the horſe to doe, than ſometime to go ſwiftlie, ſometime ſlowlie, ſometime to runne or gallop, and ſometime to ſtand ſtill, by meanes whereof, more horſes are ſurfeited and cleane deſtroied heere in England (I beleeue) than in anie other countrie. Againe, our men will not ſticke to ride forty, fiftie, three ſcore miles a daie, wherewith it is impoſſible for anie Horſe or Gelding to continue anie long time. But the diſcreete Italian thinkes it ſufficient to ride fiue and twentie, or thirtie

mil es

miles in a daie at the moſt, and that they doe moſt commonlie without making anie baite, neither do they willinglie labor their horſes in the great heat of Summer, nor yet in the extreame cold of Winter, which Ruſtius alſo forbiddeth, rendring the cauſe why in this ſort. A horſe (ſaith hee) would not be ſore labored, from the middeſt of Julie, vnto the end of Auguſt, becauſe that ouermuch heat and labour will inwardlie drie vp his moiſture, and waſt his bodie anon. And therewith in ſuch time the horſe (as hee ſaith) would rather be kept in colde or moiſt places, & be fed with graſſe, or elſe with ſweete new haie, then to bee laboured. Againe, a horſe would not be laboured in the heart of winter, as in December or Januarie, for feare of taking cold after ſweat, which then is ſone done. Moreouer, the ſame Ruſtius ſaith, that riding late in the euening, doeth hurt a horſe verie much: becauſe that not onelie through great labour he maie ſweate ſo much, as he cannot be drie in a conuenient time, and ſo as hee may be ſoftlie watered, and haue his prouender giuen him in due ſeaſon, but alſo ſurfet of cold, by meanes of the cold aire of the night immediatlie following vpon his ſweate, for the aire of the night is farre colder than the aire of the daie. And therefore for all reſpectes, he doeth allowe the Morning to bee the beſt time of the daie to trauell in. And whileſt I talke heere of trauelling by the waie, I thinke it good to tell you of a verie good cuſtome which the Italians vſe, and that is this. Betwixt whiles, when they come to anie faire ſoft greene plotte by the high waie ſide, they prouoke their horſes with their voices, & whiſtling to ſtale, & otherwiſe to eaſe themſelues, which is a great refreſhing to the horſe, and the cauſe why they chooſe out ſuch a ſoft & graſſie plot is, to the intent that the horſes ſtale ſhould not ſprinkle vp vpon his legges, and ſcalde off the haire, which is very hurtfull to the horſe, and yet little regarded of manie of our countrimen, which doe vtterlie omit to prouoke their horſes to ſtale in anie ſuch place: yea, manie times they will ſcant ſtand ſtill or ſuffer their horſes to ſtale, when they would doe it of their owne accord. It is a great refreſhing alſo to a horſe in Summer ſeaſon, when you paſſe by ſome water, méete for the purpoſe, to be ridden in almoſt vp to the bellie, and ſo out againe, and whenſoeuer you let him drinke by the way, waſh his mouth well firſt, and let him ſtand

in

in the water aboue the knées, for to ſtand ſhold or ſhallowe, (and ſpeciallie if hee be hot) is the next waie to founder him: and when you come at your Inne, if your Horſe be anie thing hot, ſée that you giue him neither meate nor drinke, vntill he be well cooled, which Ruſsius would haue to be done, by walking him vp and downe faire and ſoftlie: during which time, hee would alſo haue him to be couered with ſome warme cloth, for taking of cold. Notwithſtanding, the French men do ſeldome vſe to walke their horſes, and ſpeciallie in the colde aire, but rather doe ſet them vp by and by in the ſtable without meate, couering them with ſome warme blanket or couerlet, and ſeeke to coole them by continuall rubbing and trimming of them, wherein the Hoſtilers of France bee verie painefull and diligent, and will doe more for a French penie, than one of our men will doe for an Engliſh groate, and in Summer ſeaſon, they will cleane take off his ſaddle, and couer him onely with a little freſhe ſtrawe, caſting a light blanket ouer the ſame, girte with a ſurcingle, which doeth refreſhe the Horſe marueilouſlie. And though in winter ſeaſon, it be not good to take the ſaddle cleane awaie for anie long time: yet it is verie good to take it away whileſt his backe be rubbed with freſh ſtraw alongſt the haire, and to ſtrowe a little thereof vppon his backe, and then immediatly to ſet the ſaddle on againe. For the freſhe ſtrawe ſhall both bite his backe, and alſo the pannell of the ſaddle. I ſhall not néede heere to put your horſekéeper in remembrance, to ſée that euerie thing about the horſe bee made cleane orderlie, while he is a dreſſing, ſith euerie Hoſtiler can doe that without anie teaching: but onelie to charge him that he giue him neither water nor prouender before that he be throughlie drie, but onlie a little ſwéete haie to refreſh his mouth. For (as Ruſsius ſaieth) by meanes of labour, the naturall heat of the horſe is diſperſed into the outward partes of the bodie, and ſo he is but weake and féeble within, and not able duelie to digeſt the meate which ſhould then be giuen him, and not being perfectlie digeſted, it breedeth oppilations or ſtoppings, and filleth the horſe full of corrupt humours. And if your Horſe be anie thing fainte, it is verie good (as ſome write) to giue him a ſop or two of bread in wine. Vigetius praiſeth wine and oile to be giuen him cold in Summer, and luke warme

in

in Winter: alſo his mouth and tongue to be waſhed with water and ſalt. Or let not, according to our countrie vſe: to giue him a pinte of good Malmeſie, and that ſhall comfort his heart, and all his vitall ſpirites in ſuch ſort as I haue knowne a Gelding to be ridden foure ſcore miles in one day for a wager, without anie other bait. And, to ſaie the truth, a great bait in the May time is not good, and ſpeciallie when he muſt be laboured vpon it. Wherefore I would with him to haue but a little prouender at noone, and a great deale at night, to the intent he may ſléepe wel vpon it, which ſléepe is the mother of digeſtion, neither is it good to giue him anie thing in the morning when he ſhould trauell, as ſome men vſe to doe. For the more emptie that he be in the morning, the better he ſhall labour: but in anie caſe let him be throughlie curried firſt and well dreſt: and at euerie baite, let your Horſekéeper haue a ſpeciall regarde to your Horſes backes, that their ſaddle pinch them not, and to their féete that they lacke no ſhoes nor nailes: and ſée that he empty their hoones and ſearch them well for feare of gruelling, faint, or hurt, with ſtone or other wiſe. And in ſummer ſeaſon, when the wayes be hard, it ſhall be good euerie night, after he hath cleanſed their hooues, to cram them full of cow dung, for that will both aſſwage the paine of ſurbating, and alſo make their hooues tough. Hitherto of exerciſe, labour, and trauel: now let vs ſpeake ſomewhat of reſt, which as it is verie neceſſarie ſometime to reſtore a wearied or tired horſe to his ſtrength, or whileſt a Horſe is ſcowred with graſſe, or finallie in anie other time, when either ſickneſſe or anie other occaſion ſhall require reſt: euen ſo, when a horſe is in good luſt and health, there is nothing more pernicious and hurtful to his health than reſt. And therefore as I ſaid before, the health of a horſe is onelie preſerued by good diet, and moderat exerciſe: which thinges being well obſerued, he ſhall ſeldome or neuer haue néede of the Ferrers helpe.

Of the ſleepe and watch of a Horſe, and how he ſhould be uttered. Chap xx.

SLeepe is ſo neceſſarie a thing to euerie beaſt that hath féeling or mouing, as it cannot liue without it. For ſleep cauſeth digeſtion, and therefore nouriſheth the body: and whileſt the beaſt ſleepeth, the powers animall doe take

take their reſt, without the which, they ſhould be ſone wearied, and were not able to do their office, and to continue their actions and operations, (which as I ſaid before) is to giue feeling and mooning to the beaſt. And whileſt they reſt, the powers naturall haue the more libertie to doe their office, in digeſting the meate and nouriſhing the bodie. So that ſleepe may wel be defined to be the reſt or quieting of the ſenſes, appointed by nature for the reſtoring of ſtrength. Sleepe, according to the Philoſophers, is not ingendred of ſharpe or ſubtile vapors (for thoſe doe rather hinder ſleepe than further it: but of ſweete, fattie, and groſſe vapors, eleuated from the hart to the braine, with the coldeneſſe of which braine, thoſe vapors being congealed and thickened togither, doe ſtoppe the pipes of the ſenſitiue ſpirits ſo as they cannot reſort to the inſtruments of the ſenſes, to giue feeling or mooning to the bodie, and ſo the bodie for that time is depriued of ſenſe and mooning. And according as thoſe vapors doe more or leſſe fill the pipes: ſo is the ſleepe of the beaſt more or leſſe ſound or ſure. But as touching the ſleepe of man, manie thinges are to bee conſidered, as the time, the quantitie, the order of lieng in his bed, and his dreames. Whereof ſeiue or none are needefull to be conſidered in a Horſe, becauſe the beaſt is a better obſeruer of Natures lawes than man, and will neither ſleepe more nor leſſe, nor at anie other time, than nature doth require, vnleſſe he bee ſicke. And as for the order of his lieng, Ariſtotle ſaieth, that a horſe ſleepeth as much ſtanding as lieng. Notwithſtanding, as that Horſe which ſeldome or neuer lieth, is not without ſome greeſe, either in his backe or bodie: and therefore is afraide to lie downe, leaſt hee ſhould not be able to riſe againe: euen ſo, that Horſe which coueteth to lie downe oftner than he ſhould, ſeemeth not to haue verie ſtrong legges. But ſith all Horſes for the moſt parte, doe lie ſome part of the night to take their reſt, the keepers office is to litter them well at night, ſo as they may ſtand vp to the bellie in freſhe ſtraw: and ſpeciallie in Winter ſeaſon: for according to Petrus Crenſcentius, the warmer and ſofter they lie, the better. And therefore the ſtraw would be well ſhaken with a forke, and couched vp round togither of purpoſe. And therewith let the keeper remember to tie his Horſes ſo, as they call not themſelues in their

owne collars or halters, in their lieng downe or riſing vp. Thus much of the horſes ſléepe, for of his watching I ſhall not néede to ſpeake, ſith ſléepe and watch be two contrarie paſſions, occupied both about one ſubiect. And therefore no braſt can alwaies ſléepe nor alwaies watch, but doe ſometime the one, and ſometime the other. Neither néede I here to ſpeake of the horſes dreames, for though he dreameth ſometime in déed (as Ariſtotle and Plinie writeth) yet what auaileth it, vnleſſe he coulde alſo ſpeake, and declare them as man can, wherby many times is knowne what humors in mans bodie do chiefely reigne. Wherefore I will ende this chapter and go to the next, wherein wee ſhall talke of thinges that be of more importance.

Of repletion and emptineſſe, and of the diuers kindes thereof. Chap. xxi.

HIppocrates ſaith, that phyſicke conſiſteth onelie in adding to, and taking fro. Wherefore ſome thinke that all the whole art of phyſick may be well referred to repletion & emptineſſe. Of repletion there be two kinds, whereof the one is with humors, the other with exceſſe of meate, which oppreſſeth the ſpirits, and cauſeth ſickneſs. Againe, that with humors in two ſortes: for if the bodie be full of humors equally increaſed togither, then it is termed of the phyſitions Plethora, that is to ſay, aboundance of humors. But if the bodie be full of choler, Melancholie, Fleame, or waterish humors, then it is called Cacochymia, that is to ſay, euill iuice or nutriment gathered togither in the conduites of the bodie, for lacke of good digeſtion. Againe, there is repletion in quantitie and qualitie: in quantitie, when the body is too full of bloud, or anie other humor. Repletion in qualitie is when anie ſuch humor is too hot, or too cold, too groſſe or too thin, and ſuch like. But as all diſeaſes that ſpring of repletion muſt be healed by euacuation or emptineſſe: euen ſo all diſeaſes that come of emptineſſe belonging to mans body, muſt be cured by repletiō. There be diuers waies, as by letting bloud, by purgation, by wine, by vomite, by friction, ſcarification & boring, by ſweating, bathing, exerciſe, faſting, bléeding at the noſe, & diuers other waies not needfull here to be rehearſed, and ſpeciallie ſith

mine

mine intent in this chapter, is onelie to shew how & when a horse ought to be scowred, either by letting him bloud, or with grasse, or by purgation for the preseruation of his health, and for curing his diseases, and also what kind of meate will fat him soonest, leauing to speake of all other kind of euacuation belonging vnto a horse, vntill I come to the particular cures of his diseases.

How and when a horse should be let bloud, and to what end, and by what signes a man may knowe whether it is requisite to let him bloud or not. Chap. xxi.

THe opinions of the Authors, touching the letting of a horse bloud, are diuers. For some, as Petrus Crescentius, Laurentius Rusius, and other do think it necessarie for the preseruation of his health, to let him bloud foure times in a yeare, that is to say, in the spring, in Summer, in Autumne, and in Winter. Maurus, againe to saue him from diuers infirmities, thinketh it good to let him bloud three times in the yeare. First in the beginning of May, because the bloud beginneth then to increase. Secondly, in the beginning of September, to the intent that the bloud, being then inflamed by inequalitie, may euaporate, or breathe out. Thirdly, about the middest of December, to let out the grosse and knottie bloud. Some againe would haue a horse to be let bloud but once a yeare, & that in May, before he be sent to grasse: affirming that if he be not let bloud in the Spring, the new bloud being mixt with the old corrupt bloud, will be soone inflamed, & so perhaps cause the horse to fall into some grieuous sicknesse. That it is kindlie for a horse being lustie and strong, to be let bloud once a yeare, is proued by the euident experiment daylie seene and knowne in the horses of Polonia, which of their owne naturall instinct & disposition faile not yéerely to let themselues bloud. Notwithstanding, Vegetius saith, that the most ancient and discréete Authors forbid anie horse to be let bloud, before he hath great néede, least such customable letting of bloud being at any time omitted, might bréede some sicknesse in the horses bodie. Besides that, often letting bloud, causeth debilitie in the beast, hindereth the sight, and maketh the bloud to resort inwardlie, which cloieth the heart and intrailes, and leaueth the

outward partes deſtitute, whereby they were fat, groſſe, and vnweldie. And therefore hee doeth not willinglie conſent that anie horſe, and ſpeciallie being verie yong and healthfull, ſhould be let bloud in anie place, but onelie in the palate of his mouth, which is verie neceſſarie (as he ſaith) to be often vſed: yea, euerie mouth, as well in thoſe that be yoong, as of a middle age: affirming that it greatlie releeueth the head, the eies, and the braine, and prouoketh appetite to meate. Yea, and he doth not miſlike, that all horſes of a middle age, ſhould be let bloud in the necke veine, whenſoeuer they be ſent to paſture, vnleſſe they be ſtallions, or geldings: for then, ſaith he, they haue no neede thereof. The ſtallions becauſe they ſhall ſpend their bloud faſt inough in couering of Mares: for one ounce of ſeede, doth counteruaile manie ounces of bloud. Yet, when they ceaſe to be vſed anie longer as ſtallions. Abſyrtus would haue them euery yeere when they are put to graſſe, to bee let bloud: for otherwiſe, they will ware blinde, by meanes that thoſe humors, which were wont to be purged the other waie, will now reſort to their eies. Againe, geldings would not be let bloud. becauſe they lacke their ſtones: whereby the naturall heate is much decaied. Notwithſtanding, experience teacheth vs here in England, that to let our geldings bloud once a yeere doeth them much good, & ſpecially if they be rank and luſty, becauſe they haue as I take it, more aboundance of bloud by reaſon of the coldnes of the country, than thoſe that be bred in hoter climate. And therfore in letting anie horſe bloud, the region is alwaies to be conſidered, & therwith the time of the yeere, of the day, and of the moone, and alſo the age, ſtrength, and cuſtome of the horſe. The beſt time of the yeere, to let bloud in, according to the beſt writers, is the ſpring, becauſe that time is neither too hote, nor too colde, but in a meane. Beſides that, the old bloud being let forth, the new bloud then comming on (as ſome hold opinion) ſhall be the more pure, which otherwiſe being mixt with the old bloud, would be corrupt, and breede ſome ſickneſſe. The beſt time of the daie, is the morning: ſo that it be not immediatly after waking from ſleepe: but about an houre or two after. Againe: Ruſsius woulde haue the Ferrer when he letteth a horſe bloud, to foreſee that the Moone be not in that ſigne which is anſwerable to that parte of the bo-

dis

die wherein he dooth let him bloud, and speciallie if the horse bee whole, for if he be sicke, and that of any sharpe disease, the moone is not to be taried vpon. The age, strength, and custome of the horse, are to be considered, because if he be yong & not at his full growth to let him bloud would hinder his growth. Againe, if he be verie olde, he had more néed to haue his bloud increased, than diminished. And according as the horse is weake or strong of nature, & hath bene accustomed heretofore, so ought he to be let bloud more or lesse, accordinglie. For some horse may spare two or three pound of bloud: to some againe, the one halfe thereof perhappes mate be too much. The signes to knowe whether a horse hath néed to be let bloud or not, according to Laurentius Rufsius, bee these. His eies will ware red, his veines will swel more than they are wont to doe. Also he shall haue such an itch in his skinne, and in his necke, as he will alwaies be rubbing and scratching, and the haire of his mane will fall awaie. Also if he hath red inflations or bubbles on his back, or digesteth not his meat well, it is a signe that he hath néede to be let bloud. For sithe that manie grieuous sicknesses do most commonlie follow after these signes, it is good therefore (as he saith) to vse remedie betimes, & alwaies to withstand the beginning of euils. Moreouer Vegetius would haue that horse, which should be let bloud, to be thinly dieted a daie or two before, to the intent his bodie may be quiet and not troubled with indigestion, and at the time of his letting bloud, to be placed vpon an equall ground. And after that the Ferrer hath bound his neck straight with a corde: then, to the intent the veine may the more euidentlie appeare, Vegetius woulde haue him to wet the veine often with a spunge dipped in warme water, and to take heede that he strike not the artire which passeth through his throate, in steade of the veine, for that may put the horse in ieopardie of his life, and after that he hath striken him in the right veine, to giue him a little haie, or the grééne blades of corne to chewe on. For the mouning of his iawes will make the bloud to spinne out the faster, which bloud Vegetius would haue to be kept and saued, as well for medicine in time to come, as at that present, to annoint the horses bodie therewith, being mingeled with a little vineger and oile: and speciallie the place where he is let bloud. For it

439

is endued with a certaine naturall vertue and poſwer, to comfort the weake and feeble members of the horſe, and to drie vp euill humors. But when the Ferrer hath taken the reef ſufficientlie, and ſtopped vppe the hole, the horſe would be carried into ſome cloſe warme ſtable, and ſpeciallie if he be tender and delicate, and there to be well littered with freſh ſtraw vp to the belly, and fed the firſt day either with greene blades of wheate, if it bee in ſuch time of the yeare as it may be gotten, or elſe with very ſweet and fine hay and good prouender cleane ſifted, and offer him cleare water to drinke, at any time that you ſhal perceiue that he hath thirſt, continuing ſo to diet him if neede be, for the ſpace of ſeuen or eight daies togither. And if he bee feeble, it ſhall be good to giue him a maſhe, made of ground barlie and wheate branne, and then afterward by little and little, to bring him into his olde accuſtomed meates. And within two or three daies after that the horſe hath beene ſo let bloud in the necke, Vegetius would haue him to be led into the ſunne, and there to be let bloud in the palat of his mouth, and then in ſome warme day to bee waſhed in the ſea, or in ſome freſh ſtreame and well dried againe. Moreouer he ſaith, that it is good to rub & chafe all his body in a morning in the warme ſunne, with oile and wine mingled togither. For by ſuch rubbing and chafing, you ſhall bring his bodie againe vnto his former and naturall heate, ſo as it may bee able to abide aſwell the iniuries of the aire, as to be curried: which things being done and paſt, horſes of ſeruice may be put againe to thoſe vſes and labours whereunto they were wont to ſerue.

How and when a Horſe ſhould be ſcowred with graſſe or otherwiſe, and alſo what meates will ſoonest fatten him. Chap. xxiii.

VEgetius ſaith, that to keepe a horſes bodie in good ſtate, it is verie neceſſary to purge him once a yeare at the leaſt. In his time in Italie, and ſpeciallie about Rome, they vſed to ſcowre their horſes with that which the Latines call Farrago, which indeede is the greene blades of corne, and not a mixture of diuers ripe cornes mingled togither, as the Dictionaries and diuers other Authours doe interpret it, as it ſhall well

well appeare vnto you by the wordes of Nemesian and Vegetius, and other auncient writers. For Nemesian saith thus:

Pascе igitur sub vere nouo farragine molli
Cornipedes, &c. That is to saie, feede your horses in Springtime with soft forrage. And let such forrage saith Vegetius be of wheate if it may be gotten, if not, of barlie: and it will be the better, if such forrage be sowen and growe nigh vnto the sea, for that doth loosen the bellie, and purgeth sooner. Againe, Aristotle saith, that if the forrage of corne be tender and not hard or bearded, it will make a Horses coate to ware smooth & sléeke. Moreouer, Vegetius saith in an other place, if your horse be sicke or diseased in his bladder, withdraw his prouender immediatlie from him, and feede him onely with greene grasse or forrage. By all which sentences, you may easilie perceiue, that forrage is not a mixture of hard corne, but as I said before, the soft or greene blades of wheate or barlie, or anie other singular corne. And truely I thinke, that our warriers terme of forraging, which properly is to get horsemeate abroad in the field, was first derined of this word *Farrago* though some would haue forraging to bee a word compounded of *foris* & *agens*, which in déede is a verie good Etymologie. Notwithstanding, it sheweth not the vse and end of Forraging so well as this worde *Farrago* doth. And note, that according to Rusius, to purge or scowre a Horse, it sufficeth to giue him forrage or grasse onelie the space of fifteene daies. For to continue any longer time, is to fatte him rather than to purge him. And of all kind of grasse, the threе leaued grasse of most Authours is most praised. And whilest hee is scowred with grasse, Rusius would haue him to stand in the house, and to be couered with a warme woollen cloth. For grasse, saith hee, is naturallie colde and moist, and doeth cole a Horse maruellouslie. Moreouer, Theomnestus saith, that if a sicke Horse should be scowred abroad with grasse, it will make him scabbie, and the heate of the Sunne will make him to run mad. Notwithstanding, Camerarius would haue a Horse, when hee is scowred, to bee put into some close medowe, well fenced with pale or raile, so as hee cannot get out, and there to feede at his owne pleasure: affirming that to bee most comfortable vnto the Horse, and to doe him most good. But if such a

cloſe places is not to be had, then he would haue the graſſe to be mowne, and to be put in a flat baſket before him to feed on in the date time, for in the night ſeaſon, he would haue no graſſe to bee giuen him, but only the fift part of his accuſtomed prouender, being a little powdred with ſalt. It is good alſo to ſet ſalt before him, to licke on once or twiſe a daie, and within two or three daies after he beginneth to fæde vpon graſſe, it is neceſſarie to prouoke him to néeſe, by blowing this neeſing powder into his noſtrels: Take of Roſemarie, of Nard, and of Sage, dried and beaten into fine powder, of ech like weight. Or if you will, you may vſe this receite here following, preſcribed by the auncient writers. Recipe piperis, pulegii, origani, amaraci, Coſti, Irios, malabatri, radicis cocci, of ech like weight: for ſuch neeſing doth greatlie purge his head. And in moſt places now a daies, whileſt horſes are in ſcowring, they ſuffer them to ſtand, and lie in their owne dung vp to the hard bellies, thinking that to be a great nouriſhing vnto them: albeit I ſee no great reaſon that can be made for it: for ſure am I, that to their hooues it doth no good, & to lie moiſt and wet, muſt néeds be hurtfull to their bodies. Wherefore if they will needes haue them to lie in their dung, I would wiſh them to follow the turkie vſe, which as I haue learned, is to drie their dung in the Sunne euen into powder, and to litter them with that, ſo ſhall they lie both warme, ſoft, & drie. For their dung being made in powder and thicke ſtrewed vnder them, immediatlie drieth vp all the water that ſhall paſſe from them. It is good alſo, according to ſome, after fiue daies ſcowring, in a warme daie to waſh him in ſome freſhe or ſalt ſtreame: and being throughly dried, to annoint all his body with wine and oile mingled together, and from thenceforth to fæde him with graſſe and prouender ſo long as ſhall be néedefull. Some againe, will not ſcowre their horſes with graſſe, but with chiſſles: which the Spaniardes did vſe verie much heere in England with their Jennets: and no doubt, it ſcowreth much, and alſo nouriſheth and maketh a horſe luſtie and deſirous of the mare, as I ſawe once by a horſe of my deare friend M. John Aſhley, Maiſter of the Jewell houſe, being fed in time of ſoile with tender chiſſles. Some againe ſcowre their horſes with Pepons and Melons cutte into ſmall peeces, which

doe

doe first purge by wine, and afterward doe fatte. Grapes also and greene Figges, doe purge a Horse, and heale the pursinesse. But who so listeth to scowre his horse onelie, and not to fat him, let him take the intrailes of a Tench or of a Barbell cut into small peeces, and giue them to the horse to drinke in white wine, for that will purge him as a medicine. Rie also, if it be sodden, so as it burst not, and then well dried and giuen him in stead of prouender, will not onely purge him, but also kill the wormes of the bellie if he eate thereof. But if you list to raise a horse some that is leane, take one part of sodden beanes well salted, and foure partes of wheate bran mingled with the decoction of the beanes aforesaid, and giue him that sometime in the manner of a mash, and sometime as his prouender, for that doeth fat a horse aboue all thinges. Colewoorts also being a little sodden and mingled with wheate bran and a little salt, doth also fat a horse verie some. Moreouer the fattie decoction of three Tortewes being well sodden, their heads, tailes, feete and bones being reiected, both scowreth and fatteth a Horse verie much. The flesh also of such Tortewes being mingled with their prouender, is good for that purpose. There is also a corne growing here in England, called branke or bucke, which will raise a horse verie some. Notwithstanding, I would not wish either that, or anie other way of such sodaine raising of a horses flesh to bee vsed. For such fatnesse is but puft vp, and neuer continueth, as is dailie too well proued in such horses or geldings as are bought at horse coursers hands, which most commonly seeke rather to pamper their horses for an outward shew, than truely to diet them, to the intent they may make the soner sale of them, and bee at no great charge in long keeping them. Thus much of scouring and fatting of horses.

Of the affections of a horse, and how the keeper ought to behaue himselfe, that there may be a mutuall loue betwixt the horse and him. Chap. xxiiii.

That there be affections, aswell in a Horse as in euerie other beast endued with the soule sensitiue, I am sure no wise man doubteth. For as God gaue to all such beastes the vse of the senses, and the vertue sensitiue, to comprehend things offered vnto ỹ senses, so did he also giue them a natu-

rall

rall inſtinct or deſire, called of ỳ Latins Appetitus ſenſitiuus, wher-
by they are moued to loue or to hate, to follow or flie ſuch things
as they do conceiue, and to reioyce, or to be ſorie for the preſence or
abſence of the ſame. Wherefore all ſuch affects as do belong vnto
the power ſenſitiue, they haue common with man: as theſe, loue,
hatred, anger, ioie, ſorowe, feare, and ſuch like: which affectes, for
that they cauſe manie times ſtrange motions in the bodie, are to
be conſidered aſwell of the keeper, as of the Ferrer. And to the
intent that the horſe be not oppreſſed with the force of anie affec-
tion, ſpecialite of feare, hatred, or wrath, which be the moſt peril-
lous affects that can be in a horſe, (for as feare cauſeth the bloud
and ſpirits to reſort inward, and to leaue the outward partes de-
ſtitute of life and feeling: ſo anger againe, and wrath on the other
ſide, cauſeth him to be vnquiet, fierce and fretting:) the keepers
office is to procure the loue of his horſe, and to delight him all
maner of waies, as well with his voice as doings. For through
the curriſh handling of vnſkilfull keepers, manie horſes are driu-
uen into ſuch feare and deſperation, as they become reſtife, and
haue manie ſkittiſh toies. Some againe are ſo diuelliſh for lacke
of due correction when need is, as no man may come nigh them to
dreſſe them. But becauſe few keepers can correct with diſcretion,
I would wiſh him rather to vſe no correction at all, but onelie to
winne him by gentle meanes: as by faire ſpeaking, and by often
clawing him, and feeding him by hand, and in Summer ſeaſon, by
wiping away flies, motes, or anie other thing that doeth anoy
him, ſo ſhall the horſe be alwayes glad of him, and reioyce in his
preſence, and in time become ſo familiar, as he will play with him
like a dog. For truely, vnleſſe there be a mutuall loue betwixt the
keeper and the horſe, the horſe ſeldome or neuer batleth. For if
the keeper loue not his horſe, he will neuer meat him throughlie,
nor delight to dreſſe him, nor the horſe will be delighted with his
dreſſing. And therefore the chiefeſt point of a horſekeeper, is
to loue his horſe, and to ſeeke to be loued againe of
him: ſo ſhall hee profite the Horſe, and
pleaſure his maiſter. And thus
I end this treatiſe.

FINIS.

THE ORDER OF *Curing Horſes diſeaſes, togi-* ther with the cauſes of ſuch diſ- *eaſes, the ſignes how to know them* and finallie howe to cure the ſame. *With the true Art of paring and ſhoo-* ing all maner of hooues, togither with the ſhapes and figures of diuers ſhooes, very neceſſarie for diuers hooues: latelie ſet forth by *Thomas Blundeuill* of Newton Flotman in Norfolke.

Imprinted at London by Peter Short dwelling on Bredſtreet hill at the ſigne of the Starre.

1597.

142



TO THE GENTLEMEN *of England.*



LL horſes for the moſt part do come vnto their decaie ſooner than they ſhoulde do, by one of theſe foure waies, that is to ſaie, either for lacke of being well bred, or through the raſhneſſe of the rider, the negligẽce of the keeper, or elſe through the vnskilfulneſſe of the Ferrer: and therfore hauing heeretofore ſufficiently ſpoken in my other bookes, of breeding, riding, and keeping horſes: this booke ſhal onely treate of the curing of horſes diſeaſes, wherein you haue not onely the good precepts and experi ments of all the auncient writers, but alſo the no leſſe aſſured than lately approoued practiſes of M. *Martin Ghelley* of *Arton*, otherwiſe called *Martin Alman*, chiefe Ferrer to the Queenes Maieſtie, with which *Martin* by my Lord of Leiceſters meanes I haue had both often and long conference, and at my Lordes eaneſt requeſt, the ſaid *Martin* hath not onelie conferred with me, and frankly declared his opinion and order of curing all ſuch diſeaſes as he hath delt withall, euer ſince hee firſt profeſſed this art (which is aboue forty yeares) but alſo whileſt I laie with him at S. Albons, made me dayly to ſee his workmanſhip with mine eie, vppon ſuch Horſes as were cotinuallie brought vnto him from all quarters to cure: wherein I ſawe him to behaue himſelfe with ſuch iudgement, skill, and diligence, as I cannot chuſe but confeſſe him to be the moſt skilfull Ferrer that I know in all England, and that he is nothing inferiour in skill or workmanſhip, to his old maiſter *Hanniball*, that famous Ferrer, vnder whom he ſerued whileſt king Henry the eight of good memorie liued. And as for the ſhooing of great horſes, I beleeue he farre paſſeth him, yea and all other Ferrers that euer I knewe in *Italie* or elſewhere. And therefore knowing him ſo much to excel therein, I did not onely diſcourſe with him at the full, touching the true order of paring and ſhooing all maner of hooues: but alſo cauſed him to make me certaine paternes of diuers ſhooes, to ſerue diuers hooues, the ſhapes whereof you haue hereafter preſented ſo nigh as may

may be, together with my whole diſcourſe briefly told touching the ſame. Wherein I vſed the more diligence, becauſe I my ſelfe haue ſeene diuers trim horſes, hauing naturally of their ſelues verie perfect hooues, that by meanes of vnskilfull Ferrers (not knowing howe to pare the hooue, and to faſhion the ſhooe, ſo as it ought to be) to fit the foote, haue had in verie ſhort ſpace as weake and euill hooues as was poſſible. Whereas contrariwiſe a skilfull Ferrer by Art and diligence, can quickly make a weake hooue ſtrong. Which Art is here ſo plainly taught, as euery plaine ſmith, if he will applie his mind thereunto, may ſoone learne the ſame to his owne praiſe, and the great benefite of you Gentlemen that delight to keep good horſes, & to haue them well ſhod, and the rather through your good inſtructions, after that you haue once read and well conſidered this booke: for I am ſure that few or none of the country ſmithes can reade. There reſteth therfore now nothing more, for me to ſay, but that as this booke is chiefly for your benefite, ſo it may pleaſe you, firſt to be thankefull to my good Lord of Leiceſter for firſt procuring the ſame, and ſecondly to *Martin* for his knowledge vttered therein: For as for mine own part, being a poore Gentleman my ſelfe, do thinke my ſelfe bound to gratifie all honeſt Gentlemen, and to ſerue my countrie by all ſuch meanes as I poſſiblie can, without looking for anie thankes at all, aſſuring my ſelfe that how ſmall ſoeuer my deſert be, you will accept my good will in good part.

FINIS.

The Table.

Of thinges against nature, what, and which they bee. chap.1

Of causes and kinds thereof. chap.2

Of sickenes what it is, and how many generall kinds there be, also with what order the diseases of horses are in this booke declared. And finally of the foure times belonging to euerie sickenesse. chap.3

Of the signes of sickenesse in generall. chap.4

Of the Feuer and diuers kindes thereof in a horse. chap.5

Of diuers sortes of Feuers, according to Vegetius, and first of that which continueth but one daie. chap.6

Of the Feuer continuall. chap.7

Of the Feuer taken in Autumne, that is to saie, at the fall of the leafe. chap.8

Of the Feuer in Summer season. chap.9

Of the Feuer in winter season. chap.10

Of the Feuer which commeth of rawe digestion, &c. chap.11

Of the Feuer accidentall comming of some vlcer in the mouth or throte. chap.12

Of the pestilent Ague. chap.13

Martins opinion and experience touching a horses feuer. chap.14

Of the pestilence. chap.15

Of the diseases in the head. chap.16

Of headach. chap.17

Of the Frenzie and madnesse of a horse. chap.18

Of the sléeping euill. chap.19

Of a horse that is taken. chap.20

Of the Staggers. chap.21

Of the falling euill. chap.22

Of the night mare. chap.23

Of the Apoplexie, and palsie. chap.24

Of the crampe or conuulsion of the sinewes & muscles. chap.25

The receite of the medicine or ointment called Acopum, ibidem

Of the cold in the head. chap.26

Of the diseases of the eies. chap.27

Of wéeping or watering eies. chap.28

Of bloudshotten eies, for a blowe, or itching, and rubbing in the eies. chap.29
Of dimnesse of sight, and also for the pinne and web, or ante other spot in the eie, chap.30
Of the Yaw, called of the Italians Pinghia de gliocchi. chap.31
Of lunatike eies. chap.32
Of the canker in the eie. chap.33
Of diseases incident to the eares, and Poule, &c. chap.34
Of the powle evill. chap.35
Of the vives. chap.36
Of the cankerous vlcer in the nose. chap.37
Of bleeding at the nose. chap.38
Of the diseases in the mouth, & first of the bloudie rifts, &c. chap.39
Of the bladders in a Horses mouth which our old, &c. chap.40
Of the Lampasse. chap.41
Of the canker in the mouth. chap.42
Of the heate in the mouth and lips. chap.43
Of the tongue being hurt with the bit, or otherwise. chap.44
Of the Barbles or papes vnderneath the tongue, chap.45
Of the paine in the teeth and gums, of the wolfs, &c. chap.46
Why the diseases in the necke, withers, and backe, &c. chap.47
Of the cricke in the necke, chap.48
Of wennes in the necke, chap.49
Of swelling in the necke after bloud letting, chap.50
How to stanch bloud, chap.51
Of the falling of the crest, chap.52
Of the manginesse of the maine, chap.53
Of the falling of the haire of the maine, chap.54
Of greefes in the withers, chap.55
Of blisterings, or small swellings in the withers or backe, and of gallings, chap.56
Of great swellings and inflammations in a horses, &c. chap.57
Of the hornes or hard bones growing vnder the, &c. chap.58
Of wennes or knobbes, &c. chap.59
Of the nauell gall, chap.60
Of the swaieng of the backe, chap.61
Of weakenesse in the backe, chap.62

Of

Of Hide bound. chap.63
Of the diseases in the throte and lungs, and why, &c. chap.64
Of the glanders and strangullion, so called, &c. chap.65
Of the mourning of the chine. chap.66
Of the strangullion or squinancie. chap.67
Of the cough. chap.68
Of the inward and wet cough. chap.69
Of the drie cough. chap.70
Of the fretized, broken, and rotten lungs. chap.71
Of the putrified or rotten lungs. chap.72
Of the shortnesse of breath. chap.73
Of the pursicke. chap.74
Of a consumption. chap.75
Of the consumption of the flesh, &c. chap.76
Of griefe at the brest. chap.77
Of the paine of the hart called Anticor, &c. chap.78
Of tired horses. chap.79
Of the diseased parts under the midriffe, &c. chap.80
Of the loathing of meat. chap.81
Of casting out his drinke. chap.82
Of surfeting with glut of provender. chap.83
Of another kind of surfeting with meat. chap.84
Of the hungrie evill. chap.85
Of the diseases of the liuer. chap.86
Of the consumption of the liuer. chap.87
Of the diseases in the gall. chap.88
Of the diseases in the spleene. chap.89
Of the yellowes. chap.90
Of the evill habite of the bodie, and of the dropsie. chap.91
Of the diseases in the guts of a horse, &c. chap.92
Of costiuenesse or bellie bound. chap.93
Of the Lare. chap.94
Of the bloudie Flixe. chap.95
Of the wormes. chap.96
Of the paine in the kidnies. chap.97
Of the diseases belonging to the bladder. chap.98
Of pinge blond. chap.99

Of the colt euill. chap. 100
Of the mattering of the yeard. chap. 101
Of the shedding of séede, chap. 102
Of the falling of the yard. chap. 103
Of the swelling of the cod and stones. chap. 104
Of incoyding of burstin. chap. 105
Of the botch in the graines of a horse. chap. 106
Of the diseases incident to the wombe of a mare, and speciallie of barrennesse. chap. 107
Another receit for the same purpose. ibidem
Of the itch, scab, or manginesse in the taile, &c. chap. 108
How to know when a horse halteth before, &c. chap. 109
Of the griefe and pinching in the shoulder. chap. 110
Of wrinching the shoulder. chap. 111
Of splaitting of the shoulder. chap. 102
Of the shoulder pight. chap. 113
Of the swelling of the forelegs after great labour. chap. 114
Of foundering in the forelegs. chap. 115
Of the splent as well in the inside or outside, &c. chap. 116
Of a Palander. chap. 117
Of an vpper attaint or ouerreache vpon the backe sinewe of the shanke, somewhat aboue the ioint. chap. 118
Of a nether taint. chap. 119
Of an ouerreache vpon the héele. chap. 120
Of false quarters. chap. 121
Of halting behind, and where the griefe is. chap. 122
Of a horse that is hipped, or hurt in the hips. chap. 123
Of stiffling and hurts in the stiffle. chap. 124
Of foundering behind. chap. 125
Of the drie spauen. chap. 126
Of the wet spauen, or through spauen. chap. 127
Of the Selandder. chap. 128
Of the bough bonnie. chap. 129
Of the Curbe. chap. 130
Of the paines. chap. 131
Of the mules, or kibed héeles, called of the, &c. chap. 132
Of forrances or grisles that be common to all, &c. chap. 133

The Table.

Of winde galles. chap. 134
Of wrinching the nether ioint. chap. 135
Of interfering. chap. 136
Of the shakell gall. chap. 137
Of hurtes in the legs that commeth by, &c. chap. 138
Of the cratches or rattes tailes, called, &c. chap. 139
Of the Ringbone. chap. 140
Of the crowne scab. chap. 141
Of the hurtes vpon the cronet by crossing one foote ouer an other, which the Italians call Supra posto. chap. 142
Of the quitter bone. chap. 143
Of the grauelling. chap. 144
Of surbating. chap. 145
Of a pricke in the sole of the foote, either by treading on a naile, or any other sharpe thing that doeth enter into the foot. chap. 146
Of a figege. chap. 147
Of retreate. chap. 148
Of Cloing. chap. 149
Of loosening the hoone. chap. 150
Of calling the hoone. chap. 151
Of the hoone bound. chap. 152
Of the running Frush. chap. 153
Of diseases or griefes indifferentlie incident to anie part of the bodie, but first of the Leprosie, or vniuersall, &c. chap. 154
Of the Farcin, called in Italian of some, Il verme, &c. chap. 155
Of the canker called of the Italians Il Cancro. chap. 156
Of the canker, called of the Italians, Fistula. chap. 157
Of an Arburte. chap. 158
Of woundes. chap. 159
Of woundes in the fleshy partes. chap. 160
Of an hurt with an arrow. chap. 161
Of pulling out shiuers and shornes. chap. 162
Of bruslings or swellings. chap. 163
Of sinewes cut, pricke, or bruslings. chap. 164
How to cure a wound made with harquebush shot. chap. 165
Of burning with lime, or any other fiery thing. chap. 166
Of the biting of a mad dog. chap. 167

Of hurtes by the tuskes of a Boze. chap. 168
To heale the biting of stinging serpents. chap. 169
An other medicine for the same purpose. chap. 169
Of drinking of Horseleaches. chap. 170
Of swallowing downe hennes dung. chap. 171
Of Lice how to kill them. chap. 172
How to saue Horses from the stinging of flies. &c. chap. 173
Of bones being broken or out of ioinnt. chap. 174
Of bones out of ioint. chap. 175
Certaine receits of plaisters, verie good for broken bones, taken out of old Authors writing of, &c. chap. 176
An other receite for broken bones. chap. 177
An ointment for broken bones. chap. 178
In how manie veines a horse may be let bloud, &c. chap. 179
The order of taking vp veines, and therefore it is good. chap. 180
Of purging with purgation or glisser. chap. 181
Of purgations. chap. 182
Of Cauterization, or giuing the fire, as well actuall as potentiall. chap. 183
Of Cauteries potentiall. chap. 184
The receite of a Caustick vsed by Chiron, to drie vp superfluous moisture, and to bind parts lowsened, and to strengthen partes weakened, chap. 185
Another Caustick vsed by Pelagonius, to drie vp swellings, bladders, windgals, and splents in the legs, &c. chap. 186

FINIS.

A TABLE MADE BY THE Alphabet, whereby you shal more redaily find out any thing contayned in this booke, then by the former Table.

A.

ACopum or oyntment good for mante diseases, and whereof it is made, Fol. 14.a
Auburie, how to heale it, fol. 69.a
Apaplerie, fol. 12.a
Apotecapie, an ointment to rubbe the horses bodie, being sicke of a feuer,
Arrowne, and hurtes thereby, fol. 70.a

B

Backe swaied, fol. 24.a
Backe, weakenes thereof. fol. 24.b
Barbles, or pappes vnder the tongue, fol. 19.a
Barrennes of Mares, fol. 49.b
Bellie bound, fol. 42.a
Bladder, and diseases thereof, fol. 45.a
Bladders in the mouth, fol. 18.b
Bleeding at the nose, fol. 18.a
Bloodie fire, fol. 42.b
Bloodie riftes in the mouth, fol. 18.b
Bloud stanching, fol. 21.b
Botch in the graines, fol. 49.b
Bones broken, or out of ioint, fol. 72.a
Bottes, fol. 41.b
Bores striking, fol. 71.a
Burfting, or incording, fol. 48.a
Brusings, or swellings, fol. 22.b
Breast, and the griefes therein, fol. 33.a
Burning with lime, or anie other fierie thing, fol. 71.a

C

CAnker, fol. 68.a
CAnker in the eye, fol. 16.a

147

Canker in the nose, fol.18.a
Canker in the mouth, fol.19.a
Casting in the halter, fol.61.b
Causes of sicknes in generall, fol.1.a
Cauteries actuall, or fire giuing, that is, searing with hotte irons, (fol.74.a
Cauterie potentiall, fol.77.b
Charges causticke, fol.42.a
Cholicke in the bellie, fol.41.b
Cloying, fol.65.a
Cold in the head, fol.14.b
Colt euill, fol.46.b
Consumption, fol.32.a
Consumption of the flesh, fol.32.b
Consumption of the liuer, fol.37.b
Conuultion, or cramp, fol.12.a
Cough, and kindes thereof, fol.29.a
Costiuenes, or bellie bound, fol.42.a
Cramp, or cricke, fol.12.a
Cratches, fol.61.b
Creft, and falling thereof, fol.21.b
Cricke in the necke, fol.20.b
Crowne scabbe, fol.62.a 20.b
Cronet, and hurtes thereon, fol.62.b
Curbe, fol.59.b

D

Dapente, a preseruatiue against all pestiferous diseases, (fol.7.b
Dimnes in the sight, fol.15.b
Dropsey, and euill habit of the bodie. fol.40.a

E

Eares apostumed, fol.16.b
Eies, to what diseases they be subiect, fol.15.a
Eies weeping, fol.15.a

Eyes bloudshotten, fol.15.a
Eyes hurt with blow, or otherwise, fol.15.a
Eyes dim of sight, fol.15.b
Eyes grieued with pin or web, or haugh. fol.15.b
Eyes lunatike, fol.16.a
Enterfering, fol.61.a

F

Falling euill, fol.11.a
Falling of the yeard, fol.47.a
False quarter, fol.56.a
Farcin, fol.67.a
Feuer, and diuerse kindes thereof, fol.3.b
Feuer of one day, fol.4.b
Feuer continuall, fol.5.a
Feuer in Autumne, fol.5.a
Feuer in summer, fol.5.a
Feuer in winter, fol.5.b
Feuer comming of raiwe digestion, fol.6.a
Feuer accidentall, fol.6.a
Feuer pestiferous, fol.6.b
Fistula, fol.68.b
Figge in the sole of the foote, fol.64.b
Flies, and stinging thereof, fol.72.a
Forelegs swolne, fol.5.a
Foundering in the bodie, fol.35.a
Foundering before, fol.53.b
Foundering behinde, fol.56.b
Frenzie, fol.8.a
Frush running, fol.66.a

G

Gallings in the withers or backe, fol.22.b
Gall, and the diseases thereof, fol.38.b

Giegges in the mouth, fol.18.b
Glaunders, fol.25.b
Glisters, fol.74.b
Grauelling, fol.63.b
Gummes pained, fol.19.b
Guttes, and diseases thereof, fol.41.b

H

Hawe in the eie, fol.15.b
Hart, and paines thereof, fol.33.b
Halting before, and howe to knowe thereby in what place the griefe is, fol.50.b
Halting behinde, and how to knowe thereby in what place the griefe is, fol.56.a
Head, to what disease it is subiect, fol.7.b
Head ach, fol.8.a
Heate in the mouth, fol.19.a
Hennes doung swallowed downe, fol.71.b
Hide bound, fol.25.a
Hipped, or hurt in the hippe, fol.56.b
Horseleaches swallowed downe, fol.71.b
Hornes, or hard knobs vnder the saddle, fol.23.b
Hough bonie, fol.59.a
Houe loosed, fol.65.b
Houe cast, fol.65.b
Houe bound, fol.66.a
Hungrie euill, fol.35.b

I

Incho:ding, or bursting, fol.48.a
Itch in the taile, fol.50.a

K.

Kibed hælees, or mules, fol.60.a
Kidnes, and paine therein, fol.44.b

The Table.

L

Lampas, fol.19.a
Lare, and lowsenes, fol.42.b
Lepzosie, fol.66.b
Liuer, and diseases thereof, fol.36.a
Lice, and how to kill them, fol.71.b
Lunatike eyes, fol.16.a
Lunges fretised and broken, fol.30.b
Lunges putrified and rotten, fol.30.b

M

Madde dogges biting, fol.71.a
Malender, fol.55.a
Mangines in the taile, fol.50.a
Mangines in the maine, fol.22.a
Maine, and heare falling thereof, fol.22.a
Mattering of the yarde, fol.46.b
Mourning of the chine, fol.26.b
Mules, or kibed héeles, fol.60.a

N

Nauell gall, fol.24.a
Necke swelling after blood letting, fol.21.a
Neather taint, fol.55.b
Night Mare, fol.11.b

O

Ouerreache, fol.55.a
Ouerreache on the héele, fol.56.a
Ointment for broken bones, fol.73.a

P

Paynes, fol.60.a
Paring all maner of houes, resort to the arte of shoing.
Paulsie, fol.7.a
Pestilence, fol.6.b
Pissing blood, fol.46.a
Plaister for broken bones, fol.72.

Pur-

Purflicke, fol.31.b
Powel euill, fol.17.a
Pose,
Purging, and the order thereof, fol.74.b
Purging drinkes, fol.74.b
Purging pilles, fol.75.a

Q

Quitterbone, fol.63.

R

Reines or kidneyes, and paines therein, fol.44.b
Ringbone, fol.62.a
Retreate, fol.64.b

S

Selander, fol.59.a
Séede, and shedding thereof, fol.47.a
Searing with hot irons, and the shape thereof, fol.23.a 24 b 52.b
Serpents stinging, fol.71.b
Sinewes cut, prickt, or bruised, fol.70.b
Sicknes, and kindes thereof in generall, fol.1.b
Signes of sicknes in generall, fol.3.a
Spleene, and diseases thereof, fol.54.a
Splent, fol.54.a
Spauen, and kindes thereof, fol.58.a
Shackell gall, fol.61.b
Shortnes of breath, fol.31.b
Shoulder pinched, fol.51.a
Shoulder wrinched, fol.51.b
Shoulder splaited, fol.52.b
Shoulder pight, fol.52.b
Shooing of all maner of hooues, reade the art of shooing,

Shooes of diuers fashions, and wherefore they serue. See the arte of shooing. fol.9.b
Sleeping euill, fol.64.a
Sole of the foote prickt, fol.10.b
Staggers. fol.25.b
Strangullion, fol.28.a
Strangulsion, or squinancie, fol.34.a
Stomacke, and diseases thereof, fol.47.b
Stones swolne, fol.56.b
Stifling, and hurtes in the stifle, fol.34.b
Surfeting with glut of prouender, fol.63.b
Surbating,

T

TAken, or palsey, fol.10.a
Teeth pained, fol.19.b
Tyred horses, fol.33.b
Tongue hurt with bit, or otherwise, fol.19.a
Tronchons, loke wormes, fol.44.a
Thinges against nature, what, and which they be, fol.1.a
Thornes, and shiuers, and how to pull them out, fol.70.a

V

VAines to let blood in, fol.73.a
Vaines taking vp, fol.74.a
Vines, fol.17.b
Vometing out of drinke, fol.21.a
Vpper taint,

W

WEnnes in the necke, fol.21.
Wennes about the saddle skirtes, fol.23.b
Withers, and griefes therein, fol.22.a
Withers

Withers, or backe swollen, fol.22.b
Windgalles, fol.60.b
Wolfes teeth, and how to drawe them, fol.20.a
Wombe of a Mare, and diseases thereof, fol.49.b
Wormes, and diuers kindes thereof in the bellie, fol.44.a
Woundes, fol.69.a
Woundes in the fleshlie partes, fol.70.a
Wound with harquebush shotte, fol.70.b
Wrinch in the neather ioint, fol.61.a

Y

Yarde mattering, and falling thereof, fol.46.b.47.a
Yeallowes, and the kindes thereof, fol.39.b

FINIS.

Of things against nature, what and which they be

The first Chapter



Hauing hitherto sufficientlie spoken as well of things naturall, whereof the bodie is compounded, as also of thinges not naturall, whereby he is nourished, and maintained in health: and therein briefly touched all the particular parts & members belonging to the office of the keeper: it is now requisite that we speak of the things against nature, the knowledge whereof, moste chiefly appertaineth to the office of the Ferrer. Thinges against nature be those whereby the healthfull state of the beast his bodie doth decaie: and such things according to the learned Physicians be in number three. That is to say, the causes, the sickenesse, and accidents following sickenesse, which accidents are called of the Latines by the Greeke name Symptomata, of which accidents I purpose not here to make any speciall treatise, but to mingle them together with the diseases, according as all mine Authours haue done before me.

Of causes and kindes thereof. Chap. ii.



The causes of sicknes be vnnatural affects, or euill dispositions preceding sicknes, & prouoking the same, which of themselues doe not hinder the actions of the bodie, but by meanes of sicknes comming betwixt. Of causes, some be called internall, and some external. Internall be those that breed within the bodie of the beast, as euill iuice. External be those that chance outwardlie to the bodie, as heat, cold,

or

or the stinging of a serpent, and such like. In knowing the cause of euerie disease, consisteth the chiefe skill of the Ferrer. For vnlesse he knoweth the cause of the disease, it is vnpossible for him to cure it well and skilfullie. And therefore I wish all Ferrers to bee diligent, in seeking to know the causes of all diseases, as well in the partes similer, as instrumentall, and to know whether such causes be simple, or compoun: dfor as they be simple or compound, so doe they ingender simple or compound diseases

Of sickenesse what it is, and how many generall kindes there be, also with what order the diseases of Horses are in this booke declared. And finallie, of the foure times belonging to euery sickenesse. Chap. iii.

Sickenes is an euill affect contrarie to nature hindring of it selfe, some action of the bodie. Of sickenes there be three generall kinds, whereof the first consisteth in the parts similer: the second in the partes instrumentall: and the third in both partes togither. The first kind, is called of the Latines Intemperies, that is to sate, euill temperature, which is either simple or compound. It is simple, when one qualitie onelie dooth abounde or exceede too much, as to be too hot, or too cold, It is compound, as when manie qualities doe excéede, as when the bodie is too hotte and too drie, or too colde and too moist. The second kinde is called Mala constitutio, that is to sate, an euill state or composition, which is to bee considered, either by the shape, number, quantitie, or site of the member, or parte euill affected and diseased. The third kinde is called Vnitatis solutio, that is to sate, the loosening or diuision of the vnitie, which as it mate chance diuerslie, so it hath diuers names accordinglie: for if such solution, or diuision bee in a bone, then is it called a fracture, if it be in ante fleshie parte, then it is called a wound or vlcer, in the veines a rupture, in the sinewes a conuulsion or crampe, and in the skin an excoriation. Againe, of diseases some bee called long, and some sharpe and shorte, called of the Latines, Morbi accuti, which be perillous, and doe quicklie kill the bodie. The long, dos tarrie longer by it. Yet moreouer, there is sickenesse by it selfe, and sickenesse by consent. Sickenesse by it selfe, is that which beeing

ing in ſome member, hindereth the action thereof by it ſelfe. Sicknes by conſent, is deriued out of one member into an other, through the neighbourhod and communitie that is betwixt them: as the paine of the head which commeth from the ſtomach. Thus the learned Phiſicians which write of mans bodie, do diuide ſickneſſe. But Abſirtus writting of horſeleach craft, ſaith that of ſickneſſe or rather maladie (for ſo he termeth it, vſing that worde as a generall name to all maner of diſeaſes that be in a horſe) there be foure kinds: that is to ſay, the moiſt maladie, the dris maladie, the maladie of the iointes, and the maladie betwixt the fleſhe and the ſkinne. The moiſt maladie is that which wee call the Glanders. The dris maladie is an incurable conſumption, which ſome perhaps would call the mourning of the cheine, but not rightlie, as ſhall well appeare vnto you hereafter. The maladie of the iointes comprehendeth all griefes and ſorrances that bee in the iointes. And the maladie betwixt the fleſh and the ſkinne, is that which we call the ſcabbe: vnto which foure kindes of maladies, Vegetius addeth three others, that is, the Farcine, the paine of the reines or kidneies and the cankered mangeneſſe, moſt commonlie called of the old writers the leprоſie, and ſo maketh ſeuen kinds of maladies; vnder which all other particular diſeaſes are comprehended.

Againe, Laurentius Ruſsius, vſeth another kinde of diuiſion of ſicknelſe. Of horſes diſeaſes (ſaith he) ſome be naturall, and ſome accidentall. The naturall bee thoſe that doe come either through the exceſſe, or lacke of engendring ſeede, or by error of nature, in miſforming the young, or elſe by ſome defect of the dame, or ſire, in that perhappes they bee diſeaſed within, and haue their ſeede corrupted. The accidentall diſeaſes bee thoſe, that come by chance, as by ſurfetting of colde, heate and ſuch like thing. But for aſmuch as none of theſe writers doe followe their owne diuiſions, nor handle the partes thereof accordinglie: to auoide their confuſion, and to teach plainelie: I thought good therefore to vſe this my owne diuiſion and order here following. Firſt then, of diſeaſes ſome bee inward, and ſome bee outwarde. The inwarde bee thoſe that breede within the horſes bodie, and are properlie called maladies or diſeaſes, whereof ſome doe occupie all the whole

whole bodie, and some particular partes or members of the bodie. Of those then that occupie all the bodie, and be not incident to anie priuate member, I doe first treate, as of Agues, of the Pestilence, and such like, and then of those that bee incident to euerie particular member, beginning at the head, and so procéede orderlie throughout all the members, euen downe to the sole of the foote, obseruing therein so nigh as I can, the selfe same order that Galen vseth in his booke, De locis male affectis, declaring first, what maner of disease it is, and how it is called in English, and also in Italian, because the Queenes stable is neuer without Italian riders, of whome our Ferrers also haue borrowed manie names, as you shall perceiue hereafter. Then the causes whereof it procéedes, and the signes how to know it, and finallie, the cure and diet belonging to the same. And because I finde not inward diseases enow to answere euerie parte of the bodie, I do not let to interlace them with outward diseases incident to those partes, yea rather, I leaue out no outward disease, belonging to any particular member, to the intent you may the better knowe, to what diseases or sorrances euerie part or member of the horses bodie, is most commonlie subiect. And note by the waie, that I call those outward diseases that procéede not of anie inwarde cause, but of some outward cause, as when a horse is shouldered by meanes of some outward cause, or his backe galled with the saddle, or his sides spurgalled, or his howe cloid with a naile, and such like, which properly may be called sorrances or griefs. Thirdlie, I talke of those diseases as well outward as inward, that may indifferentlie chance in any part of the bodie, as of Impostomes, cankerous vlcers, woundes, fistules, burnings, brousigns, breaking of bones, and such like. Fourthlie, because most diseases are healed either by letting of bloud, by taking vp of vaines, by purgation, or else by cauterisation, that is to saie, by giuing the fire: I talke of those foure necessarie thinges seuerallie by themselues, e finallie, I shew you the true order of paring and shoing all maner of howes, according as the diuersitie of howes require: and to the intent you may the better vnderstand me, you haue the perfect shapes of all necessarie shoes, plainelie set forth in figures before your eyes. Thus much touching mine order obserued in this booke.

Now

Now it is neceſſarie to knowe, that to euery diſeaſe or maladie, belongeth foure ſeuerall times, that is to ſaie, the beginning, the increaſing, the ſtate, and declination, which times are diligently to be obſerued of the ferrer, becauſe they require diuers appliyng of medicine: for that medicine which was méete to be vſed in the beginning of the diſeaſe, perhaps is not to be vſed in the declination thereof: and that which is requiſite, and verie needfull, to be applied in the ſtate or chiefeſt of the diſeaſe, may bee verie dangerous to bee vſed in the beginning. And therefore the Ferrer ought to be a man of iudgement, and able to diſcerne one time from another, to the intent he may applie his medicines rightlie. Hitherto of cauſes and ſickneſſe in generall. Nowe it is alſo méete, that we ſpeake in generall of ſignes whereby ſickneſs is knowne.

Of the ſignes of ſickneſſe in generall. Chap. iiii.

SIckneſs according to the learned Phiſicians, is knowen foure maner of waies: firſt by inſeparable or ſubſtantiall accidents, as by the ſhape, number, quantitie, and ſight of the part or member diſeaſed. For if it be otherwiſe formed, or more or leſſe in number or quantitie, or elſe otherwiſe placed then it ought to be, then it is not wel. Secondly, ſickneſs is known by alteration of the qualitie, as if it be to hot, or to cold, to moiſt, or to dry. Thirdly, when the action of any member is hurt or letted, as when the eie ſight is not perfect, it is a manifeſt ſigne that the eie is euil affected or ſick. Likewiſe, when there breedeth no good blood in the body, it is an euident token that the Liuer is not well. Fourthlie, ſickneſſe is knowne by the excrements that comes from the beaſt, as by dung, or ſtale: for if his dung be to ſtrong of ſent, full of whole cornes, or of wormes, too hard or to ſoft, or euill coloured, it is a token that he is not wel in his body: ſo likewiſe if his ſtale be to thicke, or too thin, to white or to red, it betokeneth ſome ſurfet, rawe digeſtion, or elſe ſome griefe in his reines, bladder or ſtones. But Vegetius ſaith, that it is beſt knowne, whether a horſe be ſicke or not, or toward ſickeneſſe, by theſe ſignes here following: for if he be more ſlowe and heauie in his trotting, or gallopping, harder of Spurre, than he

was wont to be, or spreadeth his litter abroad with his feete, often tumbling in the night season, fetching his breath short & violentlie, lowd snuffling in the nose, and casting out hot vapors at his nostrils, or lieth downe immediatlie after his prouender, or maketh long draughts in his drinking, or in the night season is now downe, and now suddenlie on foot, or if in the next morning he be very hot in his pasternes, or betwixt his eares, or that his eares hang more then they are wont to do: againe, if his eie sight be dimme, and his eies hollowe in his head, his haires standing right vp, and his flanks hollowe and emptie, whensoeuer two or three of these signes do concur together, then it is to bee thought, saith Vigetius, that the horse is not well, and therefore he woulde haue him immediatly to be separated from his companions that be whole, and to be placed by himselfe vntill his disease be perfectlie knowne and cured, and especiallie if it bee any contagious disease. I haue seene diuers Ferrers heere in England to vse that for the triall of a horses sickneſſe, which I neuer read in anie Author, that is, to feele his stones, whether they be hot or colde, and to smell at his nostrils, and so by the sauour thereof to iudge what sickneſſe the horse hath. Truelie I thinke that no euill waie, if they can discerne with their sense of smelling, the diuersity of sauours, that commeth out of his nostrils, and then aptlie applie the same to the humors whereof such sauours be bred, and so orderlie to seeke out the originall cause of his sickneſſe. But I feare me, that more Ferrers smell without iudgement, than with such iudgement, and no maruell why, sith that few or none be learned, or haue beene brought vp with skilful maisters. But from henceforth I trust that this my trauell, will cause such Ferrers as can read, and haue some vnderstanding alreadie, to be more diligent in seeking after knowledge than they haue beene heretofore, whereby they shall be the better able to serue their countrey, and also to profite themselues, with good fame: whereas now for lacke of knowledge they incurre much slander.

Of the Feuer and diuers kindes thereof in a horse. Chap. 2.

I thinke it will seeme very strange vnto some, to heare that a horse should haue an Ague or Feuer, but it was not strange vnto

vnto the men of olde time, as to Abſirtus, Hierocles, Xenophon Vegetius, and ſuch like olde ſouldiors, throughlie experimented in horſes griefes. A Feuer, according to the learned Phyſicians, is an vnnatural and immoderate heat, which proceeding firſt from the heart ſpreadeth it ſelfe throughout all the arteires and veins of the bodie, and ſo letteth the actions thereof.

Of Feauers there be three generall kindes, whereof the firſt, is that which breedeth in the ſpirites, beeing inflamed or heated more than their nature requireth. The ſecond breedeth in the humors, being alſo diſtempered by heat. The third in the firm parts of the bodie, being continuallie hot. What ſpirites and humors be, hath beene tolde you before in the Keepers office. Of theſe three generall kindes doe ſpring many other ſpeciall kindes, as Quotidians, tertians, Quartanes, Feuers Hectique, and verie manie others, whereunto mannes bodie is ſubiect, whereof none of my Authours doe treate, vnleſſe it be Vegetius, whoe ſpeaketh ſomewhat of a Feauer Quotidian, of a Feuer continuall, and alſo of a Feauer accidentall. Hee ſpeaketh alſo of Summer, Autumne, and Winter Feauers, without making any great difference betwixt them, more then that one is worſe than an other, by reaſon of the time and ſeaſon of the yeare, ſo that in effect al is but one Feauer. Wherefore according vnto Abſirtus opinion, I will briefelie ſhewe you firſt the cauſes whereof it proceedes, and then the ſignes how to knowe it, and finallie how to cure the ſame.

The Feuer chanceth ſometime by ſurfetting of extream labor or exerciſe, as of to much trauelling, and ſpecially in hot wether, of to ſwift galloping & running, and ſomtime by extream heat of the Sunne, and alſo by extreame cold of the aire, and ſomtime it breedeth of crudities or rawe digeſtion, which many times happeneth by ouer greedie eating of ſweete greene corne, or of ſuche prouender as was not throughlie dried nor cleanſed: for after ſuch greedie eating, and ſpeciallie of ſuch meates, neuer followeth perfect digeſtion. The ſignes to knowe a Feuer bee theſe: The horſe dooth continuallie holde downe his heade, and is not able to liſte it vppe, his eies are blowne ſo as hee cannot eaſilie open them: yea and manie times they be watering, the fleſh of

his lippes and of all his bodie is lush and feeble, his stones hang lowe, his bodie is hot, and his breath is also verie hot and strong, he standeth weakly on his legges, and in his going draweth them lasslie after him, yea he cannot go but verie softlie, and that staggering here and there, he will lie down on his side, and is not able to turne himselfe, or to wallow: he forsaketh his meate, both hay and prouender, and is desirous of nothing but of drinke, which as Absirtus saith, is an assured token of a Feuer: he also sleepeth but little. The cure and diet. Let him bloud in the face and temples, and also in the palat of his mouth, and the first day giue him no meate, but onelie warme drinke, and that by little and little. Afterward giue him continuallie grasse, or else verie sweete hate wet in water, and let him be kept warme, and sometime walke him vp and downe faire and softlie in a temperate aire, and then let him rest, and when you see that he begins to amend, giue him by little at once barlie faire sifted and well sodden, and also mundified, that is to saie, the huske pulled awaie, like as when you blanch Almonds.

Of diuers sorts of Feuers, according to Vigetius, and first of that which continueth but one day. Chap. vi.

THe Feuer of one day called by the Greek name Ephemera, or else by the Latin name Diaria, chanceth many times, through the rashnesse and small discretion of the keeper, or some other that letteth not to ride a horse immeasurably, either before or after watering, whereby the horse afterward in the stable entereth into an extreame heat, and so falleth into his Feuer, which you shall knowe partlie, by his waterish and bloudshotten eies, and partlie, by his short, violent and hot breathing, and panting. Moreouer, hee will forsake his meat, and his legs will ware stiffe and feeble. The cure. Let him haue rest all the nexte day following, and be comforted with warm meat, then let him be walked vp and downe faire and softlie, and so by little and little brought againe to his former estate.

Of

Of the Feuer continuall. Chap. vii.

THe Feuer continuall, is that which continueth without intermiſſion, & is called in Italian by the Latine name *Febris continua*, which ſpringeth of ſome inflammation or extreame heat, bredde in the principall members, or inward partes about the heart, which is knowne in this ſort. The horſe doth not take his accuſtomed reſt, whereby his fleſhe doeth fall away euery day more and more, and ſometime there doth appeare hot inflammations in his flanks, and about his withers. The cure. Purge his head by ſquirting into his noſtrils mans vrine, or the water of an ore that hath bēen reſted a certain time, to the intent ſuch water may be the ſtronger, and then giue him the drinke written in the nert chapter.

Of the Feuer taken in Autumne, that is to ſay, at the fall of the leafe. Chap. viii.

IF a horſe chance to get a feauer at the fall of the leafe, cauſe him immediatlie to bee let bloud in the necke veine, and alſo in the third furrow of the roſe of his mouth, and then giue him this drinke. Take of Iermander foure ounces, of Gum dragant, and of dried roſes, of eche one ounce, beate them all into fine powder, and put them into a quart of ale, adding thereunto of oile oliue foure ounces, and of Honie as much, and giue it the horſe luke warme.

Of the Feuer in ſummer ſeaſon. Chap. ix.

A Feuer taken in Summer ſeaſon is much worſe, than in anie other time, and ſpecially if it be taken in the dogge daies, for then the accidents be more furious. The ſignes be the ſe: his artires will beate euidently, and he will ſhed his ſeede when he ſtaleth, and his going will be vnorderlie. The cure. Let him bloud in a veine that he hath in his hinder hanch, about foure fingers beneath the fundament, or if you cannot find that veine, let him bloud in the necke veine, toward the withers, and if it bee needfull you may giue him alſo this drinke. Take the iuice of a handfull of Purſlein mingled with Gum dragant, with Enſens, and a fewe Damaſke Roſes, beaten all into fine

powder, and then put thereunto a sufficient quantitie of ale made sweet with honie.

Of the Feuer in winter. Chap. x.

FOr the Feauer in Winter, it shall bee good to take the powder of the drugges last mentioned, and with a quill or réede, to blowe it vp into his left nostrill to make him to néese. It shal be good also to let him bloud in the necke veine, and in the palat of the mouth, and then to giue him one of these drinks here following. Take of Ireos sir ounces, of round pepper one ounce, of Bay berries, and of the seed of Smallage, of ech one ounce, and let him drinke them with sodden wine. Or else take a pint of good milke, and put therein of oyle foure ounces, of Saffron one scruple, of Myrrhe two scruples, of the seede of Smallage a spoonefull, and make him drinke that: or make him this drinke. Take of Aristoloch, otherwise called rounde Hartwort one ounce, of Gentian, of Isop, of Wormwood, of Sothernwood, of each one ounce, of drie fatte Figges sire ounces, of the séede of Smallage three ounces, of Rewe a handefull, boile them all in a cleane vessell with riuer water, vntill the thirde part bee consumed, and when you sée it loke blacke and thicke, take it from the fire, straine it, and giue the horse to drinke thereof lukewarme. As touching his diet, lette his water bee alwaies lukewarme, wherein would be put a little wheate meale, and remember to giue him no meate so long as his fit continueth. And because in all Agues it is good to quicken the naturall heate of the horse, by rubbing and frotting his bodie, it shall not be amisse in some faire daie to vse this friction, called of the auncient writers *Apotorapie*, which is made in this sort. Take of Damaske Roses one pound, of olde oyle a pinte, of strong vineger a pinte and a halfe, of mintes and Rewe beaten into powder, of ech one ounce and a halfe, together with one olde drie nut, beat them and mingle them together, then being strained and made luke warme, rub and chafe all the horses bodie therewith against the haire, vntil he beginneth to sweat, then set him vp in the warmest place of the stable, and couer him well.

Of

Of the Feuer which commeth of raw digeſtion, or of repletion. Chap. xi.

YOu ſhall know if the Feuer proceedeth of any ſuch cauſe, by theſe ſignes here following. The horſe will blow at the noſe more than he is accuſtomed to doe, ſeeming to fetche his wind only at his noſe, and his breath will be ſhort, hot and drie, you ſhall ſée his flanks walke, and his back to beat. The cure. Cauſe him to be let bloud abundantlie in the head, and palat of his mouth, and by ſquirting warm vineger in the morning into his noſtrils, force him to néeſe: and if he bee coſtiue, let his fundament be raked, or elſe giue him a gliſter to eaſe the paine in his head. And as touching his diet, giue him but little prouender, or haie, neither let him drinke much nor often, but bet wixt times. But in any wiſe let him be wel rubbed and chafed, and that a good while togither, and if you vſe the friction declared in the laſt chapter before in ſuch ſort as there is ſaid, it ſhall doe him verie much good.

Of the Feuer accidentall comming of ſome Vlcer in the mouth or throte. Chap. xii.

THe horſe not being wel kept and gouerned, after that he hath béene let bloud in the vpper parts: yea, and alſo beſides that of his owne nature is ſubiect vnto the diſtillation in his throte, or parts therabout, the painfull ſwelling or vlcer whereof, cauſeth the horſe to fall into a gréeuous ague. Whereof, beſides the former remedies apt to purge humors, it ſhall be neceſſarie alſo, to let him bloud in the vein of the head, and in the palat of his mouth, and to be ſhort, in all thoſe places where the diſeaſe cauſeth moſt gréefe. And if the horſe be ſo ſore pained as he cannot ſwallowe downe his meat, it ſhall be good to giue him lukewarme water, mingled with barlie meale, or wheat meale, and beſides that, to make him ſwallowe downe ſeuen ſops ſopped in Wine one after another, at one time: ſome vſe at the ſecond time to dip ſuch ſops in ſwéet ſallet oyle. Thus farre Vegetius.

Of the pestilent Ague. Chap. xiii.

IT seemeth by Laurentius Rusius, that horses bee also subiect to a pestilent feuer, which is almost incureable called of him Infirmitas Epidimialis, that is to saie, A contagious and pestiferous disease, wherof there died in one yeare in Rome aboue a thousand horses, which as I take it came by some corruption of the aire, whereunto Rome in the chéef of summer is much subiect, or else of corrupt humors in the body ingendred of vnkind food, by reason perhaps, that the Cittie was then pestered with more horsemen then there could bee conuenientlie harbored or fedde. Laurentius himselfe rendereth no cause thereof, but onlie sheweth signes how to know it, which be these. The horse holdeth down his head, eateth little or nothing, his eies be waterish, and his flankes do continuallie beat. The cure. First giue him this glister. Take of the pulpe of Coloquintida, one ounce, of Dragantum one ounce and a halfe, of Centuarie and Wormwood, of ech one handefull, of Castoreum halfe an ounce, boile them in water, then being strained, dissolue therein, of Gerologundinam six ounces, of salt an ounce and a halfe, and halfe a pound of oyle oliue, and minister it lukewarme with a horne, or pipe made of purpose. Make also this plaister for his head: take of Squilla fiue ounces, of Elder, of Castoreum, of mustard séed and of Euforbium, of eache two ounces, dissolue the same in the iuice of Daffodill, and of Sage, and late it to the temples of his hed next vnto his eares, or else giue him any of these three drinks here following: take of the best triacle two or three ounces, and distemper it in good wine, and giue it him with a horne, or else let him drinke euerie morning the space of three daies, one pound or two of the iuice of Elder rootes, or else giue him euerie morning to eate, a good quantitie of Venus haire, called of the Latines, *Capillus Veneris*, newlie and freshe gathered, but if it be olde then boile it in water, and giue him the decoction therof to drink with a horne.

Martins opinion and experience touching a Horses Feauer. Chap. xiiii.

THough Martin haue not séene so many seuerall kindes of Feuers to chance to Horses, yet he confesseth that a Horse will haue

haue a Feuer, and ſaieth that you ſhall knowe it by theſe ſignes. For after the horſe hath bene ſicke two or three daies, if you looke on his toong, you ſhall ſée it almoſt rawe and ſcalte, with the heat that comes out of his bodie, and he will ſhake and tremble, réele and ſtagger when his fit commeth, which fit will keepe his due howers, both of comming and alſo of continuance, vnleſſe you preuent it by putting the horſe into a heate, which would be done ſo ſone as you ſée him begin to tremble, either by riding him, or tieng vp his legges, and by chafing him vp and downe in the ſtable, vntill he leaue ſhaking, and then let him be kept warme, and ſtand on the bit the ſpace of two houres, that done, you may giue him ſome haie, by a little at once, and giue him warme water, with a little ground mault twice a daie, the ſpace of three or foure daies, and once a daie waſh his toong with Alom water, vineger, and ſage. But if you ſée that all this preuailes not, then purge him with this drink, after that he hath faſted all one night. Take of Aloes one ounce, of Agaricke halfe an ounce, of Licoras and Annis ſeedes of each a dramme, beaten to pouder, and lette him drinke it with a quart of white wine luke warme, and made ſweet with a little honie, in the morning faſting, and let him be chafed a little after it, and be kept warme, and ſuffered to ſtande on the bit meatleſſe two or three houres after, and hee ſhall recouer his health againe quicklie.

Of the Peſtilence. Chap. xv.

THe Peſtilence is a contagious diſeaſe, procéeding as *Pelagonius* ſaith, ſometime of ouermuch labour, heat, cold, or hunger, and ſomtime of ſudden running after long reſt, or of the retention or holding of ſtale or vrin, or of drinking cold water whiles the horſe is hotte and ſweating, for all theſe thinges do brésde corrupt humours in the horſes bodie, whereof the Peſtilence doeth chiefli proceede, or elſe of the corruption of the aire, poiſoning the breath, whereby the beaſtes ſhould liue, which alſo happeneth ſometime of the corruption of euill vapours and exhalations that ſpring out of the earth, and after great floudes or earthquakes, and ſometime by meanes of ſome

157

some euill distillation or influence of the Planettes, corrupting sometime the plants and fruits of the earth, and sometime diuers kind of cattell, and sometime both men, women and children, as we dailie see by experience. It seemeth that this euill or mischiefe in times past came suddenlie, without giuing any warning, for none of mine Authors doth declare any signes how to know whether a horse hath this disease or not, but onelie affirme, that if one horse doe die of it, all his fellowes that beare him companie will followe after, if they be not remedied in time: so that as farre as I can learne, the sudden death of one or two first, must be the onlie meane to know that this disease doeth reigne. And the remedie that they giue is this. First separate the whole from the sick: yea, and haue them cleane out of the aire of those that be dead, the bodies whereof as Vegetius saith, if they be not déepe buried, will infect all the rest. And let them bloud as well in the necke, as in the mouth, and then giue them this drinke: take of Gentian, of Aristoloch, of Bay berries, of Mirrhe, of the scraping of Iuory, of each like quantitie, beate them into fine pouder, and giue as well to the sicke as to the whole, whom you would preserue from this contagion, euerie daie a spoonfull or two of this pouder in a pinte of good wine, so long as you shall see it néedefull. This medicine before rehearsed, is called of the ancient Writers *Diapente*, that is to saie: a composition of fiue simples, and is praised to be a souereigne medicine and preseruatiue against al inward diseases, and therefore they would haue such as trauell by the waie, to carrie of this powder alwaies about them. There bee manie other medicines which I leaue to write, because if I shoulde rehearse euery mans medicine, my booke would be infinite, I for my part would vse no other than either that before expressed, or else wine and treacle onelie.

Of the diseases in the head. Chap. xvi.

The head is subiect to diuers diseases according to the diuers parts thereof: for in the pannicles or litle fine skins cleauing to the bones, and couering the braine, do most properlie bréed headach and migram. Againe in

in the ſubſtance of the braine (which in a horſe is as much in quantitie as is almoſt the braine of a meane hog) do breed the Frenſie, madneſſe, ſléeping euill, the palſey and forgetfulnes. Finallie, in the ventricles or celles of the brain, and in thoſe conduits thrugh which the ſpirits annimall do giue ſéeling and moouing to the bodie, do bréed the turnſicke or ſtaggers, the falling euill, the night mare, the Apoplexie, the Palſie, and the conuulſion or cramp, the Catarre or Rheume, which in a horſe is called the Glanders, but firſt of headach.

Of headach. Chap. xvii.

THe headach, either commeth of ſom inward cauſe: as of ſome cholerick humour, bred in the pannicles of the braine, or elſe of ſome outward cauſe, as of extreame heat or cold, of ſome blow, or of ſome violent ſauour. *Eumelus* ſaith: that it commeth of raw digeſtion: but Martin ſaith moſt commonly of cold: the ſignes be theſe. The horſe will hang down his head, and alſo hang downe his eares, his ſight will bee dim: his eies ſwollen & waterish: and he will forſake his meat. The cure. Let him bloud in the palat of his mouth. Alſo purge his head with this perfume. Take of Garlike ſtalks a handfull, all to broken in ſhort peeces, and a good quantity of Frankencenſe, & being put into a chafingdiſh of freſh coles, holde the chafingdiſhe vnder the horſes noſtrils, ſo as the fume may aſcende vp into his head: and in vſing him thus once or twice, it will make him to caſt at the noſe, and ſo purge his head of al filth. *Pelagonius* ſaith, that it is good to powre into his noſtrils, wine wherein hath béene ſodden Euforbium, Centuarie, and Frankencence.

Of the frenzy and madneſſe of a horſe. Chap. xviii.

THe learned Phiſicians do make diuers kindes, as well of Frenſie, as of madneſſe, which are not néedfull to be recited, ſithe I coulde neuer read in ante Authour, nor learne of ante Ferrer, that a horſe were ſubiect to the one halfe of them. Abſirtus, Hierocles, Eumelus, Pelagonius, and Hippocrates, doe write ſimplie de furore & rabie: that is to ſaie, of the madneſſe of a horſe. But indéede Vegetius in his ſeconde booke of horſeleach craft, ſéemeth to make foure mad paſſions belonging.

longing to a Horse, intituling his chapters in this sort, de Appioso, de Frenetico, de Cardiacis, de Rabioso, the effectes whereof though I feare me it will bee to no great purpose, yet to content such as perhaps haue read the Authour as well as I my selfe, I will here briefly rehearse the same. When some naughty bloud (saith hee) doeth strike the filme or pannicle of the braine, in one part onlie, and maketh the same greeuouslie to ake, then the beast becommeth *Appiosum*, that is to saie, as it seemeth by his owne words next following, both dull of mind and of sight. This word *Appiosum*, is a strange worde, and not to be found again in anie other Authour, and because in this passion, the one side of the head is onlie greeued, the horse turneth round, as though he went in a Mill. But when the poison of such corrupt bloud doeth infect the mid braine, then the Horse becommeth Frentike, and will leape and fling, and runne against the walles. And if such bloud filleth the veines of the stomache, or breast, then it infecteth as well the heart as the braine, and causeth alienation of minde, and the bodie to sweate, and this disease is called of Vegetius, *Passio cardiaca*, which if *Equus Appiosus* chance to haue, then hee becommeth *Rabiosus*, that is to saie, starke mad. For, saith he, by ouermuch heate of the Liuer, and of bloud, the veines and artires of the heart are choked vp, for griefe and paine whereof the horse biteth himselfe, and gnaweth his owne flesh. Thus farre *Vegetius*. Of twoe sortes of madde horses, I beleeue, I haue seen my selfe here in this Realme. For I saw once a black Sweathland horse (as I toke him to bee) in my Lord of Hunsdons stable at Hunsdon, comming thither by chance with my Lorde Morley, which Horse would stand all date long biting of the manger, and eate little meate or none, suffering no manne to approche vnto him, by which his doinges, and partly by his colour and complexion, I iudged him to bee vexed with a melancholie madnesse, called of the Physicians, *Mania*, or rather *Melancholia*, which commeth of a corrupt Melancholie, and filthy bloud or humor, somtime spread throughout all the veines of the bodie, and sometimes perhappes remaining onelie in the head, or else in the spleen, or places next thereunto adioining. The other madde horse was a Roane of Maister Ashleies, maister of the Jewell house, which with his

teeth

téthe crushed his maiſters right forefinger in péeces, whileſt hee offered him a little haie to eate, wherby he loſt in a maner the vſe of his whole hand, to the great greéfe of all his friendes, & alſo of all the muſes, which were wont to be much delighted with ſuche paſſing ſweéte muſicke as that his fine quauering hande coulde ſometime make vpon diuers inſtrumentes, but ſpecialite vpon the Virginals. This horſe I ſaie though he could eat his meate, drinke his drinke, and ſleepe: yet if he were neuer ſo little offended, he would take on like a ſpirit, and both bite and ſtrike at any manne that came nigh him: yea and woulde bite himſelfe by the ſhoulders moſt terriblie, pulling away lumpes of fleſh, ſo broade as a mans hand: and whenſoeuer he was ridden, he was faine to be muſled with a muſſell of iron, made of purpoſe to kéepe him from biting either of his rider or himſelfe, which no doubt procéeded of ſome kinde of frenzie or madneſſe, whereunto the Horſe was ſubiect, by meanes that hotte bloud (as I take it) abounded ouermuch in him. But now as touching the cauſes, ſignes, and cure of a horſes madneſſe, you ſhal heare the opinion of olde writers: for Martin neuer toke ſuch cure in hande. Abſirtus, and the other Authors before mentioned ſay, that the madnes of a Horſe commeth either by meanes of ſome extreame heat taken by trauelling, or long ſtanding in the hot ſunne, or elſe by eating ouermanie fitches, or by ſome hotte bloud reſorting to the pannicles of the braine, or through aboundance of choler remaining in the veines, or elſe by drinking of ſome very vnwholſome water. The ſignes be theſe, he will bite the manger, and his owne bodie, and runne vpon euerie man that comes nigh him, he will continually ſhake his eares, and ſtare with his eies, and ſome at the mouth: and alſo as Hypocrates ſaith, he will forſake his meate and pine himſelfe with hunger. The cure. Cauſe him to be lette bloud in his legges aboundantlie, which is doone (as I take it) to diuert the bloud from his head. Notwithſtanding it were not amiſſe, to let him bloud in the necke and breaſt veines. Then giue him this drink: Take the rote of wilde Cucumber, and boile it in harſh redde Wine, and put thereunto a little Nitre, and giue it him with a horne lukewarme: or if you can get no Cucumber, then take Reewe, and Pintes, and boile them in ỹ wine. It were not

not amisse also to adde thereunto a handfull of blacke Ellebozus, for that is a verie good hearbe against madnesse. Eumelius saith, that if you giue him mannes dong in wine to drinke three mornings together, it will heale him: also to take of black Ellebozus two or three handfuls, & boile it in a sufficient quantitie of strong vineger, and therewith rub and chafe both his head, and al his bodie once or twice in a daie, for the oftner his head is rubbed the better, and often exercise is very profitable to al his body. Some againe would haue the skin of his head to bee pierced in diuers places with an hot iron, to let out the euill humozs: but if none of all this will preuaile, then the laste remedie is to gelde him of both his stones, or else of one at the least, for either that wil heale him or else nothing. As touching the diet and vsage of a madde horse, the Authozs doe not agree, for some would haue him kept in a close, darke and quiet house, voide from all noise, which as Absirtus saith, will either make him madder, or else kill him out of hand. His diet would be thin, that is to saie: without anie prouender, and that daie that he is let bloud and receiueth his drink, they would haue him to fast vntill euen, and then to haue a warm mash of Barlie meale: yea, methinkes it were not amisse to feed him onelie with warme mashes and hate, and that by a little at once vntill he be somewhat recouered.

Of the sleeping euill. Chap. xix.

This is a disease forcing the beast continually to sleep, whether he will or not, taking his memorie and appetite clene away, and therefore is called of the Physicians *Lethargus*, it procéedeth of abundance of flegme moistning the brain ouermuch. It is easie to know it, by the continuall sleeping of the horse. The cure of this disease according to *Pelagonius*, *Vegetius*, and others, is in this sort. Let him bloud in the necke, and then giue him this drink: Take of Camomil and Motherwort, of each two or three handfulles, and boile them in a sufficient quantitie of water, and put thereunto a little wheate branne, salt and vineger, and let him drinke a pint of that euerie daie, the space of three or foure daies together. It is good also to

perfume

perfume and chafe his head, with Time and Pennyroyall ſodden togither in vineger, or with Brimſtone and feathers burned vpon a chafingdiſh of coles vnder his noſe: and to prouoke him to neeſe, by blowing pepper and Pyrethre beaten to pouder, vp into his noſtrils: yea and to annoint the palate of his mouth, with Hony and muſtard mingled togither, and in his drinke, which would be alwaies warme water, to put Parſly ſeed, and Fenell ſeede, to prouoke vrine. His legges alſo would be bathed, and his houes filled with wheate braune, ſalte, and vineger, ſodden togither, and laide to ſo hot as he may indure it, and in any caſe ſuffer him not to ſleepe but keepe him waking and ſtirring, by continuall crieng vnto him, or pricking him with ſome ſharp thing, that cannot paſſe cleane through the ſkin, or elſe by beating him with a whip, and this doing he ſhall recouer.

Of a horſe that is taken. Chap. xx.

A Horſe is ſaide to be taken, when he is depriued of his feeling and moouing, ſo as he is able to ſtirre no manner of wate, but remaineth in ſuch ſtate and forme, as he was taken in. Which diſeaſe is called of the Phyſicians by the Greeke name Catalepſis, and in Latin Deprehenſio, or Congelatio and of Vegetius, Sideratio, which alſo calleth thoſe beaſts that haue this diſeaſe Iumenta ſideratitia. The Phyſicians ſaie, that it commeth of aboundance of Phlegme and choler mixt togither, or elſe of melancholie blood, which is a colde drie humour oppreſſing the hinder partes of the braine. But Vegetius ſaith, that it commeth of ſome extreame outward cold, ſtriking ſodainlie into the emptie veines, or ſome extreame heate or rawe digeſtion, or elſe of ſome great hunger, cauſed by long faſting. It is eaſie to knowe by the deſcription before mentioned. And as touching the cure, Vegetius ſaith, that if it come of cold, then it is good to giue him to drinke, one ounce of Laſerpitium, with wine and oile mixt togither, and made lukewarm: if of heat, then to giue it him with water & honey: if of crudity, then to heale him by faſting: if of hunger then by feeding him wel with peaſe. But Martin ſaith, that this diſeaſe is called of the Frenchmen Surprins, & it cometh (as he ſaith) moſt chiefly of cold taken after a heat, & he wiſheth a horſe that is

thus

thus taken, to be cured in this sort. First to be let blood on both sides of the breast, and then to be put in a heate either by continuall stirring and molesting him, or else if he will stir by no means, then to burie him all saue the head in a warme dunghill, & there to let him lie vntill his limmes haue some feeling. And before you so burie him, it shall be good to giue him this drinke. Take of Malmsie three pintes, and put thereunto a quarterne of Suger, & some Cinamon and Cloues, and let him drinke it good & warme, and vntill he be perfectlie whole, let him be kept warme, and often exercised and walked vp and downe in the stable, and thinlie dieted, and drinke nothing but warme water, wherein if you put some Fennell and Parsley seede, to prouoke him to vrine, it shal be the better. And if he cannot dung, let him be raked, and haue a glister made of the broth of Mallowes and fresh butter.

Of the Staggers. Chap. xxi.

THis is a dizzinesse of the head, called of the Latines Vertigo, and of the Italians as I remember Capistura. It commeth of some corrupt blood, or grosse and tough humors oppressing the brain, from whence proceedeth a vaporous spirit, dissolued by a weake heat, which troubleth all the head. The signes be these: dimnesse of sight, the reeling and staggering of the horse, who for very pain will thrust his head against the walles, and forsake his meate. The cure according to Martin is thus. Let him blood in the temple veines, and then with a knife make an hole an inch long ouerthwart his forehead, hard vnderneath his foretop, and raise the skin with a corner, thrusting it vpward towardes the headfall a good handefull, and then put in a taint dipt in Turpentine and hogs greace molten together, renewing the taint euery day once vntil it be whole, and doe the like vpon the ridge of the rumpe, but mee thinkes it were better to do the like in the powle of his head, or nape of his necke, for so shoulde the euill humors haue both waies the easier and spedier passage: and as touching his diet, let him haue continuallie warme drinke, and mashes, and once a daie be walked vp and downe faire and softlie, to exercise his bodie.

Of

Of the falling euill. Chap. xxii.

This is a kind of conuulsion or crampe, called of the Latines by the Greeke name Epilepsia, in Italian, Il morbo caduco, depriuing the beast at certaine times, and for a certaine space of the vse of feeling, hearing, and seeing, and of all the other senses. And although it be a disease that hath beene seldome seene to chance vnto horses of this Countrey, yet it appeareth by Absirtus, and also by Vegetius, and diuers others, that horses be subiect thereunto. For Absirtus writing vnto his friend Tiberius Claudius, saith, that vnto horses chanceth manie times the falling sickneſſe. The signes whereof are these. The horse will fall downe suddenlie, partly through the resolution of his members, and partlie through distension of his sinewes, and all his bodie will quiuer and quake, and sometime he will some at the mouth. *Vegetius* againe writeth in this sort: By a certaine course of the moone horses and other beasts many times do fall, and die for a time as well as men. The signes whereof are these. Being fallen, their bodies will quiuer and quake, & their mouths will some, and when a man would think that they would die out of hand, they rise suddenlie vp and fall to their meat. And by feeling the gristle of their nostrils with your finger, you shall know whether they will fall often or not: for the more colde the gristle be, the oftener, and the lesse cold it be, the seldomer they will fall. The cure. Let him bloud abundantlie in the necke veines, and within fiue daies after let him bloud againe in the temple veins and let him stand in a warme & darke stable, and anoint all his bodie with comfortable ointments, and his head and eares with oile of Baie, and liquid Pitch or Tar, mingled together. And also put some thereof into his eares, and then make a Biggen for him of some soft warme skin, as of a sheepes skin, or else of cannas, stuffed vnderneath with woll, and make him this purging drinke. Take of Radish rootes two ounces, of the root of the herbe called in latin *Panax* or *Panaces*, and of Scammony, of ech one ounce, beat all these things togither, and boile them in a quart of honie, and at sundrie times as you shall see it needefull, giue him a good spoonefull or two of this in a quart of Ale lukewarme, whereunto would be put three or foure spoonefuls of oile. It is good also to

blowe the powder of Motherwort, or of Pyrethrum, vp into his noſtrilles, and if the diſeaſe doe continue ſtill for all this, then it ſhall be néedefull to pearſe the ſkinne of his forehead in diuers places with a hot iron, and to let out the humours oppreſſing his braine.

Of the night Mare. Chap. xxiii.

THis is a diſeaſe oppreſſing either man or beaſt in the night ſeaſon when he ſléepeth, ſo as he cannot drawe his breath, and is called of the Latins *Incubus*. It commeth of a continual crudity or rawe digeſtion of the ſtomach, from whence groſſe vapors aſcending vp into the head, doe oppreſſe the braine, and all the ſenſitiue powers, ſo as they cannot do their office, in giuing perfect feeling and moouing to the body. And if this diſeaſe chancing often to a man, be not cured in time, it may perhaps growe to a worſe miſchiefe, as to the falling euill, madneſſe, or Apoplexie. But I could neuer learn that Horſes were ſubiect to this diſeaſe, neither by relation, nor yet by reading, but only in an old Engliſh writer, who sheweth neither cauſe nor ſignes how to know when a horſe hath it, but only teacheth how to cure it with a fond fooliſhe charme, which becauſe it may perhaps make you gentle Reader to laugh, as wel as it did me, for recreation ſake I will here rehearſe it. Take a flint ſtone that hath a hole of his owne kind, and hang it ouer him, and write in a bill.

In nomine patris, &c.

Saint George our Ladies knight,
He walked day, ſo did he night,
Vntill he hir found,
He hir beate, and he hir bound,
Till truelie hir troth ſhe him plight,
That ſhe would not come within the night,
There as ſaint George our Ladies knight,
Named was thrée times, ſaint George.

And hang this ſcripture ouer him, and let him alone: With ſuch proper charmes as this is, the falſe Friers in times paſſe were wont to charme the money out of plaine folks purſes.

Of the Apoplexie. Chap. xxiiii.

THe Apoplexie, is a diſeaſe depriuing al the whole body of ſenſe & mouing. And if it deprine but part of the bodie, then it is called of the Latins by the Greek name *Paralyſis*, in our tong a palſie. It proceedes of colde, groſſe, and tough humors, oppreſſing the braine all at once, which may breed partlie of crudities and rawe digeſtion, and partlie by meanes of ſome hurt in the head, taken by a fall, ſtripe, or otherwiſe. As touching Apoplexie, fewe or none writing of horſleachcraft doe make anie mention thereof: but of the Palſie Vegetius writeth in this manner. A horſe (ſaith he) may haue the palſie as well as a man, which is knowne by theſe ſignes. He will go grouelling and ſideling like a crab, carrieng his necke awrie, as if it were broken, and goeth crookedlie with his legs, beating his head againſt the wals and yet forſaketh not his meate nor drinke, and his prouender ſeemeth moiſt and wet. The cure. Let him blond in the temple veine, on the contrarie ſide of the wrieng of his neck, and annoint his necke with comfortable ointmente, and ſplent it with ſplents of wood to make it ſtand right, and let him ſtande in a warme ſtable, and giue him ſuch drinkes as are recited in the nert chapter following. But if al this profiteth not, then draw his necke with a hot iron on the contrarie ſide: that is to ſaie, on the whole ſide, from the neather part of the eare downe to the ſhoulders, and drawe alſo a good long ſtrike on his temple, on that ſide and on the other temple make him a little ſtar in this ſort ✳, and from his reines to his mid backe, drawe little lines, in manner of a ragged ſtaffe, and that will heale him.

Of the Crampe or conuulſion of the ſinewes and muſcles. Chap. xxv.

A Conuulſion or crampe, is a forceable and painfull contraction or drawing togither of the ſinewes and muſcles which doe happen ſometime through the whole bodie, and ſometime but in one part or member onelie. And according as the body may be diuerſelie drawne, ſo doe the Phyſicians, and alſo mine authours that write of Horſleachcraft, giue it diuers names. For if the bodie bee drawne forwarde, then

they call it in Greeke Emprosthotonos, in Latin Tensio ad anteriora. And if the bodie be drawne backe, it is called in Greeke Opisthotonos, in Latine Tensio ad posteriora. But if the bodie bee starke and straite, bowing neither forward nor backwarde, then it is called simplie in Greeke Tetanos, in Latine Distensio or Rigor: which names also are applied to the like conuulsions of the necke. Notwithstanding, *Vegetius* writing of this disease, intituleth his chapters de Roboribus, a strange terme, and not to bee found againe in any other Authour. A conuulsion, as I said before, may chance as well to one part or member of the bodie, as to the whole bodie: as to the eie, to the skin of the forehead, to the rootes of the tongue, to the iawes, to the lips, to the arme, hand or legge: that is to saie, whensoeuer the sinew or muscle seruing to the mouing of that part, is euill affected or greeued. Of which conuulsions, though there be manie diuers causes: yet Hippocrates bringeth them all into two: that is to saie, into fulnes and emptinesse: for when a conuulsion proceedeth either of some inflammation of superfluous eating or drinking, or for lack of due purgation, or of ouermuch rest and lacke of exercise, all such causes are to be referred to repletion or fulnes. But if a conuulsion come by meanes of ouermuch purging or bleeding, or much watching, extreame labor, long fasting, or by wounding or pricking of the sinewes, then al such causes are to be referred vnto emptines. And if the conuulsion procéede of fulnesse, it chanceth suddenlie, and all at once, but if of emptinesse, then it commeth by little and little, and leisurelie. Besides these kindes of conuulsions, there is also chancing many times in a mans fingers, legges and toes, another kind of conuulsion, which may be called a windie conuulsion, for that it procédes of some grosse or tough vapor, entred into the branches of the sinewes, which maketh them to swel like a lute string in moist weather, which though it be very painfull for the time, yet it may be soone driuen awaie, by chafing or rubbing the member greeued with a warme cloth. And this kind of conuulsion or crampe chanceth also many times to a Horses hinder legges, stending in the stable. For I haue séene some my selfe, that haue had one of their hinder legges drawne vp with the crampe almost to the bellie, so stiffe and hard as no man hath

béene

bene able to ſtir it, neither could the horſe himſelfe ſet it downe to the ground of a long ſeaſon, which I thinke might be ſome remedied: firſt by continuall chaſing, frotting, or rubbing his leg, with a good wiſpe, and then by tieng vp the other hinder legge, or elſe the foreleg on the ſore ſide, whereby he ſhoulde be forced to ſet down the pained leg. Thus far I haue diſcourſed of the conuulſion of ſinewes, and of the cauſes therof, according to the opinions of the learned Phyſicians. Now I will briefly ſhew you the cauſes, ſignes, and cure thereof, according to the doctrine of mine Authours that write of horſeleach craft. Abſirtus ſaith, that this diſeaſe doeth come, either by driuing the horſe into a ſweate when he halteth, or for that hee hath troden vpon ſome naile, or by taking cold after iournieng and ſweating in winter ſeaſon, whereby his lippes are clung togither, or by long lieng and reſt after ſweating, whereby the ſinewes of his foreleges be nummed, or by hauing ſome ſtripe of his priuie members, or by long trauelling in the cold mountaines, where ſnowe and Iſe doth abounde. For Theomneſtus writeth, that comming out of *Pæonia*, with the king and his army, and paſſing ouer the mountains to go into Italy, there fell ſuch aboundance of ſnowe, as not onelie manie ſouldiours died, ſitting ſtill on their horſes backes, with their weapons in their handes, being ſo ſtarke and ſtiffe, and cleauing ſo faſt to their ſaddles, as they could not eaſilie be pulled out of them: but alſo diuers horſes in their going were ſo nummed as they coulde not bow their legs: yea and ſome were found ſtarke dead, ſtanding ſtill on their feet, and fewe Horſes or none eſcaped at that time free from the conuulſion of ſinewes, inſomuch that Theomneſtus his owne Horſe which hee loued dearelie, was ſore vexed therewith. The ſignes to knowe whether a horſe bee troubled with the conuulſion of the ſinewes or not, be theſe. His head and necke will be ſo ſtiffe and ſtarke as he can bowe it no manner of waie, his eares will ſtand right vp, and his eies will be hollow in his head, and the fleſhie partes thereof in the great corners, will be turned backward, his lips will be clung faſt togither, ſo as hee cannot open his mouth, and his tongue ſo nummed as he can neither eate nor drinke, his backebone and taile will be ſo ſtiffe, as he cannot moue it one waie nor other, and his legs ſo ſtiffe, as

they will not bow, and being laid he is not able to rise, and specially on his hinder legs, but falleth downe on his buttocks, like a dog when he sitteth on the ground, and by meanes of the conuulsion in his backe, his bladder also for neighbour hode sake, suffereth, whereby the horse cannot stale but with great paine. The cure. Put him into a sweate, either by burieng him all saue the head in some warm dunghil, or if he be a horse of price, cary him into a hote house, where is no smoke, and let him sweate there. Then annoint all his body, head, necke, legges, and all with oyle of Cypres, and oile of Baie mingled together. Or else with one of these ointments. Take of hogs grease two pound, of Turpentine halfe a pound, of pepper beaten in powder one dram, of new ware one pound, of olde oile two pound, boile all these together, and being made very warme, annoint all his body therewith. Or else with this ointment. Take of new ware one pound, of Terepentine foure ounces, of oile de Bay as much, of Opopanax two ounces, of Deares sewet, and of oile of Storax, of each three ounces, melt all these together, and annoint all his body therwith. It is good also, to bath his head with the decoction of Fitches, or else of Lupines, and make him this drink. Take xx. graines of long Pepper, finelie beaten into powder, of Cedar two ounces, of Nitre one ounce, of Lacerpitium as much as a Beane, and mingle all these together with a sufficient quantitie of white Wine, and giue him thereof to drinke a quart euery morning and Euening for the space of three or foure daies, or else this drinke. Take of Opopanax two ounces, of Storax three ounces, of Gentian 3. ounces, of Manna Succarie, three ounces, of Myrre one scruple, of long pepper two scruples, and giue him this with old wine: or make him a drink of Lacerpitium, Cumin, Annis seeds, Fenegreeke, Bay berries, and olde oyle. In old time they were wont to let him bloud in the temples, which Absirtus doeth not allowe, saieng, that it will cause the sinewes of his lippes to dry vp, so as the horse not being able to moue them, shall pine for hunger. As touching his diet, giue him at the first warme mashes, and suche soft meat as he may easily get down, and wet hate, bringing him to harder food by little and little. And in any case, let him be kept verie warm, and ridden or walked once a day to exercise his legs

and

and limbs. Theomneſtus cured his horſe, as he ſaieth, by placing him in a warme ſtable, and by making a cleere fire without anie ſmoke round about him, and the horſe not being able to open his iawes of himſelfe, he cauſed his mouth to be opened, and put ther in ſops dipt in a confection called Entrigon conditum, and alſo annointed all his body with a medicine or ointment called Acopũ, (the making whereof hereafter followeth) diſſolued in Cypres oile, which made him to fall into a ſweate, and being before halfe dead and more, brought him again to his feéling and mouing, ſo as he did riſe and eate his meate.

The receipt of the medicine or ointment called Acopum.

TAke of Enforbium two ounces, of Callorcum foure ounces, of Adarces halfe a pound, of Bdellium three ounces, of Pepper one pound, of Fox greaſe two ounces, of Opopanax foure ounces, of Lacerpitium three ounces, of Amoniacum halfe a pound, of pigeons dung as much, of Galbanum two ounces, of Nitrum fiue ounces, of *ſpuma Nitri* three ounces, of Ladanum one pound, of Pyrethrum & of Bay berries, of ech three ounces, of Cardamomum eight ounces, of the ſéed of rew halfe a pound, of the ſéed of *Agnus caſtus* foure ounces, of parſly two ounces, of the dried roots of Ireos, or flower de luce fiue ounces, of Iſop & of Carpobalſamum one pound, of oile of flower de luce and oile de Bay, of ech one pound & a half, of oile of ſpicanard three pound, of oleum Cyprinum three pound & a half of the oldeſt oile oliue that you can poſſible get ſix pound, of pitch not ſmelling of the ſmoke one pound eight ounces, of turpentine one pound. Melt euerie one of theſe that will melt ſeuerallie by themſelues, and then mingle them togither, with the reſt of the ſimples beaten into fine pouder, and after that they haue béene a little boiled on the fire, take it off and ſtrain it into a faire veſſell, and whenſoeuer you will giue your horſe any thereof, giue it him with wine. And if with long kéeping it waxeth hard, then ſoften it with oile of Cypres, ſo as it may be good and thick. This confection is both a medicine & alſo an ointment, and is called of the old writers Acopum: which if it bee put into a Horſes noſtrilles, it will drawe out all noiſome humors, and diſcharge his head of all

græke: yea this medicine healeth all conuulsions, coldes, and drineſſe or withering of the bodie, and driueth awaie all wearineſſe and tiring.

Of the cold in the head. Chap. xxvi.

ACcording as the cold which the horſe hath taken, is new or olde, great or ſmall, and alſo according as humours doe abound in his head, and as ſuch humors be thicke or thinne, ſo is the diſeaſe more or leſſe dangerous. For if the horſe caſteth little or no matter out of his noſe, nor hath no verie great cough, but is onelie heauie in his head, and perhaps lightlie cougheth now and then, it is a ſigne that he is ſtopped in the head, which we were wont to call the poſe. But if his head be full of humors congealed by ſome extreame colde taken of long time paſt, and that he caſteth fowle, filthie, and ſtinking matter out at the noſe, & cougheth grieuouſlie, then it is a ſigne that he hath either the glaunders, or the ſtrangullion, mourning of the cheine, or conſumption of the lunges. For all ſuch diſeaſes doe breed for the moſt part of the rheume, or diſtillation that commeth from the head. Of the cures thereof we leaue to ſpeake, vntil we come to talke of the diſeaſes in the throte, minding here to ſhew you how to heale the poſe or cold before mentioned. Martin ſaith, it is good to purge his head by perfuming him with Frankencence, and alſo to prouoke him to neeſe, by thruſting two gooſe feathers dipt in oile de Bay vp into his noſtrils, and then to trot him vp and downe the ſpace of halfe an houre, for theſe feathers will make him to caſt immediatlie at the noſe. Laurentius Ruſſius would haue him to be perfumed with wheate, Pennerояll, and ſage ſodden well togither, and put into a bag ſo hot as may be, which bagge would be ſo cloſe faſtened to his head, that al the ſauour thereof may aſcend vp into his noſtrils, and his head alſo would be couered and kept warme: and to prouoke him to neeſe, he would haue you to binde a ſoft cloute, annointed with ſope, or elſe with butter and oile de Bate, vnto a ſticke, and to thruſt that vp and downe into his noſtrils, ſo hie as you may conuenientlie go, and let him be kept warme, and drinke no cold water. Yea, it ſhall be good for three or foure daies, to boile in his water a little

Fenegræke,

Fenegreeke, wheate meale, and a few Annis ſeedes. And euerie date after that you haue purged his head by perfuming him, or by making him to neeſe, cauſe him to be trotted vp and downe, either in the warme ſun, or elſe in the houſe halfe an houre, which would be done before you water him, and giue him his prouender.

Of the diſeaſes in the eies. Chap. xxvii.

HOrſes eies be ſubiect to diuers grieſes, as to bee waterish, or bloudſhotten, to be dim of ſight, to haue the pin and web, and the haw, whereof ſome comes of inward cauſes, as of humors reſorting to the eies, and ſome of outward, as of cold, heat, or ſtripe.

Of weeping or watering eies. Chap. xxviii.

THis, as Laurentius Ruſsius ſaith, may come ſometime by confluence of humors, and ſomtime by ſom ſtripe, whoſe cure I leaue to recite, becauſe it doth not differ much from Martins experience here following: take of pitch, roſen and maſticke, a like quantitie, melt them togither. Then with a little ſticke, hauing a clout bound to the end therof, and dipt therein: annoint the temple veines on both ſides, a hand full aboue the eies as broad as a teſterne, and then clap vnto it immediatlie a few flockes, of like coulour to the horſe, holding them cloſe to his head with your hand, vntil they ſticke faſt vnto his head, then let him bloud on both ſides (if both ſides be infected) a handfull vnder the eies. Ruſsius alſo thinketh it good, to waſh his eies once a daie with pure white wine, and then to blow therin a little of *Tartarum*, and of Pomis ſtone, beaten into fine pouder.

Of bloudſhotten eies, alſo for a blow, or itching and rubbing in the eies. Chap. xxix.

MArtin neuer vſed any other medicine, than this water here following, wherewith he did alwaies heale the forſaid grieſes: take of pure roſe water, of malmeſie, of Fenell water, of ech three ſpoonefuls, of Tutia as much

as

as you may eaſilie take with your thumbe and finger, of cloues a doſen beaten into fine powder, mingle them well togither, and being lukewarme, or cold if you will, waſh the inward partes of the eie with a feather dipt therein twice a daie vntill he be whole Ruſsius ſaith, that to bloodſhotten eies it is good to laie the white of an egge, or to waſh them with the iuice of Celidonie.

Of dimneſſe of ſight, and alſo for the pin and web, or any other ſpot in the eie. Chap. xxx.

IF the horſe be dim of ſight, or hath anie pearle growing in his eie, or thinne filme couering the ball of his eie, than Ruſsius wold haue you take of pommis ſtone of tartarum, and of ſal Gemma, of each like weight, and being beaten into very fine powder, to blowe a little of that into his eie, continuing ſo to doe euery daie once or twice, vntill he be whole. Martin ſaith, that he alwaies vſed to blowe a little ſandiuoire into the eie once a day, which ſimple he affirmeth to be of ſuch force, as it will breake any pearle or web in ſhort ſpace, and make the eie verie cleare and faire. *Ruſsius* amongſt a number of other medicines praiſeth moſt of all the powder of a black flint ſtone.

Of the Haw called of the Italians, Il vnghia de gli occhi. Chap. xxxi.

THis is a griſtle couering ſomtime more than the one halfe of the eie. It proceedeth of groſſe and tough humors, deſcending out of the head, which Haw, as Martin ſaith, would be cut away in this ſort. Firſt pul both the eie lids open with two ſeuerall threds, ſtitched with a needle to either of the lids. Then catch hold of the Haw with the ſtitch of an other needle and thred, and pull it out ſo farre as you may ſtate it vpon your finger, to the intent that you may cutte it rounde the bredth of a pennie, and leaue the blacke behind. For by cutting away too much of the fat and black of the eie, the horſe many times becommeth bleare eied. And the haw being cleane taken awaie, ſquirt a little white wine or beere into his eie.

Of

Of Lunatike eies. Chap. xxxii.

VEgetius writeth *De oculo lunatico*, but he ſheweth neither cauſe nor ſignes thereof: but onelie ſaith that the olde men termed it ſo, becauſe it maketh the eie ſomtime to loke as though it were couered with white, and ſometime cleare.

Martin ſaith, that the horſe that hath this diſeaſe, is blind at certaine times of the Moone, inſomuch as he ſeeth almoſt nothing at all during that time, and then his eies will loke yellowiſh: yea, and ſomewhat reddiſh, which diſeaſe according to *Martin*, is to be cured in this ſort. Firſt vſe the plaiſter mentioned before in the chapter of waterish or weeping eies, in ſuch order as is there preſcribed, and then with a ſharpe knife make two ſlits on both ſides of his head, an inche long, ſomewhat towards the noſe, a handfull beneath the eies not touching the veine: and with a cornet looſen the ſkin vpward the breadth of a groat, and thruſt therein a round peece of leather, as broad as a two pennie peece, with a hole in the midſt to keepe the hole open and looke to it once a daie, that the matter may not be ſtopped but continuallie run the ſpace of ten daies, then take the leather out, and heale the wounde with a little flax dipt in the ſalue here following. Take of Turpentine, of honie, of ware, of each like quantitie and boile them togither, which being a little warmed, will be liquid to ſerue your purpoſe and take not awaie the plaiſters from the temples vntill they fal awaie of themſelues, which being fallen, then with a ſmall hote drawing iron, make a ſtarre in the middeſt of each temple veine where the plaiſter did lie. Which ſtarre would haue a hole in the middeſt made with the button ende of your drawing iron in this ſort.

Of the Canker in the eie. Chap. xxxiii.

THis commeth of a ranke and corrupt blood diſcending from the head into the eie. The ſignes. You ſhall ſee redde pimples, ſome ſmall and ſome great, both within and without vpon the eie liddes, and all the eie will loke redde, and be full of corrupt matter. The cure according to Martin is thus. Firſt let him bloud on that ſide the necke that the

eie

eie is greéued, the quantitie of a pottle. Then take of Roch alum, of greéne Copoꝛas of each halfe a pound, of white Copoꝛas one ounce, and boile them in thꝛée pints of running water vntill the halfe be conſumed, then take it from the fire, and once a day waſh his eie with this water being made lukewarme, with a fine linnen cloth, and cleanſe the eie therewith ſo oft as it may looke raw, continuing thus to do euery daie once vntill it be whole.

Of diſeaſes incident to the eares, and poll of the head, and firſt of an impoſtume in the eare. Chap. xxxiiii.

IMpoſtumes bꝛéed either by reaſon of ſome blowe oꝛ bꝛuſing, oꝛ elſe of euill humoꝛs congealed in the eare by ſom extreame colde, the ſignes be apparant, by the burning and painfull ſwelling of the eare and partes thereabout. The cure accoꝛding to Martin is in this ſoꝛt. Firſt, ripe the impoſtume with this plaiſter. Take of Lineſeed beaten into powder, of wheat flower, of each halfe a pinte, of honie a pint, of hogges greaſe oꝛ barrowes greaſe one pound. Warme all theſe thinges togither in an earthen pot, and ſtir them continuallie with a flat ſticke oꝛ ſlice, vntill they be thꝛoughlie mingled and incoꝛpoꝛated togither, and then ſpꝛead ſome of this plaiſter being warme vpon a péece of Linnen cloth, oꝛ ſoft white leather, ſo bꝛoade as the ſwelling and no moꝛe, and laie it warme vnto it, and ſo let it remaine one whole daie, and then renewe it with freſhe ointment, continuing ſo to doe vntill it bꝛeake, then lance the ſoꝛe, ſo as the matter may haue paſſage downward, and taint it to the bottom with a taint of flax dipt in this ointment: take of Mel roſatum, of oyle oliue and turpentine, of each twoe ounces, and mingle them togither, and make him a biggen of Canuas to cloſe in the ſoꝛe, ſo as the taint with the ointment may abide within, renewing the taint once a daie, vntill it be whole. But if the hoꝛſe haue paine in his eares, without any great ſwelling oꝛ impoſtumation, then thꝛuſt in a little blacke woll dipt in oyle of Camomell, and that will heale it.

Of

Of the Poll euill. Chap. xxxb.

THis is a diſeaſe like a Fiſtula growing betwixte the eares and the poll or nape of the necke, and proceedeth of euill humors gathered togither in that place, or elſe of ſome blow or bruſe, for that is the weakeſt and tendereſt part of al the hed, and therefore ſoneſt offended, which rude Carters doe little conſider, whileſt in their furie they beate their horſes vpon that place of the head with their whipſtocks, and therefore no horſe is more ſubiect to this diſeaſe then cart horſes, and this diſeaſe commeth moſt in Winter ſeaſon. The ſignes. You ſhal perceiue it by the ſwelling of the place, which by continuance of time will breake of it ſelfe, rotting more inward then outward, and therefore is more perillous if it be not cured in time, and the ſoner it be taken in hand the better. The cure according to Martin is thus. If it be not broken, ripe it with a plaiſter of hogges greace laide vnto it ſo hot as may be, and make a biggen for the Poll of his head to keepe it from colde, which biggen would haue two holes open, ſo as his eares may ſtande out, and renewe the plaiſter euerie date once vntil it breake, keeping the fore place as warme as may be. And if you ſée that it will not breake ſo ſone as you would haue it, then there as it is ſofteſt and moſt méeteſt to be opened: take a round hot iron, as big as your little finger, and ſharpe at the point, and twoe inches beneath that ſoft place, thruſt it in a good déepeneſſe vpward, ſo as the point of the Iron may come out at the ripeſt place, to the intent that the matter may deſcend downeward, and come out at the nether hole, which would be alwaies kept open, and therefore taint it with a taint of flaxe dipt in hogs greaſe, and lay a plaiſter of hogs greaſe alſo vpon the ſame, renewing it euery date once the ſpace of four daies, which is doone chieflie to kill the heat of the fire. Then at the foure daies end, take of turpentine halfe a pound, clean waſhed in nine ſundrie waters, and after that throughlie dried, by thruſting out the water with a ſlice on the diſhes ſide, then put thereunto two yolkes of egges, and a little ſaffron, and mingle them well togither: that done, ſearch the depth of the hole with a whole quill, and make a taint of a peece of ſponge, ſo long as it may reach the bottome, and ſo big as it may fill the wounde, and annoint the taint

with the foresaide ointment, and thrust it into the wounde, either with that quil, or else by winding it vp with your finger e thumb, by little and little vntill you haue thrust it home: and then lay on the plaister of hogs greace made luke warme, renuing it euerie day once or twice vntill it be whole. But if the swelling cease, then you néed not to vse the plaister, but onelie to taint it, and as the matter decreaseth, so make your tainte euery daie lesser and lesser, vntill the wound be perfectlie whole.

Of the Vines. Chap. xxxvi.

The Vines be certain kirnels growing vnder the horses eare, proceeding of some ranke or corrupt blood resorting to that place, which within are ful of litle white graines, like white salt kirnels. The Italians cal them *Vmole*, which if they be suffered to grow, Laurentius Rusius saith, that they will grieuouslie paine the horse in his throate, so as hee shall not be able to swallow his meat, nor to breath. They be easie to knowe, for they may be felt and also seene. The cure according vnto Martin, is in this sort. First draw them right downe in the midst with a hot iron, from the roote of the eare, so farre as the tip of the eare will reach, being pulled downe: and vnder the roote againe draw two strikes on each side, like an arrowe head in this forme then in the midst of the first line, launce them with a lancet, and taking hold of the kirnels, with a paire of pinsons, pull them so farre forward, as you may cut the kirnels out without hurting the veine, that done, fill the hole with white salt. But Hierocles would haue them to bee cured in this sort: take a peece of spunge stewed well in strong vineger, e bind that to the sore, renewing it twice a daie vntill it hath rotted the kirnels, that done, lance it in the nethermost part where the matter lieth, and let it out, and then fill it vppe with salt finelie brated, and the next daie wash all the filth awaie with warme water, and annoint the place with honie and fitche flower mingled together. But beware you touch none of the kirnels with your bare finger for feare of venoming the place, which is very apt for a Fistula to breed in.

Of

Of the canderous Vlcer in the noſe. Chap. xxxvii.

THis diſeaſe is a fretting humor, eating & conſuming the fleſh, and making it all raw within, and not being holpen in time will eat through the griſtle of the noſe. It commeth of a corrupt bloud, or elſe of ſharpe humors ingendred by means of ſome extreame cold. The ſignes be theſe. He will bleed at the noſe, and all the fleſh within will be raw, and filthy ſtinking ſauours, and matter will come out at his noſe. The cure according to Martin is thus. Take of grẽn coporas, of Alum, of each one pound, of white Coporas one quarterne, and boile theſe in a pottle of running water, vntill a pinte be conſumed, then take it of, and put thereunto halfe a pint of hony: then cauſe his head to be holden vp with a drinking ſtaffe, and ſquirt into his noſtrils with a ſquirt of braſſe, or rather of Elder, ſom of this water being luke warme, three or foure times one after another, but betwixt euery ſquirting, giue him libertyto hold down his head, and to blow out the filthy matter, for otherwiſe perhaps you may choke him. And after this it ſhall bee good alſo without holding vp his head any more, to waſh and rub his noſtrils with a fine clout bound to a white ſticks end, and wette in the water aforeſaid, and ſerue him thus once a daie vntill he be whole.

Of bleeding at the noſe. Chap. xxxviii.

I haue ſeene Horſes my ſelfe, that haue bled at the noſe, which haue had neither ſore nor vlcer in their noſe, and therefore I cannot chooſe, but ſaie with the Phyſicians, that it commeth by meanes that the veine which endeth in that place, is either opened, broken or fretted. It is opened many times by meanes that bloud aboundeth too much, or for that it is too fine, or too ſubtill, and ſo pierceth through the veine. Againe it may be broken by ſome violent ſtrain, cut or blowe. And finallie, it may be fretted or gnawn through, by the ſharpneſſe of the bloud, or elſe of ſome other euill humour conteined therein. As touching the cure, Martin ſaith, it is good to take a pint of red wine, and to put therein a quarterne of Bole Armeni, beaten into fine powder, and being made luke warme, to poure the one halfe thereof the firſt day into his noſtrill that bleedeth, cauſing his head to

be

be holden vp, so as the liquor may not fall out: and the next daie to giue him the other haife. But if this preuaileth not, then I for my part would cause him to be let bloud in the breſt veine, on the ſame ſide that he bleedeth at ſeuerall times: then take of Frankencenſe one ounce, of Aloes haife an ounce, and beat them into powder, and mingle them throughlie with the whites of egges, vntill it be so thicke as honie, and with ſoft Hares haire, thruſt it vp into his noſtril, filling the hole so full, as it cannot fall out, or elſe fil his noſtrils full of Aſſes dung, or hogs dung, for either of them is excellent good to reſtraine any floxe of bloud.

Of the diſeaſes in the mouth, and firſt of the bloudy rifts or chops in the palat of the mouth. Chap. xxxix.

THis diſeaſe is called of the Italians Palatina, which as Laurentius Ruſsius ſaith, commeth by eating haie or prouender that is ful of pricking ſeedes, which by continual pricking and fretting the furrows of the mouth do cauſe them to rankle, and to bleed corrupt and ſtinking matter, which you ſhall quicklie remedie, as Martin ſaith, by waſhing firſt the ſore places with vineger and ſalte, and then by annointing the ſame with honie.

Of the bladders in a horſes mouth, which our old Ferrers were woont to call the Gigges. The Italians call them Froncelle. Chap. xl.

THeſe be little ſoft ſwellings or rather puſtuls with blacke heades, growing in the inſide of his lips, next vnto the great iawe teeth, which are so painfull vnto the horſe, as they make him to let his meat fall out of his mouth, or at ỳ leaſt to kéep it in his mouth vnchawed, wherby the horſe proſpereth not. Ruſsius ſaith, that they come either by eating too much cold graſſe, or elſe of pricking, duſtie, and filthie prouender. The cure whereof, according to Martin, is in this ſort. Slit them with a launcet, and thruſt out all the corruption, and then waſh the ſore places with a little vineger and ſalte, or elſe with Alum water.

Of

Of the Lampasse. Chap. xli.

THe Lampasse, called of the Italians *Lampascus*, proceedeth of the abundance of blood, resorting to the first forrowe of the mouth, I meane that which is next vnto the vpper forefeeth, causing the said forrowe to swell so high as the horses teeth, so as he cannot chaw his meate, but is forced to let it fall out of his mouth. The remedie is to cut all the superfluous flesh away, with a crooked hot iron made of purpose, which euery Smith can do.

Of the Canker in the mouth. Chap. xlii.

THis disease, as Martin saith, is a rawnesse of the mouth and tongue, which is full of blisters, so as he cannot eate his meate. Which procéedes of some vnnaturall heat, comming from the stomach. For the cure whereof, take of Alum halfe a pound, of honie a quarter of a pint, of columbine leaues, of Sage leaues, of ech a handfull: boile all these together in three pints of water, vntill a pinte be consumed, and wash the sore places therewith so as it may bléed, continuing so to do euerie daie once vntill it be whole.

Of the heat in the mouth and lips. Chap. xliii.

SOmetime the heate that commeth out of the stomach bréédeth no canker, but maketh the mouth hote, & causeth the horse to forsake his meat. The cure therof, as Martin saith, is in this sort. First, turne vp his vpper lippe, and lagge it lightlie with a launcet, so as it may bléed, and then wash both that and all his mouth and tong with vineger and salt.

Of the tong being hurt with the bit or otherwise. Chap. xliiii.

IF the tongue be cut or hurt any manner of waie, Martin saith, it is good first to washe it with Alum water, and then to take the leaues of blacke Bramble and to choppe them together small with a little lard, that done to binde it vp in a little clowte, making it round like a ball, then hauing dipt the round end in honie, to rubbe the tongue therewith: con-

169.

tinuing so to doe once a day vntill it be whole.

Of the Warbles, or Pappes vnderneath the tongue. Chap. xlv.

THese be two little pappes, called of the Italians Barbole, growing naturallie (as I think) in euery Horses mouth vnderneath ẏ tong, in the neather lawes, which if they shoot out of any length, *Rusius* saith, that they will hinder the horses feeding, and therfore he and Martin also would haue them to be clipt away with a paire of sheeres, and that done, the Horses mouth to be washed with vineger and salt.

Of the paine in the teeth and gummes, of the Woolfes teeth, and Jaw teeth. Chap. xlvi.

A Horse may haue pain in his teeth, partly by discent of humors from his head, downe into his teeth and gummes, which is to bee perceiued by the rankenesse and swelling of the gums, and partlie by hauing two extraordinarie teeth called the Woolfes teeth, which be two little teeth growing in the vpper lawes, next vnto the great grinding teethe, which are so painfull to the horse, as he cannot endure to chaw his meate, but is forced either to lette it fall out of his mouth, or else to keepe it still halfe chawed, whereby the horse prospereth not, but wareth leane and poore, and he will do the like also when his vpper Jawe teeth be so farre growne as they ouerhang the nether Jaw teeth, and therwith be so sharp, as in mouing his lawes they cut & race the insides of his cheekes, euen as they were raced with a knife. And first as touching the cure of the paine in the teeth, that commeth by meanes of some distillation: Vegetius saith, it is good to rub all the outside of his gummes with fine chalke and strong vineger mingled togither, or else after that you haue washed the gummes with vineger, to strowe on them the powder of Pomegranate pilles. But me thinkes that besides this, it were not amisse to stop the temple veines, with the plaister before mentioned, in the chapter of weeping and waterish eies. The cure of the Woolfes teeth, and of the Iaw teeth according to Martin is in this sort. First cause the horse head to be tied vp to som rafter or poll,

and

and his mouth to be opened with a corde, ſo wide as you may eaſilie ſee euery part thereof. Then take a round ſtrong iron tool, half a yard long, and made at the one ende in all points like vnto the Carpenters gouge, wherewith he pierceth his holes to bee bored with a wimble or augor, and with your left hande ſet the edge of your toole at the foote of the Wolfes teethe, on the outſide of the iawe, turning the hollowe ſide of the toole downeward, holdinge your hand ſteadilie, ſo as the tole may not ſlip nor ſwarue from the foreſaid toth: then hauing a mallet in your right hand ſtrike vpon the head of the tole one prettie blow, and therwith you ſhal loſen the toth, and cauſe it to bend inward: then ſtaieng the midſt of your tole vpon the horſes neather iawe, wrinche the tothe outward, with the inſide or hollow ſide of the tole, and thruſt it clean out of his head: that done, ſerue the other Wolfes toth on the other ſide in like maner, and fill vp the empty places with ſalt finelie beated. But if the vpper iawe teeth do alſo ouerhang the neather teeth, and ſo cut the inſide of his mouth as is aforeſaide, then keeping his mouth ſtill open, take your tole and mallet, and pare all thoſe teethe ſhorter, running alongſt them euen from the firſt vnto the laſt, turning the hollow ſide of your tool towards the teeth ſo ſhal not the tole cut the inſides of his cheeks, the back or round ſide being turned toward the foreſaid cheekes, and that done waſh all his mouth with vineger and ſalt, and let him go.

Why the diſeaſes in the necke, withers, and backe, be declared here before the diſeaſes in the throte. Chap. xlvii.

HAuing hitherto ſpoken of the diſeaſes incident to a horſes hed, and to al the parts therof, natural order requireth that we ſhuld now deſcend into the throte, as a part next adiacent to the mouth. But forſomuch as the diſeaſes in the throte haue not onlie affinitie with the hed, but alſo with the lungs & other inward parts, which are many times greeued by means of diſtillation comming from the hed, and thorough the throte: I wil ſpeak of the diſeaſes incident to the neck, withers, and backe of a horſe, to the intent that when I come to talke of ſuch diſeaſes, as rheumes and diſtillations doe cauſe, I

may diſcourſe of them orderly without interruption.

Of the Cricke in the necke. Chap. xlviii.

BEcauſe a crick is no other thing but a kind of conuulſion, and for that we haue ſpoken ſufficientlie before of all the kindes thereof in the chapter of conuulſion: I purpoſe not here therefore to trouble you with many words, but only ſhew you Ruſsius opinion, and alſo Martins experience therin. The crick then called of the Italians *Scima* or *Lucerdo* according to Ruſsius, yea and according to Martin is, when the horſe cannot turne his necke any maner of waie, but hold it ſtill right forth, inſomuch as he cannot take his meate from the ground but by times, and that very ſlowlie. Ruſsius ſaith it commeth by meanes of ſome great weight laide on the horſes ſhoulders, or elſe by ouermuch drieng vppe of the ſinewes in the neck. The cure whereof according to *Martin* is in this ſort. Draw him with a hot iron from the rot of the eare on both ſides of the neck, through the midſt of the ſame euen downe to the breaſt, a ſtrawe déepe, ſo as both ends may méet vpon the breaſt: then make a hole in his forehead, hard vnder the foretop, and thruſt in a cornet vpward betwixt the ſkin and the fleſhe a handfull déepe, then put in a gooſe feather, doubled in the midſt and annointed with Hogges greaſe, to kéepe the hole open, to the intent the matter may run out the ſpace of ten daies. But euerie daie during that time, the hole muſt be cleanſed once, and the feather alſo cleanſed and freſh annointed, and ſo put in againe. And once a daie let him ſtand vp on the bit one hour or two, or be ridden two or three miles abroad by ſuch a one as will beare his head, and make him to bring it in. But if the cricke be ſuch as the horſe cannot hold his neck ſtraight, but cleane awrie, as I haue ſéene diuers my ſelfe: then I thinke it not good that the horſe be drawne with a hot iron on both ſides of the necke, but onlie on the contrarie ſide. As for example, if he bend his head toward the right ſide, then to draw him as is aforeſaid onelie on the left ſide, & to vſe the reſt of the cure as is aboueſaid, and if néed be you may ſplent him alſo with handſome ſtaues méet for the purpoſe to make his necke ſtand right.

Of

Of wennes in the necke. Chap. xlix.

A Wen, is a certaine kirnell like a tumor or ſwelling, the inſide wherof is hard like a griſtle, and ſpongious like a ſkin full of wettes. Of wens, ſome be great, and ſome be ſmall. Againe, ſome be very painefull, and ſome not painefull at all. The Phyſicians ſaie, that they proceede of groſſe and vicious humors, but Vegetius ſaith that they chance to a horſe by taking cold, or by drinking of waters that be extreame colde. The cure according to Martin is thus: take of Mallowes, Sage, and red nettles, of each one handfull, boile them in running water, and put thereunto a little butter, and honie, and when the hearbes be ſoft, take them out and all to bruſe them, and put therunto of oile of Bay two ounces, and two ounces of hogs greaſe, and warme them togither ouer the fire, mingling them well togither, that done, plaiſter it vppon a peece of leather ſo big as the Wenne, and lay it to ſo hot as the horſe may indure it, renewing it euery day in ſuch ſorte, the ſpace of eight daies, and if you perceiue that it will come to no head, then launce it from the midſt of the Wen downeward, ſo deepe as the matter in the bottome may be diſcouered and let out, that doone, heale it vppe with this ſalue: take of Turpentine a quarter, and waſhe it nine times in faire new water, then put thereunto the yolke of an egge, and a little Engliſh Saffron beaten into powder, and make a taint or rowle of Flare, and dip it in that ointment, and laye it vnto the ſore, renewing the ſame euerie daie once vntill it be whole.

Of ſwelling in the necke after bloudletting. Chap. l.

THis may come of the fleame being ruſty, and ſo cauſing the veine to rankle, or elſe by meanes of ſome cold wind ſtriking ſuddenlie into the hole. The cure according to Martin is thus. Firſt annoint it with oile of Camomell warmed, and then laie vpon it a little hay wet in cold water, and binde it about with a cloth, renewing it euerie daie the ſpace of fiue or ſix daies, to ſee whether it will grow to a head, or els vaniſh away. If it grow to a head, then giue it a ſlit with a launcet: and open it with a Cornet that the matter may come out. Then heale it vp, by tainting it with Flare dipt in Turpentine and Hogs

greaſe molten togither, dꝛelling it ſo once a day vntil it be whole.

How to ſtaunch bloud. Chap. ii.

IF a hoꝛſe be let bloud when the ſigne is in the necke, the veine perhaps will not leaue bléeding ſo ſoone as a man would haue it, which if any ſuch thinge chance, then Ruſſius ſaith, it is good to binde thereunto a little new hoꝛſe dung tempered with chalke and ſtrong vineger, and not to remoue it from thence the ſpace of thꝛée daies, oꝛ elſe to lay thereunto burnt ſilke, felt, oꝛ cloth, foꝛ all ſuch thinges will ſtaunche bloud.

Of the falling of the Creſt. Chap. iii.

THis commeth foꝛ the moſt part of ponertie, and ſpecially when a fat hoꝛſe falleth away ſodainly. The cure according to Martin is thus. Dꝛawe his Creaſt the dæpeneſſe of a ſtrawe, on the contrary ſide with a hot iron, the edge of which iron woulde be halfe an inche bꝛoade, and make your beginning and ending ſomewhat beyond the fall, ſo as the firſt dꝛaught may go all the way harde vppon the edge of the maine, euen vnderneath the rootes of the ſame, bearing your hand right downward, into the neckeward, then anſwere that with another dꝛaught beneath, and ſo farre diſtant from the firſt, as the fall is bꝛoade, compaſſing as it were all the fall: but ſtill on the contrarie ſide: and betwirt thoſe two dꝛaughts right in the middeſt, dꝛawe a third dꝛaught, then with a button iron of an inch about, burne at eche end a hole, and alſo in the ſpaces betwirt the dꝛaughts, make diuers holes diſtant thꝛée fingers bꝛode one from another, as this figure doth ſhew you: that done, to ſlake the fire annointe it euery daie once, foꝛ the ſpace of nine daies with a fether dipt in freſh butter moulten. Then take of Mallowes and of Sage, of each one a handfull, boile them well in running water, and waſh the burning away vntill it be rawe fleſh, then dꝛie it vppe with this pouder. Take of hony half a pint, and ſo much vnſlact lime as will make that honie thicke like paaſt: then holde it in a fire



pan

pan ouer the fire vntil it be baked ſo hard, as it may be made in powder, and ſprinkle that vpon the ſore places.

Of the manginelle of the maine. Chap. liii.

The mangines proceedeth of rankenelle of bloud, or of pouertie, of lowſinelle, or elſe of rubbing where a mangie horſe hath rubbed, or of filthy duſt lieng in the maine for lacke of good dreſſing. The ſignes be apparant by the itching and rubbing of the horſe, and the ſcabbes, fretting both flesh and ſkin. The cure according to Martin, is thus: take of freſh greaſe one pound, of quickſiluer halfe an ounce, of Brimſtone one ounce, of rape oile halfe a pint, mingle them togither, and ſtirre them continuallie in a pot with a ſlice, vntill the quickſiluer be ſo wrought with the reſt, as you ſhall perceiue no quickſiluer therein. That done, take a blunt knife, or an old horſe combe, and ſcratch all the mangy places therewith vntill it bee rawe & bloudie, & then annoint it with this ointment, in the ſunſhine if it may be, to the intent the ointment may ſinke in: or elſe hold before it a fire pan or ſome broad barre of iron made hot, to make the ointment to melt into the flesh. And if you ſée that with in the ſpace of three dates after, with this once annointing, hee leaue not rubbing, then marke in what place he rubbeth, & dreſſe that place againe, and you ſhall ſée it heale quicklie.

Of the falling of the haire of the maine. Chap. liiii.

It falleth for the moſte part, becauſe it is eaten with little wormes, fretting the rootes in ſunder, which according to Martin you ſhall remedie in this ſort. Annoint the maine & creaſt with ſope, then make ſtrong lie, and waſh all the maine and creaſt withall, and that will kill the wormes, within twice or thrice waſhing.

Of griefes in the withers. Chap. lv.

If a horſes withers and back, do chance many griefs and ſorances, which as Ruſsius ſaith, doe ſometime proceed of inward cauſes, as of the corruption of humors & ſomtime of outward cauſes, as through the galling &

pinching of ſome naughtie ſaddle, or by ſome heauy burthen laid on the horſes backe or ſuch like. And of ſuch griefes, ſome be but ſuperficiall bliſters, ſwellings, light galles, or bruiſinges: and be eaſilie cured. Some againe doe pierce to the very bone, and bee dangerous, and ſpecially if they be nigh the backe bone: lette vs firſt then ſhew you the cure of the ſmaller griefes, and then of the greater.

Of biſtringes, or ſmall ſwellings in the withers or backe, and of gallinges. Chap. lvi.

WHenſoeuer you ſee any ſwelling riſe, then Martin wold haue you to binde a little hotte horſe dung vnto it, and that will aſſwage it. If not, then to pricke it rounde about the ſwelling, either with a fleame, or elſe with a ſharpe pointed knife not too deepe, but ſo as it may pierce the ſkin and make the bloud to iſſue forth. That doone, take of Mallowes or elſe of ſmallage, two or three handfuls, and boile them in running water vntill they be ſo ſoft as pap. Then ſtrain the water ſoftlie from it, and bruſe the hearbs in a treane diſhe, putting thereunto a little hogs greaſe, or elſe ſallet oile, or ſheepes ſewet, or any other freſhe greace, boile them and ſtirre them together, not frieng them hard, but ſo as it may be ſoft and ſupple, and then with a clowte lay it warme vpon the ſore, renewing it euery day once vntill the ſwelling bee gone. For this will either driue it awaie, or elſe bring it to a head, which lightlie chanceth not, vnleſſe there be ſome griſtle or bone periſhed. *Ruſius* biddeth you, ſo ſone as you ſee any ſwelling riſe, to ſhaue the place with a raſor and laie thereunto this plaiſter: take a little wheate flower and the white of an egge beaten together, and ſpread it on a linnen clout, which being laide vnto the ſwelling two or three daies and not remoued, will bring it to a head, and when you come to take it off, pull it away ſo ſoftlie as you can poſſible, and whereas you ſee the corruption gathered together, then in the loweſt place thereof, pierce it vpward with a ſharpe iron ſomewhat hot, that the corruption may come out, and annoint the ſore place euerie day once with freſh butter, or Hogges greace, but if the ſkin bee onelie chafed off, without any ſwelling, then waſh the place with water

water and salt, or else with warme wine, and sprinkle this powder thereon: take of vnslead lime beaten into fine powder, and mingle it with honie vntill it be so thicke as paast, & make rolles or balles therof and bake them in a fire panne ouer the fire, vntil they be so harde as they may bee brought to powder, for this is a very good powder to drie vp any galling or sore. The powder of Mirre or burnt silke, sealt, or cloth or any olde post, is also good for such purposes, but whensoeuer you vse this powder of Lime and hony, let the place be first washed, as is afore said.

Of great swellings and inflammations in a Horses withers. Chap. lvii.

IF the swelling be very great, then the cure according to *Martin* is thus. First draw round about the swelling with a hot iron, & then crosse him with the same iron in this manner, then take a round hot iron hauing a sharp point, & thrust it into the swelling place on eche side vpwarde toward the point of the withers to the intent that the matter may issue downward at both the holes. That doone, taint both the holes first with a taint dipt in hogs grease to kil the fire, and also annoint all the other burnt places therewith, continuing so to do vntil the swelling be asswaged, renuing the taints euerie daie once, vntil the fierie matter be fallen away, and then taint him againe with washed turpentine mingled with yolkes of egges and saffron, in such manner as hath beene afore said, renewing the taint euery daie once vntil it be whole. If you see that the swelling for all this go not away, then it is a signe of som impostumation within, and therefore it shall be necessary to launce it, and to let out the corruption, then take of hony halfe a pint, of Verdigrease two ounces beaten to powder, and mingle it together with the hony, then boile them in a pot vntill it loke redde, then being lukewarme, make either a taint or plaister, according as the wound shall require, renewing the same euery day once, vntill it be whole. But the sore may bee so vehement, that for lacke of loking to in time, it will pearce downewarde betwirte both

both ſhoulders towards the intrailes, which is very dangerous: yea, and as Ruſsius ſaith, mortall, becauſe the corruption of the ſore infecting the lungs and hart (which be the vitall parts & cheef preſeruers of life) the body muſte néedes decaie. And therefore Martin would haue you to fill the hole with the ſalue laſt mentioned, and to thruſt in after it a péece of a ſpunge, as well to kéep the hole open, as alſo to ſucke out the corruption, renewing it euerie daie once, vntill it be whole.

Of the hornes or harde knobs, growing vnder the ſaddle ſide. Chap. lviii.

THis is a dead ſkin like a péece of leather, called of the Italians Corno, that is to ſaie a horne, for that it is hard vnder hande, and commeth by meanes of ſome ſtrait ſaddle, pinching the horſe more on the one ſide than on the other: or elſe on both ſides equallie. The cure whereof according to Martin, is in this ſort. Annoint them with freſh butter or hogs greace, vntil they be mollified and made ſo ſoft as you may either cut them, or pull them away, and then waſh ẏ wound with mans ſtale, or with white wine, and drie it vp with powder of vnſleact lime mixt with hony.

Of wennes or knobbes growing aboue the ſaddle ſkirts. Chap. lix.

THeſe be great hard knobs growing moſt commonlie betwixt two ribbes, apparant to the eie, which by their hardneſſe ſéeme to come of ſome old bruſe, and are called of the Italians le Curſ. The cure whereof, according to *Martin* is thus. Firſt mollifie them, by annointing them with hot Hogs greaſe euery day once or twice, the ſpace of eight daies, and if you perceiue that it will come to no head with this, then lance it from the middle downeward, that the matter may come out: then taint it with waſhed turpentine, yolks of egges, and ſaffron mingled togither as is afore ſaid, renewing the taint euery day once vntill it be whole.

Of

Of the Nauill gall. Chap. lx.

THe Nauill gall is a bruſe on the back behind the ſaddle right againſt the Nauill of the horſe, and thereof it taketh his Name. It commeth either by ſplitting of the ſaddle behind, or for lack of ſtuffing, or by meanes of the hinder buckle fretting that place, or elſe by ſome great weight laid on his back: you ſhall perceiue it by the puffed vp, and ſpungie fleſh, looking like rotten lights or lunges, and therefore is called of the Italians *Pulmone*, or Pulmoncello. The cure wherof, according to Martin, is thus. Cut it round about with a ſharp knife or raſor, euen to the bone, leauing no rotten fleſhe behinde: that done, take the white of an egge and ſalte beaten togither, and lay that plaiſter wiſe to the ſore vpon a little towe, renewing it once a day the ſpace of two daies. Then take of honie a quarterne of a pint, and of Verdigreaſe one ounce beaten into powder, and boile them togither in a pot, ſtirring it ſtill vntill it looke red, and being lukewarme, make a plaiſter with towe and clap it to the wound, waſhing and clenſing well the wound firſt with a little warme vineger or white wine, continuing ſo to doe once a daie, vntill it begin to heale and to ſkin, then drie it vp, by ſprinkling thereon this powder following. Take of hony a quarterne, and as much of vnſlect lime as will thicken the honie like vnto paſt, & in a fire pan ouer the fire, ſtir it ſtil vntil it be hard baked, ſo as it may be beaten into powder: but before you throwe on the powder, waſh the wound firſt with warme vineger, continuing ſo to doe vntill it be perfectlie ſkinned and whole.

Of the ſwaying of the backe. Chap. lxi.

THis is called of the Italians, Mal ſeruto, & according to *Ruſſins* and Martins opinions, commeth either by ſom great ſtrain, or elſe by heauie burthens: you ſhal perceiue it by the reeling and rolling of the horſes hinder parts in his going, which will falter many times, and ſway ſome time backward, and ſometime ſideling, and be readie to fall euen to the ground, and the horſe being laide, is ſcant able to get vppe. The Cure, according to Martin is thus. Couer his backe with a Sheepes ſkinne, comming hotte from the Sheepes backe, laying

laieng the fleshie side next vnto his backe, and lay a warme howsing cloth vpon the same to keepe his back as warme as may be, and so let it continue, vntill it begin to smell: then take the olde skinne away, and laie a newe vnto it, continuing so to doe the space of three weekes. And if he amend not with this, then drawe his backe with a hot iron right out on both sides of the ridge of his backe, from the pitche of the buttocks vnto a handeful within the saddle, and then againe ouerthwart, in this sort.



And let euery line bee an inche distant, one from another, but lette not suche strokes be very deepe, and so burned as euery one may loke yellowe, then lay vppon the burning this charge here following. Take of Pitch one pound, of Rosen half a pound, of bole Armonie halfe a pounde made in powder, and halfe a pint of tarre, and boile all these together in a pot, stirring it vntill euery thing be molten, and throughly mingled togither: then being lukewarme, dawbe all the burning therewith verie thicke, and thereupon clap as many Flocks of the horses colour, as you can make to bide on, and remoue it not before it fall awaie of it selfe, and if it bee in Summer, you may turne him to grasse.

Of the weakenesse in the backe. Chap. lxii.

IT doth appeare by Laurentius Rusius, that there is an other kind of weaknesse in the back, called in Italian le gotte, or morsecatura de le reni, that is to say, the fretting or biting of the reines, which as the saide Rusius saith, proceedeth of abundance of humors, resorting to that place, whereby all the hinder partes of the horse doe leese their feeling and strength, and the Horse falleth downe to the grounde: yea, and such humours manye times resorting to the heart, doe suffocate the same, and in two or three houres doe cause the Horse to die. The remedie, according to Rusius, is in this sort. Let him bloud aboundantlie in the necke, and drawe his backe with a hot iron, in such sort as is declared in the last chapter. He saith also, it is good to make him swimme through a riuer, and to rowell him vpon his haunches, nighe the huckle bones: and to make the

haire

haire to grow againe, it is good as he saith, to annoint the place with hogs grease and three leaued grasse stamped togither.

Of Hydebound. Chap. lxiii.

HYde bound, is when the skin cleaueth so fast to the horses back, that a man cannot pul it from the flesh with his hand, which *Ruellius* calleth *Coriago*: it commeth for the most part of pouertie, or else when the horse after some great heat hath been suffered to stand long in the raine or wet weather, for that will cause the skin to shrink, and to cling to his ribs. It is knowne by the leannesse of the horse, and gauntnesse of his belly, and by the fast sticking of his skin vnto his ribs when you pull at it with your hand. The cure according to Martin is thus. Let him bloud on both sides the belly in the flank veines betwixt the flank and the girding place: that done, giue him this drinke. Take a quart of good white wine, or else of good Ale, and put thereunto three ounces of good sallet oyle, of Cummin one ounce, of Annis séedes two ounces, of Licoras two ounces, beaten all into fine pouder, and giue it him lukewarm with a horne. And when he hath drunk, let one standing at his huckle bone, rub him hard with his hand alongest the backe, and ouerthwart the ribs the space of halfe an houre: that doone, set him in a warme stable, and let him stand in litter vp to the bellie, and couer all his backe and ribs with a sack first throughlie soked in a tub of colde water, and then well and hard wrong, and ouer that cast another cloth, and girde it fast with a surcingle, stuffing him well about the backe with fresh strawe, continuing thus to doe euerie daie once the space of a weeke, during which time giue him no cold water but lukewarme, and put therein a little ground mault. The wet sacke will cause the backe to gather heate of it selfe, and the skin to loosen from the flesh, and if you will bestowe more coste, you may annoint all his bodie with wine and oile mingled togither, according to the opinion of the olde writers, which no doubt is a very comfortable thing, and must néedes supple the skin, and loosen it from the flesh.

Of

Of the diſeaſes in the throte and lungs, and why the griefs of the ſhoulders and hippes be not mentioned before, amongſt the griefes of the withers and backe. Chap. lxiiii.

SOme perhaps would ſpeake heere, that forſomuch as I haue declared the diſeaſes of the necke, withers, and back, that I ſhould alſo follow on now with the greefs of the ſhoulders and hips. But ſith that ſuch greefs for the moſt part doe cauſe a horſe to hault, and that it requireth ſome ſkill to know when a horſe halteth, whether the falt be in his ſhoulder, hip, leg, ioint, or foote, I thinke it not good to ſeparate thoſe partes aſunder, ſpecially ſith nature hath ioined them togither, that is to ſay, the ſhoulders to the forelegs, and the hips to the hinder legs. And therefore according to natures order, I will treat of them in their proper place: that is to ſaie, after that I haue ſhewed you all the diſeaſes that be in the inward parts of a Horſes bodie, not only aboue the midriffe, as the diſeaſes of the throte, lunges, breaſt, and heart, but alſo vnder the midriffe, as thoſe of the ſtomach, liuer, guts, and of all the reſt. And firſt, as touching the diſeaſes of the throte, the glanders, and ſtranguilion, to al horſes is moſt common.

Of the Glanders and Stranguilion, ſo called according to the Italian name, Stranguijlione. Chap. lxv.

MOſt ferrers do take the glanders and ſtranguilion, to be all one diſeaſe, but it is not ſo, for the glanders is that which the phyſitians call *Tonſillæ*, and the Stranguilion is that which they call in Latine *Angina*, in Greek Synanchi and we commonlie call it in Engliſhe, the ſquinancie, or quinzie. Tonſillæ, is interpreted by them to be inflammations of the kirnels, called in latine Glandes, in Italian Glandulæ, which lie on ech ſide of the throte, vnderneath the roote of the tong, nigh vnto the ſwallowing place, of which word Glandes, or Glandulæ, I thinke we borrow this name glanders. For when the horſe is troubled with this diſeaſe, hee hath great kirnels vnderneath his iawes, eaſie to be ſeen or felt, patning him ſo, as he can not eaſilie ſwallowe downe his meate, which commeth firſte of colde diſtillation out of the head. But if ſuch kirnels be not inflamed

med, they will perhaps go away of themselues, or else by laying a little hot horsedung and straw vnto them, the warmth thereof will dissolue them, and make them to vanishe awaie. But if they be inflamed, they will not go away, but increase and ware greater and greater, and be more painefull euery day than other, and cause the horse to cast continually filthy and stinking matter out at his nose. The cure wherof, according to Martin is thus. First, ripe the kirnels with this plaister. Take of bran two handfuls, or as much as will thicken a quart of wine or ale: then put therunto halfe a pound of hogs grease, and boile them togither, and laie it hot to the sore with a cloth, renewing it euerie daie vntill it be readie to breake: then lance it, and lette out all the matter, and taint it with a taint of flare dipt in this salue. Take of Turpentine, of hogs grease, of each like quantitie, and a little ware, and melt them togither, and renew the taint euerie daie vntill it bee whole. Laurentius Rusius saith, that this disease is verie common to colts, because in them doth abound fluxible moisture, apt to be dissolued with euerie little heate, and to turne to putrifaction: and therefore if the horse be not ouer yong, he would haue you first to let him bloud in the necke veine, and then to laie vnto the sore a ripening plaister, made of Mallowes, Linseedes, Rewe, wormwood, ground Ivie, oile of Baies, and Dialthea, and to annoint his throte also and all the sore place with fresh butter: and the sore being ripe, to lance it, or else to rowell it, that the matter may come forth. But if the kernels will not decrease with this, then pull them awaie by the rootes, and to drie vp the vlcerous place with an ointment made of vnslect lime, Pepper, Brimstone, Nitrum, and oyle Olive. It shall be good also to purge his head by perfuming him euerie daie once, in such sort as hath beene before declared. And let the horse be kept warme about the head, and stand in a warme stable, and let him drinke no cold water. But if you see that after you haue taken away the kirnels, the Horse doth not for all that leaue casting filthie matter at the nose, then it is to be feared, that hee hath some spice of the mourning of the Chine, for both diseases procéede of one cause, and therefore I thinke good to speake of it here presentlie.

176.

But

But first I will set downe a drinke which I haue seene proued vp on a horse that I thought could neuer haue bén recouered of the same disease, and yet it did recouer him in very short space, so as he trauelled immediatlie after manie miles, without the helpe of any other medicine.

A drinke for the Strangulion or Glaunders.

TAke of warme milke as it commeth from the Cow a quart, or in stead thereof a quart of New béere or ale warmed, and put thereunto of moulten butter the quantitie of an egge: and then take one head of Garlike, first cleane pilled and then stamped small, which you must put into the milke or drinke being made lukewarme, and giue it the horse with a horne, and immediatlie after the drinke giuen, catch holde of his tongue with your one hande, and hauing broken two raw egges either vpon his foretæth, or against the staffe wherewith his head is holden vppe, cast those broken egges, shels and all into his throte, making him to swallow downe the same, that done to ride him vp and downe till he begin to sweate, and then set him vp couered warme with an olde couerlet and straw, not suffering him to eate or drinke for the space of twoe or three houres after, and let his drinke for the space of two or three daies, be made somewhat warme, whereunto it is good to put a handfull or two of bran or ground malt, and in giuing the saide drinke, it shall not be amisse to powre some thereof into either nostrill.

Of the mourning of the Chine. Chap. lxvi.

THis word, mourning of the Chine, is a corrupt name borrowed of the french tong, wherin it is called Mote deschien, that is to saie, the death of the back. Bicause many do hold opinion that this disease doth consume the marrowe of the backe: for remedie whereof, they vse strange kinds of cures. For some taking it to be a rheume, goe about to stop it, by laying a stricture, or binding charges to the nape of the neck. Some again, do twine out the pith of the back with a long wire thrust vp into the horses head, and so into his neck & backe,

with

with what reaſon I know not. Well, I knowe that fewe Horſes doe recouer that haue this diſeaſe. Some againe thinke that the lunges of the horſe be rotten, and that the horſe doeth caſt them out at his noſe. But Martin ſaieth, that hee hath cut vp diuerſe Horſes which haue beene iudged to haue died of the mourning of the Chine, but he could neuer find either backe or lungs, to be periſhed, but onelie the Liuer, and moſt commonlie that ſide of the Liuer, which anſwereth the noſtrill whereat hee caſteth, whereof we will talke in his proper place, when we come to ſpeake of the diſeaſes in the liuer. The Italians do call this diſeaſe Ciamorro, the olde Authours doe call it the moiſt maladie, whereof Theomneſtus maketh two differences. For in the one, the matter which he doth caſt at the noſe is white, and doth not ſmell at all: and in the other, that which hee caſteth is a filthie and ſtinking corruption. They proceede both of cold humours congealed in the head, but more abounding in the one than in the other: by reaſon perhaps that the horſe was not cured in time: for of colde firſt commeth the Poſe, and the cough, then the glaunders, and laſt of all, the mourning of the chine. When the horſe caſteth matter at the noſe that is not ſtinking, he may be eaſilie cured, by ſuch remedies as haue beene before declared in the chapter of the Poſe: but if the matter be verie filthie and ſtinking, then it is verie hard to cure. Notwithſtanding, it ſhall not grieue me to write vnto you heere, the experience of Theomneſtus, and of Laurentius Ruſsius. Theomneſtus cure is thus. Take of water and honie called of the Phyſicians Hydromel, a quart, and put thereunto three ounces of oile, and powre that into his noſtrill euerie morning the ſpace of three daies: and if that do not profit him, then let him drink euery daie, or once in two daies, a quarte of olde wine, mingled with ſome of the medicine, or rather the precious meate, called of the olde writers Tetrapharmacum, and that will reſtore him to his former eſtate. Laurentius Ruſsius ſaith, that of all diſeaſes there is none more perillous, nor more to be ſuſpected, than the rheume which commeth of cold, for Horſes haue large Conduites, and are full of moiſture, and therefore if cold once enter, it findeth matter inough to worke on, to breed continuall diſtillation, as well outwardlie at the noſe, as inwardly, deſcending downe to the vitall

partes in such sort, as it doth suffocat the same. The signes according to the said Rusius be these. The horse doth cast matter continuallie at the nose, sometime thinne and sometime thicke, his nostrils, eares, and al his outward parts, will be cold to the feeling, his eies, head, and all his body heauy, and he will coughe, and haue small appetite to his meate, and lesse to his drinke, and somtime he will tremble and shake. His cure is in this sorte. Purge his head, partlie by perfuming him, & partly by making him to neese in such sort, as hath béene before taught in the chapter of the pose, which waies of perfuming and purging the head, as they be good, so doth Rusius praise these two heere following to bee most excellent. The first is this. Take of the stalkes of Vitis alba otherwise called Brioni, or wild Vine, two or three good handfuls, and brose them betwixt two stones, and being so brosed, put them into a linnen bag, and fasten the bag to the horses head, so as he may receiue the sent vp into his nostrils, without touching the hearbe with his mouth, and this will cause the humors to come down aboundantlie. The second medicine. Take of Euforbium beaten into fine powder, three ounces, of the iuice of Beets one pounde, of Swines bloud halfe a pound, boile all these together vntil they be throughlie mingled, and liquid like an ointment, and then take it from the fire, and put thereunto one ounce more of Euforbium and mingle them againe throughlie together, & preserue the same in a boxe to vse at needful times in this sort. Make two stiffe long rowles or tampins of linnen clowtes, or such like stuffe, sharpe pointed like Suger loues: which tampins are called of the Physicians in Latin Pessi, & being annointed with the ointment aforesaid, thrust them vp into the horses nostrils, and let them abide therein a pretty while, then pull them out, and you shall see such aboundance of matter come forth at his nose, as is marueilous to behold Rusius also praiseth very much this medicine here following. Take as much of the midle Bark of an Elder tree, growing on the water side, as will fill a new earthen pot of a meane size, putting thereunto as much cleere water as the pot will hold, and let it boile vntill the one halfe be consumed: and then to be filled vp againe with fresh water, continuing so to do three times one after another, and at the last time that the one halfe is consumed,

take

take it from the fire, and ſtraine it through a linnen cloth. Then take two parts of that decoction, and one part of hogs greaſe, or butter, & being warmed againe together, giue the horſe to drinke thereof one hornefull, and powre another hornfull into his noſtril that caſteth, and whenſoeuer you giue him this medicine, let the Horſe be emptie and faſting, and keepe him without meate alſo two or three houres after. For this is a verie good drinke for anie ſickneſſe that commeth of colde. Moreouer, open the ſkin of his forehead, and of his temples, and alſo of his taile, with a ſharp hot iron, that the corrupt humours may iſſue outward. That done, take hot brickes, or elſe a pan of freſhe burning coales, and hold it nigh vnto his belly and flanks, to the intent they may be throughly warmed, and being ſo warmed annointe them all ouer with oile de Bay, or Dialthea, to defend his bodie from the cold, and let his head be well couered, and all his bellie kept warme. Yea, and it were good to bath his heade ſometime, as Ruſsius ſaith, with a bath made of Rewe, Wormewood, Sage, Juneper, Bay leaues, and Hyſop. And let his drinke be warme water mingled with wheate meale: yea, & to make it the more comfortable, it were good as Ruſsius ſaith, to putte therunto ſome Cinamon, Ginger, Galingale, & ſuch hot ſpices. And his meat in Winter ſeaſon would be no other but ſodden corne or warme maſhes, made of ground Mault and wheat bran: in Summer ſeaſon if hee went to graſſe, I thinke it would do him moſt good, ſo that he go in a drie warme ground, for by feeding alwaies downward, he ſhal purge his head the better as Ruſsius ſaith. Thus much of the Glanders, and mourning of the Chine. Now wee will ſpeake ſomewhat of the ſtrangulſion, according to the opinion of the authors, though not to the ſatisfaction perhaps of our Engliſh Ferrers.

Of the ſtrangullion or Squinancy. Chap. lxvii.

The Strangullion, called of the Latines Angina, according to the Phyſicians, is an inflamation of the inward partes of the throte, & as I ſaid before, is called of the Greekes Synanchi, which is as much to ſaie in Engliſhe as a ſtrangling, whereof this name ſtrangullion as I think is deriued, for this diſeaſe doth ſtrangle either man or beaſt

and therefore is numbred amongst the perillous and sharpe diseases called of the Latines Morbi acuti, of which strangling the physicians in mans bodie make foure differences. The first & worste is, when no part within the mouth nor without, appeareth manifestlie to bee inflamed, and yet the patient is in great perill of strangling. The second is, when the inwarde partes of the throte onelie be inflamed. The third is, when the inward and outwarde partes of the throate bee both inflamed. The fourth is, when the muscles of the necke are inflamed, or the inwarde ioints thereof so lowsened, as they straiten thereby both the throte, or wesande, or windpipe: for short breath is incident to all the foure kindes before recited, and they proceed all of one cause: that is to saie, of some cholericke or bloudie fluxion, which commes out of the branches of the throte veines into those parts, and there breedeth some hot inflamation. But now to proue that a horse is subiect to this disease, you shall heare what Absirtus, Hierocles, Vegetius, and others doe saie. Absirtus writing to his friend a certaine Ferrer or horseleach, called Aistoricus, speaketh in this manner. When a horse hath the strangullion it quicklie killeth him, the signs whereof be these. His temples will be hollow, his toung will swel and hang out of his mouth, his head and eies also will be swollen, and the passage of his throte stopt so as he can neither eat nor drinke. All these signes be also confirmed by Hierocles. Moreover, Vegetius rendreth the cause of this disease, affirming that it proceedeth of abundance of subtile bloud, which after long trauel wil inflam the inward or outward muscles of the throte or wesande, or suche affluence of bloud may come, by vse of hot meates after great trauell, being so alteratiue, as they cause those partes to swell in such sort as the horse can neither eat nor drink, nor draw his breth. The cure according to Vegetius, is in this sorte. First bath his mouth and toung well with hot water, and then annoint it with the gall of a Bull, that done giue him this drinke. Take of olde oile two pound, of old wine a quart, nine figs, and nine Leekes heads well stamped and braied togither. And after you haue boiled these a while before you strain them, put thereunto a little Mithrum Alexandrinum, and giue him a quarte of this euerie morning and euening. Absirtus and Hierocles would haue you to let

him

him blood in the palat of his mouth, and to powre wine and Oile into his nostrils, and also to giue him to drinke this decoction of Figs and Nitrum sodden togither, or else to annointe his throte within with Nitre oile and honie, or else with honie and hogges dung mingled togither, which differeth not much from Galen his medicine, to be giuen vnto man. For he saith, that honie mingled with the powder of dogges dung that is white, and swallowed downe, doth remedie the squinancie presently. Absirtus also praiseth the ointment made of Bdellium, and when the inflamation beginneth somewhat to decrease, he saieth it is good to purge the horse, by giuing him wild Cucumber, and Nitre to drinke. Let his meat be grasse if it maie be gotten, or else wette Haie, and sprinkled with Nitre. Let his drinke also be lukewarme water, with some barlie meale in it.

Of the Cough. Chap. lxviii.

OF Coughes, some be outwarde and some be inwarde. Those be outward which do come of outwarde causes, as by eating a feather, or by eating dusts or sharpe straw and such like things: which tickling his throte, causeth him to cough: you shall perceiue it by wagging and wrieng his head in his coughing, and by stamping somtime with his foote, laboring to get out the thing that grieueth him, and cannot. The cure according to Martin is thus. Take a Willowe wande, rowled throughout with a fine linnen clowte, and then annointe it all ouer with honie, and thrust it downe his throate, drawing your hande to and fro, to the intent it may either driue downe the thing that grieueth him, or else bring it vp, and doe this twise or thrise, annointing euerie time the sticke with fresh honie.

Of the inward and wet cough. Chap. lxix.

IF inward Coughes some be wet and some be drie. The wet cough is that which commeth of colde, taken after some great heate giuen to the horse, dissoluing humors, which being afterward congealed, doe cause obstruction and stopping in the lungs. And I call it the wet cough, because the

horse in his coughing, will voide moist matter at his mouth after that it is once broken. The signes be these. The horse will be heavie, and his eies will run a water, and he will forsake his meat, and when hee cougheth, hee thrusteth out his heade, and reacheth with great paine at the first, as though he had a drie cough, vntil the fleame be broken, and then he will cough more hallow, which is a signe of amendment. And therefore, according to Martins experience, to the intent the fleame may breake the sooner, it shall be necessarie to keepe him warme, by clothing him with a double cloth, and by littering him vp to the bellie with fresh strawe, and then to giue him this drinke: take of barlie one pecke, and boile it in two or three gallons of faire water, vntill the barly beginne to brust, and boile therwith of brused Licoras, of Annis seedes, of Raisins, of each one pound, then straine it, and to that liquor put of honie a pint, and a quarterne of Sugarcandie, and keep it close in a potte to serue the horse therewith foure severall mornings, and cast not awaie the sodden barley with the rest of the strayninges, but make it hot euery daie to perfume the horse withall, being put in a bag, and tied to his head, and if the horse will eate of it, it shall do him the more good. And this perfuming in winter season would be vsed about ten of the clocke in the morning, when the Sunne is of some height, to the intent the horse may be walked abroad, if the Sunne shine, to exercise him moderatelie. And vntill his cough weare awaie, faile not to giue him warme water, with a little ground mault. And as his cough breaketh more and more, so let his water euerie daie be lesse warmed than other.

Of the drie Cough. Chap. lxx.

THis seemeth to come of some grosse & tough humour cleauing hard to the hollow places of the lungs which stoppeth the windpipes, so as the horse cannot easilie draw his breath, and if it continue, it will either grow to the pursicke, or else breake his wind altogether. The signes be these. He will cough both often, drily, & also vehementlie without voiding at the nose, or mouth. The cure, according to Martin, is in this sort. Take a close earthen pot, & put therin iii. pints of strong vineger,

vineger, and foure egs, shelles & all vnbroken, and foure Garlicke heads cleane pilled and brused, and set the pot being verie close couered, in some warme dunghill, & there let it stand a whole night: and the next morning with your hand take out the egs, which will be so soft as silke, and laie them by, vntill you haue strained the Garlicke & vineger through a faire cloth, then put to that liquor, a quarterne of honie, and half a quartern of sugercandy, and two ounces of Licoras, and two ounces of Annis séeds, beaten all into fine pouder. And then ỹ horse hauing fasted al the night before, in the morning betwixt seuen and eight of the clocke, open his mouth with a cord, and whorle therein one of the egges, so as hee maie swallowe it downe, and then immediatly powre in after it a horne full of the foresaid drinke, being first made lukewarme, and then cast in another egge, with another horne full of drinke, and so continue to doe, vntill he hath swallowed vp all the egges, and dronke vp all the drinke: and then bridle him, and couer him with warmer clothes, then he had before, and bring him into the stable, and there let him stand on the bitte, at the bare racke, well littered vp to the bellie, the space of two houres. Then vnbitte him, and if it be in Winter, offer him a handfull of Wheaten strawe: if in Summer giue him grasse, and let him eate no haie, vnlesse it bee verie well dusked, and sprinkled with water, and giue him not much thereof. And therefore you shall néede to giue him the more prouender, which also must bee well clensed of all filth and dust, and giue him no cold water, the space of nine daies. And if you perceiue that the Cough doth not weare awaie, then if it bee in Winter, purge him with these pilles. Take of larde two pound laid in water two houres: then take nothing but the clean fat thereof, and stampe it in a morter, and thereto put of licoras, of Annis seedes, of Fenegreke, of ech beaten into powder three ounces, of Aloes in powder two ounces, of Agarike one ounce. Knead these togither like paast, and make thereof fiue bals as big as an egge. Then the horse hauing fasted ouer night, giue him the nert morning these pilles one after another, annointed with honie and oile mingled togither in a platter, and to the intent he maie swallowe them downe whether he will or not, when you haue opened his mouth catch holde of his

toung, and hold it fast while you whozle in one of the pils, that don thrust it into his throte with a rolling pin, and then let his toung goe vntill he hath swallowed it downe: then giue him in like maner all the rest of the pilles, and let him stand on the bit warme clothed, and littered the space of three houres at the least, and after that, giue him a little wet hate, and warme water with a litle ground malt in it to drink, and let him drink no other but warme water the space of a weeke. And nowe and then in a faire sunnie daie, it shall be good to trot him one houre abroad to breath him.

Of the fretzied, broken and rotten lungs. Chap. lxxi.

This proceedeth as Absirtus and Theomnestus saith, either of an extreame cough, or of vehement running, or leaping, or of ouergredy drinking after great thirst for the lungs be inclosed in a verie thin filme or skin, and therefore easie to be broken, which if it bee not cured in time, doth grow to apostumation, and to corruption, oppressing all the Lunges, which of olde Authors is called Vomica, and Suppuratio. But Theomnestus saith, that broken lunges, and rotten lunges, be two diuers diseases, and haue diuers signes, and diuers cures. The signes of broken lungs be these. The horse draweth his wind short, and by little at once, hee will turne his head often towarde the place grieued, and groneth in his breathing, he is afraide to cough, and yet cougheth as though he had eaten small bones. The same Theomnestus heled a friends horse of his, whose lungs were fretized, or rather broken as he saith, by continuall eating of salt, with this maner of cure here following. Let the horse haue quiet and rest, and then let him bloud in the hanches, where the veines appeare most: and giue him to drink the space of seuen daies barlie or rather Otes sodden in Gotes milke: or if you can get no milke, boile it in water, and put therein some thick collops of lard and of Deares sewet, and let him drink that: and let his common drinke in winter season be the decoction of wheate meale, and in sommer time, the decoction of barlie, and this as he saith wil bind his lunges againe togither. Vegetius vtterlie disalloweth letting of bloud in any such disease as this is, and also al maner of sharpe

medicines,

medicines, for feare of prouoking the cough, by meanes whereof the broken places can neuer heale perfectlie. And therefore neither his medicines nor meate would be harsh, but smooth, gentle and cooling. The best medicine that may be giuen him at al times is this: take of Fenegreek, and of lincéde, of ech halfe a pounde, of Gum dragagant, of Mastick, of Mirre, of sugar, of Fitch flower, of each one ounce. Let all these thinges be beaten into fine powder, and then infused one whole night in a sufficient quantitie of warme water, and the next date giue him a quart of this lukewarme, putting thereunto two or three ounces of oile of roses, continuing so to doe manie dates together, and if the disease bee new, this will heale him: yea and it will ease him verie much although the disease be old, which then is thought vncureable. And in winter season so long as he standeth in the stable, let him drink no cold water, and let his meat be cleane without dust, but in summer season it were best to let him run to grasse: for so long as he eateth grasse, a man shall scantlie perceiue this disease. Thus much of broken lungs.

Of putrified and rotten lungs. Chap. lxxii.

THe signes to know whether a horses lungs be putrified or rotten, according to Theomnestus are these. The horse will both eate and drinke more grædily than he was wont to doe, he shall be oftner vexed with a drie cough, and in coughing he will cast little lumps of matter out at his mouth. The cure whereof according to Theomnestus, is thus. Giue him to drinke euerie morning, the space of seuen daies, the iuice of Purslain mingled with oile of roses, and ad thereunto a little tragagantum that hath béen laid before in steepe in Goates milke, or else in barlie or Otten milke, strained out of the corne. When the Apostume is broken, then a verie strong and euill sauour will come out at his nostrils: for remedie whereof, it shal be good to giue him the space of seuen daies this drinke here following: take of the root called Costus twoe ounces, and of Casia or else of Cinamon three ounces beaten into fine powder, and a few raisins, and giue it him to drinke with wine. But Vegetius would

haue

haue him to be cured in this sort and with lesse coste I assure you. Take of Frankincense & Aristoloch, of each two ounces, beaten into fine powder, and giue him that with wine, or else take of vn burnt brimstone two ounces, and of Aristoloch one ounce and a halfe beaten into powder, and giue him that with wine. And he would haue you also to drawe his breast with a hot iron, to the intent that the humors may issue forth outwardlie.

Of shortnesse of breath. Chap. lxxiii.

A Horse may haue shortnesse of breath, by hasty running after drinking, or vpon a full stomach, or by the discending of humors vnto his throte or lungs, after some extream heat dissoluing the said humors, which so long as there is nothing broken, may in the beginning be easilie holpen. The signes be these. The horse will continuallie pant, and fetch his breath short, which will come verie hot out at his nose, and in his breathing he will squeise in the nose, and his flanks will beate thicke: yea and some cannot fetch their breath vnlesse they holde their neckes right out and straight, which disease is called of the olde writers by the Greeke name Orthopnœa. The Cure. Let him bloud in the necke, and giue him this drinke, take of Wine, and oile, of each a pinte, of Frankincense halfe an ounce, and of the iuice of Horehound halfe a pint. It is good also to powre into his throte horne, butter and hogges grease moulten together, and made luke warme. Tiberius saith, it is good to giue him whole egges, shelles and all, steeped and made softe in vineger: that is to saie, the first daie three, the second daie fiue, and the thirde daie seauen, and to powre wine and oile into his nostrilles. I for my part would take nothing but Annis seedes, Licoras, and Sugarcandie, beaten all into fine powder, giue him that to drinke, with wine and oile mingled together.

Of the Purlicke. Chap. lxxiiii.

THis is a shortnesse of breath, and the horse that is so diseased is called of the Italians, Cauallo pulsuo, or Bolso, which I thinke is derined of the Latin worde Vulsus, by changing V. into B. and I thinke differeth not muche from

from him that hath broken lungs, called of Vegetius and other old writers Vulsus, for such shortnesse of breath commes either of the same causes, or else much like, as aboundance of grosse humors, cleaning hard to the hollowe places of the lunges, and stopping the wind pipes. And the wind being kept in, doth resorte downewarde as Rusius saith, into the horses guttes, and so causeth his flankes to beate continuallie without order: that is to sate, more swiftlie and hier vp to the backe, than the flanks of any horse that is sound of winde. And if this disease be olde, it is seldome or never cured, and though I find manie medicines prescribed by diuers Authours, fewe or none doe content me, vnlesse it be that of Vegetius, recited before in the chapter of broken lunges. And if that preuaileth not, then I thinke it were not amisse according to Rusius to purge him with this drinke here following: take of Maiden haire, of Ireos, of Ash, of Licoras, of Fenegreeke, of rat, sins, of ech halfe an ounce, of Cardanum, of pepper, of bitter Almonds, of Baurach, of each two ounces, of nettle seede, and of Aristoloch, of ech two ounces, boile them altogither in a sufficient quantitie of water, & in that decoction dissolue halfe an ounce of Agarike, and two ounces of Coloquintida, together with twoe pound of honie, and giue him of this a pinte or a quarte at diuers times: and if it be too thicke make it thinner, by putting thereunto water wherein Licoras hath beene sodden, and if neede be you mate also drawe both his flanks crossewise with a hot iron, to restraine the beating of them, and also slit his nostrils, to giue him more aire. And if it be in summer turne him to grasse, if in winter let him be kept warme, and giue him nowe and then a little sodden wheate: Rusius would haue it to be giuen him three daies togither and also newe sweete wine to drinke, or else other good wine mingled with licoras water.

Of a Consumption. Chap. xxv.

A Consumption is none other thing but an exulceration of the lunges, proceeding of some fretting or gnawing humour, descending out of the head into the lunges. And I take it to be that disease which the olde writers are woont

to

to call the drie maladie: which perhappes some would rather interpret to be the moorning of the Chine, with whome I intende not to striue. But thus much I must needes saie, that euerie horse hauing the mourning of the Chine, doth continuallie cast at the nose, but in the drie maladie it is cleane contrarie. For all the authors that write therof affirme, that the horse auoideth nothing at the nose. And the signes to know the drie maladie, according to their doctrine, be these. His flesh doth clean consume away, his bellie is gaunt, and the skinne therof so hard stretched, or rather shrunke vp, as if you strike on him with your hand it will sound like a Tabor, and hee will bee hollowe backt, and forsake his meate, and though he eateth it, (as Absirtus saith) yet he doth not digest it, nor prospereth not withall, he would cough and cannot but hickinglie, as though he had eaten small bones. And this disease is iudged of all the authours to be incurable. Notwithstanding, they saie all, that it is good to purge his head with such perfumes as haue bin shewed you before in the chapter of the glanders, and also to giue him alwaies Colewortes, chopt small with his prouender. Some woulde haue him to drinke the warme bloud of suckling pigs newe slaine, and some the iuice of leekes, with oile and wine mingled togither. Others praise wine and Frankincense, some oile and Rewe, some woulde haue his bodie to be purged and sent to grasse.

Of the consumption of the flesh, and how to make a leane horse fat. Chap. xxxvi.

MArtin saith that if a horse take a great cold after a heat it will cause his flesh to waste, and his skin to wax hard & drie, and to cleaue fast to his sides, and he shall haue no appetite vnto his meat, and the fillets of his backe will fall awaie, and all the flesh of his buttocks, and of his shoulders, will bee consumed. The cure whereof is thus. Take two sheepes heads vnflead, boile them in three gallons of Ale, or fair running water, vntill the flesh be consumed from the bones, that done, straine it through a fine cloth, and then put thereunto of Suger one pound, of Cinamon two ounces, of conserue of Roses,

ses, of Barberries, and Cherries, of ech two ounces, and mingle them together, and giue the horse euerie daie in the morning, a quart thereof lukewarme, vntill all be spent: and after euerie time he drinketh, let him bee walked vp and downe in the stable, or else abroad if the weather bee warme, and not windie, and let him neither eate nor drinke in two houres after, & let him drinke no cold water, but lukewarme, the space of fiftéene daies, and let him be fed by little, and little, with such meate as the horse hath most appetite vnto. But if the horse be nesh and tender, and so ware leane without anie apparant griefe or disease, then the old writers would haue him to be fedde nowe and then with parched wheate, and also to drinke wine with his water, and to eate continuallie wheate branne mingled with his prouender, vntill hee ware strong, and hee must be often dressed and trimmed, and lie soft, without the which things his meate will doe him but little good. And his meate must be fine and cleane, and giuen him often and by little at once. Rusius saith, that if a horse eating his meat with a good appetite, doth not for all that prosper, but is still leane: then it is good to giue him Sage, Sauin, Baie berries, Earth nuttes, and Boares grease, to drinke with wine: or to giue him the intrals of a Barbell or Tench, with white wine. He saith also that sodden Beanes mingled with branne and salt, wil make a leane horse fat in verie short space.

Of grieke in the breast. Chap. lxxvii.

LAurentius Rusius writeth of a disease called in Italian Grauezza di petto, which hath not beene in experience amongst our Ferrers, that I can learne. It commes, as Rusius saith, of the superfluitie of bloud, or other humors dissolued by some extreme heate, and resorting downe the breast, paining the horse, so as he cannot well goe. The cure whereof according to Rusius is thus. Let him bloud on both sides of the brest in the accustomed veines, and rowell him vnder the breast, and twise a daie turne the rowelles with your hande, to moue the humours that they may issue forth, and let him goe so roweled the space of fiftéene daies.

Of

Of the paine of the heart called Anticor, that is to saie, contrarie to the hart. Chap. lxxviii.

THis proceedeth of abundance of rank bloud bred with good feeding and ouermuch rest: which bloud resorting to the inward parts doth suffocate the heart, and manie times causeth swellinges to appeare before the breast, which will grow vpward to the neck, and then it killeth the horse. The signes. The horse will hang down his head in the manger, forsaking his meate, and is not able to lift vp his head. The cure according to Martin is thus. Let him bloud on both sides aboundantlie in the platte veines, and then giue him this drinke: take a quart of malmesie, and put thereunto halfe a quarterne of sugar, and two ounces of Cinamon, and giue it him lukewarm, then keepe him warme in the stable, stuffing him well about the stomach that the wind offend him no maner of way, and giue him warme water with mault alwaies to drinke, and giue him such meate as he will eate. And if the swelling do appeare, then besides letting him bloud, strike the swelling in diuers places with your fleame that the corruption maie goe forth: and annoint the place with warme hogges grease, and that will either make it to weare awaie or else to grow to a hed, if it bee couered and kepte warme.

Of tired horses. Chap. lxxix.

BEcause we are in hand here with the vitall parts, and that when the horses bee tired with ouermuch labour, their vital spirits war feeble, I think it best to speak of them euen here, not with long discoursing as Vegetius vseth, but briefly to shew you how to refresh the poore horse hauing need therof, which is done chiefly by giuing him rest, warmth and good feeding, as with warme mashes and plentie of prouender. And to quicken his spirits, it shall be good to powre a litle oile and vineger into his nostrils, and to giue him the drink of sheeps heads recited before in the chapter of the consumption of the flesh, yea and also to bath his legs with this bath: take of mallowes, of sage, of each two or three handfulles, and a rose cake: boile these

things

things togither, and being boiled, then put vnto it a good quantitie of butter or of ſallet oile. Or elſe make him this charge: take of bole Armonie and of wheat flower of each halfe a pound, and a little Roſen beaten into powder, and a quart of ſtrong vineger, and mingle them togither, and couer all his legs therewith, and if it be in ſummer, turne him to graſſe.

Of the diſeaſed parts vnder the midriffe, and firſt of the ſtomach. Chap. lxxx.

THe old Authors make mention of manie diſeaſes incident to a horſes ſtomach, as lothing of meat, ſpuing vp his drinke, ſurfeting of prouender, the hungrie euill, and ſuch like, which few of our ferrers haue obſerued: and therefore I will briefly ſpeake of as manie as I think neceſſarie to be knowen, and firſt of the lothing of meat.

Of the loathing of meat. Chap. lxxxi.

A horſe may loath his meate through the intemperature of his ſtomach, as for that it is too hot or too cold. If his ſtomach be too hot, then moſt commonlie it will either inflame his mouth and make it to breake out in bliſters, yea and perhaps cauſe ſome canker to breed there. The cure of all which things hath bin taught before. But if he forſake his meate onlie for verie heate, which you ſhal perceiue by the hotnes of his breath and mouth, then coole his ſtomach by giuing him cold water mingled with a little vineger and oile to drinke, or elſe giue him this drinke. Take of milke, and of wine, of each one pinte, and put thereunto three ounces of Mel Roſatum, and waſh all his mouth with vineger and ſalt. If his ſtomach be too cold, then his haire will ſtare and ſtande right vppe, which Abſirtus and others were wont to cure, by giuing the horſe good wine & oile to drink, and ſome would ſeeth in wine, Reme, or Sage, ſome woulde adde thereunto white Pepper and Mirre, ſome would giue him Onions and Rocket ſeed to drinke with wine, ſome the blood of a yong Sowe with wine. Abſirtus would haue the horſe to eate the greene blades of wheate, if the time of the yeere will ſerue for it.

Columella

Columella saith, that if a horse or ante other beast, do loth his meat it is good to giue him wine, and the seede of Gith, or else wine and stampt Garlicke.

Of casting out his drinke. Chap. lxxxii.

VEgetius saith, that the horse maie haue such a Phlegme proceeding of cold in his stomach, as he is not able to keep his drinke, but many times to cast it out againe at his mouth. The remedie whereof is to let him bloude in the necke, and to giue him cordiall drinks, that is to say, made of hot and comfortable spices, and also to annoint all his breast and vnder his shoulders with hote oiles, and to purge his head, by blowing vp into his nostrils, powders that prouoke neesing, such as haue been taught you before.

Of surfeting with glut of prouender. Chap. lxxxiii.

THe glut of prouender or other meat not digested, doth cause a horse to haue great paine in his bodie, so as he is not able to stand on his feet, but lieth downe, & walereth as though he had the Bots. The cure wherof, according to Martins experience, is in this sort. Let him bloud in the necke, then trotte him vp and downe for the space of an houre, and if he cannot stale, draw out his yard, and wash it with a litle white wine, lukewarme, and thrust into his yard either a bruised cloue of Garlike, or else a litle oile of Camomill, with a wax candle. If he cannot dung, then rake his fundament, & giue him this glister. Take of Mallowes two or three handfuls, and boile them in a pottle of faire running water, and when the mallowes be sodden, then straine it, and put thereunto a quart of fresh butter, and halfe a pinte of oile Oliue, and hauing receiued this glister, lead him vp and downe, vntill he hath emptied his bellie, then set him vp, and keepe him hungrie the space of three or foure daies, & the haie that he eateth, let it bee sprinkled with water, & let him drinke warme water, wherein should bee put a little branne, and when he hath dronke, giue him the brande to eate, and giue him little or no prouender at all, for the space of eight or ten daies.

Of

Of another kind of ſurfetting with meate or drinke, called of vs, foundering in the bodie. Chap. lxxxiii.

This diſeaſe is called of the olde writers in Greeke Crichiaſis, in Latin Hordiatio, it commeth, as they ſaie, by eating of much prouender ſodenlie after labour, whilſt the horſe is hot and panting, whereby his meat not being digeſted, breedeth euill humours, which by little and little doe ſpread throughout his members, and at length doe oppreſſe all his bodie, and doe cleane take away his ſtrength, and make him in ſuch caſe as he can neither go, nor bow his iointes, nor being laide is able to riſe againe, neither can he ſtale but with great paine. It may come alſo, as they ſay, of drinking too much in trauelling by the way when the horſe is hot, but then it is not ſo dangerous, as when it commeth of eating too much. But howſoeuer it commeth, they ſaie all, that the humours will immediatlie reſorte downe into the horſes legs, and féete, will make him to caſt his hoones: and therefore I muſt néedes iudge it to bee no other thing but a plaine foundering, which word foundering is borrowed, as I take it, of the French worde Fundu, that is to ſaie molten. For foundering is a melting or diſſolution of humors, which the Italians call Infuſione. Martin maketh diuerſe kinds of foundering, as the foundering of the bodie, which the French men call moſt commonlie Morfundu, and foundering in the legs and féete, alſo foundering before and behinde, which ſome authors doe dente, as Magiſter Maurus, and Laurentius Ruſsius, affirming that there are fewer humours behinde than before, and that they cannot eaſilie be diſſolued or molten, being ſo farre diſtant from the heart, and the other vitall partes. Whereunto a man might anſwere, that the naturall heate of the heart dooth not cauſe diſſolution of humours, but ſome vnnaturall and accidentall heate, ſpredde throughout all the members, which is dailie proued by good experience. For we ſée horſes to be foundered not only before or behind, but alſo of all foure legs at once, which moſt commonlie chanceth either by taking colde ſuddenlie after a great heate, as by ſtanding ſtill vpon ſome colde pauement, or abroad in the cold winde, or elſe for that perhappes the horſe trauelling by the waie, and being in a ſweate, was ſuffered to ſtand in ſome ſhoulde water

whilest he did drinke, which was worse then his drinking: for in the meane time the colde entring at his feete, ascended vpward, and congealed the humours which the heate before had dissolued, and thereby when he commeth once to rest, hee wareth stiffe and lame of all his legges. But leauing to speake of foundering in the legges, as well before as behind, vntill we come to the grieses in the legges and feete, we intend to talke here onely of foundering in the bodie, according to Martins experience. The signes to knowe if a horse bee foundered in his bodie, be these. His haire will stare, and he will be chill, and shrug for colde, and forsake his meate, hanging downe his head, and quiuer after cold water, and after two or three daies hee will begin to cough. The cure, according to Martin, is thus. First scowre his bellie with the glisser last mentioned, and then giue him a comfortable drinke made in this sorte. Take of Malmesie a quarte, of Sugar halfe a quarterne, of honie halfe a quarterne, of Sinamon halfe an ounce, of Licoras and Annis seeds, of eche two spoonefuls, beaten into fine powder, which being put into the Malmesie, warme them together at the fire, so as the honnie may bee molten, and then giue it him lukewarme. That done, walke him vp and downe in the warme stable the space of halfe an houre, and then let him stand on the bit two or three houres without meat, but let him be warme couered, and well littered, and giue him haie sprinkled with a little water, and cleane sifted prouender by a litle at once, and let his water be warmed with a litle ground Ault therein. And if you see him somewhat cheered, then let him bloud in the necke, and also perfume him once a day with a litle Frankincense, and vse to walke him abroade when the weather is faire and not windie, or else in the house if the weather bee foule: and by thus vsing him you shall quickly recouer him.

Of the hungrie euill. Chap. xxxv.

THis is a great desire to eate, following some great emptinesse, or lacke of meat, and it is called of the old Authors by the Greek name Bulimos, which is as much to saie, as a great hunger proceeding, as the Physicians saie, at the first of some extreme outward cold, taken by long trauelling in colde barren places, and specially where snowe aboundeth, which outward cold causeth the stomach to be cold, & the

inward

inward powers to bee feeble. The cure, according to Abſirtus and Hierocles, is in the beginning to comfort the horſes ſtomach, by giuing him bread ſopt in wine. And if you be in a place of reſt, to giue him wheate flower, and wine to drink, or to make him cakes or balles of flower and wine kneaded togither, and to feede him with that, or with wine and nuttes of pine trées. Hierocles ſaith, if ante ſuch thing chance by the way whereas no flower is to be had, then it ſhall be beſt to giue him wine and earth wrought togither, either to drinke, or elſe to eate in balles.

Of the diſeaſe in the liuer. Chap. xxxvi.

CAll the old Authours ſpeak much of the paine in the liuer, but none of them doe declare whereof it commeth, or by what meanes, ſauing that Hippocrates ſaith, that ſome horſes get it by violent running vpon ſome ſtonie or hard ground. I for my part thinke that the liuer of a horſe is ſubiect to as manie diſeaſes as the liuer of a man, and therefore may be pained diuerſlie. As ſometime by the intemperatneſſe of the ſame, as for that it is perhaps too hote, or too cold, too moiſt, or too drie: ſometimes by meanes of euill humors, as choler, or flegme abounding in the ſame, according as the liuer is either hot or cold: for heate breédeth choler, and cold, flegme, by meanes of which intemperature proceedeth all the weakeneſſe of the liuer. It may be pained alſo ſometime by obſtruction and ſtopping, and ſometime by hard knobs, inflammation, apoſtume, or vlcer bred therein, ſometime by conſumtion of the ſubſtance thereof. The ſignes of heate and hot humors, be theſe, lothing of meate, great thirſt, and loſeneſſe of belly, voiding dung of ſtrong ſent, and leannes of bodie. The ſignes of cold, and cold humors be theſe: appetite to meate without thirſt, bellie neither continuallie loſe nor ſtiptike, but betweene times, no ſtrong ſent of dung, nor leanneſſe of bodie, by which kind of ſignes, both firſt and laſt mentioned, and ſuch like, the weakeneſſe of the liuer is alſo to bee learned and ſought out. Obſtruction or ſtopping moſt commonlie chanceth by trauelling or labouring vppon a full ſtomache, whereby the meate not being perfectlie digeſted, bréedeth groſſe and tough humors, which humors by vehemencie of the labour, are alſo driuen violentlie into the ſmall veines, whereby the liuer ſhoulde receiue good nutri-

ment, and so breedeth obstruction and stopping. The signes whereof in mans bodie is heauinesse and distension, or swelling, with some griefe in the right side vnder the short ribs, and especiallie when he laboureth immediatlie after meate, which signes I beléeue if it were diligently obserued, were easie enough to find in a horse, by his heauie going at his setting forth, and often turning his head to the side grieued. Of an old obstruction, and especially if the humors be cholerike, breedeth manie times a hard knob on the liuer, called of the Phisicians Schirrus, which in mans bodie may be felt, if the bodie be not ouer fatte: and it is more easie for him to lie on the right side than on the left, because that lieng on the left side, the weight of the knobbe would oppresse the stomache and vitall partes verie sore, by which signes me thinkes a diligent Ferrer may learne, whether a horse hath anie such disease or not. The inflamation of the liuer commeth by meanes that the bloud either through the aboundance, thinnesse, boiling heate, or sharpnesse thereof, or else through the violence of some outward cause, breaketh out of the veines, and floweth into the bodie of the liuer and there being out of his proper vessels doth immediatlie putrifie and is inflamed, and therewith corrupteth so much fleshie substance of the liuer as is imbrued withall, and therefore, for the most parte, the hollowe side of the liuer is consumed: yea, and sometime the full side. This hot bloudie matter then is properlie called an inflammation, which by naturall heate is afterwarde turned into a plaine corruption, & then it is called an impostume, which if it breake out and runne, then it is called an vlcer, or filthie sore. Thus you see, of one euill fountaine may spring diuers greefs, requiring diuers cures. And though none of mine authors nor anie other Ferrer that I knowe haue waded thus farre, yet I thought good by writing thus much, to giue such Ferrers as bee wise, discréete and diligent, occasion to séeke for more knowledge and vnderstanding than is taught them, and me thinkes that it is a great shame, that the Ferrers of this age shoulde not knowe much more than the Ferrers of olde time, sith that besides that, the old mens knowledge is not hidden from them, they haue also their owne experience: and time also bringeth euery daie newe thinges to light. But now to procéede in discoursing of the liuer

according to the physicians doctrine as I haue begun, I saie then of an inflammation in the hollowe side of the liuer, the signes bee these: loathing of meat, great thirst, lowesnesse of bellie, easie lieng on the right side, and painefull lieng on the left. But if the inflammation be on the full side or swelling side of the liuer, then the patient is troubled with difficultie of breathing, with a drie cough, and grieuous paine, pulling and twitching the windpipe, and to lie vpon the right side is more painefull than on the left, and the swelling also may be felt with a mans hand. But you must vnderstande by the way, that all these thinges laste mentioned bee the signes of some great inflammation, for small inflamations haue no such signes, but are to bee iudged onelie by griefe vnder the short ribs and long fetching of the breath. The signes of Apostumation is painefull and great heate. The signes of Vlceration is decrease of the heate with feeblenesse and fainting. For the filthie matter flowing abroad with euill vapours corrupteth the heart, and manie times causeth death. The signes of the consumption of the liuer, shall bee declared in the next chapter, and as for the curing of all the other diseases before mentioned, experience must first teach it ere I can write it. Notwithstanding I cannot thinke but that such thinges as are good to heale the like diseases in mans bodis are also good for a horse, for his liuer is like in substance and shape to a mans liuer, differing in nothing but onelie in greatnesse. And therefore I woulde wishe you to learne at the Physicians hands, who I am sure first, as touching the weakenesse of the liuer, proceeding of the vntemperatnesse thereof, will bid you to heale euerie such vntemperatnesse by his contrarie: that is to saie, heate by colde, and drinesse by moisture: and so contrarie. And therefore it shall bee verie necessarie for you to learne the qualities, natures, and vertues of hearbs, drugges, and all other simples, and how to apply them in time. And for to heale the obstruction of the Liuer, they will counsell you perhappes to make the horse drinkes of such simples as these bee, Agrimone, Fumitorie, Camomill, Mormewood, Licoras, Annis seedes, Smallage, Perslie, Spiknard, Gentian, Succorie, Endiue, Sperage, Lupins, the vertues whereof you shall learne in the herbals: but amongst all simples, there is none more praised than the Li-

uer of a Wolfe beaten into powder, & mingled in anie medicine that is made for anie disease in the Liuer. The cure of an inflammation consisteth in letting bloud, and in bathing, or fomenting the sore place with such hearbes and oiles, as may mollifie and disperse humors abroad, wherewith some simples that be astringent would be alwayes mingled: yea, and in all other medicines that be applied to the liuer, for anie maner of diseases. Simples that mollifie and disperse be these. Linseede, Fenegréeke: Camomell, Annis seedes, Meliot: and such like thinges. Simples astringent be these: Red rose leaues, Bramble leaues, Wormewood, Plantaine: Mirre, Masticke, Storax, and such like. Apostumes are to be ripened and voided. Vlcers must be cleansed, & seowred downward either by the bellie or by Vrine: and therefore the vse of such simples as prouoke vrine in such cases is necessarie. The old writers of horseleach craft do saie, that when a horse is grieued in his liuer, hee will forsake his meate, and his bodie will waste, his mouth will be drie, his tongue rough and harsh: yea, and it will swell, and he will refuse to lie on that side where his griefe is. The cure whereof, according to Absirtus is in this sort. Let him drinke stampt Ireos: with wine alaied with water. He praiseth also an hearbe much like vnto Calamint: called of Plinie, Polymonia, or let him drinke Saueris with wine and oile. I thinke that Agrimonie or liuerwort is as good as the best of them. Absirtus would haue his bodie to be chafed with wine and oile mixt togither: and to bee well littered that he may lie soft: and his prouender that should be giuen him to be steeped first in warme water: and now and then some Nitrum to be put in his drinke.

Of the consumption of the Liuer. Chap. lxxxvii.

I Beléeue that no inward member of a horse doth suffer so much, as the lunges and liuer, and that not so muche by continuall, as by vnordinate, and vntimelie trauell, labor and exercise, whereby either the Horses lunges, or his liuer doe most commonlie perish, and is consumed: yea, and sometime both. Of the consumption of the lungs, we haue talked sufficientlie before: therefore let vs shew you here the causes whereof the consumtion of the liuer procéedeth. The physicians saie, that it may come of anie humour, but chiefly and most commonly

of

of cholericke matter, ſhedde throughout the ſubſtance of the liuer, which putrifieng by little and little, and leiſurelie, doeth at length corrupt, and periſh all the ſubſtance of the liuer, which thing in mans bodie doth firſt proceede, as the Phyſicians ſaie, either by eating corrupt meates, or elſe by continuall drinking of ſweete wines. But me thinkes that the conſumption of a horſes liuer, ſhould come by ſome extreame heate, inflaming the bloud, which afterward being putrified, doth corrupt and erulcerate the ſubſtance of the liuer. For after inflammation, as I ſaid before, commeth apoſtumation, and then erulceration, which is verie hard to cure, becauſe the ſubſtance of the Liuer is ſpongeous like vnto the Lunges. And whileſt the Liuer is ſo corrupted, there can be no good digeſtion, for lack whereof the bodie receiueth no good nutriment, and therefore muſt needes alſo languiſh and conſume. The ſignes, according to Martin, be theſe. The horſe will forſake his meate, and will ſtand ſtretching himſelfe in length, and neuer couet to ly downe, and his breath will be ſo ſtrong, as no man can abide it, and he will continuallie caſt yellowiſh matter at the one noſtrill, or elſe at both, according as one or both ſides of the liuer is corrupted, and on that ſide that he caſteth, hee will haue vnder his iaw, euen about the midſt therof a knob or kirnell as much as a Wallnut, which when Martin findeth, he committeth his carkas to the crowes, taking him to bee paſt cure. But if hee were let bloud in time, and had ſuch drinkes giuen him, as are good to comfort and ſtrengthen the liuer, he thinketh that the horſe might be recouered. I neuer reade anie medicine for the waſting of the Liuer, as I remember, but this onelie diet, which I found in an old Engliſh booke. Let him drinke for the ſpace of three daies no other thing but warme wort, and let him eate no other meate but Otes baked in an ouen, and let him ſtand meat eleſſe the firſt night before you giue him the woort. But I thinke it were not amiſſe to put into the wort that he drinketh euery morning ſome good confection or powder made of Agrimonie, red roſe leaues, Sacharum Roſaceum, Diarchadon, Abbatis, Diaſantalon, Licoras and of the liuer of a woolfe, and ſuch other ſimples as doe comfort and ſtrengthen the liuer, or elſe to giue him the ſame thinges with Goates milke lukewarme.

Of the diſeaſes in the Gall. Chap. lxxxviii.

IN my opinion the gall of a horſe is ſubiect to diuers diſeaſes, as well as the gall of a man, as to obſtruction, whereof commeth fulneſſe and emptineſſe of the bladder thereof and alſo the ſtone in the gall. But obſtruction may chance two maner of waies. Firſt, when the waye whereby the choler ſhould proceede from the liuer vnto the bladder of the gall as vnto his proper receptacle is ſtopped, and thereby the bladder remaineth emptie, whereof may ſpring diuers euill accidents: as vomiting, the laxe or bloudie flixe. Secondlie, when the way whereby ſuch choler ſhould iſſue forth of the bladder of the Gall downe into the guts is ſhut vp, whereby the bladder is ouer full and aboundeth with to much choler which cauſeth heauineſſe, ſuffocation, belching, heat, thirſt, and diſpoſition to angrineſſe. The ſignes of both kindes of obſtruction in the gall is coſtiuenes and yellowiſhnes of ſkin, infected with the yellowe iaundis. The ſtone in the gall which is ſomewhat blackiſh proceedeth of the obſtruction of the conduits of the bladder, whereby the choler being long kept in waxeth dry & turneth at length to hard grauel or ſtones, whereof becauſe there is neither ſignes nor any grieuous accident knowen to the Phyſicians I leaue to talke anie farther thereof, and the rather for that none of mine authors doe make anie mention of the gall at all. Notwithſtanding to giue ſome light vnto the vnlearned Ferrers, and that they may the better vnderſtand the inward parts of a horſe I thought good to write thus much, thinking it no time loſt while I may profite them any way.

Of the diſeaſes in the ſplene. Chap. lxxxix.

THe ſplene, as I ſaid before in the keepers office, is the receptacle of melancholie, and of the dregs of bloud, and is ſubiect to the like diſeaſes that the liuer is, that is to ſaie to ſwelling, obſtruction, hard knob, and inflamation: for the ſubſtance of the ſplene is ſpongeous, and therfore apt to ſuck in all filthe and to dilate it ſelfe, wherefore being full it muſt néeds ſwell, which will appeare in the left ſide vnder the ſhort ribs, and ſuch ſwelling cauſeth alſo ſhortneſſe of breath, and ſpecialtie when the bodie doth labour or trauell. It is painfull alſo to lie on the right ſide, becauſe the ſplene being ſwollen ſo oppreſſeth

the

the midſtſe, and ſpecially when the ſtomach is full of meate, and the patient hath worſe digeſtion than appetite, and is troubled with much wind, both vpward and downeward. Moreouer, the vapour of the humor doth offend the heart, making it faint, and cauſeth all the bodie to be heauie and dull, and if ſuch ſwelling be ſuffered to goe vncured, then if it bee a melancholie humour, and abounding ouermuch, it waxeth euerie day thicker and thicker, cauſing obſtruction not onelie in the veines and artires, which is to be perceiued by heauineſſe and griefe on the left ſide, but alſo in the ſplene it ſelfe, whereas by vertue of the heate it is hardened euerie daie more and more, and ſo by little and little waxeth to a hard knobbe, which doth not onelie occupie all the ſubſtance of the ſplene, but alſo manie times all the left ſide of the wombe, & therby maketh all the euill accidents or griefes before recited much worſe than they were. Now as touching the inflammation of the ſplene which chanceth verie ſildome, for ſomuch as euerie inflammation proceedeth of pure bloud, which ſeldome entereth into the ſplene: I ſhall not néede to make manie wordes, but referre you ouer to the Chapter of the Liuer, for in ſuch caſe they differ not, but proceéding of like cauſe haue alſo like ſignes, and doe require like cure. The olde writers ſaie, that horſes be often grieued with griefe in the ſplene, and ſpecially in ſommer ſeaſon with greédie eating of ſweete greéne meates, and they call thoſe horſes Lienoſos, that is to ſay ſplenetike. The ſignes whereof (ſay they) are theſe, hard ſwelling on the left ſide, ſhort breath, often groning, and greédie appetite to meate. The remedie whereof, according to Abſirtus is to make the horſe to ſweate once a day during a certaine time, by riding him or otherwiſe trauelling him, and to powre into his left noſtril euery day the iuice of mirabolans mingled with wine and water, amounting in all to the quantitie of a pinte. But me thinkes it would doe him more good, if hee dranke it as Hierocles woulde haue him to doe. Eumelius praiſeth this drinke: take of cummin ſeed and of bonie, of ech ſixe ounces, and of Lacerpitium as much as a beane, of vineger a pinte, and put all theſe into three quartes of water, and let it ſtand ſo all night, and the nert morning giue the horſe to drinke therof, being kept ouer night faſting Theomneſtus praiſeth the decoction of Capers, eſpecially if the barke

barke of the rote thereof may be gotten sodden in water to a sirrop. Or else make him a drinke of Garlike, Nitrum, Horehound and Mormewood, sodden in harsh wine: and hee would haue the left side to bee bathed with warme water, and to be hard rubbed. And if all this will not helpe, then to giue him the fire which Absirtus doth not allow, saying that the splene lieth so, as it cannot easilie be fired, to doe him anie good. But for so muche as the liuer and splene are members much occupied in the ingendering and separating of humors, manie euill accidents and griefes doe take their first beginning of them, as the Jandis, called in a horse, the Yellowes, drinesse of bodie, and consumption of the flesh, without any apparant cause why, which the Physicians call Atrophia, also euill habite of the bodie, called of them Cachexia, and the dropsie. But first we will speake of the Jandis or yellowes.

Of the yellowes. Chap. xc.



The Physicians in mans bodie do make two kinds of Jandis: that is to say, the yellow proceeding of choler disperſed throughout the whole bodie, and dieng the skin yellowe, and the black proceeding of melancholie disperſed likewise throughout the whole bodie, and making all the skinne blacke. And as the yellowe Jandis commeth for the most part, either by obstruction or stopping of the conduites belonging to the bladder of the Gall, which (as I said before) is the receptacle of Choler, or by some inflammation of the liuer, whereby the blonde is conuerted into Choler, and so spreadeth throughout the bodie: euen so the blacke Jandis commeth by meanes of some obstruction in the liuer veine, that goeth to the splene, not suffering the splene to doe his office, in receiuing the dregs of the blond from the liuer, wherein they abound too much, or else for that the splene is already too full of such dregs, and so sheddeth them backe againe into the veines. But as for the black Jandis they haue not bene obserued to be in horses as in men, by anie of our Ferrers in these daies that I can learne. And yet the old writers of horseleachcraft, doe seeme to make two kindes of Jandis, called of them Cholera, that is to say, the drie Choler, and also the moist choler. The signes of the drie choler, as Absirtus saith, is great heate in the bodie, and costiuenesse of the belly, whereof

thereof it is said is to be drie. Moreouer, the horse will not couet to lie downe, because he is so pained in his bodie, and his mouth will be hot and drie. It commeth, as he saith, by obstruction of the conduit, whereby the choler should resort into the bladder of the gall, and by obstruction also of the vrine vessels, so as hee cannot stale. The cure according to his experience, is to giue him a glister made of oile water, and Nitrum, and to giue him no prouender, before that you haue raked his fundament, and to powre the decoction of Mallowes mingled with sweete wine into his nostrills and let his meat be grasse, or else sweet haie sprinkled with Nitre and water, and he must rest from labour, and bee often rubbed. Hierocles would haue him to drinke the decoction of wilde Colewortes sodden in wine. Againe of the moist choler of Jaundis, these are the signes. The horses eies will loke yeallowe, and his nostrills will open wide, his eares and his flankes will sweate, and his stale will be yeallowe and cholericke, and he will grone when he lieth downe, which disease the said Absirtus was wont to heale, as he saith, by giuing the horse a drinke made of Time & Cumin, of ech like quantitie stampt together, and mingled with wine, honie, and water, and also by letting him bloud in the pasternes. This last disease seemeth to differ nothing at all from that which our Ferrers call the yeallowes. The signes whereof, according to Martin, be these. The horse will be faint, and sweate as he standeth in the stable, and forsake his meate: and his eies, and the inside of his lips and all his mouth within will bee yeallowe. The cure whereof according to him is in this sort. Let him bloud in the necke veine, a good quantitie, and then giue him this drinke: take of white wine, or of Ale, a quarte, and put thereunto of Saffron, turmericke, of ech halfe an ounce, and the iuice that is wroong out of a great handfull of Celendine, and being lukewarme, giue it the horse to drink, and keepe him warme the space of three or foure daies, giuing him warme water with a little bran in it.

Of the euill habite of the bodie, and of the dropsie. Chap. xci.

AS touching the drines and consumption of the flesh, without any apparant cause why, called of the physicians as I said before Atrophia I know not what to say more than I haue said alreadie before in the Chapter of consumption

of

of the flesh, and therefore resort thither. And as for the euill habite of the bodie, which is to be euill coloured, beaute, dull, and of no force, strength, nor liuelinesse, commeth not for lacke of nutriment, but for lacke of good nutriment, for that the blood is corrupted with flegme, choler, or melancholie, proceeding either from the splene, or else through weakenesse of the stomach or Liuer, causing euill digestion, or it may come by foule feeding: yea, and also for lacke of moderate exercise. The euill habite of the bodie, is next cosin to the dropsie, whereof though our Ferrers haue had no experience, yet because mine old authors writting of horseleachcraft do speake much thereof: I thinke it good here briefelie to shew you their experience therein, that is to saie, how to know it, and also how to cure it. But sith none of them do shew the cause whereof it proceedes, I thinke it meete first therefore to declare vnto you the causes thereof, according to the doctrine of the learned Physicians, which in mans bodie doe make three kindes of dropsies, calling the first Anasarca, the second Ascites, and the third Timpanias. Anasarca, is an vniuersal swelling of the body through the abundance of water, lieng betwixt the skin and the flesh, & differeth not from the disease last mentioned, called Cachexia, that is to saie, euill habit of the bodie, sauing that the body is more swoln in this than in Cachexia, albeit they proceede both of like causes as of coldnesse and weakenesse of the liuer, or by meanes that the heart, splene, stomach, and other members seruing to digestion, be grieued or diseased. Ascites is a swelling in the couering of the bellie, called of the Physicians, Abdomen, comprehending both the skin, the fat, eight muscles, and the filme or pannicle called Peritoneum, through the abundance of some whaysshe humour entred into the same, which besides the causes before alledged, procedeth most chiefly by meanes that some of the vessels within be broken or rather cracked, out of the which, though the blood being somewhat grosse cannot issue forth, yet the whaysh humor being subtil, may run out into the belly, like water distilling through a cracked pot. Timpanias called of vs commonlie the Timpanie, is a swelling of the foresaid couering of the bellie, through the abundance of wind entred into the same, which wind is ingendred of crudities and euill digestion, and whilest it abounded in the stomach, or o-

ther

ther intrails, finding no issue out, it breaketh in violently through the small conduits among the panicles of the said couering, not without great paine to the patient, and so by tolling to and fro, windeth at length into the space of the couering it selfe. But surelie such wind cannot bee altogither voide of moisture. Notwithstanding, the bodie swelleth not so much with this kind of dropsie as with the other kind called Ascites. The signes of the dropsie is shortnesse of breath, swelling of the bodie, euill colour, lothing of meate, and great desire to drinke, and speciallie in the dropsie called Ascites, in which also the bellie will sound like a bottle halfe full of water: but in the Timpanie, it will sound like a Tabor. But now though mine Authours make not so manie kindes of dropsies, yet they saie all generallie, that a horse is much subiect to the dropsie. The signes, according to Absirtus, and Hierocles, be these. His bellie, legges, and stones, will bee swollen, but his backe, buttockes, and flanckes, will be dried and shronke vp to the verie bones. Moreouer, the veines of his face and temples, and also the veines vnder his tongue wil be so hidden, as you cannot see them, and if you thrust your finger hard against his bodie, you shall leaue the print thereof behind, for the flesh lacking naturall heate will not returne againe to his place, when the horse lieth downe he spreadeth himselfe abroad, not being able to lie round togither on his bellie, and the haire of his backe by rubbing will fall away Pelagonius in shewing the signes of the dropsie, not much differing from the Phisicians first recited, seemeth to make two kinds thereof, calling the one the Timpanie, which for difference sake may be called in English the winde dropsie, and the other the water dropsie. Notwithstanding both haue one cure, so far as I can perceiue, which is in this sort. Let him be warme couered, and walked a good while togither in the sunne to prouoke sweate, and let all his bodie be well and often rubbed alongest the haire, and let him feed vpon Colworts, smallage, and Elming boughes, and of all other thinges that may losen the bellie, or prouoke vrine, and let his common meat be grasse if it may be gotten, if not: then hay sprinkled with water and Nitrum. It is good also to giue him a kind of pulse called Cich, steeped a date and a night in water, and then taken out, and laid so as the water may drop away from it

191

it, Pelagonius would haue him to drinke parſlie ſtampt with wine, or the rot of the hearbe called in Latin Panax, with wine. But if the ſwelling of the bellie will not decreaſe for all this, then ſlitte a little hole vnder his bellie a handfull behind the nauill, and put into that hole a hollowe réede or ſome other pipe, that the water or winde may goe out, not all at once, but by little and litle and at diuers times, and beware that you make not the hole ouer wide, leaſt the caule of the bellie fall downe thereunto, and when all the water is cleane runne out, then heale vp the wounde as you doe all other woundes, and let the horſe drinke as little as is poſſible.

Of the diſeaſes of the guttes of a horſe, and firſt of the Colike. Chap. xcii.

THe guts of a horſe may be diſeaſed with diuers griefs as with the colicke, with coſtiuenеſſe, with the Lax, with the bloudy flix and wormes. The colike is a greeuous paine in the great gutte, called of the Phyſicians Colon, whereof this diſeaſe taketh his name, which gutte, becauſe it is verie large and ample, and full of corners, it is apte to receiue diuers matters, and ſo becommeth ſubiect to diuerſe griefs. For ſometime it is tormented with the abundance of groſe humors gotten betwixt the panicle of the ſaid gut', and ſometime with winde hauing no iſſue out, ſometime with inflammation, and ſometime with ſharpe fretting humors. But ſo farre as I can learne, a horſe is moſt commonlie troubled with the colike that commeth of winde, and thereof our Ferrers do tearme it the wind colicke. The ſignes whereof be theſe. The horſe will forſake his meate, and lie downe and wallow and walter vpon the ground, and ſtanding on his féete hee will ſtampe for verie paine with his forefeete, and ſtrike at his bellie with his hinder foote and looke often towards his bellie, which alſo towards the flankes will ſwell, and ſéem greater to the eie than it was wont to be. The cure whereof according to Martin, is in this ſort: take a quarte of malmeſie, of cloues, pepper, Sinamon, of eche halfe an ounce, of ſugar halfe a quarterne, and giue it the horſe lukewarme, and annointe his flankes with oile of Bale and then bridle him, and trot him immediatlie vp and downe the ſpace of an houre, vntill hee dung, and

if he

if he will not dung then rake him, and if néede be prouoke him to dung, by putting into his fundament an onion pilled and iagged with a knife croſſewiſe, ſo as the iuice thereof may tickle his fundament, and for the ſpace of three or foure daies let him drinke no cold water, and let him be kept warme. Ruſsius was wont to vſe this kind of cure: take a good big réede a ſpan long or more, and being annointed with oile, thruſt it into the horſes fundament, faſkning the outward ende thereof vnto his taile, ſo as it cannot ſlip out, and then hauing firſt annointed and chafed all the horſes bellie with ſome hot oile, cauſe him to be ridden ſomewhat haſtilie vp and downe ſome hilly ground, and that will make him to void the wind out of his bellie through the réede: which done, let him be kept warme and fedde with good prouender, and warme maſhes made of wheate meale, and fennell ſéede, and let him drinke no cold water vntill he be whole. Abſirtus would haue you to giue him a gliſter made of wilde Cucumber, or elſe of hennes dunge, Nitrum, and ſtrong wine.

Of Coſtiuenelle, or belly bound. Chap. xciii.

COſtiuenelle is when a horſe is bound in the bellie and cannot dung, which may come by glutte of prouender, or ouermuch féeding and reſt, whereof we haue talked ſufficientlie before, alſo by wind, groſſe humors, or colde cauſing obſtruction, and ſtopping in the guttes. The cure whereof, according to Martin, is in this ſorte. Take of the decoction of Mallowes a quarte, and put thereunto halfe a pint of oile, or in ſteade thereof, halfe a pinte of freſh butter, and one ounce of Benedicte laxatiue, and powre that into his fundament with a little horne mæte for the purpoſe, that done, clap his taile to his fundament, holding it ſtill with your hand, whileſt another doth leade him in his hand, and trotte him vp and downe, that the medicine may worke the better, and hauing voided all that in his bellie, bring him into the ſtable, and there let him ſtand a while on the bitte well couered, and warme littered, and then giue him a little haie, and let his drinke be warmed, it ſhall not be amiſſe alſo to giue him that night a warme maſh.

Of

Of the Laxe. Chap. xciiii.

THe Italians call this disease Ragiatura, and the horse that hath this disease Cauallo arragiato, or Sforato. It may come through the abundance of cholerike humors descending from the liuer, or gall, downe to the guttes. But Rusius saith, that it commeth most commonlie by drinking ouermuch colde water immediatlie after prouender, or by sudden trauelling vpon a full stomach, before his meate bee digested, or by hastie running, or galloping immediatlie after water. If this disease continue long, it will make the horse verie weake, and feeble, so as he shall not be able to stand on his legges. Notwithstanding, sith nature feeling her selfe oppressed, endeuoureth thus to ease her selfe by expelling those humours that grieue her, I would not wish you suddenlie to stop it, least some worse inconuenience growe thereof. But if you see that the horse loseth his flesh, and wareth more dull and feeble than he was wont to bee, then giue him this drinke often experimented by Martin, and that shall stop him: take of beane flower, and of bole Armonie of each a quarterne, mingle these things together in a quarte of red wine, and giue it him luke warme, and let the horse rest and bee kept warme, and let him drinke no cold drink but luke warme, and put therein a little Beane flower, and let him not drinke but once a daie, and then not ouer much for the space of three or foure daies.

Of the bloudie Flixe. Chap. xcv.

IT seemeth by the old writers, that a horse is also subiect to the bloudie Flixe. For Absirtus, Hierocles, and Democritus, say all with one voice, that the guttes of a horse may be so exulcerated, that he will void bloudie matter at his fundament: yea, and his fundament therewith will fall out, which disease they call Dysenteria, which is as much to say, as a painefull exulceration of the guttes, vnder the which, the old men, as it seemeth by the wordes of Hierocles, and Absirtus, would comprehend the disease called of the Phisicians Tenasmus, that is to saie, a desire to dung often, and to do but little, and that with great paine: And also another disease called Procidentia ani, that is to say, the falling out of the fundament, which the Phisicians do account as seuerall diseases. Notwithstanding, for somuch as Dysenteria,

and

and Tenaſmus, doe ſpring both of like cauſes: yea, and alſo for that the falling out of the fundament hath ſome affinitie with them, I will followe mine authors, in ioining them altogither in this one Chapter. The Phyſicians make diuerſe kindes of bloudie Flixe, for ſometime the fatte of the ſlimie filth which is voided, is ſprinkled with a little bloud, ſometime the matter that voideth is mixt with the ſcrapings of the guts, and ſometime it is waterish bloud, like water wherein bloudie fleſhe hath beene waſhed, and ſometime bloud mixt with melancholie, and ſometime pure bloude, and by the mixture of the matter you ſhall know in mans body, whether the vlceration be in the inner ſmall guttes, or in the thicke outwarde guttes: for if it be in the inner guts, then the matter and bloud will be perfectlie mixt togither, but if it be in the outward guttes, then they be not mingled togither, but come out ſeuerall, the bloud moſte commonlie following the matter. Of this kinde is that diſeaſe called before Tenaſmus, for that is an vlcer in the right gut ſeruing the fundament and doth procéede euen as the Flixe doth, of ſome ſharpe humors, which being violentlie driuen, and hauing to paſſe thorough manie croked and narrowe waies, doe cleaue to the guttes, and with their ſharpeneſſe fret them, cauſing exulceration and greeuous paine. The flixe alſo may come of ſome extreame colde, heat or moiſtneſſe, or by meane of receiuing ſome violent purgation, hauing therein ouermuch Scamonie, or ſuch like violent ſimple, or through weakeneſſe of the liuer, or other members ſeruing to digeſtion. Now as touching the falling out of the fundament, the Phyſicians ſaie, that it commeth through the reſolution or weakneſſe of the muſcles, ſeruing to draw vp the fundament, which reſolution may come partlie by ouermuch ſtraining, and partlie they may be loſened by ouermuch moiſture, for which cauſe, children being full of moiſture are more ſubiect to this diſeaſe than men. And for the ſelfe ſame cauſe I thinke that horſes hauing verie moiſt bodies be ſubiect thereunto. Thus hauing ſhewed you the cauſes of the diſeaſes before recited, I will ſhew you the cure preſcribed by the old writers. Abſirtus would haue the fundament on the outſide to be cut round about, but ſo as the inwarde ring thereof be not touched, for that were dangerous and would kill

193

the horse, for so much as his fundament would neuer abide within his body, and that don, he would haue you to giue him to drink the powder of vnripe Pomgranat shels, called in Latin Malicorium, togither with wine and water, which indeed because it is astringent is not to bee misliked: but as for cutting of the fundament, I assure you I cannot iudge what he should meane thereby, vnlesse it be to widen the fundament, by giuing it long slittes or cuttes on the outside, but well I know that it may cause more paine, and greater inflammation. And therefore me thinkes it were better in this case to followe the Phisicians precepts, which is first to consider whether the fundament being fallen out be inflamed or not, for if it be not inflamed, then it shall be good to annoint it first with oile of Roses somwhat warmed, or else to wash it with warme red wine. But if it be inflamed, then to bathe it well, first with a spunge dipt in the decoction of Mallowes, Camomill, Linesede and Fenegreek, and also to annointe it well with oile of Camomill and Dill mingled togither, to asswage the swelling, and then to thrust it in again faire and softlie, with a soft linnen cloth. That done, it shall be good to bathe all the place about with red wine wherin hath beene sodden Acatium, Galles, Acorne cups, parings of Quinces, and such like simples as bee astringent, and then to throw on some astringent powder made of bole Armonie, Frankencense, Sanguis Draconis, Myrrh, Acatium, and such like: yea, and also to giue the horse this drink much praised of all the old writers. Take of Saffron one ounce, of Myrrh two ounces, of the hearbe called in Latine Abrotonum, named in some of our English herbals Sothernwood, three ounces, of Parsly one ounce, of garden Rew, otherwise called herb Grace, three ounces, of Pirtitheum, otherwise called of some spittlewort, and of Isope, of each two ounces, of Callia which is like Cynamon, one ounce. Let all these thinges be beaten into fine pouder and then mingled with chalke and strong vineger wrought into paast, of which paast make little cakes, and drie them in the shadow, and being dried, dissolue some of them in a sufficient quãtitie of barlie milke, or iuice called of the old writers, and also of the Physicians, Cremor *P*tisane, and giue the horse to drink therof with a horne, for the medicine, as the Authors write, doeth not

onelie

onelie heale the bloudy Flixe and the other twoo diſeaſes before recited, but alſo if it be giuen with a quart of warm water it will heale all griefe and paine in the belly, and alſo of the bladder, that commeth for lacke of ſtaling. And being giuen with ſweet wine it will heale the biting of any ſerpent or mad dog.

Of the wormes. Chap. xcvi.

IN a horſes guts doe breed three kindes of wormes, euen as there doth in mans body, though they be not altogither like in ſhape. The firſt long and round, euen like to thoſe that children doe moſte commonlie voyde, and are called by the generall name wormes. The ſecond are little wormes hauing great heades and ſmall long tailes like a needle, and bee called Bottes. The thirde be ſhorte and thicke like the ende of a mans little finger, and therfore be called Troncheons: and though they haue diuers ſhapes according to the diuerſitie of the place perhaps where they breede, or elſe according to the figure of the putrified matter whereof they breede: yet no doubt they proceed all of one cauſe, that is to ſaie, of a rawe, groſſe and flegmatike matter apt to putrifaction, ingendred moſt commonly by fowle feeding, and as they proceede of one ſelfe cauſe, ſo alſo haue they like ſignes, and like cure. The ſignes bee theſe. The Horſe will forſake his meate, for the troncheons and the Bottes will couet alwaies to the maw and paine him ſore. He will alſo lie downe and wallow, and ſtanding he will ſtampe and ſtrike at his bellie with his hinder foot, and look often toward his bellie. The cure according to Martin is thus: take of ſweet milke a quart, of hony a quarterne, and giue it him lukewarme, and walke him vppe and downe for the ſpace of an houre, and ſo lette him reſt for that day, with as little meate or drinke as may bee, and ſuffer him not to lie downe. Then the next day giue him this drinke: take of herbe Grace a handfull, of ſauine as much, and being well ſtampt, put thereunto a little Brimſtone, and a little ſoote of a chimney beaten into fine ponder, and put all theſe things togither in a quarte of wort or new ale, and there let them lie in ſteepe the ſpace of an houre or two, then ſtraine it well through a faire cloth, and giue it

194

the horſe to drinke lukewarme, then bridle him and walke him vp and downe the ſpace of an houre: that done bring him into the ſtable, and let him ſtand on the bit two or three houres, and then giue him a little hay. Laurentius Ruſsius ſaith, that it is good to giue the horſe the warme guttes of a yong hen with a little ſalte three daies together in the morning, and not to let him drinke vntill it be none. Some ſaie that it is good to ride him hauing his bit firſt annointed with dung comming hot from the man: ſome againe vſe to giue him a quantitie of Brimſtone, and halfe as much Roſen beaten into powder and mingled together with his prouender, which he muſt eate a good while before he drinketh.

I haue found by often triall, that if you giue the horſe with a horne a good prettie diſhefull of ſalte brine, bee it fleſh brine or cheeſe brine, it will kill anie of the three kindes of wormes, and make the horſe to auoide them dead in ſhort time after.

Of the paine in the kidneyes. Chap. xcvii.

Methinks that the kidnies of a horſe ſhould be ſubiect to as many griefs as the kidnies of a man, as to inflammation, obſtruction, Apoſtumes and Vlcers, and ſpecialtie to obſtruction that commeth by meanes of ſome ſtone or grauell gathered together in the kidnies, whereby the horſe cannot ſtale but with paine, for I haue ſéene diuers horſes my ſelfe that haue voided much grauell in their ſtale, which without doubt did come from the kidnies, but my Authours doe referre ſuch griefes to the bladder and brine, and write of no diſeaſe but onelie of the inflammation of the kidnies, which is called of them Nephritis, and ſo it is alſo called of the Phyſicians. It commeth as they ſay by ſome great ſtraine in leaping ouer ſome ditche, or elſe by bearing ſome great burthen. The ſignes whereof be theſe. The horſe will goe rolling behinde and ſtaggering, his ſtones will ſhrink vp, and his ſtale will be blackiſh and thick. I think this diſeaſe differeth not from that which we called before the ſwaieng of the backe when wee talked of the griefes in the backe and loines, and therefore reſort thither. The cure of this diſeaſe, according to the beſt of the olde writers is in this ſorte.

Bathe

Bathe his backe and loines with wine, oile, and Nitrum warmed togither, and after that you haue ſo bathed him, let him bee couered with warme clothes, and ſtande littered vp to the belly with ſtraw, ſo as hee may lie ſoft, and giue him ſuch drinkes as may prouoke vrine, as thoſe that be made with Dill, Fenell, Annis, ſmallage, parſly, ſpikenard, Myrrhe and Caſſia. Some ſay it is good to giue him a kind of pulſe called Cich with wine. Som againe doe praiſe Ewes milke, or elſe oile and Deares ſewet molten togither to be giuen him to drink, or the root of the hearb called Aſphodelus, engliſhed by ſome Daffadill, ſodden in wine.

Of the diſeaſes belonging to the bladder and vrine of a horſe. Chap. xcviii.

Herocles ſaith, that a horſe is ſubiect to three kindes of diſeaſes incident to the bladder or vrin, the firſt is called Stranguria, the ſecond Dyſuria, the third Iſchuria. Stranguria, otherwiſe called in Latin Stillicidium, and of our old ferrers, according to the French name Chowdepis, is when the horſe is prouoked to ſtale often, and voideth nothing but a few drops, which commeth as the phyſicians ſaie, either through the ſharpnes of the vrine or by ſome exulceration of the bladder, or elſe by meanes of ſome apoſtume in the liuer or kidnies, which apoſtume beeing broken, the matter reſorteth downe into the bladder, and with the ſharpeneſſe thereof cauſeth a continual prouocation of piſſing. Dyſuria is when the horſe cannot piſſe but with great labour and paine, which for difference ſake I will call from henceforth the pain piſſe. It may come ſometime through the weakneſſe of the bladder and cold intemperature therof, and ſometime through the abundance of flegmatike and groſſe humours, ſtopping the necke of the bladder. Iſchuria, is when the horſe cannot piſſe at all, and therefore may bee called the piſſuppreſſ, or ſuppreſſion of vrine, whether you will: methinks alwaies that the ſhorter and the more the proper name is, the better and more eaſie it is to pronounce. It may come as the Phyſicians ſaie, by weaknes of the bladder, or for that the water conduit is ſtopt with groſſe humors, or with matter deſcending from the liuer or kidnies, or with the ſtone: yea, and ſometimes by means

of some inflammation or hard knob growing at the mouth of the conduit, or for that the sinewes of the bladder is nummed, so as the bladder is without feeling: or it may come by retention, and long holding of the water, most of which causes Hierocles also reciteth, adding thereunto that it may chance to a horse through ouermuch rest and idlenes, and also by meanes of some extreame cold, and specially in winter season, for the which the warmth of fire is a present remedie. But now mine Authors doe not shewe for euery one of these three kindes of diseases seuerall signes, but onlie say that when a horse cannot stale, he will stande as though he would stale, and thrust out his yarde a little, and also for verie paine stand beating his taile betwixt his thighes. Neither doe they seem to appoint seueral cures, but do make a hochpoch, mingling them altogither, some of them praising one thing and som another: For some sate it is good to mingle the iuice of Leekes with sweet smelling wine and oile togither, and to poure it into his right nostrill, and then to walke him vp and downe vppon it, and that will make him to stale. Some say it is good to giue him Smallage seed, or else the root of wilde Fenell sodden with wine to drinke, or to put fine sharpe Onions, clean pilled, and somwhat brused into his fundament, and to chase him immediatlie vppon it, either by riding him or otherwise, and that shall cause him to stale presentlie. It is good also to bathe al his back & loines with warme water. The scrapinges of the inward partes of his owne houes beaten into powder and mingled with wine and powred into his right nostrill will make him to stale, if you chase him vpon it, and the rather, as Hierocles saith, if you carie him to some shéepes coat or other place where shéepe are woont to stande, the smell of whose dung and pisse, without any other medicine, as he saith, will prouoke him to stale. Some will giue the horse white dogs dung dried and mingled with salt, wine, and Amoniacum to drinke, some hogs dung only with wine, and some the dregges of horsepisse with wine, and many other medicines which I leaue to rehearse for feare of being too tedious, and specially, sithe Martins experience doth follow heere at hand, agreeing in all pointes with Laurentius Rusius cure, which is in this sort. First draw out his yard and washe it well in white wine, and scoure it well, be-

cause

cauſe it will be many times ſtopped with durt and other baggage togither, and hardened like a ſtone, and then put a litle otle of camomill into the conduit with a war candle and a bruſed Cloue of Garlike, and that will prouoke him to ſtale. And if that will not helpe, then giue him this drinke. Take of parſly two handefuls, of Coriander one handefull, ſtampe them and ſtraine them with a quart of white wine, and diſſolue therin one ounce of cake Sope, and giue it lukewarme vnto the horſe to drinke, and kæpe him as warme as may be, and let him drinke no colde water for the ſpace of fiue or ſixe daies, and when you woulde haue him to ſtale, let it be either vpon plentie of ſtraw, or vppon ſome græne plot, or elſe in a ſhæpes coate, the ſauour whereof will greatlie prouoke him to ſtale, as hath bæne aforeſaid.

Of piſſing bloud. Chap. xcix.

PElagonius ſaith, that if a horſe be ouermuch laboured, or ouercharged with heauie burthen, or ouer fat, he wil manie times piſſe bloud, and the rather as I thinke, for that ſome veine is broken within the horſes bodie, and then cléere bloud will come forth many times, as the Phiſicians ſaie, without any piſſe at all. But if the bloud bee perfectly mingled togither with his ſtale, then it is a ſigne that it commeth from the kidnies, hauing ſome ſtone therein, which through vehement labour, doth feet the kidnies and veines thereof, and ſo cauſe them to bleede, through which whileſt the vrine paſſeth muſt nædes bee infected and died with the bloud. It may come alſo by ſom ſtripe, or from the muſcle that incloſeth the necke of the bladder. The cure, according to Pelagonius, Abſirtus, Hierocles, and the reſt, is thus. Let the horſe bloud in the palat of the mouth, to conuert the bloud the contrary waie. Then take of Tragagant that hath bin ſtæped in wine, halfe an ounce, and of Poppie ſeed one dramme and one ſcruple, and of Stirax as much, and twelu Pineaple kirnels: let all theſe thinges be beaten and mingled well togethet, & giue the horſe thereof euery morning, the ſpace of ſeuen daies, the quantitie of a haſell nut diſtempered in a quart of wine: me thinkes that the quantitie of a walnut were too little for ſo much wine. Some write that it is good to make him a drinke with the

roote of the heard Asphopelus, which some call Daffadill mingled with wheate flower and Sumach sodden long in water, and so to be giuen the horse with some wine added thereunto, or make him a drinke of Goates milke and oile, straining thereunto a little fromentie. Anatolius saith, that it is good to giue the horse three daies together, sodden beanes cleane pilled, whereunto would be added some Dates sewet and a little wine.

Of the Colt euil. Chap. C.

THis name Colt euill, in my iudgment, doth properlie signifie that disease, which the Phisicians cal Priapismus, which is a continuall standing together, with an vnnaturall swelling of the yard proceeding of some winde, filling the artires and hollow sinew or pipe of the yard, or else through the abundance of seed, which do chance oftentimes to man, and I thinke sometime to stoned horses. Notwithstanding Martin saith, that the colte euill is a swelling of the sheathe of the yard and the part of the bellie therabout, caused of corrupt seede, comming out of the yard, & remaining within the sheath where it putrifieth. And Geldinges most commonlie are subiect to this disease, not being able for lacke of naturall heate, to expell their seed any further. For Horses, as Martin saith, are seldome troubled with this disease because of their heat, vnles it be when they haue bin ouer trauelled, or otherwise weakned. The cure, according to him, is thus. Wash the sheath cleane within with lukewarme vineger, then drawe out his yard and wash that also: that don, ride him into some running streame vp to the belly, tolling him therein fro and fro to alaie the heate of the members, and vse him thus two or three daies and he shall be whole.

Of the mattering of the yard. Chap. Ci.

IT commeth at couering time, when the horse and mare both are ouerhot, and so perhaps burne themselues. The cure according to Martin is thus. Take a pinte of white wine, and boile therein a quarterne of roche Alome, and squirt thereof into his yard three or foure squirtfuls, one after another, and thrust the squirt so farre in as the liquor may pierce to

the

the bottom, to ſcowze away the bloudie matter, continuing thus to doe once a daie vntill he be whole.

Of the ſhedding of ſéed. Chap. Cii.

THis diſeaſe is called of the Phyſicians Gonorrhea, which may come ſometime through abundance and rankneſſe of ſéed, and ſometime by the weakeneſſe of the ſtones and ſéed veſſels not able to retaine the ſéede vntill it be digeſted and thickened. Vegetius ſaith that this diſeaſe wil make the horſe very faint and weake, and ſpeciallie in Summer ſeaſon. For cure whereof, the ſaid Vegetius would haue the horſe to be ridden into ſome cold water, euen vp to the belli, ſo as his ſtones may be couered with water, & then his fundament being firſt bathed with warme water or oile, he would haue you to thruſt in your hand and arme euen to the very bladder, and ſoftlie to rub and claw the ſame and the parts thereabouts, which bee the ſéed veſſels: that doone to couer him warme that he take no cold, and euery day he woulde haue you to giue the horſe hogges dung to drinke with red wine, vntill he be whole. I for my part, if I thought that it came of weakneſſe as is aforeſaide, which I would iudge by the wateriſhneſſe of the ſeed and vnluſtineſſe of the horſe, would giue him red wine to drinke, and put therein a little Acatium, the iuice of Plantain and a little Maſtick, and bath his backe with red wine and oile of Roſes mingled togither.

Of the falling of the yard. Chap. Ciii.

IT commeth, as I take it, through the weakeneſſe of the member, by meanes of ſome reſolution in the muſcles and ſinews ſeruing the ſame, cauſed at the firſte (perhaps) by ſome great ſtraine or ſtripe on the back. It may come alſo by wearines and tiring. For remedy whereof Abſirtus was wont to waſhe the yarde with ſalt water from the ſea, if it might be gotten, if not with water and ſalte, and if that preuailed not, he would all to prick the outmoſt ſkin of the yarde with a ſharpe néedle, but not deepe, and then waſh all the prickes with ſtrong vineger, and that did make the horſe, as he ſaith, to draw vp his yard againe immediatlie: yea, and this alſo will remedie

medie the falling out of the fundament. Pelagonius woulde haue you to put into the pipe of his yard, hony and salt boiled togither and made liquid, or else a quicke flie, or a grain of Frankencense or else a cloue of Garlick cleane pilled, and somewhat bruised, and also to poure on his backe oile, wine, Nitre, made warme and mingled togither. But Martins experience is in this sorte. First wash the yard with warme white wine, and then annoint it with oile of Roses and honie mingled togither, and put it vp into the sheath, and make him a codpeece of canuas to keepe it still vppe, and dresse him thus euery date once vntill he be whole. And in anie case let his backe be kept warme, either with a double cloth, or else with a charge made of bole Armonie, Egges, wheate flower, Sanguis Draconis, turpentine and vineger, or else laie on a wet sacke, which being couered with another drie cloth will keep his backe very warme.

Of the swelling of the Cod and stones. Chap. Ciiii.

ABsirtus saith, that the inflammation and swelling of the cod and stones, commeth by meanes of some wound, or by the stinging of some serpent, or by fighting one horse with another. For remedy wherof, he was wont to bath the cod with water wherein had beene sodden the rootes of wilde Cucumber and salt, & then to annoint it with an ointment made of Cerusa oile, Goates grease, and the white of an Egge. Some againe would haue the Cod to bee bathed in warme water, Nitrum and vineger mingled togither, and also to bee annointed with an ointment made of chalke, or of potters earth, Dre dung, cumin, water and vineger mingled togither, or else to be annointed with the iuice of the hearbe Solanum, called of some Nightshade, or with the iuice of hemlocke growing on dunghils: yea, and also to bee let bloud in the flankes. But *Martin* saith, that the swelling of the coddes commeth for the most part after some sickneſſe, or surfetting with cold, and then it is a signe of amendement. The cure according to his experience is in this sort. First let him bloud on both sides the flanke veines. Then take of oile of Roses, of vineger, of each halfe a pinte, and halfe a quarterne of Bole Armonic beaten into powder. Mingle them togither in a cruse, and being lukewarme, annoint the coddes therewith with

two

two or three feathers bound togither, and the nexte daie ride him into the water ſo as his cods may bee within the water, giuing him two or three turnes there in, and ſo to returne faire and ſoftly to the ſtable, and when hee is drie annoint him againe as before, continuing thus to doe euerie daie once vntill he be whole. The ſaide Martin ſaith alſo, that the cods may be ſwollen by meanes of ſome hurt or euill humors reſorting into the Cod, and then hee would haue you to couer the coddes with a charge made of Bole Armonie and vineger wrought togither, renewing it euerie day once vntill the ſwelling go awaie, or that it breake of it ſelfe, and if it breake then taint it with Mel Roſatum, & make him a breeche of canuas to keepe it in, renewing the taint euerie daie once vntill it be whole.

Of incording or bruſing. Chap. Cb.

This terme incording is borrowed of the Italian worde Incordato, which in plain Engliſh is as much to ſaie as burſten, and might be more rightly termed of vs incodded. For when a horſe is burſten, his gut falleth downe into the cod making it to ſwell. The Italians, as I take it, did cal it *I*ncordato becauſe the gut followes the ſtring of the ſtone called of them Il cordone, or Lachorda, wherof Incordato ſeemes to be deriued with ſome reaſon. According to which reaſon we ſhould call it rather inſtringhed than inchorded, for chorda doth ſignifie a ſtring or chord. Notwithſtanding, ſith that incording is alreadie receiued in the ſtable, I for my part am verie well content therewith, minding not to contende againſt it. But nowe you haue to note, that either man or beaſt may bee burſten diuerſlie, and according to the names of the partes grieued, the Phyſicians doe giue it diuers names: for you ſhall vnderſtande, that next vnto the thick outward ſkinne of the bellie, there is alſo another inwarde thinne ſkinne couering all the muſcles, the Caule, and the guttes of the bellie, called of the Anatomiſtes *P*eritoneum, which ſkin commeth from both ſides of the backe, and is faſtened to the midriffe aboue, and alſo to the bottom of the belly beneath, to keepe in all the contentes of the neather bellie. And therefore if the ſkinne bee broken, or ouer ſore ſtrained or ſtretched, then either ſome parte of the Caule or guttes ſlippeth downe, ſometime

time into the Cod, somtime not so far. If the gut slip downe into the cod, then it is called of the physicians by the Greek name Enterocele, that is to say, gut bursten. But if the caule fall downe into the Cod, then it is called of the Physicians Epiplocele, that is to say, Caule bursten. But either of the diseases is most proper lie incident to the male kinde, for the female kinde hath no Cod. Notwithstanding they may be so bursten, as either gut or caule may fall downe into their natures, hanging there like a bag. But if it fall not downe so low, but remaineth aboue nigh vnto the priuie members or flankes, which place is called of the Latines Inguen, then of that place the bursting is called of the Physicians Bubonocele, whereunto I know not what English name to giue, vnlesse I should call it flanke burSten. Moreouer the cod or flank may be sometime swollen, by meanes of some waterish humour gathered togither in the same, which is called of the Physicians Hydrocele, that is to say, water burSten, sometime the cod may be swollen by meanes of some hard péece of flesh cleauing to the thin skins or panicles of the stones, and then it is called of the physicians Sarcocele, that is to say, flesh burSten. But forasmuch as none of mine Authors, Martin nor any other ferrer in these daies that I knowe, haue intermedled with any kinde of bursting, but only with that wherin the gut falleth downe into the cod: leauing all the rest apart, I will onely talke of this, and that according to Martins experience, which I assure you differeth not muche from the preceptes of the olde writers. But first you shall vnderstand, that the gutte burSten, and flanke burSten, doeth proceede both of one cause, that is to say, by meanes that the skinne, called before *Peritoneum*, is either sore strained, or else broken, either of which things do most commonlie chance to horses, either by som stripe of another horse, or else by some straine in leaping ouer an hedge ditch, or pale, or otherwise: yea and many times in passing a cariere, through the vndiscrætnesse of the rider stopping the horse suddenlie without giuing him any warning, whereby the horse is forced to call his hinder legs abroad, and so straineth or burSteth the skin aforesaid, by meanes whereof the gut falleth downe into the Cod. The signes be these. The horse will forsake his meate, and stand shoring and leaning alwais on that side that he is hurt:

and

and on that ſide, if you ſearch with your hande, betwixt the ſtone, and the thigh vpward to the bodie, and ſomewhat aboue the ſtone you ſhall finde the gut it ſelfe big and hard in the fæling, whereas on the other ſide you ſhall find no ſuch thing. The cure, according to Martin, is thus. Bring the horſe into ſome houſe or place that hath ouer head a ſtrong bawlk or beame going ouerthwart, and ſtrow that place thicke with ſtrawe: then put on foure paſternes with foure rings on his fæte, and faſten the one ende of a longe rope to one of thoſe ringes, than thread all the other ringes with the loſe ende of the rope, and ſo drawe all his foure fæte togither, and caſt him on the ſtrawe. That doone, caſt the rope ouer the bawlke, and hoiſe the horſe ſo as he may lie flat on his back, with his legs vpward without ſtrugling. Then bathe his ſtones well with warme water and butter molten togither, and the ſtones being ſomewhat warme, and well mollified, raiſe them vp from the bodie with both your handes being cloſed by the fingers faſt togither, and holding the ſtones in your handes in ſuch maner, worke downe the gut into the bodie of the horſe, by ſtriking it downeward continuallie with your two thumbs, one labouring immediatlie after another, vntill you perceiue that ſide of the ſtone to be ſo ſmall as the other, and hauing ſo diſcorded, that is to ſay, returned the gutte into his right place: take a liſt of twoe fingers broad throughlie annointed with freſh butter, and tie his ſtones both togither with the ſame ſo nigh the body as may be, not ouer hard, but ſo as you may put your finger betwixt. That done, take the horſe quietlie downe, and leade him faire and ſoftlie into the ſtable, whereas he muſt ſtand warm, & not be ſtirred for the ſpace of three weekes. But forget not the nert daie after his diſcording to vnloſen the liſt and to take it away, and as wel at that time as euery day once or twice after, to caſt a diſh or two of cold water vp into his cods, and that will make him to ſhrinke vp his ſtones and thereby reſtraine the gut from falling downe, and at the three weekes end to be ſure, it were not amiſſe to geld the ſtone on that ſide awaie, ſo ſhall he neuer be incorded againe on that ſide. But let him not eate much nor drinke much, and let his drinke bee alwaies warme.

Of the botch in the graines of a horſe. Chap. Cvi.

IF a Horſe be full of humors and then ſuddenly laboured, the humors will reſort into the weakeſt partes, and there gather togither and breéd a botch, and ſpecially in the hinder partes betwirt the thighes, not far from the cods. The ſignes be theſe. The hinder legges will bee all ſwollen, and ſpecially from the houghes vpwarde, and if you feéle with your hand you ſhall find a great kind of ſwelling, and if it be round and harde it will gather to a head. The cure according to *Martin* is thus. Firſt ripe it with this plaiſter: take of wheate flower, of turpentine, and of hony, of each like quantitie, ſtirring it togither to make a ſtiffe plaiſter, and with a cloth laye it vnto the ſore, renewing it euerie daie once vntill it breake or ware ſoft, and then lance it ſo as the matter may runne downeward. Then taint it with turpentine and hogs greaſe moulten togither, renewing it euery day once, vntil it be whole.

Of the diſeaſes incident to the wombe of a mare, and ſpecially of barrenneſſe. Chap. cvii.

IT ſéemeth by ſome writers, that the wombe of a mare is ſubiect to certaine diſeaſes, though not ſo manie as the wombe of a woman, as to aſcent, deſcent, falling out, conuulſion, barrenneſſe, abortment, yea Ariſtotle and others doe not let to write, that menſtruall bloud dooth naturallie void from the mare, as from the woman, though it be ſo little in quantitie, as it cannot be well perceiued. But ſith none of mine Authors haue written thereof to any purpoſe, nor any Ferrer of this time that I knowe, haue had any experience in ſuch matters I will paſſe them all ouer with ſilence, ſauing barrennes, whereof I promiſed in the breéders Office to declare vnto you the cauſes and ſuche kinde of cure for the ſame, as the olde writers haue taught. A Mare then may be barren through the vntemperateneſſe of the wombe or matrix, as for that it is too hot and fierie, or elſe too cold and moiſt, or too drie, or elſe too ſhort, or too narrowe,

or

or hauing the necke thereof turned awrie, or by meanes of some obstruction or stopping in the matrix, or for that the mare is too fatte or too leane, and many times mares goe barren, for that they bee not well horsed. Well, the cure of barrennesse that commeth through the fault of the matrix or wombe according to the old writers is thus. Take a good handful of leekes, stamp them in a morter with halfe a glasse ful of wine, then put therunto twelue flies, called of the Apothecaries Cantharides, of diuers colours, if they may be gotten, then straine all togither with a sufficient quantitie of water to serue the Mare therewith two daies togither, by powring the same into hir nature with a horne or glisser pipe made of purpose, and at the ende of three daies next following offer the horse vnto her that shoulde couer her, and immediatlie after that she is couered, washe her nature twice togither with colde water.

Another receipt for the same purpose.

TAke of Nitrum, of sparrowes dung, and of Turpentine, of eache a like quantitie well wrought togither, and made like a suppositorie, and put that into hir nature, and it will cause hir to desire the horse and also to conceiue. Hippocrates saith, that it is good also to put a nettle into the horses mouth that should couer her.

Of the Itche, Scabbe, and manginesse in the taile, and falling of the taile. Chap. cviii.

IN spring time Horses bee many times troubled with the troncheons in their fundament, and then they will rubbe their taile, and breake the haire thereof, and yet in his taile perhaps, shalbe neither itche, scurfe, nor scabbe: wherefore if you rake the horse well with your hand annointed with Sope, and searche for those troncheons and pul them cleane out, you shall cause him to leaue rubbing; and if you see that the haire do fall away of it selfe, then it is a signe, that it is either eaten with wormes, or that there is some

some scurffe or scab fretting the haire, and causing such an itch in his taile as the horse is alwaies rubbing the same. As touching the wormes, scurffe or scab, it shall be good to annoint all the taile with sope, and then to washe it cleane euen to the grounde with strong lie, and that will kill the wormes, and make the haire to growe againe And if much of the taile be worne awaie, it shall be nedefull to keepe the taile continuallie wet, with a spunge dipt in faire water, and that will make the haire to growe verie fast. But if the horses taile be mangie, then heale that like as you doe the mangineſſe of the maine before rehearsed. Againe, if there brede any Canker in the taile (which will consume both the flesh and bone, and as Laurentius Rusius saith, make the iointes to fal away one by one) it shall be good, as Martin saith, to washe all his taile with Aqua fortis, or strong water made in this sort: take of greene Coporas, of Alom, of ech one pound, of white Coporas a quarterne. Boile all these thinges togither in three quartes of running water, in a very strong earthen pot, vntill the one halfe be consumed, and then with a litle of this water being made luke warme, wash his taile with a little cloute, or Flax bound to the end of a sticke, continuing so to doe euerie day once, vntill it bee whole.

How to know when a horse halteth before in what part his griefe is. Chap. cix.

BEing now come to talk of the griefs in the shoulders legs, hips, houghes, ioints & houes, causing the horse most commonly to halt: I thinke it good first to shewe you the way how to finde in what part of his legs the horse is grieued when he halteth either before or behind. And first you haue to consider that if a horse halteth before, it must be either in his shoulders, in his legs, or in his feet. If it be in his shoulders and new hurt, the horse will not lift that leg, but traile it nigh the ground. If it be old hurt, he will cast that leg further from him in his going, than the other, and if hee bee turned on the forehande, then he will halt so much the more. If a horse halteth in the leg, it is either in the knee, in the shanke, or else in the pasterne ioinie,

if

If it be either in the knæ, or paſterne ioint, he will not bowe that leg in his going like the other, but go verie ſtiffe vpon it. If hée halteth in the ſhanke, then it is by meanes of ſome ſplent, windgall, or ſuch apparant griefe, apt to be ſéene of felt. If he halt in the foot, it is either in the cronet, heele, in the toe, in the quarters, or ſole of the foote. If it be in the cronet, the griefe will bee apparant, the ſkinne being broken or ſwollen ſome manner of waie: if in the héele, as by ouerreach or otherwiſe, then hee will treade moſt on the toe: if vppon anie of the quarters, then going on the edge of a banke or hillie ground, hee will halte more than on the plaine ground, and by the Horſes comming toward you, and going from you vpon ſuch edge or banke, you ſhall eaſilie perceiue whether his griefe be in the inward quarter or outward quarter: The quarter is to be vnderſtoode, from the mid hoine to the héele. If he halt in the toe, which is not commonlie ſéene, then hee will tread more vpon the héele. If the griefe be in the ſole of his foote, then he will halt all after one ſort vpon anie ground, vnleſſe it be vpon the ſtones. And to be ſure in what part of the foot the griefe is, it ſhall be good firſt to make him go vpon the plaine grounde, and then vpon a hard and ſtonie ground: yea, and alſo a bankie ground. Thus having declared vnto you ingenerall, howe to knowe in what part a horſe is grieued when he halteth before: I thinke it méet firſt to ſhewe you orderlie all the particular griefs and ſorances, whereunto the fore partes of a horſe is ſubiect, together with the cauſes, ſignes and cure thereof. That done, I will ſpeake of halting behind, and ſhew you firſt generallie where the griefe is, and then particularly declare vnto you euerie griefe incident to the hinder parts of a horſe. And laſtlie, I will ſpeake of ſuch griefes and ſorances as are common to both partes, that is to ſaie, as well to the forelegs, and foreféet, as to the hinder legs and hinder féete.

Of the griefe and pinching in the ſhoulder. Chap. Cx.

THis commeth either by labouring and ſtraining the horſe too yong, or elſe by ſome great burthen: you ſhal perceiue it by the narrowneſſe of the breaſt, & by conſuming of the fleſh of the ſhoulders, inſomuch as the

forepart of the shoulder bone wil stick out, & be a great deale higher than the flesh. And if it be of long continuance, he will be verie hollowe in the brisket towardes the armeholes, and hee will goe wider beneath at the feete, than aboue at the knees. The cure, according to Martin, is thus. Giue him a slit of an inch long with a sharpe knife or rasor vpon both sides an inche vnder the shoulder bones: then with a Swannes quil put into the slit, blow vp first the one shoulder and then the other, as big as you can possiblie, euen vp to the withers, and with your hand strike the wind equallie into euerie place of the shoulders. And when they be both full, then beate all the windie places with a good hasel wande or with both your hands, clapping vpon the places puffed vp with wind, so fast as they can walke one after another ouer all the shoulder: then with a flat slice of iron, loosen the skinne within from the flesh: that doone, rowell the two slittes or cuttes with two round rowels made of the vpper leather of an olde shoo, with a hole in the middest that the matter may issue forth, and let such rowles be three inches broad, and so put in as they may lie plaine and flat within the cut: then make a charge to laie vpon the same in this sort. Take of pitch, and rosen, of each one pound, of tarre halfe a pinte, boile these thinges altogither in a pot, and when it is somewhat cooled, take a sticke with a woollen clout bound fast to the one end thereof, and dip it into this charge, and couer or dawb all the shoulders therewith. That done, clap thereunto a pounde of Flore of such colour as the horse is, or as nigh vnto the same as maie bee, and euerie other daie cleanse both the woundes and rowels, and put them in againe, continuing thus to do the space of fiftéene daies. Then take them out, and heale vp the woundes with two taintes of Flax dipt in Turpentine, and Hogges grease molten togither, renewing the same euerie daie once, vntill the woundes be whole. But let the charge lie still, vntill it fall awaie of it selfe, and let the horse runne to grasse, vntill hee hath had a frost or two.

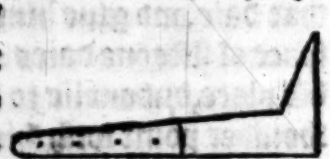
Of the wrinching of the shoulder. Chap. cxi.

THis commeth sometime by a fall, and sometime by turning too suddenlie in some vneuen ground, or by rashe running out of some doore, or by some stripe of an other horse,

Horſe, or by ſome ſudden ſtop in paſſing a Cariere: you ſhall perceiue it in his going, by trailing his leg vpon the ground, ſo cloſe vnto himſelfe as hee can poſſible. The cure, according to Martin is thus. Let him bloud the quantitie of three pintes on the breaſt in the plat veine, receiuing the bloud in a pot, and thereunto put firſt a quart of ſtrong vineger, and halfe a dozen broken egges, ſhelles and all, and ſo much wheate flower as will thicken all that liquor. That done, put thereunto of bole Armonie beaten into fine pouder one pound, of Sanguis Draconis two ounces, and mingle them altogither, ſo as the flower maie not bee perceiued, & if it be too ſtiffe, you may make it more liquid or ſoft, with a little vineger. Then with your hande dawbe all the ſhoulder from the maine downward, and betwixt the foreboiwels all againſt the haire, & let not the horſe depart out of that place, vntill the charge be ſurelie faſtned vnto the ſkin. That done, carie him into the ſtable, and tie him vp to the racke, and ſuffer him not to lie down all that daie, and giue him a little meate, dieting him moderatly the ſpace of fifteene daies: during which time, he maie not ſtir out of his place, but onelie to lie downe, and euery day once refreſh the ſhoulder point with this charge, laieng ſtill new vpon the old, and at the fiftéene daies end, lead him abroad to ſee how he goeth, and if he be ſomwhat amended, then let him reſt without trauelling, the ſpace of one month, and that ſhal bring his ſhoulder to perfection. But if he be neuer the better for all this that is done, then it ſhall bee néedefull to roiwell him with a leather roiwell vpon the ſhoulder point, & to keepe him roiwelled the ſpace of fiftéene daies, renewing the roiwell, and cleanſing the wound euerie other daie, and then walke him vp and downe faire and ſoftlie, and turn him alwaies on the contrarie ſide to the ſore, and when hee goeth vpright, pul out the roiwel and heale the wound with a taint of flare dipt in Turpentine, and hogs greaſe molten togither. And if all this will not ſerue, then it ſhall be néedefull to draw him checker wiſe with a hote iron ouer all the ſhoulder point, and alſo to make him to draw in a plough euery day two houres at the leaſt, to ſettle his ioints for the ſpace of three wéekes or a moneth, and if anie thing will helpe him, theſe two laſt remedies will helpe him, and make him to go right vp againe.

Of ſplaitting in the ſhoulder. Chap. Cxii.

THis commeth by ſome dangerous ſliding or ſlipping, whereby the ſhoulder parteth from the breaſt, and ſo leaues an open rift, not in the ſkin, but in the fleſh and ſkim next vnder the ſkin, ſo he halteth and is not able to go, you ſhall perceiue it by trailing his leg after him in his going. The cure according to Martin is thus. Firſte put a paire of ſtrait paſterns on his forefeet, keeping him ſtil in the ſtable without diſquieting him. Then take of Dialthea one pounde, of ſallet oile one pint, of oile de Baies halfe a pound, of freſh butter halfe a pound, melt al theſe things togither in a pipkin, and annoint the grieued place therewith, and alſo rounde about the inſide of the ſhoulder, and within two or three daies after, both that place and all the ſhoulder beſides will ſwell. Then either pricke him with a lancet or fleame, in all the ſwelling places, or elſe with a ſharpe hot iron made in this ſort, the head whereof



woulde be an inch long, to the intent that the corruption may run out, and vſe to annoint it ſtill with the ointment aforeſaide. But if you ſee that it will not goe awaie but ſwell ſtil, and gather to a head, then lance it where the ſwelling doth gather moſt, and is ſoft vnder the finger, and then taint it in flax dipt in this ointment take of turpentine and of hogs greaſe of each two ounces, melt them togither, renewing the taint twiſe a daie, vntil it be whole.

Of the ſhoulder pight. Chap. Cxiii.

THis is when the ſhoulder point or pitch of the ſhoulder is diſplaced, which griefe is called of the Italians Spallato, it commeth by reaſon of ſome great fall forward rush, or ſtrain. The ſigns be theſe. That ſhoulder point will ſticke out further then his fellowe, and the horſe will haulte right downe. The cure according to Martin is thus. Firſt make him to ſwim in a deepe water vp and downe a dozen turnes, and that ſhall make the ſoint to returne to his place. Then make two tough pinnes of aſhen wood as much as your little finger, ſharpe

at

at the points, each one fiue inches long: that done, slit the skin an inch aboue the point, and an inche beneath the point of the shoulder, and thrust in one of the pinnes from aboue downward, so as both ends maie equallie sticke without the skin. And if the pin of wood will not easilie passe through, you maie make it waie firste with an iron pinne. That done, make other two holes crosse to the first holes, so as the other pin maie crosse the first pin right in the midst with a right crosse, and the first pin would be somewhat flat in the middest, to the intent that the other being round, may passe the better without stop and close the iuster together. Then take a peece of a little line somewhat bigger then a whipcord, and at one ende make a lope, which being put ouer one of the pinnes endes, wind the rest of the line good and straite about the pinnes endes, so as it maie lie betwirt the pinnes endes and the skin, and fasten the last end with a packe needle and a packe threade, vnto the rest of the cord, so as it may not slip: and to doe well, both the prickes and the cord would be first annointed with a little hogges grease. Then bring him into the stable, and let him rest the space of nine daies, but let him lie downe as little as may be, and put on a pasterne on the sore leg, so as it maie be bound with a cord vnto the fot of the manger, to keepe that legge alwaies whilest he standeth in the stable more forward than the other. And at the nine daies end take out the prickes, and annoint the sore places with a litle Dialthea, or with hogs grease, and then turne him out to grasse.

Of the swelling of the forelegs after great labor. Chap. Cxiiii.

GReat labor and heat causeth humors to resort downe into the legs making them swell. The cure whereof, according to Martin is thus. Bath them with buttered beer or else with this bath here following: take of mallowes three handefuls, a rose cake, and of sage one handfull: boile them together in a sufficient quantitie of water. and when the Mallowes be soft, put in halfe a pound of butter, and halfe a pint of Sallet oile, and then being somewhat warme, wash the swelling therewith euerie daie once, the space of three or foure daies. And if the swelling will not go awaie with this, then take Wine

lées, and Cumin, and boile them togither, and put thereunto a little wheate flower, and charge all the ſwelling therewith, and walke him often: and if it will not ſerue, then take vp the great veine aboue the knée on the inſide, ſuffring him not to bléed from aboue, but all from beneath.

Of the foundering in the forelegs. Chap. cxv.

The cauſe of this griefe is declared before in the chapter of foundering in the body, wheras I ſhewed you, that if a horſe be foundered in the bodie, the humours will immediatly reſort down into his legs, as Martin ſaith within the ſpace of 24. houres, and then the horſe will go crowching all vpon the hinder legges, his forelegs being ſo ſtiffe, as he is not able to bow them. The cure whereof, according to Martin, is in this ſorte. Garter eche legge immediatlie one hand full aboue the knee, with a liſt good and hard, and then walke him or chafe him, and to put him in a heate, and being ſomewhat warmed, let him bloud in both the breaſt veines, reſeruing the bloud to make a charge withall in this maner. Take of that bloud two quartes, and of wheate flower halfe a pecke, and fiue egges, ſhelles and all, of bole Armonie halfe a pound, of Sanguis Draconis halfe a quarterne, and a quart of ſtrong vineger: mingle them altogither, and charge all his ſhoulders, breaſt, backe, loines, and forelegges therewith, and walke him vpon ſome hard ground, ſuffering him not to ſtand ſtill, and when the charge is drie, refreſh it againe. And hauing walked him thrée or foure houres togither, lead him into the ſtable, and giue him a little warme water with ground mault in it, and then a little haie and prouender, and then walke him againe, either in the houſe, or elſe abroad, and continue thus to doe the ſpace of foure daies: and when all the charge is ſpent, couer him well with a houſing cloth, and let him both ſtand and lie warme, and eate but little meat during the foure daies. But if you ſée that at the foure daies ende he mendeth not a whit, then it is a ſigne that the humors lie in the fot, for the which you muſt ſearch with your butter, paring all the ſoles of the forefeet ſo thin as you ſhall ſée the water iſſue through the ſole. That done, with

your

your butter, let him bloud at both the toes, and let him bléd well. Then stop the veine with a little hogs grease, and turpentine molten together, and laide vppon a little Flaxe, and then tacke on the shooes, and cram the place where you did let him bloud harde with towe, to the intent it mate be surelie stopt. Then fill both his feete with hogges grease, and bzanne fried togither in a stopping Pan, so hot as is possible. And vpon that stopping clap a peece of leather, oz else two splentes to keepe in the stopping. And immediatlie after this, take two egges, beate them in a dishe, and put thereunto as much bole Armonie, and Beane flower as will thicken the same, and mingle them well togither, and make thereof two plaisters, such as may close eche foot round about, somewhat aboue the cronet, and bind it fast with a liste, oz rowler, that it may not fall awate, noz be remooued foz the space of two daies, but let the sole be clensed, and new stopped euerie day once, and the cronets to be remoued euerie two daies, continuing so to doe vntill it be whole. During which time, let him rest vnwalked, foz feare of loosening his hooues. But if you see that he beginne to amend, you may walke him faire and softlie once a date vppon some soft ground, to exercise his legges and feete, and let him not eate much, noz dzinke colde water. But if this foundering bzeake out aboue the hoone, which you shall perceiue by the loosenesse of the coffin, aboue by the cronet, then when you pare the sole, you must take all the fozepart of the sole cleane awate, leauing the heeles whole, to the intent the humozs may haue the freer passage downward, and then stop him, and dzesse him about the cronet as is bezore said.

Of the splent as well in the inside oz outside of the knée, as other where in the legge. Chap. Cxvi.

This sozance to anie mans séeling is a verie grisile, sometime as bigge as a Walnut, and sometime no moze than a Hasell nut, which is called of the Italians, Spinella, and it commeth, as Laurentius Rusius sateth, by trauelling the bozse too yoong, oz by oppzelling him with beaute burthen, offending his tender sineiues, and so causeth him to halt. It is easie to know because it is apparant to the eie, and if you pinch

it with your thumb & finger, the horse will shrinke vp his leg. The cure thereof, according to Martin, is in this sorte. Wash it well with warme water, & shaue off the haire, and lightlie scarifie all the sore places with the point of a rasor, so as the bloud may issue forth. Then take of Cantharides halfe a spoonefull, & of Euforbium as much, beaten into fine pouder, and mingle them together with a spoonefull of oile de Bate, and then melt them in a litle pan, stirring them well together, so as they may not boile ouer, and being so boiling hot, take two or three feathers, and annoint all the sore place therewith. That done, let not the horse stirre from the place where you so dresse him for one houre after, to the intent he shake not off the ointment. Then carie him faire and softlie into the stable, and tie him so as he may not reach with his head beneath the manger, for otherwise hee will couet to bite away the smarting & pricking medicine, which if it should touch his lips, would quicklie fetch off the skin. And also let him stand without litter all that day and night. The next date annoint the sore place with fresh butter, continuing so to doe euerie date once for the space of nine dates, for this shall allaie the heate of the medicine, and cause both that, and the crust to fall away of it selfe, and therewith either cleane take awaie the splent, or at the least remoue it out of the knée into the leg, and so much diminish it, as the horse shall go right vp, and halt no more through occasion thereof. Laurentius Rusius would haue the splent to be cured by fiering it long wise & ouerthwart. I haue séene the splent to be cleane taken away thus, first hauing clipt away the haire growing vpon the hard place, you must beat it with a good big sticke of hasill almost a foote long, in which sticke somewhat distant from the one ende thereof would bee set fast a sharp pricke of a little péece of stéele, to prick the sore place therewith, once or twice to make the bloud issue out, neuer leauing to beate it first softlie, and then harder & harder vntill it waxeth soft in euerie place to the féeling, and to thrust out the bloud partlie with the sticke, leaning on it with both your hands, & partly with your thumbs, that done, wind about the sore place with a péece of double red woollen cloth, holding it so as it maie lie close thereto, then seare it vpon the cloth with the flat side of your fearing iron, made hot, and not red hot, but so as it may not burne through the

cloth

cloth, that don, take awaie the cloth, and laie vpon the ſore a peece of ſhoomakers ware, made like a little cake, ſo broad as is the ſore place, and then ſeare that into his legs with your ſearing yron, vntill the war be throughlie molten, dried, & ſunken into the ſore, that don, ſeare another peece of ware in like maner into the ſore, vntill it be dried vp, and then you may trauell your horſe immediatlie vpon it if you will, for he will halt no more.

Of a Malander. Chap. cxvii.

A Malander is a kinde of ſcabbe growing in the forme of lines, or ſtrokes, ouerthwart the bent of the knee, and hath long haires with ſtubborne rots, like the briſtles of a bore which corrupteth and cankereth the fleſh, like the rots of a childs ſcabbed head: and if it be great it will make the horſe to go ſtiffe at the ſetting forth, & alſo to halt. This diſeaſe proceedeth ſometime of corrupt bloud, but moſt commonlie for lacke of cleane keeping, and good rubbing. The cure, according to Martin, is thus. Firſt waſh it well with warme water, then ſhaue both haire and ſcab cleane awaie, leauing nothing but the bare fleſh, whereunto lay this plaiſter. Take a ſpoonefull of Sope, and as much of lime: mingle them together, that it maie be like paaſt, and ſpreade as much on a clout as will couer the ſore, and binde it faſt on with a liſt, renewing it euerie daie once the ſpace of two or three daies, and at the three daies end, take away the plaiſter and annoint the ſore with oile of Roſes made lukewarme, and that ſhall fetch away the cruſt or ſcurfe, bred by means of the plaiſter, which ſcurfe being taken away, waſh the ſore place well euery daie once with his owne ſale, or elſe with mans vrine, and then immediatlie ſtraw vpon it the powder of burnt oiſterſhelles, continuing thus to do euery day once, vntill it be whole.

Of an vpper attaint or ouerreach vpon the backe ſinew of the ſhanke, ſomwhat aboue the ioint. Chap. Cxviii.

THe Italians call this ſorance Atrincto, which is a painful ſwelling of the maſter ſinew, by means that the horſe doth ſometime ouerreach, and ſtrike that ſinewe with the toe of his hinder foote, which cauſeth him to halt.

The

The signes be apparant by the swelling of the place, & by the horses halting. The cure, according to Martin, is thus: wash the place with warme water, and shaue all the haire so farre as the swelling goeth, and scarifie euerie part of the sore place lightlie with the point of a rasor, that the blood may issue forth. Then take of Cantharides, and of Euforbium, of each halfe an ounce, mingle them togither with halfe a quarterne of Sope, and with a slice spread some of this ointment ouer all the sore, suffring him to rest there as you dresse him for one halfe houre after, and then you maie carrie him into the stable, and there let him stand without litter, and tied as hath béene saide before in the Chapter of the splent, and the next daie dresse him with the same ointment once againe, euen as you did before. And the thirde daie annoint the place with fresh butter, continuing so to doe the space of ix. daies, and at the nine days end, make him this bath. Take of Mallows three handfuls, a Rose cake, of Sage an handfull. Boile them togither in a sufficient quantitie of water. And when the Mallowes be soft, put in halfe a pound of butter, and halfe a pint of Sallet oile, and then being somewhat warme, wash the sore place therewith euerie daie once, the space of three or foure daies.

Of a nether taint. Chap. cxix.

This is a litle bladder full of iellie, much like vnto a wind gall, not apparant to the eie, but to the feeling, growing in the midst of the pasterne, somewhat aboue the frush. It commeth by a strain, or else by some wrench, or by an ouerreach and maketh the horse to halte. The signes be these. The nether ioint toward the fewterlocke will be hote in feeling, and somewhat swollen. The cure, according to Martin, is in this sort. Tie him aboue the ioint with a liſt somewhat hard, and that will cause the bladder to appeare to the eie. Then lance it with a sharp pointed knife, and thrust out all the iellie. That done, laie vnto it the white of an egge, and a little salt beaten togither, and laid vpon flare or towe, and bind it fast vnto the sore, renewing it once a daie the space of foure or fiue daies, during which time let him rest and then you may boldly labour him.

Of

Of an ouerreach vpon the heele. Chap. Cxx.

THis is a cut, ſo as the ſkinne hangs downe at the heele, made with the toe of the hinder foote, and is apparant to the eie, and it will cauſe the horſe ſomewhat to halt. The cure wher of according to Martin, is thus. Cut awaie the ſkinne that hangeth down, and bind vnto it a litle flax dipt in the white of an egge, mingled with a litle bole Armony, renewing it euery day once the ſpace of three or foure daies, & that wil heale it.

Of falſe quarters. Chap. Cxxi.

THis is a riſt ſometime in the outſide, but moſt commonlie in the inſide of the hoofe, becauſe the inſide is euer the weaker part, which ſides are commonlie called quarters, and thereof this ſorance taketh his name, and is called a falſe quarter, that is to ſaie, a craſed or vnſound quarter, which name indéede is borowed of the Italians, calling it in their tongue Falſo quarto. It commeth by euill ſhooing, and partlie by euill paring. The ſignes be theſe. The horſe will for the moſt part halt, and the riſt will bléede, and is apparant to the eie. The cure according to Martin, is thus. If the horſe halt, then pull off the ſhoe, and cutte ſo much awaie on that ſide of the ſhoe where the griefe is, as the ſhoe being immediatlie put on againe, the riſt may be vncouered. Then open the riſt with a Roſenet or drawer, and fill all the riſt with a roll of towe dipt in turpentine, Ware, and ſheepes ſewet molten together, renewing it euerie day once, vntill it be whole. And the riſt being cloſed in the top, draw him betwixt the haire and the hoofe with a hot iron ouerthwart that place, to the intent that the howe may ſhoote all whole downewarde, and when the horſe goeth vpright, ride him with no other ſhoes, vntill his howe be throughlie hardened againe. But as touching ſhoes for falſe quarters, you ſhall haue the order of making of them declared vnto you hereafter in the end of this booke.

Of halting behind, and where the griefe is. Chap. cxxii.

IF a Horſe halte behinde, the griefe muſt either be in the hippe, in the ſtifle, in the hough, in the hamme, in the legge, in the nether ioint, paſterne or foote. If hee halte in the hippe of a new hurt, the horſe will go ſideling, and not

not follow so well with that legge as with the other. But if it be olde hurt, the sore hippe will shrinke and be lower then the other, and is best seene when he goeth vp a hill, or vpon the edge of some banke, so as the worst leg may go on the higher side, for then hee will halt so much the more, because it is painfull vnto him to go so vneuenlie wrinching his legge. If the griefe be in the stifle, then the horse in his going will cast the stifle ioint outward, and the bone on the inside will be farre bigger than the other. If the griefe be in the hough, then it is by meanes of some Spauen, or some other hurt apparant to the eie. And the like may be saide of the hamme, wherein may bee seene the Selander, or such like apparant sorance, causing the horse to halt. If the griefe be either in the legge, pasterne or foote, then you shall finde it by such signes as haue beene taught you before. And therefore let vs now speak of those sorances, that are properlie incident to the hinder legs.

Of a horse that is hipped, or hurt in the hippes. Chap. Cxxiii.

THe horse is said to be hipt, when the hip bone is remoued out of his right place, which griefe is called of the Italians Mal del ancha. It commeth most commonlie by some great stripe or straine, slipping, sliding, or falling. The signes be these. The Horse will halte, and in his going he will goe sideling, and the sore hippe wil fall lower than the other, and the flesh in processe of time will consume cleane away. And if it be suffered to runne so long, it will neuer be restored vnto his prestine estate. The best waie, as Martin saith, to make him go vpright, is, to charge his hippe and backe with Pitch and Rosen molten together, and laide on warme, and then some flore of his owne colour to be clapped vppon the same, and so to let him runne to grasse, vntill he go vpright. But the sore hippe will neuer rise againe so high as the other. If the horse bee not hipped, but onelie hurt in the hippe, and that newlie, then first take of oile de Baie, of Dialthea, of Neruall, of Swines grease, of eche halfe a pound, melt them altogither, stirring them continuallie, vntill they be throughlie mingled together, and annoint the sore place

against

againſt the haire with this ointment, euerie daie once, the ſpace of a fortnight, and make the ointment to ſinke well into the flesh, by holding a hotte broad barre of iron ouer the place annointed, weauing your hand to and fro, vntill the ointment bee entered into the skinne. And if at the fortnightes ende, you ſee that the horſe amendeth no whitte for this, then slitte a hole downewarde in his skinne, an inche beneath the hippe bone, making the hole ſo wide, as you maie eaſilie thruſt in a rowell with your finger, and then with a little broade slice of iron, looſen the skinne from the flesh aboue the bone, and rounde about the ſame, ſo broad as the rowell maie lie flat and plaine betwixt the skin and the flesh, which rowell would be made of ſoft calues leather, with a hole in the middeſt like a ring, hauing a thread tied vnto it, to pull it out when you would cleanſe the hole, in this ſorte, and if the rowell bee rowled about with flaxe faſt tied on, and annointed with the ointment vnder written, it will drawe ſo much the more: and thruſt in the rowell firſt double, and then ſpread it abroad with your finger. That don, taint it with a good long taint of flaxe or towe dipt in a litle turpentine, and hogs greaſe molten togither, and made warme, and cleanſe the hole and the rowell euerie day once, and alſo renew the taint for the ſpace of a fortnight. And before you diſſolue him, cauſe him euerie daie to be led vp and downe a fast pace a quarter of an houre, to make the humours come downe, and at the fortnights end pull out the rowell, and heale vp the wounde with the ſame ſalue, making the taint euerie daie leſſer and leſſer, vntill it be whole. And ſo ſoone as it is whole, drawe with a hot iron croſſe lines of eight or nine inches long, right ouer the hip bone, ſo as the rowelled place maie be in the very middeſt thereof, and burne him no deeper, but ſo as the skinne may looke yellowe, and then charge all that place, and ouer all his buttocke with this charge. Take of pitch one pounde, of Roſen halfe a pound, of tarre halfe a pinte. Boile them togither, and then being good and warme, ſpread it on with a clout tied in a riuen ſticke: and then clap on a fewe flockes of the horſes colour. And if it be in ſummer, let the horſe run to graſſe a while, for the more he trauelleth at his owne



will.

207

will, the better it is for him.

Of stifling, and hurts in the stifle. Chap. Cxxiiii.

The horse is said to be stifled, when the stifling bone is remoued from the right place: but if it be not remoued nor losned, and yet the horse halteth by meanes of some griefe there, then we say that the horse is hurt in the stifle, and not stifled. The stifle commeth by meanes of some side blow, or some great straine slipping, or sliding. The signes be these. If he be stifled, the one bone will sticke out further than the other, and is apparant to the eie. Martin would haue you to cure the stifle in all pointes like vnto the shoulder pight, sauing that the pins néed not be so long, bicause the stifling place is not so broad as the shoulder, and standing in the stable, let him haue a pasterne with a ring vpon his fore leg, and thereunto fasten a cord, which cord must go about his necke, and let it bee so much strained, as it may bring his fore legge more forward than the other to keepe the bone from starting out. But if the horse be but hurt in the stifle with some stripe or straine, then the bone wil not stand out, but perhaps the place maie be swollen. The cure, according to Martin is thus. First annoint the place with the ointment mentioned in the last chapter before, euerie daie once the space of a fortnight, and if the horse amend not with this, then rowell him with a heaven rowell, or else with a quill, and let the neather hole be somewhat beneath the sore place, and clense the hole euerie daie, by turning the rowell, continuing still to annoint the place with the ointment aforesaid, and that shall make him whole

Of foundering behind. Chap. Cxxv.

This haps most commonlie when a horse is verie fat, and hath his grease molten within him, which is some done with euerie little heate. You shall perceiue it by his going, for he will be afraid to set his hinder feet to the ground, and he will be so weake behind, as he wil stand quiuering and shaking and couet alwaies to lie downe. The cure, according

ding

ding to Martin is thus. First garter him aboue the houghes, and then force him to go a while to put him in a heate, and being somewhat warme, let him bloud in the thigh veines, reseruing of that bloud a pottle, to make him a charge in this sorte. Put vnto that bloud, of wheat flower and of beane flower, of each a quarter of a pecke, of bole Armony one pounde, of Sanguis Draconis two ounces, six egs, shels and all, of turpentine halfe a pounde, of Vineger a quart. Mingle all these thinges togither, and therewith charge both his hinder legges, reines and flankes, all against the haire. And if the horse cannot dung, lette him be raked, and giue him this glister: take of mallowes three handefulles, and boile them well in faire water from a pottle to a quarte. Then straine it and put thereunto halfe a pound of butter, and of sallet oile a quarter of a pinte, and hauing emptied his bellie, giue him also this drinke to comfort him: take of malmesie a quarte, and put thereunto a little Cinamon, mace and pepper, beaten into fine powder, and of oile a quarter of a pint, and giue the horse to drinke of that luke warme with a horne. That done let him be walked vp and downe a good while togither if he be able to goe: if not, then tie him vp to the racke, and let him bee hanged with canuas and ropes, so as he maie stand vpon the ground with his feet: For the lesse he lieth the better, & pare his hinder feet thin, vntill the deaw come out, and tacking on the shoes againe, stop the hoones with bran and hogs grease boiled togither, and let both his feete hauing this geere in it, be wrapped vp in a cloth euen to his pasterns, and there tie the clout fast. Let his diet be thin and let him drinke no cold water, & giue him in winter wet haie, and in summer grasse.

Of the drie Spauen. Chap. Cxxvi.

The drie spauin called of the Italians Spauano or Sparauagno, is a great hard knobbe as big as a Walnut growing in the inside of the hough, harde vnder the ioint, nigh vnto the maister vein, and causeth the horse to halt, which sorance commeth sometime by kind, bicause the horses parents perhaps had the like disease at the time of his generation, and sometime by extreame labour and heate dissoluing humors

mours which do descend through the maister veine, continuallie feeding that place with euill nutriment, and causeth that place to swell. Which swelling in continuance of time becommeth so hard as a bone, and therefore is called of some the bone spauen. It needeth no signes to knowe it because it is apparant to the eie, and most Ferrers doe take it to bee incurable. Notwithstanding, Martin saith, that it maie be made lesse with these remedies heere following. Wash it with warme water, and shaue off the haire so far as the swelling extendeth and scarifie the place, so as it may bleede. Then take of Cantharides one dosen, and of Euforbium halfe a spoonefull, breake them into powder, and boile them together with a little oile de Baie, and with twoe or three feathers bound together, put it boiling hote vpon the sore, and let his taile be tied vp for wiping awaie the medicine: and then within halfe an houre after, set him vp in the stable, and tie him so as he maie not lie down all that night, for feare of rubbing off the medicine, and the next date annoint it with fresh butter, continuing thus to doe euery day once the space of fiue or sixe daies, and when the haire is growne againe, draw the sore place with a hot iron. Then take another hote sharpe iron like a bodkin, somewhat bowing at the point, and thrust it in at the nether ende of the middle line, and so vpward betwixt the skinne and the flesh an inch and a halfe. And then taint it with a little Turpentine and hogges grease molten together and made warme, renewing it euery day once, the space of nine daies. But remember first immediatlie after his burning to take vp the maister vaine, suffering him to bleede a little from aboue, and tie vp the vppet ende of the veine, and leaue the nether end open, to the intent that hee may bleede from beneath, vntill it cease of it selfe, and that shall diminish the Spauen, or else nothing will do it.

Of the wet Spauen, or through Spauen. Chap. Cxxvii.

THis is a soft swelling growing on both sids of the hough and seemes to go cleane through the hough, and therefore maie be well called a through Spauen. But for the most part the swelling on the inside, because it is continuallie fed

fed of the maister vein, is greater than the swelling on the outside. The Italians call this sorance Laierda, or Gierdone, which seemeth to come of a more flurible humor, & not so viscous or slimie as the other Spauen doeth, and therefore this waxeth not so hard, nor groweth to the nature of a bone as the other doth, and this is more curable then the other. It needes no signes, because it is apparant to the eie, and easie to knowe, by the description thereof before made: the cure, according to Martin is thus. First wash, shaue, & scarifie the place, as before. Then take of Cantharides halfe an ounce, of Euforbium one ounce broken to pouder, and de oile of Baie one ounce. Mingle them well together cold, without boiling them, and dresse the sore therwith two daies together, & euery day after, vntil the haire be growne again, annoint it with fresh butter. Then fire him both without and within, as before, without tainting him, and immediatlie take vp the maister veine, as before: and then for the space of nine daies, annoint him euery day once with butter, vntill the fiered place begin to scale, and then wash it with this bath. Take of Mallowes three handfuls, of Sage one handfull, and as much of red nettles, boile them in water vntill they bee soft, and put thereunto a little fresh butter, and bath the place euerie daie once for the space of three or foure daies, and vntill the burning be whole, let the horse come in no wet.

Of the Melander. Chap. cxxviii.

THis is a kinde of scab breeding in the ham, which is the bent of the bough, & is like in all points to the Malander, proceeding of like causes, and requireth like cure, and therefore resort to the chapter of the Malander.

Of the hough boonie, or hard knobbe. Chap. cxxix.

THis is a round swelling boonie, like a Paris ball, growing vpon the verie tip or elbow of the hough, and therefore I thought good to call it the hough boonie. This sorance commeth of some stripe or bruse, and as Martin saith, is cured thus. Take a round iron somewhat sharpe at the

end like a good big bodkin, and let it bee somewhat bending at the point. Then holding the sore with your left hand, pulling it somewhat from the sinewes, pierce it with the iron, being first made red hote, thrusting it beneath in the bottome, and so vpward into the bellie, to the intent that the same iellie may issue downeward out at the hole, & hauing thrust out all the iellie, taint the hole with a taint of flax dipt in turpentine, and hogges grease molten together, and also annoint the outside with hogs grease made warme, renewing it euerie day once, vntill the hole be readie to shut vp, making the taint euerie day lesser and lesser, to the intent it may heale vp.

Of the Curbe. Chap. CXXX.

THis is a long swelling beneath the elbow of the hough, in the great sinew behind, and causeth the horse to halte, after that he hath bene a while laboured, and thereby somewhat heated. For the more the sinew is strained, the greater griefe, which againe by rest is eased. This commeth by bearing some great weight when the horse is yong, or else by some straine or wrinch, whereby the tender sinewes are grieued, or rather bowed (as Rusius saith) whereof it is called in Italian Curba, a Curuando, that is to saie, of bowing, for anguish whereof it doth swell, which swelling is apparant to the eie, and maketh that legge to shewe bigger than the other. The cure, according to Martin, is thus: take of wine leeze a pint, and a porringer full of wheate flower, of Cumin halfe an ounce, and stirre them well togither, and being made warme, charge the sore place therewith, renewing it euery day once the space of three or foure dates, and when the swelling is almost gone, then drawe it with a hot iron, and couer the burning with pitch and rosen molten togither, and lay it on good and warme, and clap thereon some flockes of his owne colour, or so nigh as may be gotten, and remooue them not, vntill they fall away of themselues. And for the space of nine dates let the horse rest, and come in no wet.

Of

Of the paines. Chap. Cxxxi.

THis is a kinde of ſcab called in Italian, Crappe, which is full of fretting matteriſh water, and it breedeth in the paſternes for lacke of cleane keeping and good rubbing after the horſe hath bene tourned, by meanes whereof the ſand and dirt remaining in the haire, fretteth the ſkinne and fleſhe, and ſo breedeth to a ſcabbe. And therefore thoſe horſes that haue long haire, and are rough aboute the féete, are ſoneſt troubled with this diſeaſe, if they be not the cleanlier kept. The ſignes bee theſe. His legs will be ſwollen & hot, and water will iſſue out of the ſcab, which water is ſo hot & fretting, as it will ſcald off the haire and breed ſcabs, ſo farre as it goeth. The cure, according to Martin is thus. Firſt waſh well all the paſternes with béere and butter warmed togither, and his legs being ſomewhat dried with a cloth: clip away all the haire, ſauing the fewter lockes. Then take of turpentine, of hogges greaſe, of honie, of eche like quantitie, mingle them togither in a pot, and put thereunto a little bole Armonie, the yelkes of two egges, and as much wheate flower as will thicken the thinges aforeſaid, and make it plaiſter like, and for that cauſe it had néede to be verie well wrought and ſtirred togither. Then with a tice ſtrike ſome of the plaiſter vpon ſuch a peece of linnen cloth as will ſerue to go round about the paſterne, and bind it faſt on with a rowler, renewing it once a day, vntill it bee whole, and let not the horſe be trauelled nor ſtand wet.

Of Mules, or ribed heeles, called of the Italians Mule. Chap. Cxxxii.

THis is a kind of ſcab breeding behind, ſomewhat aboue the nether ioint, growing ouerthwart the fewterlock; which commeth moſt commonlie for being bred in cold ground, or elſe for lacke of good dreſſing, after that hee hath bene labored in foule mire, and dirtie waies, which dirt lieng ſtill in his legs, fretteth the ſkin, and maketh ſcabbie riftes, which are ſoone bred, but not ſo ſone gotten away. The anguiſh whereof maketh the legs ſometime to ſwell, and ſpeciallie, in winter and

ſpring time, and then the horſe goeth very ſtifflie, and with great paine. This ſorance is apparant to the eie, and is cured according to Martin, in this ſort. Take a peece of linnen cloth, and with the ſalue recited in the laſt chapter, make ſuch a plaiſter as may couer all the ſore place, and bind it faſt on, that it fall not off, renewing it euerie day once, vntill the ſore leaue running, and beginneth to ware drie, then waſh it euerie day once with ſtrong water, vntill it be cleane dried vp, vnt if this ſorance bee but in breeding, and that there is no raw flesh, then it ſhall ſuffice to annoint it with ſope two or three dates, and at the three dates end to waſhe them with a little beefe broth or diſh water.

Of ſorances or griefes that be common to all foure feete. Chap. cxxxiii.

HItherto we haue declared vnto you the cauſes, ſignes and cure of all ſuch griefes as are properlie incident, either to the forelegs, or hinder legs: now therefore we will ſpeake of thoſe griefes that be common to them both, and firſt of windgalles.

Of windgalles, Chap. cxxxiiii.

THe windgall called of the Italians Galla, is a bladder full of corrupt iellу, whereof ſome be great and ſome be ſmall, and doe growe on ech ſide of the ioint, and is ſo painfull and eſpecially in ſummer ſeaſon when the wether is hot and the waies hard, as the horſe is not able to trauell, but halteth downe right. They come for the moſt part through extreame labor and heat, whereby the humors being diſſolued, do flow and reſort into the hollowe places about the neather iointes, and there be congealed and couered with a thin ſkinne like a bladder. They be apparant to the eie and therefore néede no other ſignes to know them. The cure whereof according to Martin is thus. Waſh them with warme water and ſhaue off the haire, and ſcarifie them with the point of a raſor, and drelle them with Cantharides in the ſelfe ſame maner as the ſplent in the knée was taught before, and

annoint

annoint them afterward with butter vntill the skinne be whole. And if this will not heale it, then geld them with a hot iron like a ragged staffe. That done slit the middle line which passeth right downe through the windgall with a sharpe knife, beginning beneath and so vpward the length of halfe an inche, to the intent you may thrust the tellie out at that hole, and then lay vnto it a little pitch and rosin molten together, and made lukewarme, and put a few flox on it, and that will heale him. And you may drie vp the windgall in such maner as here followeth. First chop off the haire so far as the windgall extendeth: and hauing stricken it with a fleame, thrust out the tellie with your finger. Then take a peece of red woollen cloth and clap it to the place, and with a hot broad fearing iron seare it, so as the iron may not burne through the cloth, which is done to drie vp the humor. Then hauing taken away the cloth, lay vnto the place a peece of shoomakers ware made like a flat cake, about the bredth of a teffarne, and with your iron not made ouer hot, streeke softlie vpon it to and fro, vntill the said ware be throughly melted into the sore. Whereupon laie a fewe flox, and let him go. Which flockes will afterward fall away of their owne accord.

Of wrinching the neather ioint. Chap. cxxxv.

THis commeth manie times by treading awrie in some cart rut or other wise. The signes be these. The ioint will be swollen and sore, and the horse will halte. The cure whereof according to Martin is thus: take of Dialthea halfe a pound, and as much of Vernall. Mingle them together and annoint the sore place therewith, chafing it wel with both your hands that the ointment may enter, continuing so to doe euery day once, vntill the ointment be all spent, & let the horse rest. But if this will not preuaile, then wash it well with warme water and shaue away all the haire sauing the fewterlock. Scarifie it and lay to it Cantharides, and heale it as you do the splent in the knee.

Of enterfering. Chap. cxxxvi.

BEcause enterfering is to bee holpen by shoing, we purpose not to speake of it, vntill we come to talke of the order of paring and shoing all maner of houes, and therefore resort thither.

Of the halter galling. Chap. cxxxviii.

IF a horse be galled in the passerns with halter, locke passerne, or halter, annoint the sore place with a little honie and verdigrease boiled togither, vntill it look red which is a good ointment for al gallings on the withers and immediatlie strowe vpon the ointment, being first laid vpon the leg, a little chopt hay or towe and that will sticke fast, continuing so to doe euerie day ones vntill it be wole.

Of hurts in the legs, that commeth by galling in the halter, or collar. Chap. cxxxix.

IT chanceth many times, that a horse having some itch vnder his eares, is desirous to scratch the same with his hinder foot, which whilest hee reacheth to and fro, doeth fasten in the collar or halter, wherewith the more that he striueth the more he galleth his legs, and manie times it chanceth for that he is tied so long, by meanes whereof he being laid, and the haulter slacke about his feete, in his rising perhaps or turning he snarleth himselfe so as he is not able to get vppe, but hangeth either by the necke or legs, which sometimes are galled euen to the hard bone. Rusius calleth such kinde of galling Capistratura, which hee was wont to heale with this ointment here following, praising it to bee excellent good for the cratches, or anie scab, brouse, or wound: take of oile Olive one ounce, of turpentine two or three ounces, melt them togither ouer the fire, and then put thereunto a little ware, and worke them well togither, and annointe the sore place therewith. Martin saithe, it is good to annoint the sore place with the white of an egge and sallet oile beaten togither, and when it commeth to a scab, annoint it with butter being molten, vntill it looke browne.

Of the Cratches or Rats tailes, called of the Italians Crepaccie. Chap. cxxxix.

THis is a kind of long scabbie rifts growing right vp & down in the hinder part, from the fewterlocke vp to the Curbe, and commeth for lacke of cleane keeping, and is easilie seene if you take

take vp the horses foot, and lift vp the haire. The cure, according to Martin, is thus. Take of turpentine halfe a pound, of honie halfe a pinte, of hogges grease a quarterne, and three yolkes of egges, and of bole Armonie a quarterne, beaten into powder, of Beane flower halfe a pint, mingle all these well together, and make a salue thereof, and with your finger annoint all the sore places, sheading the haire as you goe, to the intent you may the easier finde them, and also to make the salue enter into the skin, and let the horse come in no wet, vntill he be whole.

Of the Ringbone. Chap. CXI.

This is a hard grisle growing vpon the cronet, sometime goeth round about the cronet, and is called in Italian Soprosso. Laurentius Rusius saith, that it may grow in any other place of the leg, but then we call it not a Ringbone, but a knot or knob. It commeth at the first either by some blow of another horse, or by striking his owne foot against some stub, or stone, or such like casualtie. The paine thereof breedeth a viscous and slimie humour, which resorting to the bones, that are of their owne nature cold and drie, warsh hard, and cleaueth to some bone, and in processe of time becommeth a bone. The signes be these. The horse will halt, and the hard swelling is apparant to the eie, being higher than any place of the cronet. The cure according to Martin, is thus. First wash it well with warme water, and shaue away all the haire, so as the sore place may be all discouered. Then scarifie it lightlie with the point of a rasor, so as the blood may issue forth. Then if the sore be broad, take of Euforbium one ounce, of Cantharides halfe an ounce, broken both into fine powder, and of oile de Baie one ounce, and if the sore be but little, the one halfe of this may serue. Boile these thinges together, stirring them continuallie least it run ouer, and with two or three feathers, lay it boiling hote vnto the sore, and let not the horse stirre from that place for halfe an houre after. Then carie him into the stable, both vsing and curing him for the space of nine daies, in such order as hath bene said before in the chapter of the splent. But when the haire beginneth to growe a-

gaine, then fire the fore place with right lines from the paſterne downe to the coffin of the howe, and let the edge of the drawing iron be as thicke as the backe of a meat knife, and burne him ſo deepe as the ſkinne may looke yellowe: that done, couer the burning with pitch, and roſen molten together, and clap thereon fore of the Horſes owne colour, or ſomewhat nigh the ſame, and about three daies after, lay againe ſome of the laſt mentioned plaiſter, or ointment, and alſo new fore vpon the old, and there let them remaine, vntill they fall away of themſelues. But if theſe ringbones, or knobs, breede in ante other place, than in the cronet, you ſhall cure them, as is before ſaid, without firing them.

Of the Crowne ſcab. Chap. Cxli.

This is a kind of filthie and ſtinking ſcabbe, breeding round about the feete vpon the cronets, & is an euiſh and painefull diſeaſe, called in Italian Criſaria. It ſeemeth to come by meanes that the horſe hath bene bred in ſome cold wet ſoile, ſtriking corrupt humors vp to his feete, & therfore the horſe that hath this griefe is worſe troubled in Winter then in Summer. The ſignes be theſe. The haire of the cronets will be thin, and ſtaring like briſtles, and the cronets will be alwaies mattering, and run on a water. The cure, according to Martin is thus. Take of ſope, of hogges greaſe, of eche halfe a pound, of bole Armonie a little, of turpentine a quarterne, and mingle them well together, and make a plaiſter, and binde it faſt on, renewing it euerie day once, vntill it leaue running, and then waſh it with ſtrong vineger being lukewarme euerie day once vntill the ſore be cleane dried vp, and let him come in no wet, vntill he be whole.

Of harmes vpon the cronet by crolling one foote ouer an other, which the Italians call Suprapoſte. Chap. Cxlii.

Martin, waſhe it well with white wine, or with a little ſtale, and then lay vnto it the white of an Eg mingled with a little chimnie ſote and ſalt, and that will drie it vp in three or foure daies, if it be renewed euery day once.

Of

Of the quitterbone. Chap. xxiiii.

THis is a hard round swelling vpon the cronet betwirt the heele & the quarter, and groweth most commonlie on the inside of the foot, & is called of the Italians Setula, or Seta. It commeth by meanes of grauell gathered vnderneath the shoe, which fretteth the heele, or else by the cloieng or pricking of some naile euill driuen, the anguish whereof loseneth the grissle, and so breedeth euill humors, whereof the quitterbone springeth. The signes be these. The horse will halt, and the finesling is apparant to the eie, which in foure or fiue daies comming to a head, will breake out with matter at a little deepe hole like a Fistula. The cure, according to Martin, is thus. First burne about the quitterbone with a hot iron, in maner of halfe a circle, and then with the same iron drawe another right strike through the middest thereof. Then take of Arsenicke the quantitie of a Beane beaten into fine powder, and put it into the hole, thrusting it downe to the bottom with a quill, and stop the mouth of the hole with a little towe, and binde it so fast with a cloth, and cord, as the horse may not come at it with his mouth, and so let it rest for that day. And the next day, if you see that the sore looketh blacke within, then it is a signe that the Arsenicke hath wrought well, and done his part. Then to allaie the burning thereof, taint the hole with flaxe dipt in hogs grease, and turpentine, molten and mingled together, and couer the taint with a bolster of tawe dipt also in the ointment aforesaid, continuing so to do euerie day once, vntill you haue gotten out the core. Then shall you see whether the lose grissle in the bottom be vncouered or not, and if it be not vncouered, then feele with your finger, or with a quil, whether you be nigh it or not. And if you be, then raise the grissle with a little crooked instrument, and pull it cleane out with a paire of small nippers meete for the purpose. That done, taint it againe with a full taint dipt in the foresaid ointment, to asswage the anguish of the last dressing, and stoppe it hard, to the intent that the hole may not shrinke together or close vp, and the next day take out that taint, & taint it a new with the same or ointment taught in the chapter of the shakell gall, renewing it euerie day once vntill

vntill it be whole, keeping alwayes the mouth of the sore as open as you may, to the intent that it heale not vp too fast, & let not the Horse come in any wet, nor trauell, vntill he be perfectlie whole.

Of the Graueling. Chap. Cxliii.

THis is a fretting vnder the foote, most commonlie in the inside, and sometime in the outside, and sometime in both sides togither of the heele. It commeth by meanes of little grauell stones getting betwixt the howe, or calking, or spoonge of the shoe, which by continuall labour and treading of the horse, doth eate into the quicke, and the rather, if his heele bee soft and weake, or that the shoe doe lie flat to his foote, so as the grauell being once gotten in, cannot get out againe. The signes be these. The horse will halt, and rotuet to tread all vpon the toe, to fauour his heele. The cure, according to Martin, is thus. First pare the howe, and get out the grauell with a cornet, or drawer, leauing none behind, for if you doe, it will breed to a quitterbone. That done, stop him with turpentine and hogs grease molten togither, and laid on with a little towe or flaxe, and then clappe on the shoe to keepe in the stopping, renewing it euerie day once vntill it be whole. And suffer the horse to come in no wet, vntill he be throughlie whole. If a graueling bee not well stopt to keepe downe the flesh, it will rise higher then the howe, and not onelie require more businesse in bolstering it, but also put the horse to more paine.

Of Surbating. Chap. cxliv.

THis is a beating of the howe against the ground, called of the Italians Sobaticura, it commeth sometime by meanes of euill shoing, lieng too flat to his foote, or by going long barefoote, and sometime by the hardnesse of the ground, and high lifting of the horse. And those horses that be flat footed, the coffins whereof are tender and weake, are most commonlie subiect to this sorance. The signes be these: the horse will halt on both his forelegs, and go stifflie, and creeping as though hee were halfe foundered. The

cure,

cure, according to Martin, is thus: take off his shoes, pare him as little as maie be, and if the shoes be not easie, that is to saie, long, large, and hollow inough, then make them so, and tack them on againe with foure or fiue nailes. That done, stop his feete with bran, and hogs grease boiled together, so hot as maie be, and also couer all the coffin round about with the same, binding all in together with a cloth, and a list fastened about the ioint, renewing it euerie day once, vntil it be whole, and giue the horse during that while warme water, and let him stand drie and warme, and not be trauelled, vntil he be whole.

Of a pricke in the sole of the foote, either by treading on a naile, or any other sharpe thing that doth enter into the foot. Chap. cxlvi.

The signes be these. If a man be on his backe when he treadeth on any such thing, he shall feele that the horse will lift vp his foote, & comet to stand still to haue help. And if it chance at anie other time, the halting of the horse, and the hurt it selfe will shew. The cure, according to Martin, is thus. Pull off the shoe, and pare the foote, and with a drawer vncouer the hole, making the mouth so broad as a two penny peece, then tacke on the shoe again. That done, stop it, by powring into the hole turpentine and hogges grease molten together, and laie some flare, or twoe vpon it, and then stop all the horses foote with horsedung, or rather with cowdung, if you can get it, and splent it either with sticks, or else with an olde shoe sole, so as the stopping may abide in, renewing it euery date once vntil it be whole, and let the horse come in no wet. If this be not well cured, or looked to in time, it will cause the horne to breake aboue, and to loosen round about, and perhaps to fall cleane awaie. But if you see that it begins to breake aboue, then make a greater issue beneath by opening the hole wider, and taking more of the sole awaie, that the flesh maie haue the more libertie. Then take of bole Armonte halfe a quarterne, Beane flower, and two egges. Beate them, and mingle them well together, and make a plaister thereof vpon towe, and laie it round about the cronet, binde it fast on, and so let it remaine the space of two daies, and then renew it againe, not

failing

falling so to doe euerie two daies, vntill you see it ware hard and firme aboue. For this plaister being restrictiue, will force the humors to resort all downward, which must be drawne out with turpentine and hogges grease as before, vntill it leaue mattering, and then drie it vp with burnt Alum, beaten to powder, & strowed vpon it, with a little flaxe laide againe vpon that, continuing so to doe euerie daie once, vntill it be hardened, and let not the horse come in any wet, vntill he be whole.

Of the Figge. Chap. cxlvii.

IF a horse hauing receiued anie hurt, as before is said by naile, bone, splent, or stone, or otherwise in the sole of his foote, and not be well dressed and perfectlie cured, there will growe in that place a certain superfluous peece of flesh, like a figge: and it will haue little graines in it like a fig, and therefore is rightlie called of the Italians, Vn fico, that is to saie, a figge. The cure whereof, according to Martin, is thus. Cut it cleane awaie with a hote iron, and keepe the flesh downe with turpentine, hogges grease, and a little ware laid on with towe or flaxe, and stop the hole hard, that the flesh rise not, renewing it once a daie, vntill it be whole.

Of a Retreate. Chap. cxlviii.

THis is the pricking of a naile, not well driuen in the shoing, & therfore pulled out again by the Smith, and is called of the Italians, Tratta messa. The cause of the pricking may be partlie, the rash driuing of the smith, & partlie the weakenes of the naile, or the hollownes of the naile, in the shank. For if it be to weake, the point many times bendeth awry into the quick, when it should go right forth: againe, if the shanke of the naile be hollow, it flaketh & shiuereth in the driuing into two parts, wherof one part raceth the quicke in pulling out, or else perhaps breaketh clean asunder, & so remaineth still behind, and this kinde of pricking is worse than a cloteng because it will rankle worse, by reason of the flaw of iron remaining in the flesh

The

The ſignes be theſe. If the Smith that driueth ſuch a naile be ſo lewd, as he will not looke vnto it, before the horſe depart, then there is no way to knowe it, but by the halting of the horſe, and ſearching the howe firſt with a hammer by knocking vpon euery clinging. For when you knock vpon that naile, where the griefe is, the horſe will ſhrinke vp his foote. And if that will not ſerue, then gripe, or pinch the howe with a paire of pinſons round about vntill you haue found the place grieued. The cure according to Martin is thus. Firſt pul off the ſhoe, and then open the place greeued with a butter, or drawer, ſo as you may perceiue by feeling or ſeeing, whether there be any peece of naile or not, if there be, to pull it cleane out, and to ſtop the hole with turpentine, ware, and ſheepes ſewet molten together, & ſo powred hot into the hole, and then lay a little towe vpon it, and clap on the ſhoe againe, renewing it thus euery day, vntill it be whole, during which time, let not the horſe come in any wet, and it muſt be ſo ſtopped, though it bee but prickt without any peece of naile remaining. And if for lacke of looking to in time, this retreat cauſeth the howe to breake aboue, then cure it with the plaiſter reſtrictiue in ſuch order as is mentioned in the laſt chapter ſauing one before this.

Of cloieng. Chap. Cxiix.

CLoieng is the pricking of a whole naile called of the Italians Inchiodatura, paſſing through the quick, & remaining ſtill in the ſame, and is clenched as other nailes be, and ſo cauſeth the horſe to halt. The grieued place is knowne, by ſearching with the hammer and pinſons, as is before ſaid. If the horſe halt immediatlie, then pull off his ſhoe, and open the hole, vntill it begin to bleede, and ſtop it with the ointment aforeſaid in the chapter of the retreate, and clap on the ſhoe againe, and the howe may be ſo good, & the harme ſo little, as you may trauell him immediatly vpon it: but if it be ranckled, then renewe the ſtopping euery day once, let him come in no wet, vntil it be whole.

Of loosening the hoone. Chap. Cl.

THis is a parting of the hoone from the cronet, called of the Italians, Dissolatura del vnghia, which if it be round about, it commeth by means of foundering, if in part, then by the anguishe, caused by the pricking of some canell naile, pearsing the sole of the foote, or by some quitterbone, retreat, graueling, or cloteng, or such like thing: the signes be these When it is loosened by foundering, then it will breake first in the fore part of the cronet, right against the toes, because the humor doth couet alwaies to descend towardes the toe. Againe, when the pricking of a canell naile or such like cankered thing is the cause, then the houe will loosen round about, equallie euen at the first. But when it procéedeth of ante of the other hortes last mentioned: then the houe will breake right aboue the place that is offended, and most commonly will procéede no further. The cure, according to Marcin, is thus. First, of which soeuer of these causes it procéedes, be sure to open the hoole in the sole of the foote, so as the humour may haue frée passage downeward, and then restraine it aboue with the plaister restrictiue before mentioned, and in such order as is there written, and also heale vp the wound, as is before taught in the chapter of a pricke in the sole of the foote.

Of casting the hoone. Chap. Cli.

THis is when the coffin falleth cleane away from the foot, which commeth by such causes as were last rehearsed, & is so apparant to the eie, as it néedeth no signes to know it. The cure, according to Martin, is thus. Take of turpentine one pounde, of tarre halfe a pinte, of vnwrought ware halfe a pound, of shéepes sewet halfe a pound, of sallet oile halfe a pinte. Boile all these thinges togither, and stirre them continuallie vntill they be throughlie mingled, and compact togither. Then make a boote of leather with a good strong sole méete for the horses foote, to bee laced or buckled about the pasterne, and dresse his foote with the saime aforesaid laid vpon flax or towe, and bolster or stuffe his foote with soft flax, so as the boote may gréeue him no maner of way, renewing it euery daie once vntill it be whole, and then put him to grasse.

Of

Of the hoone bound. Chap. clii.

THis is a shrinking of all the whole houe. It commeth by drought, for that the houes perhappes are kept too dry, when the horse standeth in the stable, and sometime by meanes of heat, or of ouer straight shoing. The Italians call the horse thus grieued Incastellado. The signes bee these, The horse will halt, and the houes will be hot, and if you knock on them with a hammer, they will sound hollow like an emptie bottle, and if both the feet be not houe bound, the lore foote will be lesser than the other in deed, and appeare so to the eie. The cure, according to Martin is thus. Pull off the shoes, and shoe him with halfe moone shoes called Lunette, the order and shape whereof you shall find hereafter among the other shoes, and rase both the quarters of the houe with a drawer, from the coronet vnto the sole of the foot, so deepe as you shall see the dewe come forth. And if you make two rases on eache side, it shall be so much the better, and inlarge the houe the more. That done, annoint all the houe about, nerte vnto the coronet round about, with the ointment prescribed before, in the chapter of calking the houe, continuing so to doe euerie day once vntill he begin to amend, and let him bee ridden vpon some soft wet ground an houre or two euerie day once for the space of a moneth, and if he goeth not well at the monethes ende, then take off the halfe shoes and pare all the soles frushes and all, so thin as you may see the deawe come forth, and tacke on a whole shoe, and stop all the foote within with hogs grease and bran boiled together, and laid hot to the foot, renewing it euerie day once the space of nine dates, to the intent the sole may rise. But if this will doe no good, then take away the sole cleane and clap on a whole shoe, and stop the foot with nettles and salt brated together, renewing it once a day, but not ouer harde, to the intent the sole may haue libertie to rise, and being growne againe, let him bee shodde with the lunets and so sent to grasse.

Of the running Frush. Chap. cliii.

THe Frush is the tenderest parte of the houe towardes the heele, called of the Italians Fettone, and because it is fashioned like

like a forked head, the French men call it Furchette, which worde our Ferrers, either for not knowing rightlie howe to pronounce it, or else perhaps for easinesse sake of pronuntiation, do make it a monasillable, and doe shortlie pronounce it the Frush, in which Frush breedeth manie times a rottennesse or corruption proceeding of humors that commeth out of the legge, whereby the legge is kept cleane from the windgalles, and all other humours and swellings, by meanes that the humours haue passage that waie. Notwithstanding, the discommoditie of this sorance is greater than the commoditie, because it maketh the horses foote so weake and tender, as he is not able to tread vpon any hard ground. The signes be these. The horse will hault, and specially when the passage of the humour is stopt with anie grauell gathered into the Frush, and not being stopt it will continually runne, the sauour whereof will be so strong as a man is not able to abide it, and in some places it will loke raw. The cure according to Martin is thus. First take off the shoe and pare away all the corrupt places and make them raw, so as you may see the water issue out of the rawe places: then tacke on the shoe againe, being first made wide and large inough. That done, take of soote one handfull, of salt as much, bruse them well together in a dish, and put thereunto the white of three egges, and temper them together, and with a little tow dipt therein, stop all the foote, and specially the Frush, and splent it so as it may not fall out, renewing it once a day the space of seuen daies, and then he will bee whole. During which time, let the horse rest, and come in no wet, at the seuen daies end leaue stopping him, and ride him abroade, and alwayes when hee commeth in, let his fore foot be cleane washed that no grauell remaine therein, without doing anie more vnto him.

Of diseases or griefes indifferentlie incident to any parte of the bodie, but first of the Leprosie or vniuersall manginesse, called of the old writers Elephantia Chap. cliiii.

This is a cankered manginesse, spreading ouer all the bodie, which commeth of aboundance of melancholie, corrupt, and filthie blood. The signes be these, The horse will bee all mangie

and

and scurvie, full of scabs, and rawe plots aboue the necke, and euill fauoured to looke on, and alwaies rubbing and scratching. The cure, according to Martin, is thus. Let him bloud the first daie in the one side of the necke, and within two daies after on the other side of the necke, & within two daies after that, in the flanke veines, and last of all, in the veine vnder the taile. Then wash all the sore places with salte brine, and rubbing them hard, with a wispe of strawe hard twisted, so as they may bléede well, and be all rawe. That done, annoint the place with this ointment: take of quick siluer one ounce, of hogs grease one pound, of brimstone beaten into powder a quarterne, of Rape oile a pinte. Mingle these thinges well together, vntill the quicke siluer be throughlie incorporated with the rest, and hauing annointed all the rawe places with this ointment, make it to sincke into the flesh, by holding and weauing vp and down ouer it, a hote broad bar of iron, & then touch him no more againe, the space of two or three daies, during which time, if you see that bee rubbeth still in anie place, then rubbe that place againe with an old horsecombe, to make it rawe, and annoint it with fresh ointment. But if all this will not helpe, then with a hot iron round and blunt at the point, so big as a mans little finger, burne all the mangie places, making round holes, passing onelie through the skin, and no further. For which intent it shall be néedfull, to pull the skin first from the flesh, with your left hand, holding it still, vntill you haue thrust the hote iron through it, and let every hole be a spanne one from another, and if neede be, you may annoint those holes with a little sope, and let the horses be thin dieted, during his curing time.

Of the Farcin, called in Italian of some, Il verme, and of some Farcina. Chap. clv.

THis is a kind of créeping vlcer growing in knots, following alongst some veine, & it procéedeth of corrupt bloud ingendred in the body, or els of some outward hurt, as of spurgalling, or of the biting of some other horse, or of the biting of tickes, or of hogs lise, or such like casualties. Or if it be in the legge, it mate come by interfering. It is easily knowne,

partly by the former description, and also it is apparant to the eie. The cure, according to Martin, is thus. Let him bloud in that vein where it commeth, as nigh the sore place as maie bee, and let him bleed well. Then fire euerie knot one by one, taking the knot in your left hand, and pulling it so hard as you can from his bodie to the intent you maie the better pearse the knotte, with a round, blunt, hot iron, of the bignesse of a mans forefinger, without doing the bodie anie hurt, and let the matter out, leauing none vnburned, be it little or much. That done, annoint euery knot so burned with hogs grease warmed euerie daie once, vntill the coares bee readie to fall awaie, and in the meane time prepare a good quantitie of old vrine, and when you see the coares readie to fall: boile the vrine, and put therein a little Copperas, and salte, and a few strong nettles, and with that water, being warme, wash out all the coares, and all the corruption. That done, fill euerie hole immediatlie with the powder of fleet lime, continuing thus to do, euerie daie once, vntill the holes be closed vp, and if anie be more ranker than others, fill those with Verdigrease, and during this cure, let the horse be thinlie dieted, that is to say with straw and water onelie: vnlesse it be nowe and then to giue him a loafe of bread. For the lower he be kept, the sooner he will be whole. And in any wise let his necke be yoked in an olde bottomlesse paile, or else with short staues to keep him from licking the sores, and the lesse rest he hath the better. Or do thus. Take a good great Dock rote cleane scraped, and cut thereof fiue little rundels or cakes, to be vsed as followeth. First with a sharpe knife make a right downe slit in the horses forehead. about three inches long, then with your Cornet losen the skin within the slit from the flesh, so as you maie easilie put therein the fiue rundels of Docke, that is to saie, two on ech side of the slit, one aboue another, and put the fift rundle in the verie midst betwixt the other foure: that don, fasten to each side of the slit two short shoomakers ends, to serue as laces to tie in the foresaid rundels, so as they may not fall out, & cleanse the sore euerie daie once, for the vertue of the rote is such, as it will drawe all the filthie matter from anie part of the bodie: yea, though the farcin be in the hinder legs, which matter is to be wiped awaie from time to time, and the newe rotes to be thrust

into

into the ſlit according as you ſée it néedfull.

Another medicine for the ſame.

SLit euery hard kirnill with a ſharpe knife, and fill the hole with an ointment made of olde larde, ſope, and grate ſalt, for that will eate out the coare, and cauſe it to rot, and to fall out of the one accord.

Of the Canker, called of the Italian Il Cancro. Chap. clvi.

A Canker is a filthie creeping vlcer, fretting and gnawing the fleſh in great breadth. In the beginning it is knottie, much like a Farcine, and ſpreadeth it ſelfe into diuers places, & being exulcerated, gathereth togither at length into one wound or ſore. This proceedeth of a Melancholie and filthy bloud ingendered in the bodie, which if it be mixt with ſharpe and ſalt humours, it cauſeth the more painfull and grieuous exulceration, and ſomtime it commeth of ſome filthy wound that is not clenly kept, the corrupt matter whereof cankreth other clean parts of the bodie. It is eaſie to be known by ẏ deſcription before written. The cure whereof, according to Martin, is thus. Firſt let him bloud in thoſe veins that bee nert vnto the ſore, and take inough of him. Then take of Alum halfe a pound, of grẽn Coporas and of white coporas of ech one quarterne, and a good handfull of ſalt: boile all theſe thinges togither in faire running water, from a pottle to a quart. And this water being warme, waſh the ſore therewith with a clout, and then ſprinkle thereon the powder of vnſlecked lime, continuing ſo to do euery day once the ſpace of fiftéene daies: and if you ſée that the lime do not mortifie the ranke fleſh, and keepe it from ſpreading anie further, then take of black ſope halfe a pound, of quicke ſiluer halfe an ounce, & beat them togither in a pot, vntill the quicke ſiluer be ſo well mingled with the ſope, as you can perceiue none of the quickſiluer in it. And with an iron ſlice, after that you haue waſhed the ſore with the ſtrong water aforeſaid, couer the wound with this ointment, continuing thus to doe euerie daie once, vntill the canker leaue ſpeading a-

broad. And if it leaue spreading, and that you see the ranke flesh is mortified, and that the edges begin to gather a skin, then after the washing, dresse it with the lime as before, continuing so to do, vntil he be whole. And in the dressing, suffer no filth that commeth out of the sore, to remaine vpon any whole place about, but wipe it cleane awaie, or else wash it awaie with warme water. And let the horse, during this cure, bee as thinlie dieted as maie be, and throughlie exercised.

Of the Fistula, called of the Italians, Fistula. Chap clvii.

A Fistula is a deep hollow croking vlcer, & for the most part springs of maligne humors, ingendered in some wound, sore, or canker, not throughly healed. It is easie to knowe by the description before made. The cure, according to Martin, is thus. First search the depth of it with a quill, or with some other instrument of leade, that maie be bowed euerie way, meete for the purpose. For vnlesse you find the bottom of it, it wil be very hard to cure. And hauing found the bottom, if it be in such place as you may boldly cut and make the waie open with a lancet, or rasor, then make a slit right against the bottom, so wide as you maie thrust in your finger, to feele whether there bee anie bone or gristle perished, or spungie, or lose flesh, which must bee gotten out, and then taint it with a taint of flare dipt in this ointment. Take of honie a quarterne, and of Verdigrease one ounce beaten into powder. Boile them togither, vntill it look redde, stirring it continuallie, least it runne ouer, and being luke warme, dresse the taint therewith, and bolster the taint with a bolster of flare. And if it be in such a place, as the taint cannot conuenientlie be kept in with a bande, then fasten on each side of the hole, two ends of a shoomakers thread right ouer the bolster, to keepe in the taint, which endes maie hang there as two laces, to tie and vntie at your pleasure, renewing the taint euerie daie once, vntill the sore leaue mattering: And then make the taint euerie daie lesser and lesser, vntill it be whole. And close it vp in the ende, by sprinkling thereon a little fleet lime. But if the Fistula be in such a place

as

as a man can neither cut right againſt the bottome, or nigh the ſame: then there is no remedie, but to poure in ſome ſtrong water, through ſome quill, or ſuch like thing, ſo as it maie goe to the bottome, and drie vp all the filthie matter, dreſſing him ſo twice a daie, vntill the horſe be whole.

Of an Auburie. Chap. clviii.

This is a great ſpongie wart full of bloud, called of the Italians, Moro, or Selſo, which maie grow in anie place of the bodie, & it hath a roote like a Cockes ſtone. The cure, according to Martin is thus. Tie it about with a thread, ſo hard as you can pull it, and the thread will eat in by litle & litle, in ſuch ſort, as within ſeuen or eight daies, it wil fall awaie by it ſelfe. And if it be ſo flatte as you can binde nothing about it, then take it away with a ſharpe hot iron, cutting it round about, and ſo deepe as you leaue none of the roote behind, and drie it vp with Verdigreaſe. Ruſsius ſaith, that if it growe in a place full of ſinewes, ſo as it cannot be conuenientlie cut awaie with a hote iron, then it is good to eate out the core with the powder of Reſalgar, and then to ſtop the hole with flaxe dipt in the white of an egge for a daie or two: and laſtlie, to drie it vp with the powder of vnſlect lime and honie, as before is taught.

Of wounds. Chap. Clix.

Wounds commeth by meanes of ſome ſtripe or pricke, and they are properlie called wounds, when ſom whole part is cut or broken. For a wound according to the phyſicians, is defined to be a ſolution, diuiſion, or parting of the whole. For if there be no ſuch ſolution or parting, then me thinkes, it ought rather to bee called a bruſe than a wounde. And therefore wounds are moſt commonly made with ſharpe or pearſing weapons, and bruſes with blunt weapons. Notwithſtanding, if by ſuch blunt weapons, anie part of the whole be euidentlie broken, then it ought to be called a wound as well as the other. Of wounds ſome be ſhallow, and ſome be deepe and hollow.

Again, some chance in the fleshie parts, and some in the bonie, and sinewie places. And those that chance in the fleshie partes, though they be verie deepe, yet they be not so dangerous as the other, and therefore we will speake first of the most dangerous. If a horse haue a wound newlie made, either in his head, or in anie other place that is full of sinewes, bones, or grissles: first, Martin would haue you to wash the wound well with white wine warmed. That done, to search the bottome of the wounde with some instrument meet for the purpose, suffring it to take as little wind in the mean while as may be. Then hauing found the depth, stop the hole close with a clowt, vntill your salue be readie. Then take of turpentine of Mel rosatum, of oile of Roses, of ech a quartern, and a little vnwrought wax, and melt them together, stirring them continuallie that they may be wel mingled together: and if it be a cut, make a handsome roll of cleane picked towe, so long and so big as may fill the bottome of the wounde, which for the most parte is not so wide as the mouth of the wound: then make another roll greater than that to fill vp the rest of the wound, euen to the hard mouth, and lette both these rolles be annointed with the ointment afore-said lukewarme. But if the hurt be like a hole made with some pricke, then make a slicke taynte, such a one as may reach the bottome, annointed with the foresaide ointmente, and bouliffer the same with a little towe. And if the mouth be not wide inough, so as the matter may easily runne forth, if it be in such place as you maie doe it without hurting any sinewe, then giue it a prettie slit from the mouth downewarde, that the matter may haue the freer passage. And in anie wise haue a speciall regarde, that the taint may be continuallie kept in by one meanes or other, as by binding or staieng the same with the ends of a shomakers thread as is aforesaid. And if the hole be deepe, and in such place as you may not cut it, then make your taint of a sponge, and so long as it may reach to the bottome, and the taint being made somwhat ful, with continuall turning and wrieng of it, you shall easilie get it down, and then dresse the wound with this twice a daie, cleansing the wound euerie time with a little white wine lukewarme. For this sponge, anointed with the ointment aforesaid, will both drawe and suck vp all the filthie matter, and make it so faire within as is

possible:

poſſible: and as it beginneth to heale, ſo make your tainte euerie day leſſer and leſſer, vntill it be ready to cloſe vp, and neuer leaue tainting it, ſo long as it will receiue a taint, be it neuer ſo ſhorte. For haſtie healing of wounds breedeth Fiſtulas, which properlie be old wounds, and therefore muſt be cured like Fiſtulas.

Of wounds in the fleſhie parts. Chap. clx.

Vſe the ſame ointment and maner of proceeding as before. And if the wound be very large, then to keepe in the taint or rolles, you ſhall be faine to put two or three ſhoemakers endes on each ſide of the ſore, leauing them ſo long as you maie tie them together, and loſen them when you will like laces.

Of an hurt with an arrow. Chap. clxi.

IF the horſe be hurt with an arrow, taint the hole with hogs greaſe and turpentine molten togither, renewing it euerie day once vntill it be whole.

Of pulling out ſhiuers or thornes. Chap. clxii.

MArtin ſaith, that if it be not verie deepe, ſope being laide vnto it all night, will make it to appeare, ſo as you maie pul it out with a paire of nippers. But if it be verie deep then you muſt open the place with a knife or lancet, and get it out, & afterward heale vp the wound as hath beene taught you before. Ruſsius ſaith, that the rootes of reed being ſtampt and mingled with honie will drawe out anie thorne, or ſhiuer: and ſo will ſnailes, as hee ſaith, being ſtampt and wrought with freſh butter, and if the place be ſwollen, he ſaith it is good to mollifie it with a plaiſter made of wormewode, Pertorie, Beares foote, hogs greaſe and hony, which will aſſwage any new ſwelling, that commeth by ſtripe or otherwiſe.

Of bruſings or ſwellings. Chap. clxiii.

MArtin. Firſt prick it with a fleame. Then take of wine leez a pinte, as much wheat flower as will thicken it, and an ounce of cumin. Boile them together, and laie this ſomwhat warme vnto it, renewing it euerie day once, vntil the ſwelling either depart, or elſe come to a head. And if it do, then lance it, and heale it vp as a wound.

Of ſinewes cut, prickt, or brooſed. Chap. clxiiii.

TAke of Tarre, and Beane flower, and a little oile of Roſes, and laie it hote vnto the place. And if this do no good, then take wormes and ſallet oile fried togither, or elſe the ointment of wormes, which you ſhall haue at the Apothecaries, and one of theſe wil knit it again, if it be not cleane aſunder.

How to cure a wound made with harquebuſh. ſhot. Chap. clxv.

MArtin. Firſt ſeeke with an inſtrument whether the pellet remaine within or not, and if it doe, you muſt get it out with an inſtrument meete for the purpoſe. Then to kill the fire. Take a little verniſh, and thruſt it into the wound with a feather, annointing it wel within with the feather, and after that, ſtoppe the mouth faire and ſoftlie with a little ſoft flaxe, to keepe the wind out, & on the outſide, charge all the ſwelling with this charge: take of bole Armonie a quarterne, of Linſeede beaten into pouder halfe a pound, of bean flower as much, and three or foure broken egs, ſhelles and all, and of turpentine a quartern, and a quart of vineger, and mingle them well togither ouer the fire, and being ſomwhat warme, charge all the ſore place with part therof, and immediatly clap a cloth, or a peece of leather vpon it, to keep the wound from the cold aire, continuing both to annoint the hole within with verniſh, and alſo to charge the ſwelling without, the ſpace of foure or fiue daies, and at the fiue daies end, leaue annointing of it, & taint it with a taint reaching to the bottome of the wound, and dipped in turpentine and hogs greaſe

molten

molten togeather, renewing it euerie daie twice, vntill the fire be throughlie killed, which you ſhall perceiue by the mattering of the wound, and by falling of the ſwelling: for ſo long as the fire hath the vpper hand, no thicke matter will iſſue out, but onlie a thin yellowiſh water, neither will the ſwelling aſſwage. And then take of Turpentine, waſhed in nine ſeuerall waters, halfe a pound, and put thereunto three yolkes of egges, and a little ſaffron, and taint it with that ointment, renewing it euery day once vntil the wound be whole.

Of burning with Lime, or any other fiery thing. Chap. clxvi.

MArtin. Firſt waſh awaie the Lime, if there be any, with warme water. Then kill the fire with oyle and water beaten togeather, dreſſing him ſo euerie day vntill it be all raw, & then annoint it with hogs greaſe, and ſtrowe thereupon the powder of ſlecked lime, dreſſing him ſo euerie daie once, vntil it be whole.

Of the biting of a mad dog. Chap. clxvii.

IF a horſe be bitten with a mad dogge, the venome of his teeth will not onelie paine him extreamly, but alſo infect all his blood, and make him to die mad. The cure, according to the old writers, is thus. Take of Goats dung, of fleſh that hath laid long in ſalt, and of the herbe Ebulus, called of ſome Danewort, of ech halfe a pound, and xl. Walnuts. Stampe all theſe things togither, and laie ſome thereof vnto the ſore, and this will ſucke out the venome, and heale the wound. It is good alſo to giue the horſe Treacle, and Wine to drinke: yea, and ſome would haue the ſore place to be fiered with a hot iron.

Of hurts by tuſkes of a Boare. Chap. clxviii.

IF a horſe be hurt with the tuſke of a Boare, laie Vitriol, and Copperas thereunto, and the powder of a dogs head being burned, but let the tongue be firſt pulled out and caſt awaie.

To heale the biting or stinging of Serpents Chap. clxix.

LAurentius Rusius. Take a good quantitie of the hearbe called Sanicula, stampe it, and distemper it with the milke of a Cow, that is all of one colour, and giue him that to drinke, and that will heale him.

Another medicine for the same purpose

MAke a plaister of Onions, honnie and salte, stampt and mingled together, and lay that to the sore place, and giue the horse wine, and treacle to drinke. Absirtus woulde haue you to giue him white Pepper, Rewe, and Time, to drinke with wine.

Of drinking of horseleaches. Chap. clxx.

IF a horse chance to drinke horseleaches, they will continuallie sucke his blood, and kill him. The remedie, according to Absirtus, is to poure oile into the horses mouth which will make them to fall away and kill them.

Of swallowing down hens dung. Chap. clxxi.

IF a horse swallow down hens dung in his hay, it will fret his guts, & make him to void filthy matter at the fundament. For remedie whereof, Absirtus would haue you giue him drinke made of smallage seed, wine, and honie, & to walke him thoroughlie vpon it, that he may emptie his bellie.

Of lice, and how to kil them. Chap. clxxii.

THey bee like Geese Lice, but somewhat bigger, they will breede most about the eares, necke, and taile, and ouer all the bodie. They come of pouertie, and the Horse will be alwaies rubbing, and scratching, and will eate his

his meate, and not proſper withall, and with rubbing hee will breake all his maine, and taile. The cure, according to Martin, is thus. Annoint the place with ſope and quickſilver, well mingled togither, and to a pound of ſope, put halfe an ounce of quickeſilver.

How to ſaue horſes from the ſtinging of flies in Summer. Chap. clxxiii.

ANnoint the horſes cote with oile, and Baie berries, mingled togither, or tie to the headſtall of his collar, a ſponge dipt in ſtrong Vineger, or ſprinkle the ſtable with water, wherein hearbe Grace hath béene laide in ſteepe. Or perfume the ſtable with Iuie, or with Calomint, or with Gith burned in a pan of coles.

Of bones being broken out of ioint. Chap. clxxiiii.

FEw or none of our Ferrers doe intermeddle with anie ſuch grieſes, but doe referre it ouer to the bone ſetter, whoſe practiſed hand, I muſt néedes confeſſe, to be néedfull in ſuch buſineſſe. Notwithſtanding, for that it belongeth to the ferrers art, & alſo for that the old writers doe make ſome mention thereof, I thought good not to paſſe it ouer altogither with ſilence. Albeit, they ſpeake only of fractures in the legs beneath the knée. For they make little mention or none of bones aboue the knée, taking them to be incurable, vnleſſe it be a rib, or ſuch like. If any bone then be broken in the legge, it is eaſie to perceiue, by feeling the roughneſſe and inequalitie of the place grieued, one part being higher then another: the cure whereof, according to Abſirtus, and Hieroeles, is in this ſorte. Firſt, put the bone againe into his right place. That done, wrap it about with vnwaſht wooll, binding it faſt to the leg with a ſmall linnen roller, ſoked before in oile and vineger mingled together. And let that roller be laid on, as euen as is poſſible, and vpon that laie againe more wooll, dipt in oile and vineger, and then ſplent it with three ſplents, binding them faſt at both endes with a thong, and let the horſes leg bee kept ſtraight, and right out, the ſpace of forty daies, and let not the bonds be loſened aboue three times in twentie.

twentie daies, vnlesse it shrinke, and so require to be newe dressed, and bound againe. But faile not euerie daie once, to poure on the sore place, through the splentes, oile and vineger, mingled together. And at the fortie daies end, if you perceiue that the broken place be solowdered together again with some hard knob or grissle: then lowsen the bondes, so as the horse may go faire and softlie, vsing from that time forth to annoint the place with some softe grease or ointment.

Of bones out of ioint, Chap. Cxxv.

IF a horses knee, or shoulder be clean out of ioint, and no bone broken, Martin saith the readiest waie is, to binde all the foure legges together, in such sort as hath beene taught before in the chapter of incording, and then to hoise the horse somewhat from the ground, with his heeles vpward, so shall the weight and peise of his bodie, cause the ioint to shoote in againe, into the right place: for by this meanes he pleasured not long since a friend and neighbor of his, who going with his Cart from Saint Albons, towards his house, his Thiller fell and put his shoulder cleane out of ioint, so as he was neither able to rise, nor being holpen vp, coulde stand on his legges: to which mischanse Martin being called, made no more ado, but taking his friends Cart rope, bound the horses legs all foure together, and with a leuer shrust betwixt his legs and bodie, and the one end of the leuer being staied vpon the Cartwheele, they putting their shoulders to the other ende, hoised vp the horse cleane from the ground, the peise of whose body made the bone to returne into his right place, with such a lowd knack or crack, as it might be heard a great waie of, and the horse immediatlie had the vse of his leg, so as he drew in the Cart, and went also safe home without complaining thereof euer after.

Certaine receipts of plaisters, very good for broken bones, taken out of the old Authors, writing of horseleachcraft. Chap. Cxxvi.

TAke of Spuma argenti, of Vineger, of ech one pound, of Sallet oile halfe a pound, of Amoniacum, and of turpentine, of

each

ech three ounces, of Ware, of Rosen, of ech two ounces, of Bitumen, of Pitch, and of verdigrease, of each halfe a pounde. Boile the Vineger, Oile, and Spuma argenti together, vntill it ware thicke, then put thereunto the pitch, which being molten, take the pot from the fire, and put in the Bitumen, without stirring it at all, and that being also molten, then put in all the rest, and set the pot again to the fire, and let them boile al togither, vntill they be all vnited in one. That done, straine it, and make it in a plaister forme, and this is called Hierocles plaister.

Another receit for broken bones. Chap. clxxvii.

TAke of liquid Pitch one pound, of ware two ounces, of the purest & finest part of frankincense one ounce, of Amoniacum foure ounces, of drie Rosen, & of Galbanum, of ech one ounce, of vineger two pints. Boile first the vineger & Pitch together, then put in the Amoniacum, dissolued first in vineger, & after that all the rest of the foresaid drugs and after they haue boiled altogither, and be vnited in one, strain it, and make it plaisterwise, and this is called Emplastrum flauum, that is to saie, the yellow plaister.

An ointment for broken bones. Chap. clxxviii.

TAke of old Sallet oile a quart, and put thereunto of hogs grease, of Spuma nitri, of each one pound, and let them boile togither, vntill it begin to bubble aboue, and let this ointment be very warme when you vse it.

HItherto of al the diseases belonging to a horse. Now therfore my promise made vnto you in the beginning of this booke, to speake of those things wherein the cure of all diseases doe consist, that is to saie, in letting bloud, in taking vp of veines, in purging, and in giuing the fire: yea, and also order it selfe bindeth me to treat of the said things presentlie, and first of letting bloud.

In how many veines a horse may be let bloud, and to what end. Chap. clxxix.

AS touching the order, time of the yeare, mone, and daie, and other circumstances belonging to letting of bloud, we haue

ſufficientlie ſpoken alreadie in the kæpers office, in the xvii. Chapter. It reſteth therefore hære to ſhew you what veines ſhould bee opened when the horſe is ſicke of any diſeaſe, according to Vegetius opinion. But firſt I will rehearſe vnto you once againe, in howe manie veines a horſe may bee let bloud, and the rather for that in following Vegetius, I left out in the ſeuenth chapter of the kæpers office, the two temple veines, which be the two firſt and principall veines of the head. A horſe then may be let bloud in the two temple veines. Item, in the two eie veines, which are eaſie to find in the face of the horſe, ſomewhat beneath the eies. Item, in the two pallet veines of the mouth. Item, in the two necke veines. Item, in the two plat veines which be in the breaſt. Item, in the two forethigh veins. Item, in the foure ſhakle veins before. Item, in the two toe veines before. Item, in the two ſide veines, which maie be other wiſe called flank veines. Item, in the taile veine. Item, in the two hanch veines. Item, in the two hough veines. Item, in the foure ſhakle veines behind. Item, in the two toe veines behind, ſo that by this account, a horſe may be let bloud in 31. veins. All which veins are eaſie inough to knowe, becauſe that euerie one lieth in a little gutter, which by fæling ſoftlie with your finger, you ſhall finde immediatlie. And Vegetius ſaith, that if a horſe be pained with anie griefe in his head, as with ach, heauines, frenzie, falling euil, or ſuch like, then it is good to let him bloud in the temple veins with a fleame. If his eies be watriſh, bloodſhotten, or grieued with pinne, webbe, or hawe, then it is good to ſtrike the eie veine with a fleame. If he haue anie heauineſſe or wearineſſe of bodie, or be diſeaſed in the throte with the ſtrangullion, quinzie, or ſwelling of the artires, either within or without, then it is good to let him bloud in the mouth, in the pallat veines with a cornet. If he be vexed with an ague, or with any other diſeaſe, vniuerſallie hurting his bodie, then let him bloud in the necke veins. If his griefe be in the lungs, liuer, or in anie other inward member, then let him bloud in the breaſt veines, which we called before the plat veins. If he be grieued in the ſhoulder, then let him bloud in the forethigh veines, aboue the knee with a lancet, and that verie warilie, becauſe that place is full of ſinewes, and if hee be grieued in his iointes, then let him

bloud

bloud in the ſhakell veines, and that warilie, becauſe that place is alſo ful of ſinews. And if he be foiled on his foreſæt by foundering or otherwiſe, then let him bloud in the toe veines, making waie firſt with your drawer, or ronet in the houe to come to the veine. If he be diſeaſed in the kidneis, reins, back, or bellie, then let him bloud in the flank veins, & in his taile, if he hath anie griefe in his hips, or houghs, then let him bloud in the hip or hough veines, and if his hinder legs, ioints, or fæte, bee grieued, then let him bloud in the ſhakell veines, and toe veines, as is before ſaid.

The order of taking vp veines, and wherof it is good. Chap. clxxx.

The order obſerued by Martin is in this ſort. Firſt, if the horſe be very curſt & ſhrewd, then caſt him vpon a dunghill, or ſome ſtraw, then hauing found the veine that you would take vp, marke wel that part of the ſkin which couereth the veine, and pull that ſomewhat aſide from the vein with your left thumbe, to the intent you maie ſlitte it with a raſor, without touching the veine. And cut no déeper than onlie through the ſkin, and that longſt wiſe, as the vein goeth, and not aboue an inch long. That done, take away you thumbe, and the ſkin will returne againe into his place, right ouer the veine, as it was before. Then with a cornet vncouer the veine and make it bare, and being bare, thruſt the cornet vnderneath it, and raiſe it vp, ſo as you may put a ſhoomakers thread vnderneath, ſomewhat higher than the cornet, to knit the veine when time is. And if your cornet had a hole in the ſmall ende thereof to put in the threade, it ſhould bee the eaſlier done. Then the cornet ſtanding ſo ſtill, ſlit the veine longſt wiſe that it maie bléede, and hauing bled ſomewhat from aboue, then knit it vp with a ſure knotte, ſomewhat aboue the ſlit, ſuffering it to blæde onelie from beneath, and hauing bled ſufficientlie, then knit vp the veine alſo beneath the ſlit with a ſure knot, and fill the hole of the veine with ſalte, and then heale vp the wound of the ſkinne with turpentine, and Hogges greaſe molten together, and laide on with a little Flare. The taking vp of veines is verie neceſſarie, and doth eaſe manie griefes in the legges: for the taking vp of the forethigh veines eaſeth Farcins, and ſwellinges of the legges, the taking vp of

the shakell veines before, easeth the quitterbone and swelling of the ioints, scabs, and cratches. The taking vp of the hinder veines helpeth the Farcin, swellinges, and both the spauens, the taking vp of the shakel veines behind, helpeth swelling of the ioints, the paines, and kibed heeles, and such like diseases.

Of purging with Purgation, or Glister. Chap. clxxxiii.

PUrgations is defined by the physicians, to be the emptieng or voiding of superfluous humors, annoieng the bodie with their euill qualitie. For such humors breed euill iuice and nutriment, called of the physicians Cacochimia, which when it will not be corrected or holpen with good diet, alteration, nor by the benefit of nature and kindlie heat, then it must needs be taken awaie by purgation, vomit or glister. But forsomuch as horses are not wont to be purged by vomit, as men be, I will speake here onlie of glisters and purgations. And first because a horse is grieued with manie diseases in his guts, & that nothing can purge the guts so well as a glister, and specially the thick guts, I wish that our Ferrers would learne to knowe the diuersitie of glisters to what end they serue, and with what drugs or simples they shuld be made, for as the disease requireth, so must the glister be made, some to ease griefs and to allay the sharpenes of humors, some to binde, some to losen, some to purge euill humors, some to cleanse vlcers: but our Ferrers doe vse glisters, onlie to losen the bellie and for no other purpose: yea, few or none do that vnlesse it be Martin, and such as he hath taught, who is not ignorant that a glister is the beginning of purgation. For a glister, by cleansing the guts, refresheth the vitall parts and prepareth the way before. And therefore whensoeuer a horse is surfeted and full of euill humors, needing to be purged and specially being pained in the guttes, I would wish you to begin first with a glister, least by purging him by medicine vppon the sudden, you stirre vppe a multitude of euill humors, which finding no passage downeward because the guttes be stopt with winde and dregges, do strike vpwards, and so perhappes put the horse in great danger. But now you shall vnderstand that glisters be made of foure things, that is to say, of decoctions, of drugges, of oiles, or such like vnctious matters,

matters, as butter or ſoft greaſe, and fourthlie of diuers kinds of ſalt to prouoke the vertue expulſiue. A decoction is as much to ſay as the broth of certaine hearbes or ſimples boiled togither in water vntill the third part be conſumed. And ſometime in ſtead of ſuch decoction, it ſhall be needfull perhaps to vſe ſome fat broth, as the broth of Beefe, or of a ſheepes head, or milke, or whaie, or ſome other ſuch like liquor, and that perhaps mingled with honie and ſugar, according as the diſeaſe ſhall require, the gliſter to be eyther lenitiue, that is to ſaie, eaſing paine: or glutinatiue, that is, ioining togither: or elſe abſterſiue, that is to ſaie, cleanſing or wiping away filthy matter, of which decoction or broath beeing ſtrained, you ſhall need to take three pintes or a quart at the leaſt. And then into that you may put ſuch drugges as ſhall be needful, to the weight of three or foure ounces, according as the ſimples ſhall be more or leſſe violent. Of oils at the leaſt halfe a pint, and of ſalt two or three drams, and then to bee miniſtred lukewarme with a horne or pipe made of purpoſe, when the horſe is not altogither full panched but rather emptie, be it in the forenoone or after noone. And as touching the time of keeping gliſters in the bodie, you ſhall vnderſtand, that to gliſters abſterſiue half an houre or leſſe may ſuffice: to gliſters lenitiue a longer time if it may be: and to gliſters glutinatiue, the longeſt time of all is moſt needfull.

Of Purgations. Chap. Clxxxiiii.

PUrgations for men may be made in diuers ſorts and formes, but horſes are wont to be purged onely with pilles, or elſe with purging ponders put into ale, wine or ſome other liquor. But the ſimples wherof ſuch pils or powders be made, would be choſen with iudgement and aptlie applied, ſo as you may purge away the hurtefull humours, and not the good. Learne firſt therefore to knowe with what humour or humours the horſe is grieued, bee it Choler, Flegme, or Melancholie, and in what part of the bodie ſuche humours doe abound: then what ſimples are beſt to purge ſuche humours, and with what propertie, qualitie, and temperament they be indued. For ſome be violent and next couſins to poiſon, as Scamonie,

or Coloquintida. Some againe are gentle, and rather meate than medicines, as Manna, Cassia, Whaie, Prunes, and suche like. And some againe be neither too violent nor too gentle, but in a meane, as Rhewbarbe, Agaricke, Sene, Aloes. The old men did vse muche to purge Horses with the pulpe of Coloquintida, sometime with the rootes of wilde cucumber, and sometime with the broth of a sodden whelpe, mingled with Nitrum, and diuerse other thinges, whereof I am sure I haue made mention before, in the curing of Horses diseases. Notwithstanding I woulde not wish you to be rash in purging a horse after the olde mens example. For as their simples manye times bee very violent, so the quantities thereof by them prescribed, are verie muche, and dangerous for any horse to take in these daies, in the which neither man nor beast, as it seemeth, is of such force or strength as they haue bin in times past. And therfore, whensoeuer you wold purge a horse of any value, I woulde counseli you to purge him with such like kinds of purgations as Martin vseth, whereof you haue had examples before in diuers places. And whensoeuer you list for knowledge sake to deale with other simples, to proue them first vpon such Jades as may be well spared. For who so mindeth to purge a horse well, that is, to do him good and no hurt, had need to consider many things: as the nature of the horses disease, and the horses strength: also the nature, strength, and quantitie of the medicine that hee ministreth: the Region, or Country, the time of the disease, the time of the yeare and day. For as the diseases & euill humors causing such diseases be diuers, so doe they require to bee purged with diuers medicines, diuerslie compounded, wherein consisteth a point of Art to be learned at the Physicians handes, and not at mine. Againe, weake, delicate, and tender horses, may not be purged in such sort as those that be of a strong sturdie nature. And therefore in such cases, the qualitie and quantitie of the simples is not a little to bee considered, neither is the hotnesse or coldnesse of the region to be neglected, nor the time of the disease. For some require to be purged in the very beginning some, not vntil the matter be throughly digested: and though the disease proceede perhaps of cold, and colde humors, yet a manne may not minister such hot things in summer, as he would doe in Winter,

Winter, nor in the contrary case, such cold thinges in winter as he would do in summer. And therefore the time and season of the yeare is also to be obserued: yea and the day and time of the day. For the more temperate the day is, the better, not in an extreme hot day, for making the horse to faint, nor yet when the wind bloweth cold in the North, for that will stop and hinder the working of the medicine, but rather in a temperate moiste day, when the wind is in the south, if it may be, for that will further and help the working of the medicine, and make the body lose and soluble. Againe, for a horse, whether you purge him with pilles or drinke, it is best for him (as Martin saith) to take them in the morning, after that he hath fasted from meat and drink all the night before. And hauing receiued his medicine, let him be walked vp & down, one houre at the least, and then set vp, and suffered to stand on the bit two or three houres without any meate, but in the meantime see that he be well littered, and warme couered: and at the three houres end, offer him a little of a warme mash made with wheat meale, or with bran, or else with ground mault. Giue him little meate or none vntill he be purged: all which thinges haue beene shewed you before in diuers places, and therefore I thinke it not good to be tedious vnto you with often recitall thereof.

Of Cauterization, or giuing the fire, aswell actuall as potentiall. Chap. Clxxxv.

FOrsomuch as the fire is iudged of all the olde writers to be the chiefest remedie, and as it were the last refuge in all diseases almost wherunto a horse is subiect, I thought good therefore to talke of it in this place, & the rather, for that fewe or none of our Ferrers, vnlesse it be Martin, or such as he hath taught, doe knowe how to giue the fire, or to what end it serueth. But first you shall vnderstand, that according to the learned Chirurgians, yea, also according to my old authors, there be two kinds of Cauterie, the one actuall, and the other potentiall. The Cauterie actuall is that which is done onlie by fiering of the grieued place with a hot iron. The potentiall Cauterie is done by applieng vnto the grieued place, some medicine corosiue, putrifactiue,

trifactiue or caustick. But we will speake first of the actuall cauterie, shewing you wherefore it is good, then of what mettall and fashion your instruments should be made, and finallie, how and when to vse them. Auicen saith, that an actuall Cauterie moderatelie vsed, is a noble remedie to stop corruption of members, to rectifie the complexion of the same, and also to stanch bloud. Howbeit you must beware (saith hee) that you touch not the sinewes, chordes, or ligaments, least the member be weakened, or that the crampe insueth. Vegetius also writing of horseleachcraft praiseth the actuall cauterie very much, speaking in this sort. The actuall Cauterie, saith he, bindeth togither partes losened, it doth attenuate partes blowne and puffed vppe, it drieth vp superfluous moisture, it loseneth, disperseth and diuideth euill matter gathered togither into knots, it allwageth old griefes, it rectifieth those partes of the bodie that are corrupted by any maner of way, reducing them to their pristine estate, and suffereth no superfluity to grow or increase, for the skin being opened with a hot iron, all kind of corruption by vertue of the fire is first digested and ripened, & then dissolued, so as the matter doth issue out at the holes, whereby the member or part before offended is nowe healed, and eased of all paine and griefe: yea the holes being once closed and cleane shut vp, that place is stronger and better knitte togither, and couered with a tougher skin than euer it was before. Nowe as touching the instruments wherof, & of what fashion they should be made, you shall vnderstande, that Vegetius and the other olde writers would haue them to be made of copper, praising that mettall to be farre better to burne with, than iron. The Chirurgians for mans bodie doe praise golde and siluer, but as for the fashion of the irons, it is to be referred to the kind of sore and place grieued, wherewith you haue to deale, according to the diuersitie whereof, the instruments are to be made of diuers fashions, as some like searing irons with sharpe edges, and some with blunt and broad edges, some like right, and some like crooked bodkins, some like hookes or sickles, and some with a great button, and some with a small button at the one ende, in making whereof the Ferrers iudgement is most needfull, who ought to be so skilful as he may be able to make all maner of irons that hee should occu-

pie, and to alter them according as néed ſhall require. And therefore I thought good onelie héere to ſet forth the ſhape of the common drawing iron, and of the button iron, like in forme to thoſe that Martin vſeth, referring all the reſt to your owne iudgment, & ſpecialtie, ſith you haue bin fullie inſtructed before, of what ſort they ſhould be made méet to ſerue your turn in any diſeaſe: now, as touching the vſe of ỹ inſtruments, two things are ſpecially to be conſidered, that is, the heating of the iron, and the bearing of the hand. For the backe of the iron may not be red hot, but onelie the edge, for feare of yéelding to much heat. And therfore though it be made red hote at the firſt, yet it ſhall be good before you occupie it, to cole the backe of the inſtrument in water, & as touching the bearing of the hande the more euenly and lightlie it is done the better, and that according as the finenes and thinneſſe of the ſkin ſhall require, which is to be iudged by the haire. For if the haire be ſhort and fine, then it is a ſigne of a fine ſkin, if long and rough, then it betokeneth a thicke ſkin. The fine ſkin requireth the lighter hand, & not to be burned ſo déep as the thick ſkin, yet both muſt be burned vntill they looke yellowe. But the fine ſkinne will looke yellowe with leſſer burning then the thick ſkin. For the thicke ſkinne with his long haire doth choke the fire, and therefore requireth a more heaute hand: yea, and more often heating of the inſtrument than the thinne ſkin doeth, and bee ſure to drawe alwaies with the haire and not againſt the haire, in what forme, & with what maner of lines hath béene taught you before: for thoſe muſt be made either long, ſhorte, deepe, ſhallow, right crooked, or ouerthwart, according as the diſeaſe doth require: you haue learned alſo howe to allaie the heate of the fire, after ſuche drawing. And therefore I haue no more to ſay here, but onelie to admoniſh you according to Vegetius precepts, not to fire any ſinew place, nor bone that is broken or out of iointe, for feare of weakening the whole member, nor to beare ſo heauy or vneuen hand, as you ſhould thereby deforme or miſſaſhion anie parte of the horſe, nor be to haſty in giuing the fire, but to attempt firſte all other conuenient remedies, and when nothing elſe wil helpe to make the fire your laſt refuge, and yet not ſo much to neglect it & abhor it, like the ignorant ſort, as you wil not vſe it when need

requireth, for lacke where-of many horses goe lame, and vncured of diuers diseases. practise your selues therfore in giuing the fire at needefull times with iudgement and discretion, so shall you doe it to the Horses benefite, and to your owne great praise & profit.

Of Cauteries potential. Chap. Clxxxvi.

CAuteries potentiall as Iohānes Vigo saith, are medicines Corosiue, Putrifactiue & Caustick. This worde Corosiue, is deriued of the latin worde Corrodo, whiche is as much to say, as to gnawe and fret, and of suche Corosiues, some bee simple, and some compound. The simple, as Vigo saith, bee suche as these bee, Roche Alum, as well burnte as not burnt, spunge of the sea somwhat burnt, Lime redde Corall, powder of Mercurie. Compound corosiues be these, Vnguentum Apostolorum, vnguentum ægyptiacum, Vnguentum ceraceum. Medicines putrifactiue, called of the learned sort Septica according to Auicen, be those that haue strength to corrupt the complexion of the member, and to induce anye scarre like dead flesh, causing great paine: yea and feuers, & therfore ought not to be ministred, but to



The drawing iron.

An iron with a button.

to ſtrong bodies and in ſtrong diſeaſes, as in Carbuncles, Cankers, Vlcers, and ſuch like, and they be theſe, Arſenicke ſublimat, reſalgar, and other medicines compounde therewith. Syluius alſo addeth thereunto Sandaracha, chryſocolla, and Aconitum, but hee doeth not agrée with Auicen in the deſcription of the putrifactiue medicines. For he ſaith, that they cauſe little pain or none, neither be they ſo hotte and drie as thoſe ſame that are called Eſcharotica: that is to ſaie Cruſtiue: which be hot in the fourth degree and doe breéd a cruſt and ſcarre, and cauſe great paine, as vnſlect lime, and the burned dregges of wine: wherefore it ſéemeth that Auicens deſcription belongeth rather to the cruſtiue than to the putrifactiue medicines. Notwithſtanding, I muſt needes ſaie that our Chirurgions & alſo Ferrers, do find both Arſenicke and Reſalgar, to bee ſo ſharpe, hotte, and burning thinges, as when they miniſter the ſame to any parte of the bodie, they are forced to allaie the ſharpeneſſe thereof: the Chirurgians with the iuice of Plantaine or Daſſadill, or elſe of Houſe leeke, the Ferrers with Hogges greaſe. Medicines Cauſticke: that is to ſaie, burning, are thoſe whoſe operation is moſt ſtrong & inclineth to the nature of fire, and yet more eaſilie allaied as Vigo writeth, than the medicines putrifactiue, and therefore may be more ſafelie vſed. They bee made as he ſaith of ſtrong lie, called Capitellum, or Magiſtra, of Vitriolæ Romanæ, Sal Nitri, Aqua fortis, of this ſorte be all thoſe which Vigo calleth the bliſtering medicines, as Apium, Cantharides, Ciclamine, Onions, ſtrong Garlike, Melanacardinum, the ſtones or graines of Vitis alba, otherwiſe called Bryonie. Moreouer, Vigo maketh euerie one of theſe Cauteries potentiall to excell one another, as it were by certaine degrées, ſaieng that Corroſiues be weaker than putrifactiues, and putrifactiues be weaker then Cauſticke, and therefore corroſiues worke in the vpper part and in ſoft fleſh, Putrifactiues in harde fleſh and déepe. But Cauſtickes haue power to breake the ſkin in hard fleſh and doe enter moſt déepelie. The vſe of the moſt part of which things haue bæn taught you before in ſundry places, according to Martins experience. And therefore I leaue to trouble you any further, wiſhing you that are deſirous to kno any more of thoſe matters, to reade Taugantius writinge De piroticis, the

eleuenth chapter, in his fifte booke of Surgerie. And Syluius de medicamentorum compositione. And Iohn Vigo writing of surgerie englished but few yeares since. But the old writers, so far as I can iudge by the wordes of Absirtus, *P*elagonius, and others that write of horseleachcraft, doe applie this word Causticke, to suche medicines as are astrictiue and binding, called of Martin and other Ferrers in these daies, binding charges, as may well appeare by the composition and vse thereof here following, recited by Vegetius in this sort.

The receipt of a Causticke vsed by Chiron, to dry vp superfluous moisture, and to bind partes loosened, and to strengthen partes weakened. Chap. clxxxvii.

TAke of Bitumen Iudaicum two pound, of Bitumen Apolonii two pound, of the purest part of frankencense fyre ounces, of Bdellium Arabicum two ounces, of Deares sewet two pound, of Populeum two ounces, of Galbanum two ounces, of the drops of Storax two ounces, of common ware two pound, of Resin Gabial one pound, of Viscus Italicus three ounces, of Apoxima two ounces, of the iuice of hysop two ounces, of the drops of Armoniacke two ounces, of Pitche one pound.

Another Causticke vsed by Pelagonius, to dry vp swellings, bladders, windgals, and spients in the legges and iointes. Chap. clxxxviii.

TAke virgin ware one pound, of rosen two pound and a half, of Galbanum three ounces, of Asphaltum Iudaicum two pounde, of Pirrhe secondarie two pound, of Bitumen one pounde, of Armoniacke fyre ounces, of Costus fyre ounces. Boile all these thinges togither in an earthen pot, sauing the Asphaltum, armoniacke, and Costum: which being first ground like fine flower, must be added vnto the other things after that they haue bin boiled and cooled, and then boiled all togither againe and wel stirred so as they may be incorporated togither, and made all one substance. These kinds of emplaisters or ointments ought in my iudgement to be called, as I said before, rather

rather binding charges, than Cauſtike medicines, becauſe there be no ſuch extreame corroſiue or burning ſimples in theſe, as are before recited. Notwithſtanding I refer my iudgement to thoſe that be better learned, and ſo end for feare of being ouer tedious. For if I would, I could take very good occaſion here to ſpeake of diuers other medicines, whereof ſome are called Anodina, that is, eaſing paine and griefe. *Martin* calleth them Linoges, which are made of Linſeed, Camomill, ſoft greaſe, and ſuch like things, as are hot in the firſt degree. Some againe are called Narcotica, that is to ſaie, aſſonteng or bringing to ſleepe, as thoſe that are made of Opium, Mandragora, Popie, and ſuch like cold and groſſe thinges. And ſome are called Sarcotica, that is breeding fleſh, as Barlie flower and Frankencence. And many other kindes of emplaiſters, ointmentes, waters and ſalues, which would occupie a booke of no ſmall volume, to be written hereafter by ſome other perhaps, if not by my ſelfe. And in the meane time, let this that I haue already writ-ten ſuffice.

Here endeth the order of curing Horſes diſeaſes, and now followeth the true Art of paring and ſhooing all maner of Hooues.

¶ The true Art of paring and shooing *all maner of Hooues, togither with the*

shapes and figures of diuers shooes, verie necessary for diuers Hooues.

In what points the Art of shooing doth consist. The first Chapter.

THe Art of shoing consisteth in these points that is to say, in paring the houe well, in making the sho of good stuffe, in wel fashioning the web therof and wel piercing the same, in fitting the sho vnto the horses foot in making nailes of good stuffe, and well fashioning of the same, and finallie in wel driuing of the said nailes, and clenching of the same. But sith neither paring nor shoing is no absolute thing of it selfe, but hath respect vnto the foot or houe (for the shoe is to be fitted to the foot, and not the foot to the sho) and that there be diuers kindes of houes both good and bad: requiring great diuersitie as well of paring as shoing: it is meet therefore that we talk first of the diuersitie of houes, & then shew you how they oughte to be pared and shod.

Of houes, and diuers kindes thereof. Chap. ii.

OF houes some be perfect and som vnperfect. The perfect houe is that which is round, smooth, tough & short, so as the horse may tread more on the toe than on the heele, and also right, and somwhat hollow within, but not ouer hollowe, hauing a narrow frush and broad heeles. The vnperfect houe is that which lacketh any of these properties beforesaid, belonging to a perfect houe. For as touching the first point, if the houe bee not round but broade, and spreading out of the sides or quarters, that horse for the moste part hath narrowe heeles, and in continuance of time will be flatte foted, which is

a

a weake foote, and will not carie a shw long, nor trauell farre, but soone surbate, and by treading more on his héels than on his toes will go low on his pasternes, and such féete through their weakenesse be much subiect to false quarters and to grauelling, which is most commonlie séen in Flanders horses, and such as be bred in moist ground.

Brittle and rugged houes.

Secondlie, if the howe bee not smooth but rugged, and full of circles like Rams horns, then it is not onlie vnséemlie to the eie, but also it is a signe that the foot is in no good temper, but too hot and dry, and thereby perhaps maketh the howe to be brittle, which defect is often séene in our English horses.

Long howes

Thirdlie, if it bee long, then it will cause the horse to treade all vpon the héeles, and to go lowe on his pasternes, and thereby to breed windegalles, whereunto the Jennets of Spaine bee much subiect by reason of their long howes.

Crooked hoofes

Fourthly, if the howe be not right but crooked, that is to sate, broad without, and narrow within, whereby the horse is splaifooted, then it will cause the horse to tread more inwarde, than outward, and to go so close with his iointes togither, as hee cannot well trauell without enterfering, or perhaps striketh one legge so hard against another, as he becommeth lame. But if he be broad within, and narrowe without, that is not so hurtfull. Notwithstanding, it wil cause him to grauell sooner on the outside than on the inside.

Flat howes

Fiftlie, if the howe be flat and not hollowe within, which is most commonly séene in Frezons and Flanders Horses, then it breedeth such inconueniences, as are before declared in the first vnperfect howe. And againe, if it be ouer hollowe, then it wil dry the faster, and cause the horse to be howebound. For the ouer hollow howe, is a straight narrow howe, and groweth vpright, wherby, though the horse treadeth vpright and not on his héels, yet such kinde of howes will drie ouerfast, vnlesse they bee continuallie stopt, and cause the horse to bee howebound, which lameth them, making them to halt, whereunto the Jennets and Barbary horses are much subiect.

Ouer hollowe Hooues.

Broad frushes

Sixtlie, if the frush be broad, then the héeles be weak, and so soft as you may almost bende them togither, and then the horse will

neuer

neuer tread boldlie on the stones or hard ground.

Narrow heels

Seuenthlie, and lastly, if the heles be narrowe, they be tender, and the horse will grow to be hoouebound, to which defect the Jennets are most commonly subiect.

Of paring the perfect hoone and forefeet. Chap. iii.

FIrst pare the seat of the shoo so euen and plaine as may be, to the intent that the shoo may sit close and not bear in one place more than in another, and take more of the toe than of the heele, to the intent that the heles be higher than the toe, because all the weight of the horses forebody lieth vpon the quarters and heles of the forefeet. And therefore those partes should be most maintained, and taken off with the butter as little as may be. For the paring of the heeles, being naturallie thinner, and more tender then the toe, doeth greatlie weaken them: but the toe being naturallie thicke and hard, would be pared so thinne almost as the edge of a knife. But in paring of the hinder feete, a cleane contrarie order is to be obserued, as shal be said hereafter in his proper place, whereof the French Ferrers haue a Prouerbe, which saith Deuant dariere, dariere deuant, in English, before behind, behinde before, that is to saye, spare the forefoot behind, and the hinder foot before, as wel in paring, as in pearsing the shoo.

Of shooing the perfect hoone and forefeet, and how the shoo, the piersing and naile, should be made. Chap. iiii.

MAke your shoe of Spruse or spanish iron, with a broade web, fitting it to the foot, and let the spongies be thicker and more substantiall than any other part of the shooe: yea, and also somewhat broad, so as the quarters on both sides may disborde, that is to sate, appeare without the hoone a strawes bredth, to garde the cofkine, which is the strength of the hoone, and onlie beareth the shoo, and when you come to the piersing therof, spare not to pearse it from the quarter to the hard toe but not backwards toward the heele, and pierse it so, as the holes may be wider on the outside than on the inside, and that the circle of the piersing may be more distant from the edge of the toe, than from the edge of the quarter, whereas it beginneth, because the

hoone

howe is thicker forward than backward, and therfore more holde to be taken. And as touching the nailes, make them also of the same iron before saide, the heades whereof woulde be square, and not fullie so broad beneath as is aboue, but answearesble to the piercing holes, so as the head of the nailes may enter in and fill the same, appearing aboue the shoe no more than the breadth of the back of a knife, so shall they stande sure without shogging, & indure longer, and to that ende the stampe that first maketh the holes, and the preschill that pierceth them, and also the neckes of the nails would be of one square fashion and bignesse, that is to saie, great aboue and small beneath, which our common Smiths do little regard, for when they pierce a shoe, they make the holes as wide on the inside as on the outside, and their nailes with so great a shouldering by driuing them ouer hard vppon the nayle hole, as the heads or rather necks of the said nails cannot enter into the holes: for to saie the truth, a good naile woulde haue no shouldering at all, but be made with a plaine and square necke, so as it may iustlie fit and fill the piercing hole of the shoe. For otherwise the head of the naile standing high, and the necke thereof being weake, either it breaketh off, or else bendeth vppon euerie light occasion, so as the shoe thereby standeth lose from the hoofe and is quicklie lost. Moreouer the shanks of the nailes would be somewhat flat, and the points sharp without hollownes or flawe, and stiffer towardes the head aboue, than beneath. And when you driue, driue at the first with soft strokes, and with a light hammer vntill the naile be somwhat entred, and in shoing fine delicat horses, it shall not be amisse to grease the pointes of the naile with a little soft grease, that the nailes may enter the more easilie, and driue the twoe talon nailes first. Then looke whether the shoe standeth right or not, which you shall perceiue in beholding the Frush, for if the sponges on both sides bee equallie distant from the frushe, then it standeth right, if not, then amend it and set the shooe right, and standing right, driue in another naile, that done, let the horse set downe his foote againe, and looke round aboute it to see whether it fitteth the horses foot in all places, and whether the horse treadeth euen and iust on it or not. And if you see that the shoo doth not furnishe euerie part equallie, but perhappes appeareth

231

peareth more of one side than of another, then make the horses other foot to be lifted vp, to the intent he may stand the more steddilie vpon that foot, and so standing, strike him on the howe with your Hammer, on that side that the shoe is scant, and that shall make the sho to come that way. The sho then standing streight and iust, driue in the rest of all the nailes, to the number of eight: that is to saie, foure on the one side, and foure on another, so as the pointes of the nailes may seeme to stand in the outside of the howe, euen and iust one by another, as it were in a circular line, and not out of order like the teeth of a sawe, whereof one is bente one way and another another way. That done, cut them off, and clench them so as the clenches may be hidden in the howe, which by cutting the howe with the point of a knife, a little beneath the appearing of the naile you may easilie doe. That done, with a rape pare the howe round, so as the edge of the sho may be seen round about.

Of paring the vnperfect hooues euery one according to their kindes, and first of the broad howe. Chap.v.

A Broad howe not being as yet grown to be flat, may be greatlie holpen and kept from being flat, by the skil and diligence of the Ferrer, in well paring and shoing it. And therefore to pare it well, let him take as muche of the toe with his butter, as he can possible, keeping it alwaies vnder, but let him not touch the quarters nor the heeles at all, vnles it be to make the seat of the sho plain, and let that be done so superficiallie or ouerlie as may be, so shall the howes remaine alwaies strong.

Of shooing the broad hoone. Chap.vi.

MAke a good strong sho with a broad webbe, and broade spunges, and pierced as is aforesaide, fitting it to the foot, being first pared as is abouesaid, and from the talon nail towards the heele, let ỹ sho appeare a straws breadth without the howe, and set it on with such order & with such nailes as appertaineth to the perfect howe, sauing that you shall set fiue nailes on the outside of this howe, and foure on the inside, because he weareth more without than within.

Of

Of paring the rough and brittle hoofe. Chap. vii.

THis kind of hoofe is moſt commonlie weaker without than within: and becauſe it is for the moſt part hoter than the other hoofes be, the heeles therof may be ſomewhat more opened than the other, to the intent it may bee the more eaſilie ſtopt with cow dung, or other ointment to keepe it moiſt, and alſo the raggednes on the outſide of the coffin would be filed away with a rape, and made ſmoothe, and alſo more often annointed than other hoofes with the hoofe ointment hereafter deſcribed in the end of this treatiſe, and as for the reſte of the hoofe, it muſt be pared as the perfect hoofe.

Of ſhoeing the rough and brittle hoofe. Chap. viii.

MAke his ſhoe neither too light, but ſo as it may wel bear the horſe, nor yet too heauie, for then the hoofe being weake will ſone caſt it, and pearſe this ſhoe to be ſet on with nine nailes, fiue without and foure within.

Of paring the long hoofe. Chap. ix.

THe long hoofe may be holpen by cutting awaie the toe with his butter, for the ſhorter foot a weake & ſlender leg hath, the better. And to ſay the trueth, it is the ſhort foote that maketh the ſtrong leg, and the long foot maketh the weake leg, being forced therby to tread all vpon the hæl, & on the paſtern, & let the reſt of the hoofe be pared like the perfect hoofe.

Of ſhoeing the long hoofe. Chap. x.

MAke this ſhoe as rounde as you canne at the toe, that the breadth may take away the euill ſight of the length, and if the foot be very narrowe, then let the ſhoe diſborde without the hoofe, and pierce the ſhoe deeper, and ſet the ſhoe backward inough, becauſe ſuch kind of feet do tread moſt on the heeles, and ſet the ſhoe on with eight nailes like the perfect hoofe.

Of paring the crooked hoofe. Chap. xi.

FIrſt looke on what ſide the hoofe is higheſt and leaſte worne, then pare all that away, and make it equall with the lower ſide which is moſt worne, without touching the worne ſide at all, vnleſſe it be to make the ſeat of the

shoo plaine, and as for the rest, pare it like the perfect houe.

Of shoing the crooked houe. Chap. xii.

MAke an indifferent strong shoo with a broad web, fitting it to the foot, and pierce it not vntill you haue laid the shoo vnto the foot, to the intent you may pierse it to the horses most commoditie, which shall be done if you pierce the scant side (which most cõmonly is the inside) more towards the toe, than the fuller or stronger side. And whereas the houe is weakest there alwaies make the shoe strongest, and set on this shoe with nine nailes, that is to sate, fiue on the stronger side, and foure on the weaker side.

Of paring the flat houe, otherwise called the promised houe. Chap. xiii.

MAke the seate of the shoo plaine, and take somewhat off the toe, but touch not the héele nor the ball of the foot, but leaue them both so strong as you can.

Of shoing the flat houe, or promised houe. Chap. xiiii.

MAke this shoo with a very broad webbe, for the more it couers the weake sole, the better, and let the mid part of the web that couers the ball of the foot be much thicker than the outsides where the piersings be, and let it be so hollow as it touch no part of the ball of the foote, and let it be large & long inough in al places, so as the horse may go at ease and let it be piersed round about the toe, to fauor the héeles, and make ten holes for ten nailes, that is to say, fiue on each side.

Of paring the hollow houe. Chap. xv.

PAre this houe round about, and specially the seate of the shoo, that is to say, round about by the edges, to the intent that the concauitie or hollowneſſe of the hooue within may not be so déepe, but more shallowe than it was before, and let it be alwaies kept moist with stopping it, for feare of houe binding, obseruing in your paring so éeuen a hande as may be in all points like vnto the perfect houe.

Of

Of shooing the ouer hollow hoone. Chap. xvi.

MAke a light shoe in such order and forme, as was said before to serue the perfect hoone.

Of paring a hoone that hath a broad frush. Chap. xvii.

BRoad Frushes do cause weake heeles, and therefore had néed of little or no paring at all, and for that cause pare onelie the toe, and also the seate of the shoe, so much as shall be needfull to the euen standing of the shoe, leauing the héeles so strong as may be.

Of shooing the hoone that hath a broad frush. Chap. xviii.

MAke the shoe stronger towards the heele than towards the toe, and also let the web be somewhat broad towards the héeles to saue them from the ground, and set on this shoe with nine nailes, because most commonlie it is a great foote, and in all other points make it like the shoe for the perfect hoone.

Of paring the hoone that hath narrow heeles. Chap. xix.

PAre the toe short, and make the seat of the shoe faire and plaine, and open onelie so much, as there may bee some little space betwixt the frush and the heele. For the lesse you take off the héele, the better.

Of shooing the hoone that hath narrow héeles. Chap. xx.

MAke a trim light shoe, with a broad webbe, and let the sponges bee so broad as they may almost méete together to defend the heele from the ground, and pearse it all towardes the toe, sparing the héele so much as you can, and let the shoe be long inough towardes the héeles, and set it on with eight nailes, like the shoe that fitteth the perfect hoone.

Of paring and shooing the hinder féete. hap. Cxxi.

EIther to wee haue spoken of the paring and shoeing of the foreféete: now therefore let vs speake somewhat of paring and shoeing the hinder féete. For the paring of the hinder

233

ſæte, is cleane contrarie to the foꝛeſæte, foꝛ the weakeſt part of the hinder foote is the toe, and therefoꝛe in paring the hinder foote, the toe muſt bee alwayes moꝛe ſpared than the hæles, but in all other points, obſerue the oꝛder of paring, accoꝛding to the perfection oꝛ imperfection of the hooues before declared.

Of ſhooing the hinder feete. Chap. xxii.

MAke the ſhooe fit foꝛ the hooue in ſuch ſoꝛte as is before ſaid, ſauing that it would be alwayes ſtrongeſt towards the toe, and it muſt be pearſed nigher the hæle than the toe, becauſe, as I haue ſaid before, that the toe is alwayes the weakeſt part of the hinder foote. And alſo let the outſide of the hinder ſhooe be made with a calkin, not ouer high, but let the other ſponge be agreeable vnto the Calkin, that is to ſaie, as high in a manner as the Calkin, which Calkin is to keepe the Hoꝛſe from ſliding. But then it may not be ſharpe pointed, but rather flat and handſomlie turned vpward, as is preſented in the figure of hinder ſhooes hereafter following, which kinde of Calkin is named by Ceſar Fiaſchi in his booke of riding, Rampone alla Ragoneſa, who vtterlie reiected all other kinds of Calkins as things hurtfull and vnpꝛofitable, as we ſhall ſhew you hereafter when we come to ſpeake of ſhooes with Calkins, rings, and ſuch like engins.

Of ſhooing the hooue that hath a falſe quarter. Chap. xxiii.

IF the hoꝛſe halt, then make him a ſhooe fitted to his foote, lacking one quarter on that ſide that his falſe quarter is, in ſuch foꝛme as you ſhall ſée in the end of this booke. If he doe not halt, then make him a ſhooe with a button, oꝛ ſhoulder ing on the inſide of the ſhooe, and next to the ſole of the foote, ſomewhat diſtant from the falſe quarter towardes the toe, in ſuch foꝛme as you ſhall haue in the end of this booke, and that ſhall defend the foꝛe place, ſo as the ſhooe ſhall not touch it. And let it be pearſed like vnto the figure hereafter expꝛeſſed, and with this kind of ſhooe, you may boldly trauell your hoꝛſe where you will.

Of

Of paring and ſhooing for enterfering. Chap. xxiiii.

THoſe Horſes that enterfere, are moſte commonlie higher on the outſide than on the inſide, and therefore the outſide would be the more taken off with the butter, to the intent that the inſide may bee ſomewhat higher, (if it will be) than the outſide: and then make him a ſhoe fit for his foote, which would bee thicker on the inſide than on the outſide, and let that ſhoe neuer haue any calkin, for that will make the horſe to tread awrie, and the ſoner to enterfere, and let it bee pearſed in ſuch ſort, as you ſée the figure hereafter expreſſed: but to be ſure, firſt cauſe the horſe to be ridden before you, and marke well where he toucheth moſte, and there remedie the ſhooe, by making it the ſtraighter in that place.

Of paring and ſhooing the foote that is hoouebound. Chap. xxv.

FIrſt pare his toe ſo ſhort as may bee, and pare the ſole ſomewhat thinne, and open the héeles well, and make him a halfe ſhooe like a halfe moone, faſhioning and pearſing it like vnto the figure hereafter expreſſed.

Of making the planch ſhooe, or panceiet. Chap. xxvi.

THe planch maketh a good foote, and euill leg, becauſe it maketh the foote to growe beyond the meaſure of the leg. Notwithſtanding, for a weake héele it is marueilous good, and it will laſt longer than anie ſhooe, and it is borrowed from the Aſſe, that hath weake héeles and frushes, to kéepe the foote from ſtones and grauell. Notwithſtanding, woe be vnto that horſe that hath néede of ſuch a ſhooe. The figure of this ſhooe is alſo in the end of this booke.

Of ſhooes with Calkins, rings, ſweltes, and turning vices, and of the Paten ſhooe. Chap. xxvii.

BEſides all theſe kindes of ſhooes before recited, there bee diuers others, whereof ſome are made high with Calkins, ſome with ringes, ſome with weltes or borders about, and ſome with vices, ſome with the toes turned vpward, ſome with the héeles turned vpward, and of manie

2.54

other fashions, which though they be not so needfull, yet I thought good to speake somewhat of them, and also to set forth some of their shapes. And first, as touching shoes with Calkins, Cesar Fiaschi saith, that though such Calkins bee made to keepe the horse from sliding, yet they doe the horse more harme than good, in that the horse by meanes thereof cannot tread euenly vpon the ground, whereby hee manie times wrincheth his foote, or straineth some sinew, and speciallie when he trauaileth in stonie places, and on the mountaines, whereas the hardnesse of the stones perhaps not suffering the Calkins to catch sure hold, the foote slippeth with the more violent streine, and so taketh harme, and specially the heele, if it be weake. And therefore to trauell on the mountaines, he praiseth much the Turkie maner of shoing, which for that purpose make their horses shoes with the heeles turned vpward, in such sort as you see the planch made, setting them on with nailes hauing heades with little buttons, but not standing so high aboue the shoe as our frost nailes commonlie doe, whereby the horse treadeth euenlie and surelie: so shall he not doe hauing Calkins, which besides the discommodities before alledged, be verie dangerous at ante time that you woulde manege your horse. For by crossing in his turning, one foote perhaps may hurt another with the Calkin, so as it may make the horse to halt: yea, and perhaps lame him for euer. And besides that, the Calkins being high behind, the howe cannot bee pared so much before at the toe, as it ought to be, whereby the horse treadeth lower on his heeles, then he should doe, being well pared and shodde without Calkins, and so becommeth weake heeled. Notwithstanding, some neuer thinke their horses to be well shodde, vnlesse all the shoes bee made with Calkins, either single or double: yet of two euils double is the lesse. For the horse shall tread euener with double, than with single Calkins. But then such Calkins would not bee ouer long, or sharpe pointed, but rather short and flat, as hath bene before taught, and is expressed in the figure of hinder shoes hereafter following, which, as I said before, Cesar Fiaschi calleth Ramponi alla Ragonesa. Thus much of shoes with Calkins.

Of shoes with rings. Chap. xviii.

SHoes with rings were first inuented to make a horse lift his feete high: but Cesar Fiaschi saith, that such shoes be more painefull than helpfull to the horse, and in wearing such shoes he lifteth more for paine and griefe, and specially being trotted vpon a hard ground, than for any pleasure or good that they doe him, which thing is incident to manie horses that haue not sound hooues. For though they be well shodde, and haue no rings at all, yet being trotted vpon a hard ground, they will lift higher than vpon a soft ground: for hauing tender hooues, they be afeard to touch the hard ground, euen like a man that hath some griefe in the sole of his foote, which will rather twitch vp his leg, then offend the sore place, by setting it to the ground. And if that man should weare a straight shoe, it would grieue him the worse. Euen so it fareth with the horse, which perhaps hauing naturall tendre heeles, some for lacke of discretion, doe adde thereunto also high Calkins, or else rings, & thereby cause him to haue weaker heeles then he had before. Wherefore leauing aside such vnprofitable deuises, I would wish you to make all your shoes, and specially your fore shoes, with spoonges, in such order as hath beene before taught. And as for making the horse to lift his feete, that is to be holpen chiefly by the art and skill of the Rider. And whilest the horse is in schooling, I thinke it were not amisse, to let him weare continually very beauie shoes, to the intent that being afterward shod with lighter shoes, when he should be maneged to the shoe, or otherwise trauelled, hee may feele his feete to be lighter, and thereby he shall lift the higher, and moue his legges and shoulders with the more pleasure and better grace.

Of shoes with swelling welts, or borders about. Chap. xix.

IN Germanie and high Almaine, the Smithes doe make their shoes with a swelling welt round about the shoe, which being as high as the heades of the nailes, or rather higher, doe saue the nailes from wearing, which kind of shoe for lasting, I must needes praise. For I my selfe haue trauelled, my horse being shod with those shoes, in those countries, aboue fiue hundreth miles right out, vpon verie stonie ground:

yea, and vpon the mountaines, without remouing shoe, or driuing naile. For the shoe being made of well tempered stuffe, inureth equallie in all partes, and the horse also treadeth euenlie vpon them, and specially his fore feete being before well pared. Cesar Fiaschi praiseth also this shoe verie much, to bee vsed when a horse should runne for a wager, to keepe him from sliding. But then he would haue the welt to be indented, hauing sharpe pointed teeth like a sawe, and that the sponges behind be as thicke as the welt, and that the welt be of a tough hard temper, for feare of wearing ouer fast. And if you list to hollow the said shoe in the midst, yet let not the imbossed side rise so high as the welt, but lie somewhat lower. With these kind of shoes they vse in Italie to shoe such Barbarie horses, Ienneis, and Turks, as are appointed to run for the best game, at some publique triumph, or for anie other priuate wager. And therefore sith this kind of shoe is so good to keepe a horse from sliding, Cesar Fiaschi thinketh it best to be vsed to that ende, vtterlie disallowing both calkins, frost nailes, cresis, spurs, and all such like deuises, as are often vsed by the ignorant sort, to keepe their horses from sliding, not considering the great discommodity and hurt that may redound thereof to the horse, by meanes that he cannot tread euen vpon the ground. Or in the stead of this shoe, they may vse the Turkie shoe, a button nailes before mentioned, and that shall keepe their horses from sliding, better than anie of the other deuises, and with lesse harme to the horse.

Of shoes with turning vices, and also of ioint shoes. Chap. xxi.

SOme that vse to passe the mountaines where Smithes are not readilie to be found to shoe a horse, if néed be, do carrie about with them certain shoes made with vices, wherewith they make the shoe fast to the horses foote, without helpe of hammer or naile, the shape whereof is hereafter expressed. Notwithstanding, such shoes are more for the shoe, than for anie good vse or commoditie. For though it saue the horses foote from stones, yet so it pincheth his howe, as he goeth with paine, and perhappes doth his howe more hurt than the stones would doe. And therefore it were better in such needefull times to

vse

vſe the ioint ſhoe, which is made of two peeces, with a flat riuet naile, ioyning them together in the toe, ſo as you may make it both wide and narrowe, as you will your ſelfe to ſerue anie foote, but this ſhoe muſt be ſet on with nailes, and therefore it is needful that the rider learne to driue a naile if need be, wherefore he muſt haue alwayes fore about him, together with hammer, pinſons, and butter, handſomlie made and meete for carriage, without the which the horſemen of Almanie do neuer trauel, neither is there any gentleman that loueth his horſe, but can vſe thoſe inſtruments for that purpoſe, as well as anie Smith. Ceſar Fiaſchi calleth theſe kindes of ſhoes Diſeme, praiſing them verie much to bee vſed to ſuche purpoſe as is before ſaide, and ſo doth Martin. And therefore I thought good to ſet out the ſhape thereof amongeſt the reſt of the figures of ſhoes.

Of the paten ſhoe. Chap. xxxi.

BEcauſe euery ſmith knoweth the vſe of this ſhoe, & how to make it, I ſhall not need to vſe manie wordes, but onelie ſhew you that it is a neceſſarie ſhoe for a horſe that is hurt in the hip or ſtiffle, to bee put on vpon the contrarie foote, to the intent that the ſore leg may hang, and not touch the ground.

How to keepe the hooues of a horſe moiſt in the ſtable. Chap. xxxii.

AS horſes hooues doe manie times take harme through the negligence or vnskilfulnes of the Ferrer, in euill paring or ſhoing of the ſame, euen ſo they take no leſſe harme manie times through the negligence of the keeper for lack of ſtopping and keeping the forefeete moiſt, for the hinder feet moſt commonlie are kept too moiſt, by meanes that the dong and ſtable is ſuffered to ly continually at their heeles. But the forefeet ſtand continuallie drie, whereby the horſe becommeth brittle hooued: yea, and manie times hoone bound, which a good keeper will not ſuffer, but be mindfull to ſtop them often, either with horſe dung or cowe dung: yea, and alſo to waſhe them cleane without with water, and then to annoint them with ſome good ſuppling ointment, as this here following preſcribed by Martin, which will not only ſupple the hooues and make them tough, but alſo to cauſe them

them to shine and glister, which is counted a beautifull thing amongst the Spaniardes, Italians, and such as loue to haue their horses finelie kept.

The receipt of the ointment. Chap. xxxiii.

TAke of Turpentine, of sheepes sewet, of eche halfe a pound, of vnwrought waxe halfe a quarterne, and of Sallet oile halfe a pint. Boile all these thinges together in a pot, stirring them continuallie vntil they be throughlie mingled together. Then take it from the fire, and let it cole, and being cold, preserue it in the same pot, or else in some other, to the intent that you may haue it readie euerie second daie, to noint all the coffins of the horses houes round about: but first washe their houes faire and cleane, and suffer no durt to remaine vpon them: then being dried with a cloth, annoint them.

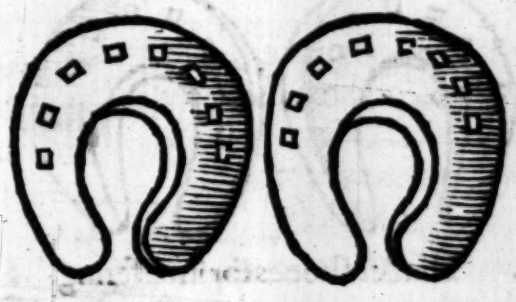
Thus endeth the treatise of paring and shooing all manner of Horses.



A ſhooe for a perfect hooue.



For a flat foote or promiſed foote.



For weake heeles.



For a falſe quarter. Shooes with the inſide turned outward to ſhew the ſhoulderings.



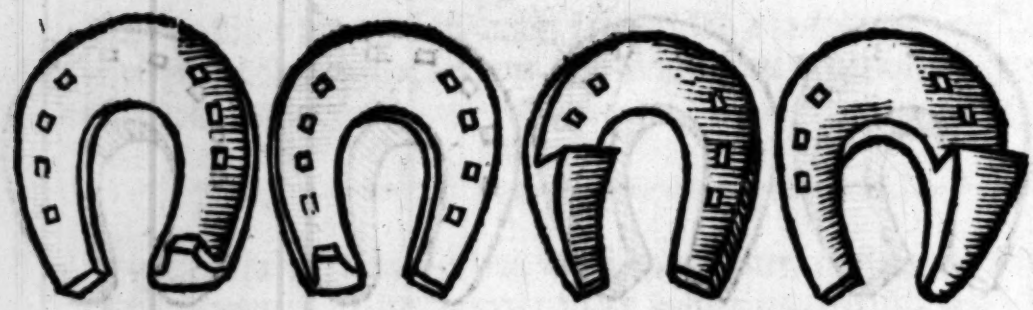
For a falſe quarter.



Lunets for weake heeles.

The

Diuers ſhapes of ſhooes.



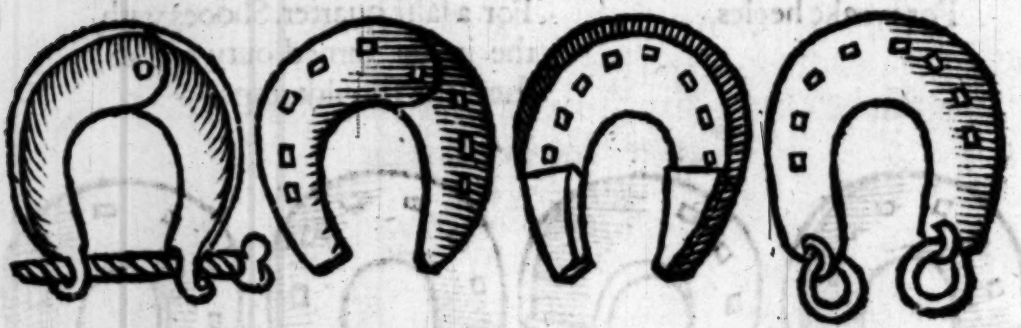
The Planch for weake heeles.

Foure ſhooes for enterfering.



Hinder ſhooes for perfect hooues.

Hinder ſhooes for interfering.



A ſhooe with a vice.

A ioint ſhooe to widen and ſtraiten at pleaſure.

A ſhooe with a welt or border.

A ſhooe with rings to make a horſe lift his feete.



The true ſhape of a perfect horſeſhooe naile.

In

The Table.

In what points the art of shooing doth consist. chap. 1
Of hooues, and diuers kindes thereof. chap. 2
Of paring the perfect hooue and forefoote. chap. 3
Of shooing the perfect hooue and forefeete, &c. chap. 4
Of paring the vnperfect hooues, &c. chap. 5
Of shooing the broad hooue. chap. 6
Of paring the rough and brittle hooue. chap. 7
Of shooing the rough and brittle hooue. chap. 8
Of paring the long hooue. chap. 9
Of shooing the long hooue. chap. 10
Of paring the crooked hooue. chap. 11
Of shooing the crooked hooue. chap. 12
Of paring the flat hooue, &c. chap. 13
Of shooing the flat hooue, or promised hooue. chap. 14
Of paring the ouer hollowe hooue. chap. 15
Of shooing the ouer hollowe hooue. chap. 16
Of paring a hooue that hath a broad frush. chap. 17
Of shooing the hooue that hath a broad frush. chap. 18
Of paring the hooue that hath narrow heeles. chap. 19
Of shooing the hooue that hath narrow heeles. chap. 20
Of paring and shooing the hinder feete. chap. 21
Of shooing the hinder feete. chap. 22
Of shooing the hooue that hath a false quarter. chap. 23
Of paring and shooing for enterfering. chap. 24
Of paring and shooing the foote that is hoouebound. chap. 25
Of making the planch shooe, or panceiet. chap. 26
Of shooes with calkins, rings, weltes, and turning vices, and of the paten shooe. chap. 27
Of shooes with rings. chap. 28
Of shooes with swelling welts, or borders about. chap. 29
Of shooes with turning vices, and also of ioint shooes. chap. 30
Of the paten shooe. chap. 31
How to keepe the hooue of a horse moist in the stable. chap. 32
The receipt of the ointment. chap. 33

FINIS.

Errata. In Fol. 81. among the bittes.
For Campanels, reade Oliues.

258